



## Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

## Linee guida per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

## Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>



Тем, что эта книга дошла до Вас, мы обязаны в первую очередь библиотекарям, которые долгие годы бережно хранили её. Сотрудники Google оцифровали её в рамках проекта, цель которого – сделать книги со всего мира доступными через Интернет.

Эта книга находится в общественном достоянии. В общих чертах, юридически, книга передаётся в общественное достояние, когда истекает срок действия имущественных авторских прав на неё, а также если правообладатель сам передал её в общественное достояние или не заявил на неё авторских прав. Такие книги – это ключ к прошлому, к сокровищам нашей истории и культуры, и к знаниям, которые зачастую нигде больше не найдёшь.

В этой цифровой копии мы оставили без изменений все рукописные пометки, которые были в оригинальном издании. Пускай они будут напоминанием о всех тех руках, через которые прошла эта книга – автора, издателя, библиотекаря и предыдущих читателей – чтобы наконец попасть в Ваши.

### Правила пользования

Мы гордимся нашим сотрудничеством с библиотеками, в рамках которого мы оцифровываем книги в общественном достоянии и делаем их доступными для всех. Эти книги принадлежат всему человечеству, а мы – лишь их хранители. Тем не менее, оцифровка книг и поддержка этого проекта стоят немало, и поэтому, чтобы и в дальнейшем предоставлять этот ресурс, мы предприняли некоторые меры, чтобы предотвратить коммерческое использование этих книг. Одна из них – это технические ограничения на автоматические запросы.

Мы также просим Вас:

- **Не использовать файлы в коммерческих целях.** Мы разработали программу Поиска по книгам Google для всех пользователей, поэтому, пожалуйста, используйте эти файлы только в личных, некоммерческих целях.
- **Не отправлять автоматические запросы.** Не отправляйте в систему Google автоматические запросы любого рода. Если Вам требуется доступ к большим объёмам текстов для исследований в области машинного перевода, оптического распознавания текста, или в других похожих целях, свяжитесь с нами. Для этих целей мы настоятельно рекомендуем использовать исключительно материалы в общественном достоянии.
- **Не удалять логотипы и другие атрибуты Google из файлов.** Изображения в каждом файле помечены логотипами Google для того, чтобы рассказать читателям о нашем проекте и помочь им найти дополнительные материалы. Не удаляйте их.
- **Соблюдать законы Вашей и других стран.** В конечном итоге, именно Вы несёте полную ответственность за Ваши действия – поэтому, пожалуйста, убедитесь, что Вы не нарушаете соответствующие законы Вашей или других стран. Имейте в виду, что даже если книга более не находится под защитой авторских прав в США, то это ещё совсем не значит, что её можно распространять в других странах. К сожалению, законодательство в сфере интеллектуальной собственности очень разнообразно, и не существует универсального способа определить, как разрешено использовать книгу в конкретной стране. Не рассчитывайте на то, что если книга появилась в поиске по книгам Google, то её можно использовать где и как угодно. Наказание за нарушение авторских прав может оказаться очень серьёзным.

### О программе

Наша миссия – организовать информацию во всём мире и сделать её доступной и полезной для всех. Поиск по книгам Google помогает пользователям найти книги со всего света, а авторам и издателям – новых читателей. Чтобы произвести поиск по этой книге в полнотекстовом режиме, откройте страницу <http://books.google.com>.



THE LIBRARY  
OF THE



CLASS 491.75

BOOK H35







Dukam/Phier  
(bund) 1 Nov 1871



---

**A PRACTICAL  
RUSSIAN GRAMMAR.**

---





**A**  
**PRACTICAL GRAMMAR**  
**OF THE**  
**RUSSIAN LANGUAGE**

**BY**  
**JAMES HEARD.**

---

*St. PETERSBURG.*

**PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR, AND SOLD BY SLEUNINE,  
AND BY BOOSEY AND SONS LONDON.**

**1827.**

## ПЕЧАТАТЬ ПОЗВОЛЕНО

съ тѣмъ, чтобы по напечатаніи, до выпуска изъ Типографіи, представлены были *сели* экземпляровъ сей книги въ Цензурный Комитетъ, для препровожденія, куда слѣдуетъ, на основаніи узаконеній. С. Петербургъ, Іюня 30 дня, 1826 года.

*Цензоръ Александръ Красовскій.*

---

Въ типографіи Департамента народнаго  
просвѣщенія.

4635

H 35

To Her Majesty  
Alexandra Feodorovna.  
Empress of Russia

The following attempt  
to facilitate the acquirement of the  
Russian language to a nation whose  
friendly and mutually advantageous  
intercourse with this Empire has been  
uninterruptedly maintained since the  
sixteenth century, is by permission and  
with the deepest reverence dedicated  
by.

Her Imperial  
Majestys.

most humble,  
and most devoted Servant,  
James Heara

382035

JUN 13 27 ALBANY N. Y. AUG 29 36 U. OF M. BINDERY





## P R E F A C E.



*The English, whose political, commercial, or other intercourse with Russia, may have rendered a knowledge of the language desirable, have hitherto had no other means of acquiring it, but through the medium of grammars, written in French or German. It is for the public to decide how far this defect has been supplied by the present work, in the composition of which the author has been most ably assisted by Mr. Charles Svenske, and*

*has made an unreserved use of all the works hitherto published in other languages upon Russian grammar.\**

*The simplicity of the plan adopted will greatly facilitate the labour of the student, while the ideas contained in the exercises will tend to relieve his mind from the irksome dryness of grammatical rules. The road to some sciences lies through delightful scenery, but the path, that leads to the knowledge of a language, is dreary and uninviting, and requires to be strewn with flowers. The themes, which are given in the following pages, upon the most important rules, consist of select sentences,*

---

(\*) Especially of the following: Россійская Грамматика, сочиненная Императорскою Россійскою Академією. Опытъ о Русскихъ спряженіяхъ Н. Греча. Grammaire Russe à l'usage des étrangers par Reiff. Practische Grammatik der Russischen Sprache von Vater. Teoretisch-practische Grammatik der Russischen Sprache von Tappe.

*gradually increasing in difficulty as the scholar proceeds; and followed by promiscuous exercises (at the end of each principal part of speech) extracted from the works of the most celebrated Russian authors. It is necessary to observe, that no rules are anticipated in these themes, which run chiefly upon the remarks immediately preceding, and occasionally upon parts previously explained. Whenever the construction of the Russian phrase differs from the construction of the English, the arrangement of the words in the columns below will point out the order to be adopted in the translation.*

*Most of the apparent irregularities of the Russian Etymology being founded upon the mutability of the letters, the scholar is advised to pay particular attention to that part of the grammar, which treats of their changes and reciprocal effect upon each*

*other in the formation of derivatives, and in the declension and modification of words. These changes will explain the omission of some rules, that are to be found in other grammars, but which are rendered superfluous by a knowledge of the more fundamental rules relating to the letters.*

*Although an endeavour has been made to explain the pronunciation of the Russian letters, it must be confessed, that all attempts to express the sounds of one language, by the characters of another are imperfect, oral instruction being the only sure means of acquiring a correct pronunciation. To prevent a false accentuation the Russian words, which occur in the following work, are all accented.*



## INTRODUCTION.

---

The origin and early history of the Slavonian, as of other primitive languages, are lost in obscurity. In the IX century two Greek missionaries were sent into Moravia by the Emperor Michael III, to translate the Bible, and other theological works, into that tongue, and finding letters unknown to the inhabitants, they composed an alphabet after the model of the Greek, with a few additional characters, to express the sounds peculiar to the Slavonian language. Thus the benign light of christianity brought with it the first dawn of civilization and science.

From this epoch until the subjugation of Russia by the Tartars, may be called the first period of the literature. The



oppressive dominion of those barbarians for more than two centuries effectually checked the rising spirit of improvement, that had been introduced from the Eastern Empire, and first caused the language of the people to differ from the ecclesiastical dialect, by the introduction of many Tartar and Mogul words into common use.

The civil reform effected by Peter the Great, forms the third remarkable epoch in the history of the language, which was then enriched by the adoption of many words relating to the arts and sciences introduced in Russia by that Monarch. Since that period, many writers have arisen, both in prose and verse, who have cultivated and improved their language, and done honour to the literature of their country.

The dialect of the Bible and other theological works has remained invariably the same, uninfluenced, either by the

dominion of the Tartars, or the intercourse of Russia with the other nations of Europe. Hence the difference that at present exists between the Slavonian or church dialect, and the modern Russian language.

From the gigantic strides, which this mighty Empire is making in literature, science and the arts, we may reasonably anticipate the period, when its rich, harmonious and energetic language will be studied by the other nations of Europe for the sake of its original productions. As yet, we have seen only a few rays of the literary sun, which is dawning upon the North, but their brightness sufficiently bespeaks the glory of its meridian splendour.



## ABBREVIATIONS

*made use of in the following grammar.*

Nom.	nominative case.
Gen.	genitive case.
Dat.	dative case.
Acc.	accusative case.
Ins.	instrumental case.
Prep.	prepositional case.
Sing.	singular.
Plu.	plural.
Mas.	masculine.
Fem.	feminine.
Neut.	neuter.
Com.	common.
Inf.	infinitive.
Ind.	indefinite.
Def.	definite.
Perf.	perfect.
Per.	person.



# CONTENTS.

---

## PART I.

	PAGE.
PRONUNCIATION.....	1

## PART II.

ETYMOLOGY .....	9
-----------------	---

### CHAP. I.

#### SUBSTANTIVES.

<i>Sect</i> 1. General remarks. . . . .	10
2. Declension of masculine substantives. . .	12
3. Declension of feminine substantives. . .	23
4. Declension of neuter substantives. . . .	42
5. Formation of feminine substantives from ma- sculine . . . . .	59
6. National appellations. . . . .	61
7. Patronymick appellations. . . . .	63
8. Augmentatives and diminutives. . . . .	65

## XII

### C H A P. II.

#### ADJECTIVES.

	PAGE.
<i>Sect</i> 1. General remarks . . . . .	70
2. Declension of adjectives . . . . .	72
3. Degrees of signification . . . . .	79
4. Possessive adjectives . . . . .	87
5. Apocopated adjectives . . . . .	91
6. Augmentative and diminutive adjectives . . .	94

### C H A P. III.

#### NUMERALS.

<i>Sect</i> 1. Cardinal numbers . . . . .	101
2. Ordinal numbers . . . . .	110

### C H A P. IV.

#### PRONOUNS.

<i>Sect</i> 1. General remarks . . . . .	117
2. Personal pronouns . . . . .	118
3. Relative pronouns . . . . .	123
4. Possessive pronouns . . . . .	128
5. Demonstrative pronouns . . . . .	131
6. Indefinite pronouns . . . . .	135

### C H A P. V.

#### VERBS.

<i>Sect</i> 1. General remarks . . . . .	140
2. Conjugation of the auxiliary verb . . . .	144
3. Conjugation of active and neuter verbs . .	150
4. Formation of the branches, moods, tenses and persons . . . . .	156
5. Conjugation of passive verbs . . . . .	176
6. Reflective, reciprocal and common verbs . .	186



### XIII

	PAGE.
7. Compound verbs . . . . .	194
8. Impersonal verbs . . . . .	210
9. Irregular verbs . . . . .	212
10. Remarks on the use of the tenses and moods . . . . .	232

### CHAP. VI.

#### PARTICIPLES.

Declension of participles . . . . .	247
-------------------------------------	-----

### CHAP. VII.

#### ADVERBS.

Different kinds of adverbs . . . . .	253
--------------------------------------	-----

### CHAP. VIII.

#### PREPOSITIONS.

List of prepositions . . . . .	264
--------------------------------	-----

### CHAP. IX.

#### CONJUNCTIONS.

Different kinds of conjunctions . . . . .	270
---	-----

### CHAP. X.

#### INTERJECTIONS.

Different kinds of interjections . . . . .	275
--	-----

### CHAP. XI.

#### DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

<i>Sect</i> 1. Derivation . . . . .	277
2. Composition . . . . .	284

XIV.

PART III.

SYNTAX.

CHAP. I.

CONCORDANCE.

	PAGE.
<i>Sect</i> 1. Concordance of nouns in general . . . .	287
2. Concordance of verbs . . . . .	290

CHAP. II.

GOVERNMENT.

<i>Sect</i> 1. Government of substantives . . . . .	292
2. Government of adjectives . . . . .	293
3. Government of numerals . . . . .	295
4. Government of verbs . . . . .	296
5. Government of adverbs . . . . .	304
6. Government of prepositions . . . . .	306

CHAP. III.

CONSTRUCTION . . . . .	309
------------------------	-----

PART IV.

ORTHOGRAPHY . . . . .	314
-----------------------	-----





*The Russian Alphabet as used in Writing.*

А а	М м	Ш ш
Б б	Н н	Щ щ
В в	О о	ъ
Г г	П п	ы
Д д	Р р	ѳ
Е е	С с	Ъ ъ
Ж ж	Т т	Э э
З з	У у	Ю ю
И и	Ф ф	Я я
І і	Х х	Ѳ Ѳ
К к	Ц ц	
Л л	Ч ч	

*Начало ученія трудное;  
но конецъ оного пріятенъ.*

*J. Gombert, Sc. St. Petersburg.*

# PART I.

## PRONUNCIATION.

§ 1. The first principles, or elements of pronunciation are letters.

In the Russian alphabet there are thirty four letters, which bear the following sounds.\*

А	а	ah, ex	баба, an old woman, <i>baba</i> .
Б	б	bā,	бабочка, a butterfly, <i>babotchka</i> .
В	в	vā,	водá, water, <i>voda</i> .
Г	г	gā,	годъ, a year, <i>goad</i> .
Д	д	dā,	домъ, a house, <i>dōm</i> .
Е	е	ā,	ведро́, a pail, <i>védrō</i> .
Ж	ж	jā,	женá, a woman, <i>jéna</i> .

\* The English letters, made use of in explaining the sound of the Russian characters, are to be pronounced as follows:

ā	as in fate.	u	as in pure.
a	as in far.	g	as in game.
ē	as in me.	j	as the french j.
é	as in met.	z	as in zephyr.
e	as e mute.	ch	as the Scotch pronunciation of ch in
ō	as in no.		loch, och! &c.
o	as in not.	tch	as in fetch.
oo	as in mood	sh	as in shame.

З з	zā,	зѳлошѳ, gold, <i>zolutō</i> .
И и	ē,	видѳ, a view, <i>vēedd</i> .
І і	ē,	used before a vowel only, ex. мнѳніе, opinion, <i>mnūnēā</i> .
К к	ka,	Корѳль. a king, <i>Korole</i> .
Л л	él,	мáло, little, <i>malō</i> .
М м	ém,	мрáморѳ, marble, <i>mramor</i> .
Н н	én,	нашѳ, our, <i>nash</i> .
О о	o,	окнѳ, a window, <i>oknō</i> .
П п	pā,	пѳпелѳ, ashes, <i>pépéll</i> .
Р р	r,	рáнѳ, early, <i>ranō</i> .
С с	s,	спасѳніе, salvation, <i>spasānēā</i> .
Т т	tā,	твѳрдѳстѳ, hardness, <i>tvérdoste</i> .
У у	oo,	ѳшро, morning, <i>ootrō</i> .
Ф ф	éf,	флагѳ, a flag, <i>flagg</i> .
Х х	kha,	a guttural sound, resembling the Scotch pronunciation of ch, in loch, etc. ex. хипрѳстѳ, cunning, <i>chēētroste</i> .
Ц ц	tsā,	(a combination of ш and с) ex. Царѳ, a king, <i>tsar</i> .
Ч ч	tcha,	челѳвѳкъ, a man, <i>tchélovayk</i> .
Ш ш	sha,	шѳрстѳ, wool, <i>schārste</i> .
Щ щ	sh-tcha,	(a combination of ш and ч) ex. щѳдрѳстѳ, bounty, <i>sh-tchédroste</i> .
ъ	yerr,	used at the end of words terminating in a consonant, to which it gives a hard sound, ex. сшѳль, a table, <i>stoll</i> .

ы	uē,	guttural, ex. рыба, a fish, <i>ruēba</i> .
ь	yāre,	used at the end of words terminating in a consonant, to which it gives a soft sound, nearly corresponding to the English e mute, ex. радость, joy, <i>radoste</i> .
Ѣ ѣ	yā,	рѣка, a river, <i>rāyka</i> .
Э э	ē,	экономъ, a land-steward, <i>ékōnom</i> .
Ю ю	you,	юноша, a youth, <i>younosha</i> .
Я я	ya,	ярость, fury, <i>yaroste</i> .
Ѧ ѧ	fā,	арифметика, arithmetic, <i>arēf-métēka</i> .

Most of the above letters invariably retain their proper sound, the following however are subject to slight variations.

Г, gā.

§ 2. In some instances bears the sound of a strongly aspirated h: герой, a hero, *héroy*; генераль, a general, *héneral*; Господь, Lord, Hospod, and in the terminations of adjectives and pronouns, in the genitive case, may be pronounced either as v or. h, eró, yāho or yāvo; что новаго? what news, *tchtō nō-vahō*, or *nōvavō*?

Е, ā.

§ 3. At the commencement of words bears

\* \*

the sound of *yā*, ex: *ѣсть*, it is, *yasté*; *едва*, scarcely, *yādvā*. When it precedes two consonants, or a consonant followed by the hard sign, *ѣ*, it generally bears the sound of *yeo*, as in *yeoman*, the accent-falling upon *o*, ex. *медъ*, honey, *mēodd*; *лень*, flax, *lēonn*; *орѣлъ*, an eagle, *oreoll*.

Ѣ, *yā*.

§ 4. Is pronounced like *yā* at the commencement of a word, and like *ā* in the middle or at the end, ex. *ѣхать*, to ride, *yāchat*; *лѣность*, idleness, *lānoste*; *на столѣ*, on the table, *na stollāy*.

§ 5. There are eleven vowels in the Russian alphabet, which are divided into hard and soft.

hard. *а, о, у, ы*.

soft. *я, е, ю, и, і, э, ѣ*.

In the combination of vowels with consonants they are subject to the following variations:

the letter *ы* following *г, к, х, ж, ч, ш* or *щ* changes into *и*

— — — *я* — — — *г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ, or ц* — *а*

— — — *ю* — — — *г, к, х, ж, ч, ш, щ, or ц* — *у*

— — — *о* — — — *ж, ч, ш, щ, or ц* — *е*

— — — *е* — — — *г, к, х,* — *о*

— — — *и* before another vowel. — *і*

The only diphthongs in the Russian Language



are those formed by the combination of *н* with the other vowels: *аѣ, еѣ, іѣ, оѣ, уѣ, ыѣ, яѣ*. When *н* occurs without the *ѣ* it must be pronounced separately from the vowel, which precedes it, ex. *вои́нъ*, a warrior, *во-еен*. Whenever two vowels occur together in a word, (excepting the above-mentioned diphthongs) each bears its full and separate sound, ex. *вообра́женіе*, imagination, *во-об-ра-жа-не-а*.

§ 6. The 21 Consonants of the Russian alphabet are divided according to the organ, which principally contributes to their pronunciation into,

	hard	soft	hard	soft	
labials	п	б	ф	в	invariable
dentals	п (Ѳ)	д	с	з	ц, variable
palatals	ш	ж	ч		щ, invariable
gutturals	к	г	х		variable

The remaining four consonants: *л, м, н, р*, are neither hard, nor soft, and are called liquids.

In the modifications of the variable parts of speech, in compound substantives and derivatives, the variable consonants are frequently

changed into their corresponding palatals, hard into hard, and soft into soft.

The soft consonants *з*, *д*, and *з*, change into the soft palatal *ж*, ex. Богъ, God, божескій, divine; видѣшь, to see, вижу, I see; Князь, prince, княжескій, princely.

The hard Consonants, *к*, *т*, and *ц* change into the hard palatal *ч*, ex. скака́тъ, to jump. скачу, I jump; плащѣтъ, to pay, плачу, I pay.

The hard consonants *с* and *х* change into the hard palatal *ш*, ex. паха́тъ, to plough, пашу, I plough; проси́тъ, to ask, прошу, I ask.

*Ст* and *т* change into *щ*, ex. свиста́тъ to whistle свищу, I whistle; свято́й, holy, священной, sacred.

A knowledge of the above rules will greatly facilitate the acquisition of the Language and explain its apparent irregularities.

~~~~~

## EXERCISE ON THE PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS.

### *Exer. I.*

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| день (déne) day.        | громъ, (gromm) thunder. |
| свѣтъ, (svāitt) light.  |                         |
| храмъ (chram) a temple. | дождь, (dojd) rain.     |
| снѣгъ, (snāygg) snow.   | пыль, (puēl) dust.      |
| часъ, (tchass) an hour. | хлѣбъ, (chläyb) bread.  |
| ночь, (notch) night.    | водá, (voda) water.     |
|                         | рука, (rooka) a hand.   |

|                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| земля, (zemlia) the         | корова, (kōrōva) a cow.   |
| earth.                      | комната, (komnata) a      |
| утро, (ootrō) the mor-      | room.                     |
| ning.                       | дѣвица, (dāyvēētsa) a     |
| вѣчеръ, (vāchér) the        | girl.                     |
| evening.                    | жѣнщина, (jénshtchēē-     |
| нога, (nōga) a foot.        | na) a woman.              |
| лицѣ, (lēetsō) the face.    | бѣзвѣтріе, (bāzvāytrēa)   |
| городъ, (gōrod) a town.     | a calm                    |
| чайникъ, (tchainick) a      | гостинница, (gostēn-      |
| tea-pot. V. § 5.            | nētsa) a tavern.          |
| войско, (voiskō) an         | строеніе, (strō-ānēā) a   |
| army.                       | building.                 |
| головá, (golōva) the        | селеніе, (sālānēā) a vil- |
| head.                       | lage.                     |
| улица, (oolēētsa) a street. | мостовая, (mostōvaya)     |
| яблоко, (yabloko) an        | pavement.                 |
| apple.                      | чернильница, (tcher-      |
| дорога, (dōrōga) a road.    | nēlnētsa) an ink-stand.   |
| каре́та, (karéttā) a car-   | животное, (jēvotnō-ā)     |
| riage.                      | скотоводство, (skotō-     |
| шелѣга, (télāyga) a cart.   | vodstvō) breeding         |
| юноша, (younōsha)           | of cattle.                |
| a youth.                    | тщеславіе, (tshichāsla-   |
| госуда́рь, (gossoodar) sir. | vēā) vanity.              |
| господинъ, (gospōdin)       | хлѣбопашество, (chlāy-    |
| master.                     | bōrashéstvō) agricul-     |
| исти́на, (ēstēenna)         | ture.                     |
| truth.                      | мореплаваніе, (mōrā-      |

|                          |                      |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| plavanēā) navigation.    | народонаселѣніе (na- |
| уединѣніе, (oo-ādēnā-    | rōdōnasālānēā) popu- |
| nēā) solitude.           | lation.              |
| мѣстоположеніе, (may-    |                      |
| stōpolōjānēā) situation. |                      |

*Exer 2.*

Дорóга, ошъ Дѹвра  
до Лондона подобна  
большой улицѣ много-  
люднаго гóрода.

The road from Do-  
ver to London is like  
the high street of a  
populous city.

Что эжели бы я прѣ-  
мо изъ Россіи прѣхалъ  
въ Англію, не видѣвъ  
ни Эльбскихъ, ни Рейн-  
скихъ, ни Сѣнскихъ бе-  
регóвъ, не бывъ ни въ  
Германіи, ни въ Швей-  
царіи, ни во Франціи?  
Думаю, что картина  
Англіи еще болѣе по-  
разилабъ мой чувствъ;  
она была бы для меня  
новѣе.

What if I had come  
straight from Russia to  
England, and had not  
seen the banks of the  
Elb, the Rhine or the  
Seine; had neither been  
in Germany, Switzer-  
land nor France! I think  
the picture of England  
would have astonished  
me still more; its no-  
velty would have been  
still greater.

Какóе многóлюдст-  
во! какáя дѣятель-  
ность! и пришóмъ ка-

What populousness!  
what activity and what  
order! Every thing pre-

кой порядокъ! Все presents an appearance of  
представляетъ видъ content; not profusion,  
довольства; хотѣ не but abundance. From  
рѣскоши, но избытія. Dover to London not  
Ни одинъ предметъ one object reminded  
ошъ Дувра до Лондо- me of human misery.  
на не напомнилъ мнѣ  
о бѣдѣности человѣче-  
ской.

*Karamzin.*

*Letters of a Russian  
traveller.*

*Карамзинъ.*

*Изъ писемъ Русскаго путеше-  
ственника.*

## P A R T II.

### E T Y M O L O G Y.

Etymology properly signifies the derivation of words; but its meaning has been extended by Grammarians to their properties and modifications, in which more extensive sense it is here used.

*Parts of speech.*

§ 7. All the words of the Russian Language are divided into ten classes, or parts of speech.

- |                                       |                                |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Substantives, Имя существительное. | 6. Participles, Причастіе.     |
| 2. Adjectives, имя прилагательное.    | 7. Adverbs, Нарѣчіе.           |
| 3. Numerals, Имя числительное.        | 8. Prepositions, Предлогъ.     |
| 4. Pronouns, мѣстоимѣніе.             | 9. Conjunctions, Союзъ.        |
| 5. Verbs, глаголъ.                    | 10. Interjections, Междумѣніе. |

The first six parts of speech are called variable, their terminations being subject to changes; the four last are invariable, excepting the adverb, which has degrees of comparison like the adjective.

Rem. There are no articles in the Russian Language.

## CHAPTER I.

### SUBSTANTIVES.

#### SECTION I.

##### GENERAL REMARKS.

§ 8. Substantives in the Russian Language are subject to modifications according to their number, gender and case.

*Number.* There are two numbers, the singular and the plural.

*Gender.* The masculine and feminine genders of substantives are founded on the distinction of the two sexes, and properly can only find place in the names of living creatures; all other substantives ought to belong to the neuter gender; but in all the European Languages, except the English, inanimate objects are also ranked under the distinction of masculine and feminine. In the Russian Language there are four genders: the masculine, feminine, neuter and common. The last includes such names as may be applied alike to either sex, *ex. пьяница*, a drunkard, *ханжа*, a bigot &c.

*Case.* The declension of substantives by Cases is nothing but an expression of the relation, which one object bears to another, marked by some variation of the final letters of the word itself.

§ 9. There are six cases in the Russian Language, which are called,

- |                                         |                                        |
|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. the Nominative, именительный падежъ. | 4. the Accusative, винительный падежъ. |
| 2. the Genitive, родительный.           | 5. the Instrumental, творительный.     |
| 3. the Dative, дательный.               | 6. the Prepositional, предложный.      |

*Rem.* The vocative case is omitted because it is like the nominative.

§ 10. The accusative singular of mas. substantives is like the genitive, when the substantive denotes an animate object, and like the nominative, when an inanimate. The same rule applies to the accusative case of both masculine and feminine substantives in the plural number.

§ 11. The prepositional case is only employed after the following prepositions :

|                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>о , обѣ , of.</i> | <i>при , by (near).</i> |
| <i>во , въ , in.</i> | <i>по , after.</i>      |
| <i>на , on.</i>      |                         |

§ 12. Russian substantives have eight terminations: а, е, ѣ, о, ъ, ь, я, and мя, by which final letters the gender is determined.

Those ending in *ъ* and *ѣ* are masculine \*

Those ending in *а*, *я*, *ь*, are feminine

Those ending in *о*, *е*, and *мя*, are neuter.



## S E C T. II.

### DECLENSION OF MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES.

Including the terminations *ъ* and *ѣ*.

#### I. DECLENSION OF THE MAS TERMINATION *ъ*.

*S i n g.*

*Animate.*

*Inanimate.*

Nom. *воин-ъ*, a warrior. *стол-ъ*, a table.

Gen. *воин-а* of a warrior. *стол-а*, of — — — —

---

\* The exceptions are noticed in each declension.



|                                                       |                       |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Dat. во́ин-у, to a warrior.                           | стол-у́, to — — — —   |
| Acc. во́ин-а, a warrior.                              | столъ. — — — —        |
| Ins. во́ин-омъ, by or<br>with a warrior.              | стол-омъ, by or with. |
| Prep. о во́ин-ѣ, * of or<br>about a warrior, V. § 11. | о стол-ѣ, of — — —    |

*Plu.*

|                                |                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Nom. во́ин-ы, warriors.        | стол-ы́, tables.      |
| Gen. во́ин-овъ, of — —         | стол-овъ, of — — —    |
| Dat. во́ин-амъ, to — —         | стол-амъ, to — — —    |
| Acc. во́ин-овъ, — — —          | стол-ы́, — — — —      |
| Ins. во́ин-ами, by or<br>with. | стол-ами, by or with. |
| Prepo во́ин-ахъ, of.           | о стол-ахъ, of — — —  |

§ 13. Substantives ending in *гъ, жъ, къ, хъ, зъ, шъ*, and *щъ* form the nom. plu. by changing the *з* of the sing. into *и*, instead of *ы*, ех. недѹгъ, a disease, недѹги; ножъ, a knife, ножи; полкъ, a regiment, полки; духъ, a spirit, дѹхи; мечъ, a sword, мечи; ершъ, a stone-perch, ерши; лещъ, fallow, лещи. V. § 5.

§ 14. Substantives ending in *ецъ, екъ*, and *окъ*, preceded by a consonant, retrench *е* or

---

\* The prepositional case has no signification without a preposition; о, of, is therefore affixed as being most commonly used with it, but въ, in; на, on; при, at or by, no after, are also employed.

o in the oblique cases, ex. отѣць, a father, gen. отца́, pl. отцы́, отцевъ etc. the following however are exceptions to this rule :

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| кузнѣць, a black-smith. | бокъ, a side.            |
| жрецъ, a priest.        | бѣглець, a deserter.     |
| порѣкъ, vice.           | жнецъ, a reaper.         |
| рокъ, fate.             | льстець, a flatterer.    |
| уро́къ, a lesson.       | мудре́ць, a philosopher. |
| о́прокъ, a youth.       | подле́ць, a rascal.      |
| игро́къ, a gambler.     | пришле́ць, a stranger.   |
| черне́ць, a monk.       | чте́ць, a reader.        |
| пото́къ, a stream.      | сро́къ, a term.          |
| ходо́къ, a pedestrian.  | ѣздо́къ, a rider.        |

§ 15. Substantives ending in *екъ* and *ецъ*, preceded by a vowel, change *e* into *ѣ* in the oblique cases, ex.

раѣ́къ, paradise (the highest seats in the theatre) райка́ etc.

боѣ́ць, a wrestler, бойца́, бойцу́ etc.

But when *екъ*, or *ецъ* is preceded by *л*, *e* is changed into *ь*, ex. кулѣ́къ, a sack, кулька́.

спрълѣ́ць, an archer, спръльца́ etc.

§ 16. The names of nations and conditions, ending in *инъ*, are declined irregularly in the plur: number. V. § 58.

§ 17. The following substantives end in *а*, instead of *и* in the nom. plu. and the accent

falls upon the last syllable, to distinguish the nom plu. from the gen. sing.

|                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| бѣрегъ, a coast.    | берегá, coasts.   |
| бокъ, a side.       | бока́, sides.     |
| городъ, a city.     | городá, cities.   |
| гóлосъ, a voice.    | голосá, voices.   |
| кóлоколъ, a bell.   | колоколá, bells.  |
| лугъ, a meadow.     | лугá, meadows.    |
| лѣсъ, a wood.       | лѣсá, woods.      |
| мѣхъ, a fur.        | мѣхá, furs.       |
| óстровъ, an island. | Островá, islands. |
| рогъ, a horn.       | рога́, horns.     |
| рукáвъ, a sleeve.   | рукавá, sleeves.  |
| снѣгъ, snow.        | снѣгá, snows.     |
| стругъ, a plane.    | стругá, planes.   |

§ 18. The following substantives are irregular in the nom. gen. and dat. plu. having in these cases the terminations *ья*, *-ьевъ* and *ьямъ*, ex. братъ, brother, nom. plu., брáтья, gen. брaтьевъ, dat. брáтьямъ.

|                  |              |
|------------------|--------------|
| брусъ, a rafter. | брусья, etc. |
| лоскутъ, a rag.  | лоскутья.    |
| мужъ, a husband. | мужья.       |
| стулъ, a chair.  | спулья.      |
| колъ, a pile.    | колья.       |
| лубъ, bark.      | лубья.       |
| листъ, a leaf.   | лйстья.      |
| прушь, a rod.    | прушья.      |

§ 19. The following substantives are irregular in the cases marked :

Богъ, God, vocative case, Бóже !

Христóсъ, Christ, gen. Христá voc. Христé !

господи́нь, master, nom. plu. господа́ gen. госпóдь.

другъ, a friend, nom. plu. друзья́, gen. друзéй.

глазъ, an eye, nom. plu. глазá, gen. глазъ.

сынъ, son, nom. plu. сыновья́, gen. сыновéй.

хозяинъ, host, nom. plu. хозяева, gen. хозяевъ.

шүринъ, brother-in-law, nom. plu. шүрья́, gen. шүрьевъ.



## THEME I.

### ON THE MAS. TERMINATION Ъ.

God is the creator *of the world*. The soul *of man* is immortal. Reason was given *to man* to control his passions. Happy is that youth,

---

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| God, Богъ.              | reason, разумъ.         |
| is, есть.               | was given, данъ.        |
| the creator, создáтель. | to control, для обуз-   |
| the world, мíръ.        | дáнiя.                  |
| the soul, душá.         | his passions, страстéй. |
| man, человѣкъ.          | happy is, счáсливъ.     |
| is immortal, безсмёрт-  | that youth, шóшь юно-   |
| на.                     | ша.                     |

who has found a true friend. Drunkenness impairs the understanding. Iron rubbed with the magnet always points to the North. Theology is a science, which treats of God. The peasant speaks of the plough and of sowing. Petersburg is one of the finest towns in Europe; in this

|                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| who , который.             | of, o, gov. the prep. case. |
| has found , нашёлъ . *     | the peasant , поселя-       |
| a true , вѣрнаго.          | нинъ.                       |
| friend , другъ. V. § 10.   | speaks , говоритъ.          |
| drunkenness , пьян-        | of, o, gov. the prep. case. |
| ство.                      | plough , плугъ.             |
| impairs , ослабляетъ.      | and , и.                    |
| the understanding , раз-   | sowing , посѣвъ.            |
| сѣдокъ.                    | Sj. Petersburg , С. Пе-     |
| iron , желѣзо.             | тербургъ.                   |
| rubbed , нашёршое.         | one , одинъ.                |
| the magnet , магнитъ.      | of , изъ, gov. the gen-     |
| always , всегда.           | case.                       |
| points , показываетъ .     | the finest , красивѣй-      |
| to the north , на сѣверъ.  | шихъ.                       |
| Theology , Богословія.     | town , городъ.              |
| is a science , есть наука. | in Europe , въ Европѣ.      |
| which treats , которая     | in this , въ семъ, gov. the |
| разсуждаетъ.               | prep.                       |

\* All active verbs govern the accusative case.

*City* there are many magnificent *houses*. Experience is the teacher *of fools*. Curiosity attracts the human mind to new *objects*. Friendship is the mutual attraction of virtuous minds; wicked people have their *accomplices* of crime, libertines their *companions* of licentiousness, misers their *associates* of avarice,

|                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| city , <i>городъ</i> .             | attraction , влечѣніе.         |
| there are , <i>есть</i> .          | of virtuous minds, доб-        |
| many , <i>много</i> .              | родѣтельныхъ                   |
| magnificent , <i>велико-</i>       | сердѣць.                       |
| <i>лѣнныхъ</i> .                   | wicked people , <i>люди</i>    |
| house , <i>домъ</i> .              | <i>злые</i> .                  |
| experience , <i>опытъ</i> .        | have , <i>имѣють</i> .         |
| the teacher , <i>настав-</i>       | (their, not expressed)         |
| <i>никъ</i> .                      | accomplice, <i>сообщникъ</i> . |
| a fool , <i>глупецъ</i> . V. § 14. | V. § 13.                       |
| curiosity , <i>любопыт-</i>        | crime , <i>порокъ</i> .        |
| <i>ство</i> .                      | libertines, <i>распущные</i> . |
| attracts , <i>влечѣтъ</i> .        | companion , <i>соудѣст-</i>    |
| the mind , <i>разумъ</i> .         | <i>никъ</i> .                  |
| human , <i>человѣческій</i> .      | licentiousness , <i>раз-</i>   |
| to , <i>къ</i> , gov. the dat.     | <i>вратъ</i> .                 |
| new , <i>новымъ</i> .              | miser , <i>сребролюбѣць</i> .  |
| object , <i>предмѣтъ</i> .         | V. § 14.                       |
| friendship , <i>дружба</i> .       | associates, <i>товарищѣй</i> . |
| the mutual , <i>взаимное</i> .     | of avarice , <i>корысти</i> .  |

the vain their *partners* of ambition, the virtuous alone have *friends*. In Spring the earth is adorned *with flowers*. Jurisprudence treats of the laws. Luxury reigns *in cities* and simplicity in villages.

---

|                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| the vain, суетные.            | jurisprudence, правосудіе. |
| partners, состязатели.        | вѣдѣніе.                   |
| of ambition, тщеславія.       | treats, разсуждае.         |
| alone, одинъ только.          | of, о, gov. the prep.      |
| the virtuous, добродѣтельные. | the law, законъ.           |
| have, имѣю.                   | in, въ, gov. the prep.     |
| friend, другъ, V. § 19.       | city, городъ.              |
| in spring, весною.            | reigns, царствуетъ,        |
| the earth, земля.             | or обитаетъ.               |
| is adorned, украшаетъ.        | luxury, роскошь.           |
| flower, цвѣтъ.                | and, а.                    |
|                               | in villages, въ сѣлахъ.    |
|                               | simplicity, простота.      |

---

## II. DECLENSION OF THE MAS. TERMINATION *й*.

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. змѣ-й, a serpent.    | обыча-й, a custom.     |
| Gen. змѣ-я of — — —       | обыча-я, of — — —      |
| Dat. змѣ-ю, to — — —      | обыча-ю, to — — —      |
| Accu. змѣ-я. — — —        | обыча-й. — — —         |
| Ins. змѣ-емъ, by or with. | обыча-емъ, by or with. |
| Prep. о змѣ-ѣ, of — —     | о обычѣ-ѣ, of — — —    |

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. змѣ-и, serpents.     | обыча-и, customs.      |
| Gen. змѣ-евъ, of — —      | обыча-евъ, of — — —    |
| Dat. змѣ-ямъ, to — —      | обыча-ямъ, to — — —    |
| Acc. змѣ-евъ. — — —       | обыча-и, — — — —       |
| Ins. змѣ-ями, by or with. | обыча-ями, by or with. |
| Преп. о змѣ-яхъ, of —     | о обыча-яхъ, of — —    |

§ 20. The names of all animated objects, ending in *й*, are declined as the first example, змѣй; and of inanimate, as the second, обычай.

§ 21. Some Nouns, terminating in *ей*, change *e* into *ь* in the oblique cases ex. соловѣй, a nightingale, соловья, соловью etc, муравѣй, an ant, муравья, муравью etc.; улей, a bee-hive, улья, улью etc.

§ 22. Monosyllabic nouns of inanimate objects, ending in *й*, which denote quantity, change this final in the genitive and prepositional cases singular into *ю*, ex. рой, a swarm, рою; чай, tea, чаю; край, a border, краю, etc.

§ 23. Some nouns ending in *й* preceded by *е* are declined as adjectives (V. declension of adjectives) портной, a tailor, портнаго, портному etc.





## T H E M E II.

## O N T H E M A S T E R M I N A T I O N Ѣ.

Magnanimity is the characteristic of a true hero. Let us go to the rivulet to bathe. The gardener made a hive, in which he keeps a whole swarm of bees. Themistocles was banished from his country by lot. Marriage was ordained in Paradise. In Africa there are venomous

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| magnanimity, велико-      | swarm, рой.            |
| дѹшіе.                    | of bees, пчель.        |
| the characteristic, свой- | Themistocles, Θεμισ-   |
| ство, (оплїчіе).          | стокль.                |
| of a true, ѣстиннаго.     | was banished, изгнанъ  |
| hero, герой.              | быль.                  |
| let us go, пойдѣмъ.       | lot, жребій.           |
| to, къ, gov. the dat.     | from his country, изъ  |
| the rivulet, ругей.       | опѣчества.             |
| to bathe, купаться.       | marriage, супружество. |
| the gardener, садов-      | was ordained, устанѡ-  |
| никъ.                     | влено было.            |
| made, построиль.          | paradise, рай.         |
| a hive, ѣлей.             | in, въ, gov. the prep. |
| in which, въ коѡоромъ.    | Africa, Африкъ.        |
| he keeps, содѣржишь.      | there are, водятся.    |
| a whole, цѣлый.           | venomous, ядовитый.    |

*serpents*. Never neglect any fit *opportunities* of acquiring knowledge. Death is terrible to the wicked. The ancient Egyptians worshipped *serpents*. The rain has penetrated the upper *strata* of the earth. The Tempean valley is watered by numerous *rivulets*. The fame of Alexander the Great has resounded in all *parts* of the world.

---

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| serpent, змѣй.          | has penetrated, напи-      |
| never neglect, не про-  | шаль.                      |
| пускай.                 | the upper, верхніе.        |
| any fit, удобныхъ       | stratum, слой.             |
| opportunity, случай.    | of the earth, земли.       |
| of acquiring, къ приоб- | the Tempean valley,        |
| рѣшенію.                | Темпѣйская долина.         |
| knowledge, познаній.    | is watered, орошаема.      |
| death, смерть.          | by numerous, многими.      |
| is terrible, ужасна.    | the fame, слава.           |
| a wicked man, злодѣй.   | Alexander, Алексѣандръ.    |
| the ancient, древніе.   | the Great, великаго.       |
| an Egyptian, Египтя-    | has resounded, гремѣла.    |
| нинъ, V. § 58.          | in all, во всѣхъ, гов. the |
| worshipped, обожали.    | Прер.                      |
| the rain, дождь.        | part, край.                |
|                         | of the world, вселенной.   |

---

## S E C T III.

DECLENSION OF FEMININE SUBSTANTIVES.  
INCLUDING THE TERMINATIONS *a*, *a* AND *ъ*.

I. Declension of the feminine termination *a*.*S i n g.*

|                            |                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| Nom. корóв-а, a 'cow.      | звѣзд-á, a star.      |
| Gen. корóв-ы, of—          | звѣзд-ы, of—          |
| Dat. корóв-ѣ, to —         | звѣзд-ѣ, to —         |
| Acc. корóв-у, —            | звѣзд-у, —            |
| Ins. корóв-ою, by or with. | звѣзд-ою, by or with. |
| Prep. о корóв-ѣ, of—       | о звѣзд-ѣ, of —       |

*P l u.*

|                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. корóв-ы, cows.         | звѣзд-ы, stars.        |
| Gen. корóв-ъ, of—           | звѣзд-ъ, of —          |
| Dat. корóв-амъ, to —        | звѣзд-амъ, to—         |
| Acc. корóв-ъ, —             | звѣзд-ы. —             |
| Ins. корóв-ами, by or with. | звѣзд-ами, by or with. |
| Prep. о корóв-ахъ, of.      | о звѣзд-ахъ, of.       |

§ 24. By the above examples it will be seen, that the only difference in the declension of the animate and inanimate nouns ending in *a* is, that the acc. plu. of animated objects is like the genitive, and the acc. plu. of inanimate objects is like the nom.

§ 25. All nouns terminating in *га, жа, ка, ха, та, ша* and *ща*, end in the gen. sing. and nom. plu. in *к* instead of *ь*. V. § 5.

§ 26. Those, which end in *жа, та, ша*, or *ща*, form the ins. sing. by the termination *ею* instead of *ою*, (V. § 5.) *ех. стѹжа*, severe cold, *стѹжею*; *Царѣца*, a queen, *Царѣцею*; *штѹча*, a dark cloud, *штѹчею*; *душá*, the soul, *душѣю*; *роща*, a grove, *рощею*.

§ 27. Those, which end in *жжа, кша, рта, рша* and *ща*, form the gen. plu. by the termination *ей*, *ех. вѹжжа*, a rein, *вожжѣй*; *вѣкша*, a squirrel, *вѣкшей*; *парчá*, gold-cloth, *парчѣй*; *вершá*, a basket, (used in catching fish) *вершей*; *роща*, a grove, *рощей*.

§ 28. Those ending in *ка*, preceded by *л, т, ш*, take *е* in the gen. plu. *ех. лѹжка*, a spoon, *лѹжекъ*; *бѹчка*, a cask, *бѹчекъ*; *пѹшка*, a cannon, *пѹшекъ*. But when the termination *ка* is preceded by any other Consonant, *о* is substituted in the place of *е*, *ех*

*Nom. sign.*

*Gen plu.*

*штрѹбка*, a pipe.

*штрѹбокъ.*

*дѣвка*, a girl.

*дѣвокъ.*

*ска́зка*, a tale.

*ска́зокъ.*

*пáлка*, a stick.

*пáлокъ.*

*я́мка*, a ditch.

*я́мокъ.*

|                  |          |
|------------------|----------|
| ша́пка, a cap.   | ша́покъ. |
| ба́рка, a barge. | ба́рокъ. |
| доска́, a board. | досо́къ. |
| у́шка, a duck.   | у́шокъ.  |

§ 29. When the termination *ка* is preceded by *ь* or *й*, the gen. plu. is formed by the ejection of those letters, and the insertion of *е* in their place, *ex.*

|                         |          |
|-------------------------|----------|
| лю́лька, a cradle.      | лю́лекъ. |
| ня́нька, a nurse.       | ня́некъ. |
| ба́йка, baize.          | ба́екъ.  |
| ша́йка, a band (troop). | ша́екъ.  |

§ 30. The nouns, which end in *ба, га, ма, на, ра*, and *ца*, preceded by *й, ь*, or any consonant except the gutturals *г, к* and *х*, take *е*, in the gen. plu. *ex.*

|                        |          |
|------------------------|----------|
| судьба́, fate.         | суде́бъ. |
| се́рга, an ear - ring. | се́регъ. |
| шю́рьма́, a prison.    | шюре́мъ. |
| кайма́, a selvage.     | кае́мъ.  |

If the preceding consonant be one of the gutturals *г, к*, or *х*, the gen. plu. takes *о* instead of *е*, *ex.*

|                  |          |
|------------------|----------|
| игла́, a needle. | иго́ль.  |
| ку́кла, a doll.  | куко́ль. |

§ 31. Those substantives ending in *а*, which by their signification belong to the male sex, as, *вельмо́жа, a Lord; воево́да, a military*

chief, etc. are of the mas gen. but declined as the examples given for the fem.



### THEME III.

#### ON THE FEM. TERMINATION *a*.

There is no *rose* without thorns. Who does not admire the works of *Nature*? The Mont-Rosa is scarcely inferior in height to the Mont-banc. Labour preserves the strength and health. The ancient Romans despised ~~indulgence~~ <sup>riches</sup> and luxury. The Volga

---

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| there is no, нѣтъ. *     | Mont-blanc, Мон-блѣнь. |
| rose, рѳза.              | in, въ, gov. the prep. |
| without, безъ, gov. the  | height, вышинѣ.        |
| gen.                     | labour, рабѳща.        |
| thorn, шипъ.             | preserves, укрѣпляетъ. |
| who does not, кто не.    | the strength, сѣла.    |
| admire, удивляется.      | health, здорѳвѣ.       |
| the works, дѣйствѣямъ.   | the ancient, дрѣвнѣ.   |
| nature, природѣ.         | Roman, Римлянинъ,      |
| the Mont-Rosa, горѣ Розѣ | V. § 58.               |
| is scarcely, едвѣ ли.    | despised, презирѣли.   |
| inferior, уступѣетъ      | riches, нѣга.          |
| gov. the dat.            | luxury, рѳскошь.       |
| mountain, горѣ.          | the Volga, Волга.      |

---

\* Negations govern the gen. case.

abounds *with fish*. Every thing in *Nature* proclaims the wisdom of the Creator. The *Alpian mountains* are the highest in Europe. The *Egyptians* believed in the transmigration of *souls*. Before the invention of the compass, mariners steered their course *by the stars*. Hope supports *the minds* of the unfortunate. Switzerland

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| abounds, изобилуетъ,   | in the transmigration   |
| gov. the ins.          | переселѣнію             |
| fish, рыба.            | soul, душа.             |
| every thing, все.      | before the invention,   |
| in, въ, gov. the prep. | до изобрѣшенія.         |
| nature, природа.       | the compass, компасъ.   |
| proclaims, возвѣщаетъ. | mariner, мореходецъ.    |
| the wisdom, премуд-    | steered, направляя.     |
| рость.                 | their course, своё пла- |
| the Creator, Творецъ.  | ваніе.                  |
| the Alpian, Алпійскія. | by, по, gov. the dat.   |
| mountain, гора.        | star, звезда.           |
| are, сушь.             | hope, надежда.          |
| the highest, высочай-  | supports, питаетъ.      |
| шія.                   | the mind, душа.         |
| Europe, Европа.        | of the unfortunate, не- |
| an Egyptian, Египтя-   | счастливыхъ.            |
| нинъ.                  | Switzerland, Швейцарія. |
| believed, вѣрили.      |                         |

★ ★

abounds *in mountains and valleys*. At the Olympic *games* the Greeks crowned the conquerors with wreaths of laurel.

---

|                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| abounds, избылуетъ. | the Greeks, Грѣки.        |
| valley, доли́на.    | crowned, вѣнча́ли.        |
| at the Olympic, при | the conquerors, побѣди-   |
| Олимпійскихъ, gov.  | шелей.                    |
| the prep.           | with laurel, лавровыми.   |
| game, игра́.        | wreath, вѣно́къ, V. § 14. |



## II. DECLENSION OF THE FEMININE TERMINATION

*Я* PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

*S i n g.*

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Nom. Богѣн-я, a God-  | Пул-я, a bullet.      |
| dess.                 |                       |
| Gen. богѣн-и, of—     | пул-и, of — — — —     |
| Dat. богѣн-ѣ, to —    | пул-ѣ, to — — — —     |
| Acc. богѣн-ю. — —     | пул-ю. — — — —        |
| Ins. богѣн-ею, by or  | пул-ею, by or with. — |
| with.                 |                       |
| Прер. о богѣн-ѣ, of — | о пул-ѣ, of — — — —   |

*P l u.*

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Nom. богѣн-и Goddess- | пул-и, bullets.       |
| ses.                  |                       |
| Gen. богѣн-ѣ, of —    | пул-ѣ, or пул-ей, of. |
| Dat. богѣн-ямъ, to —  | пул-ямъ, to — — — —   |



Асс. богѣн-ѣ. — — — пѣл-и. — — — — —

Ins. богѣн-ями, by or пѣл-ями, by or with.  
with.

Преп. о богѣн-яхъ, of. о пѣл-яхъ, of — — —

§ 32. The substantives ending in *лѣ* and *нѣ*, preceded by *ѣ*, *й* or any consonant form the gen. plu. by the insertion of *е* between the two consonants, or changing *ѣ* and *й* into that letter, *ех*.

|                     |            |
|---------------------|------------|
| землѣ, the earth.   | земель.    |
| башнѣ, a tower.     | башень.    |
| водопойнѣ, a water- | водопоевъ. |
| trough.             |            |

§ 33. The substantives ending in *дѣ* and *рѣ*, terminate in the gen. plu. in *ей*, *ех*.

|                 |        |
|-----------------|--------|
| бурѣ, a storm.  | буреѣ. |
| зарѣ, the dawn. | зарей. |

Declension of the fem. termination *ѣ* preceded by a vowel.

*S i n g.*

|                           |                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| Nom. лѣлѣ-ѣ, a lily.      | ше-ѣ, the neck.      |
| Gen. лѣлѣ-и, of — —       | ше-и, of — — — — —   |
| Dat. лѣлѣ-и, to — —       | ше-ѣ, to — — — — —   |
| Асс. лѣлѣ-ю. — — —        | ше-ю. — — — — —      |
| Ins. лѣлѣ-ею, by or with. | ше-ею, by or with.   |
| Преп. о лѣлѣ-и, of —      | о ше-ѣ, of — — — — — |

*Р л и.*

|                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| Nom. лѣлі-и, lilies.  | ше-и, necks.        |
| Gen. лѣлі-й, of — —   | ше-й, of — — — —    |
| Dat. лѣлі-ямъ, to — — | ше-ямъ, to — — — —  |
| Acc. лѣлі-и. — — — —  | ше-и. — — — —       |
| Ins. лѣлі-ями, by or  | ше-ями, by or with. |
|                       | with.               |

Преп. о лѣлі-яхъ, of. о ше-яхъ, of — — —

The substantives ending in *и* are declined according to the first example, (лилія) and those ending in *я* preceded by any other vowel according to the second, (шея).

§ 34. Some substantives ending in *а*, as : вселенная, the universe, are declined as fem. adjectives.

§ 35. The following are of the mas. gender.

Дядя, uncle.

судья, a judge.

вишій, an orator.



## T H E M E IV.

### ON THE FEM. TERMINATION *я*.

Hospitality, which among the nations of

---

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| hospitality, странно- | among, у, gov. the gen. |
| пріймство.            | nation, народъ.         |
| which preceded, про-  | of antiquity, древнихъ. |
| истекавшее.           |                         |

antiquity, proceeded from pure humanity, is now founded on the advantages of trade. Soldiers should be blindly obedient to the will of their Commander. Franklin invented a means of averting lightning by a conductor. One moment rolls away after another, as wave after wave in the ocean of eternity. People accustomed to the luxuries of town find no pleasure in a village.

|                                              |                                           |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| from , изъ.                                  | lightning , мѳлнiя.                       |
| pure humanity , чiста-<br>го челоуѳколюбiя.  | by a conductor , громо-<br>вымъ ошвѳдомъ. |
| now , нынѳ.                                  | one moment , одно<br>мгновѳнiе.           |
| is founded , основы-<br>вается.              | rolls away , ушѳкаѳетъ.                   |
| on , на, gov. the prep.                      | after another , за дру-<br>гимъ.          |
| advantage , выгода.                          |                                           |
| trade , торгѳуя.                             | wave , струя.                             |
| a soldier , воиуѳ.                           | after , за, gov. the ins.                 |
| should , должуѳ.                             | the ocean , море.                         |
| blindly , слѳпо.                             | of eternity , вѳчности.                   |
| be obedient , повино-<br>ваться.             | people , люди.                            |
| will , воля.                                 | accustomed, привыкшiе                     |
| of their commander ,<br>своего предводителя. | to the luxuries , къ роскоши.             |
| Franklin , Франклинуѳ.                       | of town , городской.                      |
| invented , изобрѳлъ.                         | find no , не находятъ<br>никакого.        |
| a means , средство.                          | pleasure, удовольствiя.                   |
| of averting , ошвращать.                     | village , деревня.                        |

A military commander should preserve presence of mind amidst the whistling of balls and the thunder of cannon. The establishment of schools in the villages has contributed to the prosperity of Scotland. Africa includes many extensive deserts. Among the Russian poets Krilloff, Dmitrieff and Chemnitzer are celebrated for their

---

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| a military Commander,   | Africa, Африка.         |
| полковѣдецъ.            | includes, заключаесть   |
| should preserve, дол-   | въ себѣ.                |
| жень сохранятьъ.        | many, многія.           |
| presence of mind, при-  | extensive, простран-    |
| существо дѣла.          | ныя.                    |
| amidst, среди, gov. the | desert, пустыня.        |
| ball, пуля. (gen.       | among, изъ, gov. the    |
| the thunder, громъ.     | gen.                    |
| cannon, пушка.          | the Russian, Россійс-   |
| the establishment, у-   | кихъ.                   |
| чрежденіе.              | poet, стихотворецъ,     |
| school, школа.          | V. § 14.                |
| in, по, gov. the dat.   | Krilloff, Крыловъ.      |
| village, деревня.       | Dmitrieff, Дмистріевъ,  |
| has contributed, содѣй- | Chemnitzer, Хемни-      |
| ствовало.               | церь.                   |
| to the prosperity, къ   | are celebrated, просла- |
| благосостоянію.         | вились, gov. the ins.   |
| Scotland, Шотландія     | for their, своими.      |

*fables.* In different countries, different manners.

---

|                              |                           |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| fable, <i>бáсня.</i>         | country, <i>земля.</i>    |
| in different, <i>въ рáз-</i> | different, <i>рáзные.</i> |
| <i>ныхъ.</i>                 | manners, <i>обычаи.</i>   |

---

### III. DECLENSION OF THE FEM. TERMINATION Ъ.

#### *S i n g.*

|                                  |                       |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Nom. свекрѡв-ѣ, а mother-in-law. | Рáдосѣ-ѣ, joy.        |
| Gen. свекрѡв-и, of —             | рáдосѣ-и, of — — —    |
| Dat. свекрѡв-и, to —             | рáдосѣ-и, to — — —    |
| Acc. свекрѡв-ѣ. — — —            | рáдосѣ. — — — —       |
| Ins. свекрѡв-ю, by or with.      | рáдосѣ-ю, by or with. |
| Преп. о свекрѡв-и, of.           | о рáдосѣ-и, of — —    |

#### *P l u.*

|                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Nom. свекрѡв-и, mothers-in-law. | рáдосѣ-и, joys.         |
| Gen. свекрѡв-ей, of.            | рáдосѣ-ей, of — — —     |
| Dat. свекрѡв-ямъ, to.           | рáдосѣ-ямъ, to — — —    |
| Acc. свекрѡв-ей. — —            | рáдосѣ-и. — — — —       |
| Ins. свекрѡв-ями, by or with.   | рáдосѣ-ями, by or with. |
| Преп. о свекрѡв-яхъ. of.        | о рáдосѣ-яхъ, of — —    |

§ 36. Some of the substantives ending in ѣ, which have either *e* or *o* in the last syl-

table, eject these vowels in all the oblique cases except the ins. ex.

ложь, a falsehood, gen. лжи ins. лóжью  
любóвь, love. — — — — — любви — — — — —любóвию.

§ 37. When the final *ь* is preceded by one of the palatals *ж, з, ш, or щ*, *я* is changed in the plu. into *а*, in the dat. ins. and prep. cases, ex.

ночь, night, dat. pl. ночáмъ, ins. plu. ночáми, &c.

§ 38. The letter *ь*, is frequently retained in the ins. sing. instead of being changed into *и*, ex.  
лесть flattery, лéстью or лéстiю  
честь honour, чéстью.

§ 39. The words *мать*, mother, and *дочь*, daughter are augmented in the oblique cases by the syllable *ер*, ex.

мать, mother, gen. мáтери &c.



## THEME V.

### ON THE FEM. TERMINATION *ь*.

Health is the fruit of *temperance*. Childhood is the happiest period of *life*. Virtue

health, здорóвiе. the happiest, счастлй-

the fruit, плодъ вѣйшее.

temperance, умѣрен-

period, время.

ность.

life, жизнь.

childhood, младéнче-

virtue, добродѣтель.

ство.

is preferable to riches, friendship to flattery and utility to pleasure. An indolent man is a *burden* to himself. Liberality should be tempered by *prudence*. Asia was the *cradle* of the human race. If thou wouldst be virtuous, reflect often upon *death*. Justice is the first of *virtues*. It is dangerous to give ourselves

|                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| is preferable, предпо- | Asia, Азія.              |
| чтійшельна.            | was, была, gov. the ins. |
| riches, богатство.     | the cradle, колыбѣль.    |
| friendship, дружество. | race, родъ.              |
| flattery, лесть.       | human, человѣческаго.    |
| and utility, а польза. | if, ёстьли.              |
| pleasure, удоволь-     | thou wouldst, хочешь.    |
| ствіе.                 | be virtuous, быть до-    |
| a man, человекъ.       | бродѣтельнымъ.           |
| indolent, лѣнливый.    | reflect, размышляй.      |
| to himself, самъ себя. | often, часто.            |
| is, бываесть.          | upon, о, gov. the ins.   |
| въ, gov. the acc.      | death, смерть.           |
| burden, тѣгость.       | justice, правосудіе.     |
| liberality, щедрость.  | is, есть.                |
| should be, должна      | the first, первая.       |
| быть                   | of, изъ, gov. the gen.   |
| tempered, умѣряема.    | it is dangerous, опасно. |
| prudence, бережли-     | to give ourselves up,    |
| вость.                 | предаваясь.              |

up to unbounded *passions*. The contemplation of nature inspires grand *ideas*. Reason is very often obscured by the *passions*. There are some extraordinary geniuses, who have distinguished themselves in all *branches* of human knowledge.

---

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| to unbounded, неумѣ-   | extraordinary, необык- |
| реннымъ.               | новенные.              |
| passion, страсть.      | genius, умъ.           |
| the contemplation, со- | who have distinguish-  |
| зерцаніе.              | ed themselves, про-    |
| inspires, внушаетъ.    | славившіеся.           |
| grand, величествен-    |                        |
| ныя.                   | in all, во всѣхъ, gov. |
| idea, мысль.           | the prep.              |
| very often, часто.     | branch, отрасль.       |
| reason, разумъ.        | of human knowledge,    |
| is obscured, помра-    | человѣческихъ поз-     |
| чаешся.                | наній.                 |
| there are, есть.       |                        |

§ 40. Although ь be a fem. termination, the number of mas. Substantives ending in this sign is considerable. To the following list must be added all the nouns, which terminate in *тель*, excerpt, добродѣтель, virtue; обитель, abode; аршѣль, a company (of work-



men); and метель, a whirlwind (snow - storm) which are feminine.

List of words ending in *ъ*, which are of the masculine gender.

|                           |                                 |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Алтарь, an altar.         | Куль, a bag. (sack).            |
| Букварь, a spelling-book. | Лагерь, a camp.                 |
| Вихрь, a whirlwind.       | Лапоть, a sandal.               |
| Вопль, a groan.           | (made of the bark of the birch) |
| Гвоздь, a nail.           | Локоть, the elbow.              |
| Гребень, a comb.          | Миндаль, an almond.             |
| Груздь, a mushroom.       | Миткаль, muslin.                |
| Дёготь, tar.              | Монаштырь, a monastery.         |
| День, day.                | Нашатырь, sal ammoniac.         |
| Жёлудь, a gland.          | Огонь, fire.                    |
| Зверь, an animal.         | Пень, a trunk (of a tree).      |
| Инбирь, ginger.           | Перечень, recapitulation.       |
| Календарь, an almanack.   |                                 |
| Камень, a stone.          | Перстень, a ring.               |
| Кашель, a cough.          | Пламень, a flame.               |
| Кисель, jelly.            | Пузырь, a bladder.              |
| Козырь, a trump.          | Плётень, a hurdle.              |
| Конь, a courser.          | Путь, a way.                    |
| Корабль, a ship.          | Ревень, rhubarb.                |
| Корень, a root.           | Ремень, a strap.                |
| Косарь, a cutlass.        | Рубль, a rouble.                |
| Кремень, a flint.         | Руль, a rudder.                 |
| Крендель, a cake.         |                                 |

|                                 |                                          |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Сбѣпень, hydromel.              | Фонарь, a lantern.                       |
| Словарь, a dictionary.          | Хмѣль, hops.                             |
| Стѣбель, stubble.               | Хрусталь, chrystal.                      |
| Сухарь, a rusk.                 | Щавель, sorrel.                          |
| Уголь, coal.                    | Щебень, rubbish.                         |
| Угорь, an eel.                  | Якорь, an anchor.                        |
| Фишль, the wick of<br>a candle. | Янтарь, yellow amber.<br>Ячмень, barley. |

§ 41. The names of the months, which end in *ь* are also masculine, as well as the names of dignities, occupations &c. belonging exclusively to the male sex. as: Король, a King; вождь, a guide; учитель, a school-master &c.

Declension of substantives terminating in *ь*, which are of the masculine gender.

*S i n g.*

|                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Nom. Цар-ь, a King.          | корабл-ь, a ship.       |
| Gen. Цар-я of — — —          | корабл-я, of — — —      |
| Dat. Цар-ю, to — — —         | корабл-ю, to — — —      |
| Acc. Цар-я. — — —            | корабл-ь. — — —         |
| Ins. Цар-емъ, by or<br>with. | корабл-емъ, by or with. |
| Prep. о Цар-ѣ, of — —        | о корабл-ѣ, of — — —    |

*P l u.*

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Nom. Цар-и, Kings.   | корабл-и, ships.     |
| Gen. Цар-ей, of — —  | корабл-ей, of — — —  |
| Dat. Цар-ямъ, to — — | корабл-ямъ, to — — — |

Acc. Цар-ей. — — — корабл-й. — — — —

Ins. Цар-ями, by or корабл-ями, by or with.  
with.

Prep. о Цар-яхъ, of— о корабл-яхъ, of— —

## T H E M E VI.

ON THE SUBSTANTIVES ENDING IN Ъ, WHICH  
ARE MASCULINE.

Vain is the endeavour of an *author* to please the taste of all his *readers*. The scholar should be obedient to his *teacher*. The south of Russia produces in great abundance *barley*, buck-wheat, oats and every kind of grain.

---

|                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| vain, тщётное.         | to his, своему.          |
| endeavour, усиліе.     | teacher, учитель.        |
| author, сочинитель.    | the south of Russia,     |
| to please, угождашь,   | южная Россія.            |
| gov. the dat.          | produces, производишь    |
| taste, вкусъ.          | in great. въ великомъ.   |
| of all his, всѣхъ сво- | abundance, изобиліи.     |
| ихъ.                   | barley, ягмень.          |
| reader, читатель.      | buck-wheat, про́со.      |
| the scholar, ученикъ.  | oats, овёсъ.             |
| should, долженъ.       | everykind, всякагоро́да. |
| be obedient, повинно-  | grain, хлебныя распы-    |
| ва́шься, gov. the dat. | нія.                     |

Rurick was the *founder* of the Russian Empire. The *enemy* devastated all the towns and villages with *fire* and *sword*. Chancellor, an Englishman, having sailed (in a *ship*) to the shores of the White Sea established the first commercial intercourse with Russia. *Conquerors* overthrow in one year, what it required ages to establish. In England

---

|                                                                 |                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Rurick, Рюрикъ.                                                 | a ship, корабль.                   |
| was, былъ, gov. the ins.                                        | to, къ, gov. the dat.              |
| the founder, основатель.                                        | shore, берегъ.                     |
| <i>of the White Sea</i> <del>Бѣлаго моря</del> <sup>тель.</sup> | established, завелъ.               |
| of the Russian Empire,                                          | the first, первыя.                 |
| Россійскаго Государства.                                        | commercial, торговыя.              |
| the enemy, непріятель.                                          | intercourse, связь.                |
| devastated, опустошилъ.                                         | with Russia, съ Россією.           |
| all, всѣ.                                                       | Conqueror, завоеватель.            |
| town, городъ. V. § 17.                                          | in one year, въ одинъ.             |
| villages, села.                                                 | году.                              |
| fire, огонь.                                                    | overthrow, испровергающе.          |
| sword, мечъ.                                                    | what, то что.                      |
| an Englishman, Англичанинъ.                                     | required to establish, учреждается |
| Chancellor, Чанселоръ.                                          | gov. the inst.                     |
| having sailed, приѣхавъ.                                        | age, въкъ.                         |
| in, на, gov. the prep.                                          | England, Англія.                   |

there are many distinguished *writers*. Russian peasants wear *sandals*, made of the bark of the birch, instead of shoes. A child shews gratitude to its *parents* by obedience and respect. The Egyptians were the *teachers* of the Greeks in arts and sciences. In the middle ages, learning flourished only in the *monasteries*.

|                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| there are many, много    | obedience, покор-           |
| gov. the gen.            | носъ.                       |
| distinguished, отлич-    | <i>gratitude, Благо-дѣ-</i> |
| ныхъ.                    | respect, почтѣніе.          |
| Egyptian, Египтянинъ     |                             |
| writers, писатель.       | V. § 58.                    |
| Russian, Россійскіе.     | were, были, gov. the        |
| peasant, крестьянинъ     | Ins.                        |
| V. § 58.                 | teacher, учитель.           |
| wear, носятъ.            | a Greek, Грекъ.             |
| instead of shoes, вмѣ-   | in, въ, gov. the prep.      |
| сто обуви.               | science, наука.             |
| sandal, лапоть V § 36.   | arts, искусстваъ.           |
| made, плѣщенные.         | learning, ученость.         |
| of, изъ.                 | in the middle ages, въ      |
| the bark of the birch,   | срѣдніе вѣки.               |
| берёзовой коры.          | flourished, процвѣта-       |
| a child, дитя.           | ла.                         |
| shews, оказываетъ.       | only in, въ однихъ          |
| to its, своимъ, gov. the | только.                     |
| dat.                     | monastery, монастырь.       |
| parent, родитель.        |                             |

## S E C T IV.

## DECLENSION OF NEUTER SUBSTANTIVES.

INCLUDING THE TERMINATIONS *o*, *e*, AND *я*.

§ 42. The accusative case of all neuter substantives, both sing. and plu. is like the nominative.

I. DECLENSION OF THE NEUTER TERMINATION *o*.

| <i>S i n g.</i>                 | <i>P l u.</i>              |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Nom. зеркал-о, a looking-glass. | зеркал-а, looking-glasses. |
| Gen. зеркал-а, of —             | зеркал-ъ, of — — —         |
| Dat. зеркал-у, to —             | зеркал-амъ, to — — —       |
| Acc. зеркал-о. — — —            | зеркал-а, — — —            |
| Ins. зеркал-омъ, by or with.    | зеркал-ами                 |
| Prep. о зеркал-ѣ, of —          | о зеркал-ахъ, of — —       |

§ 43. Substantives ending in *o* preceded by two consonants, take the letter *e* or *o* between the two consonants in the gen. plu. ex.

|                 |         |
|-----------------|---------|
| ведро́, a pail. | ведѣрь, |
| пятно́, a spot. | пятень. |
| сукно́, cloth.  | суконь. |

*Exceptions.*

|                      |          |
|----------------------|----------|
| гнѣздо́, a nest.     | гнѣздъ.  |
| гору́ло, the throat. | горлъ.   |
| масло́, oil.         | маслъ.   |
| ремесло́, a trade.   | ремеслъ. |

§ 44. Перо́, a pen; полѣно, a log; крыло́, a wing; and дере́во, a tree, terminate in я́, ъвъ and я́мъ, in the nom. gen. and dat. plural.

§ 45. The following are irregular in the cases marked :

Зло, an evil, gen. plu. золь.

Не́бо, heaven, nom. plu. небеса́, gen. небесъ &c.

О́ко, the eye, nom. plu. о́чи, gen. очейъ &c.

Плечо́, the shoulder, nom. plu. плечи́; gen. плечъ &c.

Су́дно, a vessel, (ship) nom. plu. судá, gen. судо́въ: but when it denotes an urn, vase, or other vessel made to contain liquids, it is declined regularly.

Тѣ́ло, a body (celestial) nom. plu. тѣла́ and тѣлесá, gen. тѣлъ and тѣлѣсъ &c. But when it denotes the body of a living creature, it is declined regularly.

Ухо́, the ear, nom. plu. у́ши, gen. ушейъ &c.

Чу́до, a miracle, nom. plu. чудеса́ gen. чудесъ &c.

Ябло́ко, an apple, nom. plu. ябло́ки, gen. яблоковъ &c.



## THEME VII.

## ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION O.

Much *iron* is exported from Russia. It is healthy to rise early in *the morning*. Labour and exercise strengthen the *body*. A truly great man unites modesty with *merit*. The Mexican mines abound in *gold* and *silver*. Order requires, that every thing should be kept

---

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| from, изъ.              | great, великій.            |
| Russia, Россія.         | unites, соединяетъ.        |
| is exported, вывозится. | modesty, скромность.       |
| much, много, gov. the   | with, съ, gov. the inst.   |
| gen.                    | merit, достоинство.        |
| iron, железо.           | the Mexican, Мекси-        |
| to rise, вставать.      | канскіе.                   |
| early, рано.            | mine, рудникъ.             |
| in, по, gov. the dat.   | abound, изобилуютъ.        |
| the morning, утро.      | in, expressed by the       |
| is healthy, здорово.    | ins. case.                 |
| Labour, трудъ.          | gold, золото.              |
| and, и.                 | silver, серебро.           |
| exercise, pl. упражне-  | order, порядокъ.           |
| нія.                    | requires, требуетъ.        |
| strengthen, укрѣпляютъ. | that, чтобы.               |
| the body, тѣло.         | every thing, всякая вещь.  |
| a truly, истинно.       | should be kept, хранилась. |



in its proper *place*. The most simple *means* are frequently the best. Sometimes important *events* proceed from insignificant *causes*. Modesty belongs to the most attractive *qualities* of the female sex. Socrates excelled all his fellow citizens in the *qualities* of his understanding and heart. Eloquence does not consist in high-flown *expressions*, but in strong *feelings*.

---

|                                         |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| in, на, gov. the prep.                  | quality, <i>сво́йство</i> .           |
| its proper, <i>своёмъ</i> .             | of the female, <i>женскаго</i> .      |
| place, <i>мѣсто</i> .                   | sex, <i>полъ</i> .                    |
| mean, <i>средство</i> .                 | Socrates, <i>Сократъ</i> .            |
| the most simple, <i>самыя простыя</i> . | excelled, <i>превосходилъ</i> .       |
| are frequently, <i>суть</i>             | all his, <i>всѣхъ своихъ</i> .        |
| <i>ча́сто</i> .                         | fellow-citizens, <i>согра́жданъ</i> . |
| the best, <i>самыя лучшія</i> .         | quality, <i>ка́чество</i> .           |
| sometimes, <i>иногда</i> .              | understanding, <i>умъ</i> .           |
| from, <i>отъ</i> , gov. the gen.        | heart, <i>сѣрдце</i> .                |
| insignificant, <i>малыхъ</i> .          | eloquence, <i>краснорѣчіе</i>         |
| cause, <i>нага́ло</i> .                 | does not consist, <i>не</i>           |
| proceed, <i>рожда́ются</i> .            | <i>состойтъ</i> .                     |
| important, <i>великія</i> .             | high-flown, <i>высоко-</i>            |
| event, <i>дѣло</i> .                    | <i>па́рныхъ</i> .                     |
| belongs, <i>принадлежи́тъ</i> .         | expressions, <i>сло́во</i> .          |
| to, къ, gov. the dat.                   | but in, <i>новъ</i> , gov. the pr.    |
| the most attractive, <i>при-</i>        | strong, <i>сильныхъ</i> .             |
| <i>влекательнѣйшимъ</i> .               | feeling, <i>чу́ство</i> .             |

---

II. DECLENSION OF THE NEUTER TERMINATION *e*.*S i n g.*

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. лиц-é, the face.     | мнѣніе, an opinion.    |
| Gen. лиц-á of — — —       | мнѣні-я, of — — —      |
| Dat. лиц-ѹ, to — — —      | мнѣні-ю, to — — —      |
| Acc. лиц-é. — — —         | мнѣні-е. — — —         |
| Ins. лиц-ѣмъ, by or with. | мнѣні-емъ, by or with. |
| Prep. о лиц-ѣ, of — —     | о мнѣні-и, of — — —    |

*P l u.*

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. лиц-а, faces.        | мнѣні-я, opinions.     |
| Gen. лиц-ъ, of — — —      | мнѣні-й, of — — —      |
| Dat. лиц-амъ, to — —      | мнѣні-ямъ, to.         |
| Acc. лиц-а. — — —         | мнѣні-я. — — —         |
| Ins. лиц-ами, by or with. | мнѣні-ями, by or with. |
| Prep. о лиц-ахъ, of —     | о мнѣні-яхъ, of — — —  |

§ 46. Substantives ending in *e* preceded by a consonant are declined according to the first example, as: *солнце*, the sun; *сердце*, the heart &c, and those ending in the same letter preceded by a vowel, according to the second, as: *зданіе*, a building &c.

§ 47. Substantives ending in *pe*, *le*, and *ye* change *a* into *я* in the genitive, and *y* into *ю* in the dative, ex.

| <i>Nom.</i>   | <i>Gen.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Plu.</i> |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| море the sea, | моря        | мору        | моря.       |

по́ле a field, по́ля по́лю по́ля.

жи́лье an abode, жи́лья жи́лью жи́лья.

§ 48. Those ending in *це*, preceded by a consonant, take the letter *е* in the genitive plural, between the consonant and *ц*, *ех*.

се́рдце, the heart се́рдцеъ.

The soft sign, *ь* is also changed into *е*, in the plu. when it precedes the *це* of the nominative sing.

кольце́, a ring. ко́лець.

§ 49. Substantives ending in *ье*, terminate in the gen. plu. either in *ьевъ*, or *ей*, *ех*.

копье́, a lance. ко́пьевъ or ко́пей.

ружьё́, a musket. ружье́въ or ружей.

§ 50. Those ending in *ое* are declined as neuter adjectives (V. declension of adjectives).



## THEME VIII.

### ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION *е*.

Man's fate depends in a great measure on

fate, судьба́.

man, челове́къ.

in a great measure,

большо́ю ча́стью.

depends, зави́симость.

upon, о́тъ, гов. the

gen.

his own *conduct*. A man destitute of a grateful *heart* is incapable of a virtuous action, To praise a man to his *face*, is to accuse him of *vanity*. The path of virtue is the road to *peace*. Habit destroys *imagination*. The consolation of religion is our surest *refuge* in *misfortune*. It is glorious to die on the *field*

|                                    |                                        |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| his own, <i>сѡбственнаго</i>       | the path, <i>сѣзѣя</i> .               |
| <i>его</i> .                       | is the road, <i>есть путь</i> .        |
| <i>conduct</i> , <i>поведѣніе</i>  | <i>peace</i> , <i>спокойствіе</i> .    |
| destitute, <i>неимѣющій</i>        | habit, <i>привычка</i> .               |
| a grateful, <i>благодар-</i>       | destroys, <i>подавляетъ</i> .          |
| <i>наго</i> .                      | <i>imagination</i> , <i>вообра-</i>    |
| <i>heart</i> , <i>сѣрдце</i> .     | <i>женіе</i> .                         |
| is incapable, <i>неспосѡ-</i>      | the consolation, <i>утѣ-</i>           |
| <i>бенъ</i> .                      | <i>шеніе</i> .                         |
| of a virtuous, <i>къ доб-</i>      | religion, <i>вѣра</i> .                |
| <i>родѣтельному</i> .              | is, <i>бываешь</i> , gov. the          |
| <i>action</i> , <i>постѣпокъ</i> . | <i>ins</i> .                           |
| to praise, <i>хвалишь</i> .        | surest, <i>вѣрнѣйшимъ</i> .            |
| to, <i>въ</i> , gov. the ass.      | refuge, <i>прибѣжище</i> .             |
| <i>face</i> , <i>лицѣ</i> .        | <i>in</i> , <i>въ</i> , gov. the prep. |
| <i>is</i> , <i>знáчитъ</i> .       | <i>misfortune</i> , <i>несчáстіе</i> . |
| to accuse, <i>упрекашь</i> .       | it is glorious, <i>славно</i> .        |
| him, <i>его</i> .                  | to die, <i>умерѣтъ</i> .               |
| of, <i>въ</i> , gov. the prep.     | on, <i>на</i> , gov. the prep.         |
| <i>vanity</i> , <i>тщеславіе</i> . | <i>field</i> , <i>поле</i> .           |

of battle, fighting in defence of our native country. In *prosperity* we should display moderation, in misfortune patience. *The minds* of youth are open equally to good or bad *impressions*. The rising of the sun at sea is one of the most majestic *spectacles* in nature. Prejudice blinds the eyes with unsubstantial *visions*.

|                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| battle, бѣшва.          | and bad, и для ху-        |
| fighting, сража́ясь.    | дыхъ.                     |
| in defence of, за, gov. | impression, впечат-       |
| the acc.                | лѣніе.                    |
| our native country,     | the rising, восхождѣніе.  |
| отѣчество.              | the sun, солнце.          |
| prosperity, счáстiе.    | at, на, gov. the prep.    |
| we should, должно.      | sea, море.                |
| display, хранѣшь.       | is one, есть одно.        |
| moderation, воздержá-   | of, изъ, gov. the gen.    |
| ніе.                    | the most majestic, ве-    |
| misfortune, несчá-      | личественнѣйшихъ.         |
| стіе.                   | spectacle, зрѣлище.       |
| patience, терпѣніе.     | prejudice, предразсѣ-     |
| the mind, сѣрдце.       | докъ.                     |
| of youth, юношей.       | blinds, ослѣпляетъ.       |
| equally, равно.         | the eye, глазъ (V. § 19.) |
| are open, отвѣрсты.     | unsubstantial, пусты-     |
| to, для, gov. the gen.  | ми.                       |
| good, добрыхъ.          | vision, привидѣніе.       |

A virtuous man finds in his own *sentiments*  
a recompense for all the changes of the world.

virtuous, добродѣтель- a recompense, удо-  
ный. влѣшвореніе.  
finds, находить. for all, за всѣ.  
in, въ, gov. the prep. change, превратъ.  
his own, собствен- ность.  
ныхъ своихъ. the world, міръ.  
sentiment, чувствованіе.



### III. DECLENSION OF THE NEUTER TERMINATIONS МЯ AND ТЯ.

*S i n g.*

*P l u.*

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| Nom. вре́м-я, time.     | врем-енá, times.         |
| Gen. вре́м-ени, of —    | врем-е́нь, of — — —      |
| Dat. вре́м-ени, to —    | врем-ена́мъ, to — — —    |
| Acc. вре́м-я. — — —     | врем-енá. — — — —        |
| Ins. вре́м-енемъ, by or | врем-ена́ми, by or with. |
| with.                   |                          |

Prep. о вре́м-ени, of — о врем-ена́хъ, of — — —  
§ 51. The substantive *дитя́*, a child is neuter  
in the singular, and masculine in the plural,  
and is declined as follows.

*S i n g.*

*P l u.*

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Nom. дит-я́, a child. | дѣт-и, children.     |
| Gen. дит-я́ши, of —   | дѣт-е́й, of — — — —  |
| Dat. дит-я́ши, to —   | дѣт-я́мъ, to — — — — |

Асс. дѣш-ѣй. — — — — — дѣш-ѣй. — — — — —

Ins. дѣш-ѣшемъ и дѣш-ѣми, by or with.

дѣш-ѣю, by or with.

Прер. о дѣш-ѣши, of — — — — — дѣш-ѣхъ, of — — — — —



## Т Е М Е IX.

### ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION *мѧ*.

But few people know to estimate the value of *time*. The greater part of the inhabitants of Russia belong to the Slavonian *race*. The Crusaders after surmounting great obstacles, succeeded in planting their *banner* on the walls

---

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| but few, немногіе.       | race, плѣмѧ.           |
| people, люди.            | after surmounting, по- |
| know, умѣюшъ.            | слѣ, gov. the gen.     |
| to estimate, цѣнѣшъ.     | great, великихъ.       |
| the value, вѣжностъ,     | obstacle, препятств-   |
| the greater part, больш- | віе.                   |
| шая часть.               | a Crusader, кресто-    |
| inhabitant, житель.      | носецъ.                |
| of Russia, населяю-      | succeeded, успѣли.     |
| щихъ Россію.             | in planting, водру-    |
| belong, принадлежѣшъ.    | жѣшъ.                  |
| to, къ, gov. the dat.    | banner, знамѧ.         |
| the Slavonian, Славян-   | on, на, gov. the prep. |
| скому.                   | wall, стѣнѧ.           |

\* \*

of Jerusalem. We should not despair even under the *burden* of misfortunes. *O times!* *O manners!* Each of the *seasons* of the year has its charms. History hands to posterity *the names* of great men. The enemy entered the town with unfurled *banners*. We have but little knowledge of *the tribes* inhabiting the interior of Africa.

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| Jerusalem, Иерусалимъ. | name, <i>имя</i> .     |
| we should not despair, | of great men, вели-    |
| не должно уныватьъ.    | кихъ мужей.            |
| even, даже.            | the enemy, неприятель. |
| under, подъ, gov. the  | entered, вступилъ въ   |
| inst.                  | town, городъ.          |
| burden, бремя.         | unfurled, распущен-    |
| misfortune, несчастье. | ными.                  |
| time, время.           | banner, знамя.         |
| manner, нравъ.         | we have, мы имѣемъ.    |
| each, всякое.          | but little, мало. gov. |
| of, изъ, gov. the gen. | the gen.               |
| season, время.         | knowledge, извѣстie.   |
| the year, годъ.        | of, о, gov. the prep.  |
| has, имѣеть.           | tribe, племя.          |
| its, свой.             | inhabiting, населяю-   |
| charm, прелесть.       | щихъ.                  |
| history, исторiя.      | the interior, внутрен- |
| hands, предаётъ.       | носитъ.                |
| posterity, потомство.  | Africa, Африка.        |



## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON THE

declension of substantives.

*F i n l a n d.*

Here is the reign of winter. — In the beginning of October every thing is covered with snow. — The neighbouring hill scarcely shews its sterile summit, and the hoar-frost falls like a thick cloud. On the first frosty morning the trees glitter like a rainbow, reflecting the solar rays

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| here, здѣсь.           | like, въ видѣ, gov. the |
| the reign, цѣрство.    | gen.                    |
| winter, зима.          | thick, густѣе.          |
| the beginning, начало. | cloud, облако.          |
| October, Октябрь.      | on, при, gov. the prep. |
| every thing, все.      | first, первомъ.         |
| is covered, покрыто.   | frosty morning, утрен-  |
| snow, снѣгъ.           | немъ морозъ.            |
| scarcely, едва.        | a tree, дерево.         |
| neighbouring, сосѣдняя | glitter, блистающъ.     |
| hill, скала.           | like, expressed by the  |
| shews, выказываетъ.    | ins. case.              |
| sterile, бесплодную.   | a rainbow, радуга.      |
| summit, вершина.       | reflecting, отражая.    |
| the hoar-frost, иней.  | solar, солнечные.       |
| falls, падаетъ.        | a ray, лучъ.            |

in a thousand beautiful *colours*. But the sun seems to look upon the *desolation of winter with horror*, he scarcely makes his appearance and is again buried in the dark *fog*, the *fore-runner* of severe *cold*. The moon continues all night long to spread her silver *beams*, and traces her *circle* in the azure vault of *heaven*, along which from time to time dart

|                                        |                                |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| in a thousand, <i>ты-</i>              | cold, <i>стѣжа</i> .           |
| <i>сязью</i> , gov. the gen.           | the moon, <i>мѣсяцъ</i> .      |
| beautiful, <i>пріятныхъ</i> .          | continues all night long,      |
| colour, <i>цвѣтъ</i> .                 | въ теченіе всей нѣчи.          |
| seems, <i>кажется</i> .                | to spread, <i>изливаетъ</i> .  |
| horror, <i>ужасъ</i> .                 | silver, <i>серебряные</i> ,    |
| to look, <i>взираетъ</i> .             | a ray, <i>лучъ</i> .           |
| upon, <i>на</i> .                      | her, <i>свой</i> .             |
| the <i>desolation</i> , <i>опусто-</i> | traces, <i>образуетъ</i> .     |
| <i>шеніе</i> .                         | circle, <i>кругъ</i> , (to be  |
| makes his appearance,                  | put in the plu.)               |
| <i>явился</i> .                        | in, <i>на</i> .                |
| and again, <i>и уже</i> .              | azure vault, <i>чистой ла-</i> |
| is buried, <i>погруженъ</i> .          | <i>зѣри</i> .                  |
| dark, <i>багровый</i> .                | of heaven, <i>небесной</i> .   |
| fog, <i>туманъ</i> .                   | along, <i>по</i> .             |
| the fore-runner, <i>пред-</i>          | which, <i>которой</i> .        |
| <i>вѣстникъ</i>                        | from time to time, <i>из-</i>  |
| severe, <i>сильной</i> .               | <i>рѣдка</i> .                 |
|                                        | dart, <i>пролетаютъ</i> .      |

glaring *meteors*. Not the least breath of wind agitates the trees, white with the hoar-frost: a melancholy, but a pleasing scene! What unusual stillness! the timorous deer hies fearfully to the thicket, shaking the icicles from his antlers, the pheasants doze securely in the deep silence of the forest, and every step of the traveller is heard in the snowy wilderness.

---

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| glaring, блестящiе.     | the thicket, тѣща.       |
| a meteor, метеоръ.      | shaking, встрясая.       |
| not, ни.                | from, съ, гов. the gen.  |
| the least, малѣйшее.    | antler, рогъ.            |
| a breath, дуновѣнiе.    | his, свойхъ.             |
| wind, вѣтръ.            | the icicles, оледенѣлымъ |
| agitates, не колеблеть. | иной.                    |
| a tree, дерево.         | the pheasants, стадо     |
| white, облѣненныхъ.     | пестеревѣй.              |
| hoar-frost, иней.       | doze, дремлетъ.          |
| melancholy, печальное.  | securely, безопасно.     |
| pleasing, прiятное.     | deep, глубокой.          |
| scene, зрѣлище.         | silence., тишина.        |
| what unusual, какая     | the forest, лѣсъ.        |
| необыкновенная.         | every, всякой.           |
| stillness, тишина.      | step, шагъ.              |
| timorous, робкая.       | traveller, странникъ.    |
| deer, лань.             | is heard слышенъ.        |
| fearfully, шоропо.      | snowy снѣжной.           |
| hies, пробирается.      | wilderness, пустыня.     |

Yet even here nature smiles with a cheerful, though transitory *smile*. When the snow is dissolved by the warm summer *breeze* and the bright rays of the sun; when the waters have run their noisy course to the sea, and formed thousands of rivulets and thousands of cascades, then nature arises from her heavy and protracted slumber; suddenly the wintry fields are clothed

---

|                      |                 |                   |                    |
|----------------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| yet even here ,      | но и            | have run ,        | ушлѣли.            |
|                      | здѣсь.          | to , въ , gov.    | the acc.           |
| nature ,             | природа.        | the sea ,         | море.              |
| smiles ,             | улыбаётся.      | and formed ,      | образовавъ         |
| cheerful ,           | весёлою.        |                   | въ теченіи своёмъ. |
| though ,             | но.             | a thousand ,      | ты́сяча.           |
| transitory ,         | краткою.        | a rivulet ,       | ручѣй.             |
| a smile ,            | улы́бка.        | a cascade ,       | водопáдь.          |
| when ,               | когда́.         | arises ,          | выхо́дитъ.         |
| snow ,               | снѣ́гъ , (to be | from , изъ , gov. | the gen.           |
| put in the plu.)     | V. § 17.        | heavy ,           | тя́гостнаго.       |
| is dissolved ,       | растáяли.       | protracted ,      | продолжи́-         |
| by , отъ , gov.      | the gen.        |                   | тельнаго.          |
| warm ,               | тѣ́плаго.       | slumber ,         | у́сыплѣніе.        |
| summer ,             | лѣ́тняго.       | suddenly ,        | вд́ругъ.           |
| breeze ,             | вѣ́тръ.         | wintry ,          | оз́имья.           |
| bright ,             | я́ркихъ.        | a field ,         | по́ле.             |
| water ,              | водá.           | are clothed ,     | одѣ́ваюш-          |
| their noisy course , | съ              |                   | ся.                |
|                      | шумомъ          |                   |                    |

in green, the meadows with aromatick flowers.  
 Yesterday all was dead, — to day every thing  
 blossoms and sends forth grateful odours.

*Batushkoff's letters.*

---

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| in green, зелёнымъ бѣ-   | all, все.              |
| хатомъ.                  | was dead, было мёртво. |
| a meadow, лугъ. V. § 17. | to day, сегодня.       |
| aromatick, душистыми.    | blossoms, цвѣтѣтъ.     |
| a flower, цвѣтъ.         | sends forth grateful   |
| yesterday, вчера.        | odours, благоухаетъ.   |



TABLE FOR THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES ACCORDING TO THEIR TERMINATIONS.

| Masculine. |         | Feminine. |       | Neuter. |       |
|------------|---------|-----------|-------|---------|-------|
| Singular.  |         |           |       |         |       |
| Nom.       | ъ       | й         | а     | я       | ь *   |
| Gen.       | а       | я         | ы     | и       | и     |
| Dat.       | у       | ю         | ѣ     | ѣ       | и     |
| Acc.       | ъ (а)   | й (я)     | у     | ю       | ь     |
| Ins.       | омъ     | емъ       | ою    | ею      | ію    |
| Prep.      | ѣ       | ѣ         | ѣ     | ѣ       | и     |
| Plural.    |         |           |       |         |       |
| Nom.       | ы       | и         | ы     | и       | и     |
| Gen.       | овъ     | евъ       | ѣ     | ѣ       | и     |
| Dat.       | амъ     | ямъ       | амъ   | ямъ     | амъ   |
| Acc.       | ы (овъ) | и (евъ)   | ы (ѣ) | и (ѣ)   | и (ѣ) |
| Ins.       | ами     | ями       | ами   | ями     | ями   |
| Prep.      | ахъ     | яхъ       | ахъ   | яхъ     | яхъ   |

\* For the Declension of the substantives ending in ѣ, which are of the masculine gender V. § 4.

## S E C T. V.

FORMATION OF FEMININE SUBSTANTIVES  
FROM MASCULINE.

§ 51. There are two ways of distinguishing the sex of creatures of the same species: first by giving them different names; as мужъ, a man; женá, a woman; сынъ, a son; дочь, a daughter; барáнь a ram; овцá a ewe &c. and secondly by varying the termination of the masculine appellation.

§ 52. The polysyllable mas. appellations, ending in бъ, вь, зъ, дъ, лъ, ръ, ть, and хъ, form the feminine by changing з into ка, and the guttural х into ш; ex.

сосѣдъ, a neighbour, fem. сосѣдка.

солдáтъ, a soldier, — — солдáшка.

пасшѹхъ, a shepherd, — — пасшѹшка.

*Exceptions to this rule.*

орѣлъ, an eagle, fem. орлѣца.

козѣлъ, a goat, — — козá.

поваръ, a cook, — — поварѣха.

осѣлъ, an ass, — — ослѣца.

§ 53. The monosyllable mas. appellations ending in зъ, change this termination into овка in the feminine; ex.

чижъ, a canary-bird    чижѡвка.  
мошъ, a spendthrift    мошѡвка.

*Exceptions to this rule.*

Графъ, a Count, fem. Графиня.  
волкъ, a wolf, ——— волчица.  
внукъ, grand-son. ——— внўка.  
жнецъ, a reaper, ——— жница.  
жрецъ, a priest, ——— жрица.  
левъ, a lion, ——— львица.  
лгунъ, a liar, ——— лгунья.  
рабъ, a slave, ——— рабыня.  
слонъ, an elephant, ——— слониха.  
шрусъ, a coward, ——— шрусиха.  
шущъ, a jester, ——— шущиха.

§ 54. Foreign appellations of ranks, titles, professions &c. adopted in the Russian language, and which end in *ъ* or *ь* change these terminations into *ша*; ex.

Генерáль, a General, fem. Генерáльша.  
Маіѡръ, a Major, ——— Маіѡрша.  
апшѣкаръ, an apothecary, — апшѣкарша.

*Exceptions to this rule.*

Имперáторъ, an Emperor, fem. Императрица,  
Гѣрцогъ, a Duke, ——— Герцогиня.  
Барѡнъ, a Baron, ——— Баронѣсса.  
монахъ, a monk, ——— монахиня.



§ 55. Those ending in *тель* form the feminine by the addition of *ница*; *ex.*

благодѣтель, a benefactor, ——— благодѣтельница.  
 предѣтель, a traitor, ——— предѣтельница.

§ 56. Those ending in *й* form the feminine by the addition of *ка*; *ex.*

злодѣй, a malefactor, fem. злодѣйка.  
 негодѣй, a rascal, ——— негодѣйка.

*Exceptions to this rule.*

герой, a hero, fem. героиня.  
 казначей, a treasurer, ——— казначея.



## S E C T. VI.

### NATIONAL APPELLATIONS.

§ 57. National appellations are formed from the names of countries, provinces and cities, and terminate in the *mas.* in *ецъ* or *инъ* and in the *fem.* in *,ка, анка, тка, or танка, ex.* Шотландія, Scotland, Шотланецъ, a Scotchman, Шотландка, a Scotchwoman.

|          | <i>Mas.</i> | <i>Fem.</i> |
|----------|-------------|-------------|
| Европа,  | Европеецъ,  | Европейка.  |
| Австрія, | Австріецъ,  | Австріянка. |
| Испанія, | Испанецъ,   | Испанка.    |

*Mas.**Fem.*

Швейцарія, Switzerland, Швейцарець, Швейцар-  
ка.

Америка, America, Америкáнецъ, Америкáнка.

Италія, Italy, Италі́янецъ, Италі́янка.

Россія, Russia, Росси́янинъ, Росси́янка.

Англія, England, Англичáнинъ, Англичáнка.

Данія, Denmark, Дáнчанинь, Дáнчáнка.

Персія, Persia, Персі́янинъ, Персі́янка.

Римъ, Rome, Рíмлянинъ, Рíмля́нка.

Арабія, Arabia, Араві́янинъ, Араві́янка.

Ташарія, Tartary, Ташáринъ, Ташáрка.

*The following have irregular terminations.*

Франція, France, Францúзь, Францúженка.

Греція, Greece, Грекъ, Гречáнка.

Германія, Germany, Германецъ, Германка.

Польша, Poland, Полякъ, Пóлька.

Турція, Turkey, Тýрокъ, Турчáнка.

Камчатка, Kamtchatka, Камчадáль, Камчадáлка.

§ 58. National appellations ending in *инъ* are declined regularly in the singular, and as follows in the plural.

Nom. Англичáне, Englishmen.

Gen. Англичáнь, of — — —

Dat. Англичáнамъ, to — — —

Acc. Англичáнь. — — —

Ins. Англичанами, by, or with.

Преп. о Англичанахъ, of — — —



## S E C T VII.

### PATRONYMICK APPELLATIONS.

§ 59. Patronymick appellations are derived from the paternal name, and added to that of the son or daughter. The Greeks and the Romans had their patronymicks, and it is probable, that the English, and other Northern nations also made use of them before every family had its own peculiar name. Whence many such appellations, as: Peterson, Johnson, Thomson &c. have passed down to posterity as family names from the last person, who bore them as patronymicks, and whose father's name must have been Peter, Iohn or Thomas. At present, among the Russian peasantry the common method of distinguishing persons of similar christian names is by adding that of the father; as Пётръ Ивановичъ, or Ива́новъ; Peter Iohn'son or the son of Iohn; Иванъ Томичъ, or Томинъ, Iohn Thomas'son or the son of Thomas. It must not however, be inferred from this

that patronymick appellations are confined to the lower orders or such, as have no family name, on the contrary it is the usual manner of addressing persons of all classes.

§ 60. Russian patronymick appellations are formed from proper names by the addition of *овичъ*, *евичъ* and *ичъ* for the Mas. and *овна*, *евна* and *ишна*, for the feminine; ex. *Алексáндръ Ивáновичъ*, Alexander the son of John, from *Ивáнъ*, John; *Дми́трій Алексѣвичъ*, Dmitrius the son of Alexis, from, *Алексѣй*, Alexis; *Яковъ Томичъ*, James the son of Thomas, from *Томá*, Thomas. *Анна Алексáндровна*, Ann the daughter of Alexander from *Алексáндръ*; *Марія Алексѣвна*, Mary the daughter of Alexis, from *Алексѣй*; *Екатерина Томи́шна*, Catherine the daughter of Thomas, from *Томá*. &c.

§ 61. In familiar conversation the terminations *овичъ* and *евичъ* are generally contracted into *ичъ* and *ичъ*, as *Алексáндричъ*, *Алексѣичъ* &c.



## SECT VIII.

## AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES.

§ 62. Augmentatives are derivative substantives, which by some addition made to their termination express the object, as of greater than ordinary size; as *домѣще*, a mansion, from *домъ*, a house.

§ 63. Augmentatives in the Russian language terminate in *ище* and *ища*.

§ 64. Substantives ending in *ъ*, *ь* and *й* form their augmentatives by changing these terminations into *ище*; ex. *домъ*, a house, *домѣще*, a great house; *гвоздь*, a nail, *гвоздище*, a great nail; *сарай*, a shed, *сарайище*, a great shed.

§ 65. The neuter substantives ending in *о* change *о* into *ище*; ex. *окно*, a window, *окнище*.

§ 66. The feminine substantives, ending in *а*, *я* and *ь* change these terminations into *ище*, when the substantive expresses an animate object, and into *ища*, when an inanimate; ex. *баба*, an old woman, *бабище*; *лапа*, a paw, *лапища*; *баня*, a bath, *банища*.

§ 67. Those substantives which are only employed in the plural number form their augmentatives in *ищи*, ex. *сáни*, a sledge, *сáнищи*; *часы*, a clock, *часищи*.

*Rem.* When the gutturals, *з*, *к* or *х* happen to be the final consonants, they are changed into the palatals *ж*, *з* and *ш*; ex. *сапо́гъ*, a boot, *сапожище*; *ста́рыйкъ*, an old man, *старичище*; *брюхо*, the belly, *брюшище*.

§ 68. Diminutives are derivative substantives, which by some variation in their termination express the object as of less than ordinary size; as *ягнѣнокъ*, a lambkin; *человѣчикъ*, a manikin, or little man.

§ 69. Russian diminutives are of two kinds: caressive and contemptuous; ex. *домъ*, a house, *доми́къ*, a pretty little house, and *доми́шко* a miserable hut.

§ 70. Diminutives are of the same gender as their primitives, with a few exceptions.

#### *Masculine Diminutives.*

§ 71. Substantives ending in *ъ*, preceded by *б*, *в*, *ж*, *н*, or *с*, form their diminutives by changing *ъ* into *окъ*; ex. *грибъ*, a mushroom, *грибо́къ*, a little mushroom; *островъ*, an island, *острово́къ*, a little island.

*Exceptions.*

ровъ, a ravine, рóвикъ. чернослѣвъ, a prune, чернослѣвецъ.  
 левъ, a lion, лéвикъ. кафшáнь, a coat, кафшáнецъ.  
 заливъ, a gulf, заливецъ. домъ, a house, дóмикъ.

§ 72. Substantives ending in з, preceded by ж, з, ш, щ, л, п, р, or т, change з into икъ; ex.

ножь, a knife, нóжикъ. столъ, a table, стóликъ.  
 мячь, a ball, мячикъ. снопь, an ear (of corn) снопикъ.  
 шалáшь, a hut, шалáшикъ. таръ, a ball, шарикъ.  
 плащь, a mantle, плащикъ. крестъ, a cross, крещикъ.

*Exceptions.*

Цвѣшь, a flower, цвѣшóкъ. листь, a leaf, лисшóкъ.  
 мóлошь, a hammer, молошóкъ. кóлоколь, a bell, колокóльчикъ.

Those which end in шъ, change з into екъ; ex.  
 барышъ, profit, барышéкъ.

§ 73. Substantives ending in з, preceded by the gutturals г, к and х, change з into екъ and the gutturals into the palatals ж, з, ш; ex.

лугъ, a meadow, лужёкъ. пѣшѹхъ, a sock, пѣ-  
сукъ, a branch, сучёкъ. тушёкъ.

§ 74. Substantives ending in зъ, preceded by д, or з, change зъ into ецъ; ex. заводъ a manu-  
factory заводецъ; арбузъ, a water - melon ,  
арбузецъ, and арбузикъ.

*Exceptions.*

годъ, a year, годикъ. садъ, a garden, садикъ.  
городъ, a city, горо- глазъ, an eye, гла-  
докъ. зокъ.

§ 75. Mas. Sub. ending in ъ and ѣ change  
these terminations into екъ; ex.

уголь, coal, уголёкъ. ручей, a rivulet, ручеёкъ.

*Exceptions.*

гвоздь, a nail, гвѣз- покѡй, a room, по-  
дикъ. ковецъ.

голубъ, a dove, голу- сарай, a shed, сара-  
бокъ. ецъ.

корабль, a ship, ко-  
рабликъ.

*Feminine Diminutives.*

§ 76. Fem. Sub. ending in а preceded by  
a consonant, or in ъ change а, and ъ into  
ка ex.

рыба, fish, рыбка. лошадь, a horse, ло-  
шадка.



§ 77. When *a* or *ь* is preceded by two consonants, the diminutives take *o* or *e* between these consonants; ex. игла́, a needle, иго́лка; вервь́, a line, верёвка. Exceptions: сестра́, sister, сестри́ца; мать́, mother, ма́тушка; вѣтвь́, a branch, вѣ́шка.

§ 78. When the final letter *a* is preceded by one of the gutturals *г*, *к*, or *х*, *a* is changed into *ка*, and the gutturals into palatals; ex. кни́га, a book, кни́жка, рѣ́ка, a river, рѣ́чка; крох́а, a crumb, кро́шка. In the same manner the dental *ц* is changed into *т*; ex. пти́ца, a bird, пти́чка; excerpt, шѣ́шка, aunt, шѣ́тушка.

§ 79. Those ending in *жа*, *ща* and *щъ*, change *a* and *ь* into *ица*; ex. ко́жа, a skin, ко́жица; ро́ща, a grove, ро́щица; вещь́, a thing, вещь́ца. excerpt, ро́гожа, a mat, ро́гожка.

§ 80. Those ending in *я* add *ка* to the gen. pl.; ex. ги́ря, a weight gen. pl. ги́рь, diminutive ги́рька; ды́ня, a melon, ды́нька.

#### *Neuter Diminutives.*

§ 81. Neuter substantives ending in *o*, preceded by the consonants *в*, *д*, *н*, *с* and *т*, change *o*, into *цо* or *це*, ex. де́рево, a tree, дере́вцо; сѣ́но, hay, сѣ́нцо; колесó, a wheel колесцо́. When *o* is preceded by two consonants *o* or *e* is taken between them, ex. гумно́, a barn, гу-

мѣнце; сукно́, cloth, суконце. excerpt, зерно́, a grain, зѣрнышко; бревно́, a log, бревѣшко, мѣсто, a place, мѣстѣчко.

§ 82. Those ending in *ло*, preceded by a vowel, change *o* into *ьце*; ex. жало́, a sting, жалѣце; одѣяло́, a bed - cover, одѣяльце.

§ 83. Those ending in *ье*, take the addition of *це* or *цо*; ex. копье́, a lance, копьецо́; пла́тье, a garment, пла́тьеце.

§ 84. Those ending in *о*, preceded by one of the gutturals *г*, *к*, or *х*, change *o* into *ко* and the gutturals into palatals, ex. лы́ко, rind, лы́чко; ухо́, an ear, ушко́, *ц* is also changed into *т*, ex. яи́це, an egg, яй́чко; се́рдце, the heart, се́рдѣчко.

## С Н А Р. II.

### А Д Ж Е С Т И В Е С.

#### С Е С Т I.

#### GENERAL REMARKS.

§ 85. An adjective is a word, added to the substantive to express its quality; as, прилѣжный человекъ, an industrious man; добродѣтельная жѣнщина, a virtuous woman. Russian ad-

jectives admit, besides the degrees of signification, all the variations of the substantive: number, gender and case.

§ 86. There are three kinds of adjectives in the Russian language: qualificative, possessive, and apocopated. The qualificative correspond to the adjectives of other languages, the possessive and apocopated are peculiar to the Russian.

§ 87. Possessive adjectives express a possessory quality, and may be rendered in English by a substantive in the genitive or possessive case; as, Царскій дворець, the Tsar's palace; народное право, the people's right. Or by a substantive used adjectively; as, медвѣжья кожа, a bear-skin; рыба чешуя, fish - scales.

§ 88. Adjectives are apocopated (устьѣнные) when the last letter or syllable is omitted, and are only used when the adjective is separated from its substantive by the auxiliary verb быть, to be, which is not expressed, but understood to intervene; as счастье непостоянно, fortune is fickle; учение полезно, learning is useful.

§ 89. Qualificative adjectives have three degrees of signification, which are called the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

§ 90. The *positive* expresses simply the quality of an object, without increase or di-

minution; as, прилѣжный, industrious; добродѣтельный, virtuous.

§ 91. *The comparative degree increases or lessens the positive signification; as, прилѣжнѣе, more industrious; добродѣтельнѣе, more virtuous, and is the only degree, that is not subject to the modifications of number, gender, and case.*

§ 92. *The superlative expresses the quality in the highest or lowest degree; as, прилѣжнѣйшій, the most industrious, добродѣтельнѣйшій, the most virtuous.*

§ 93. Adjectives of the positive and superlative degrees must agree with their substantives in number, gender and case.

§ 94. Adjectives of the mas. gen. terminate in the nom. sing. in *ый* or *ій*, which terminations are changed into *ая* or *ія* for the fem. and *ое* or *ея* for the neuter.



## S E C T II.

### DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

Declension of adjectives ending in *ый*.

| Mas.               | Fem.   | Neu.     |
|--------------------|--------|----------|
| Nom. мѹдрый, wise. | мѹдрая | мѹдрое   |
| Gen. мѹдраго, of — | мѹдрой | мѹдраго. |
| Dat. мѹдрому, to — | мѹдрой | мѹдрому. |

Асс. мѹдрый, аго, мѹдную; мѹдрое.  
 Ins. мѹdryмъ, by. мѹдрою, мѹdryмъ.  
 Прер. о мѹдромъ, of. о мѹдрой, о мѹдромъ.

*P l u r a l.*

Nom. мѹdryе, мѹdryя, мѹdryя.  
 Gen. мѹdryхъ, мѹdryхъ, мѹdryхъ.  
 Dat. мѹdryмъ, мѹdryмъ, мѹdryмъ.  
 Асс. мѹдр {ые, мѹдр {ыя, мѹdryя.  
           {ыхъ,       {ыхъ,         
 Ins. мѹdryми, мѹdryми, мѹdryми.  
 Прер. о мѹdryхъ, о мѹdryхъ, о мѹdryхъ.

§ 95. According to the above example are declined all adjectives, ordinal numbers and the participles of passive verbs ending in *ый*, as well as adjectives used substantively, and family names, ending in *ой*. When the last consonant of the adjective is a guttural, *ы* is changed into *и*; as, великій; great; строгій, severe; вѣтхій ancient.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *ій*, PRECEDED BY ONE OF THE GUTTURALS *з*, *к* OR *х*.

*S i n g u l a r.*

| <i>Mas.</i>          | <i>Fem.</i>           | <i>Neut.</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| Nom. великій, great. | великая,              | великое.     |
| Gen. великаго,       | великой ( <i>и</i> я) | великаго.    |
| Dat. великому,       | великой,              | великому.    |
| Асс. велик {ій,      | великую,              | великое.     |
| {аго,                |                       |              |
| Ins. великимъ,       | великою,              | великимъ.    |
| Прер. о великомъ     | о великой,            | о великомъ.  |

*P l u r a l.*

|                                                                       |                                                                  |             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Nom. велѣкіе,                                                         | велѣкія,                                                         | велѣкія     |
| Gen. велѣкихъ,                                                        | велѣкихъ,                                                        | велѣкихъ.   |
| Dat. велѣкимъ,                                                        | велѣкимъ,                                                        | великимъ    |
| Acc. велѣк $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} ie, \\ ихъ, \end{array} \right.$ | велѣк $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} ia, \\ ихъ, \end{array} \right.$ | велѣкія.    |
| Ins. велѣкими,                                                        | велѣкими,                                                        | велѣкими.   |
| Prep. о велѣкихъ,                                                     | о велѣкихъ,                                                      | о велѣкихъ. |

§ 96. According to this example are declined all adjectives, ending in *гій*, *кій* and *хій*; all family names, ending in *скій* and *чкій*, and names of places ending in *ое*.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *ій*,  
PRECEDED BY *ж*, *з*, *ш*, OR *щ*.

пригóжій, handsome.

*S i n g u l a r.*

| <i>Mas.</i>                                                            | <i>Fem.</i>            | <i>Neut.</i> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------|
| Nom. пригóжій,                                                         | пригóжая,              | пригóжее.    |
| Gen. пригóжаго,                                                        | пригóжей ( <i>ія</i> ) | пригóжаго.   |
| Dat. пригóжему,                                                        | пригóжей,              | пригóжему.   |
| Acc. пригóж $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} ій, \\ аго, \end{array} \right.$ | пригóжую,              | пригóжее.    |
| Ins. пригóжимъ,                                                        | пригóжею               | пригóжимъ.   |
| Prep. о пригóжемъ,                                                     | о пригóжей,            | о пригóжемъ. |

*P l u r a l.*

|       |                               |                               |               |
|-------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Nom.  | пригѡжіе ,                    | пригѡжія ,                    | пригѡжія.     |
| Gen.  | пригѡжихъ ,                   | пригѡжихъ ,                   | пригѡжихъ .   |
| Dat.  | пригѡжимъ ,                   | пригѡжимъ ,                   | пригѡжимъ .   |
| Acc.  | пригѡж <sup>іе</sup><br>ихъ , | пригѡж <sup>ія</sup><br>ихъ , | пригѡжія .    |
| Ins.  | пригѡжими ,                   | пригѡжими ,                   | пригѡжими .   |
| Prep. | о пригѡжихъ ,                 | о пригѡжихъ ,                 | о пригѡжихъ . |

§ 97. According to the above example are declined all qualificative adjectives, ending in *жій*, *гій*, *шій* and *щій*; the participles of active and neuter verbs, of the past and present tense, ending in *шій* and *щій*; the superlative of adjectives, ending in *шій*, and adjectives used substantively, ending in *гій*, *шій*, and *щій*.

§ 98. In familiar language the terminations *ый* and *ій* are frequently changed into *ой*; as слѣпой, blind, instead of слѣпый; дорогой, dear, instead of дорогой &c.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES ENDING IN *ній* AND *ней*.*S i n g u l a r.*

|       |                            |                       |            |
|-------|----------------------------|-----------------------|------------|
| Nom.  | дрѣвній, ancient.          | дрѣвняя ,             | дрѣвнее .  |
| Gen.  | дрѣвняго ,                 | дрѣвней ( <i>ія</i> ) | дрѣвняго . |
| Dat.  | дрѣвнему ,                 | дрѣвней ,             | дрѣвнему . |
| Acc.  | дрѣвн <sup>іи</sup><br>яго | дрѣвнюю ,             | дрѣвнее .  |
| Ins.  | дрѣвнимъ ,                 | дрѣвнею ,             | дрѣвнимъ . |
| Prep. | о дрѣвнемъ ,               | одрѣвней ,            | дрѣвнемъ . |

\* \*

*P l u r a l.*

|       |                                                                                  |                                                                                  |              |
|-------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Nom.  | дрѣвніе ,                                                                        | дрѣвнія ,                                                                        | дрѣвнія .    |
| Gen.  | дрѣвнихъ ,                                                                       | дрѣвнихъ ,                                                                       | дрѣвнихъ .   |
| Dat.  | дрѣвнимъ ,                                                                       | дрѣвнимъ ,                                                                       | дрѣвнимъ .   |
| Acc.  | дрѣвн $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{іе ,} \\ \text{ихъ ,} \end{array} \right.$ | дрѣвн $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ія ,} \\ \text{ихъ ,} \end{array} \right.$ | дрѣвнія .    |
| Ins.  | дрѣвними ,                                                                       | дрѣвними ,                                                                       | дрѣвними .   |
| Prep. | о дрѣвнихъ ,                                                                     | о дрѣвнихъ ,                                                                     | о дрѣвнихъ . |

§ 99. All adjectives ending in the nominative in *ній* and *ней* are declined according to the above example.



## T H E M E X.

## ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

There is nothing *perfect* in the world. He who seeks friends, should first make himself *worthy* of friendship. A *grateful* man is like a

---

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| in , въ , gov. the prep. | should , дѳлженъ .       |
| the world , свѣтъ .      | first , прѣжде всего .   |
| there is nothing , нѣтъ  | make himself , сдѣлать-  |
| ничего .                 | ся , gov. the ins.       |
| perfect , совершенный .  | worthy , достойный .     |
| he who , кто .           | friendship , дружба .    |
| seeks , ищетъ себѣ .     | grateful , благодарный . |
| friend , другъ .         | is like , подобенъ .     |



*fruitful* soil, which liberally rewards the labour of the cultivator. There is no *true* happiness without virtue. A *good* intention cannot justify an *imprudent* action. *Modest* and *cheerful* behaviour captivates the heart of man. A man of a *benevolent* heart endeavours to turn every thing into good, but a *vicious* man finds evil in good itself. In *human* life.

fruitful, плодотворный. behaviour, обхождение.

soil, почва. captivates, привлека-

liberally, щедро. ешь.

which rewards, воз- heart, сердце.

награждающей. of man, людей.

the labour, труды. of, съ, gov. the ins.

the cultivator, воздъ- benevolent, добрый.

лыватель. endeavours, старается.

there is no, нѣтъ. ся.

true, истинный. every thing, все.

happiness, благоден- to turn, обращаешь.

ствие. into good, въ добро.

good, добрый. vicious, злой.

intention, намѣреніе. but, же.

cannot, не можешь. finds, находитъ.

justify, оправдать. in good itself, и въ

imprudent, неблаго- самомъ добръ.

зумыный. evil, зло.

action, дѣло. in, въ, gov. the prep.

modest, скромный. life, жизнь.

cheerful, веселый. human, человѣскій.

there is no *permanent* happiness. Happiness should be sought not in a *noisy* round of pleasures, but in the *peaceful* circle of a virtuous family. The ancient poets speak of the *golden*, the *silver*, and the *iron* age. *Ancient* Rome produced many *great* men. The *Christian* religion teaches us to be *benevolent* and *humane*. The rein-deer lives only in *cold*, and

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| there is no, нѣтъ.      | Rome, Римъ.                |
| permanent, прѣдвѣчный.  | produced, произвѣлъ.       |
| happiness, счастіе.     | many, многихъ.             |
| should be sought, дол-  | great, великій.            |
| жно искашь.             | man, мужъ, V. § 18.        |
| not, не.                | christian, христіан-       |
| noisy, шумный.          | скій.                      |
| round, кругъ.           | religion, вѣра.            |
| pleasure, удовольствіе. | teaches, приучаетъ.        |
| peaceful, мирный.       | us, насъ.                  |
| circle, кругъ.          | to be, быть, gov. the ins. |
| family, семейство.      | benevolent, благотвори-    |
| ancient, древній.       | тельный.                   |
| poet, стихотворецъ.     | humane, человеколю-        |
| speak, говорятъ.        | бивый.                     |
| of, о, gov. the prep.   | the rein-deer, олень,      |
| golden, золотый.        | to be in the plu.          |
| silver, серебрянный.    | live, водятся.             |
| iron, желѣзный.         | cold, холодный.            |
| age, вѣкъ.              | and, а.                    |

the camel in *hot* countries. Among the Chinese beauty consists in a *broad* face, *narrow* eyes, a *flat* nose, *diminutive* feet and a *corpulent* body.

---

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| camel, верблю́дь.       | face, ли́це.            |
| hot, тёплый.            | narrow, у́зенький.      |
| country, страна́.       | eye, гла́зъ.            |
| among, у, gov. the gen. | flat, сплю́щенный.      |
| Chinese, Кита́ецъ.      | nose, носъ.             |
| beauty, красо́та.       | diminutive, ма́ленький. |
| consists, состои́тъ.    | feet (dimin.) но́жки.   |
| in, въ, gov. the prep.  | corpulent, до́родный.   |
| broad, широ́кий.        | body, тѣ́ло.            |

### S E C T. III.

#### DEGREES OF SIGNIFICATION.

##### THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

§ 100. The comparative degree is formed from the positive by changing the final letters *ый* and *ий* into *ѣе*, as.

|                 |                   |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| сла́бый, weak.  | сла́бѣе, weaker.  |
| му́дрый, wise.  | му́дрѣе, wiser.   |
| свѣ́жій, fresh. | свѣ́жѣе, fresher. |

§ 101. When the above terminations are preceded by *з*, *к* or *х*, these gutturals are chan-

ged into their corresponding palatals, and *e* added instead of *ѣ*, as,

|                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| крѣпкій, strong. | крѣпче, stronger. |
| дорогій, dear.   | дороже, dearer.   |
| сухій, dry.      | суше, dryer.      |

§ 102. In the same manner *д* is changed into *ж*; *т* into *т* and *ст* into *щ*, as,

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| худой, bad.     | хуже, worse.     |
| молодой, young. | молоче, younger. |
| толстый, thick, | толще, thicker.  |
| богатый, rich.  | богаче, richer.  |

§ 103. The following are however exceptions to these rules:

|                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| долгий, long.     | долѣ, longer.       |
| широкий, wide.    | шире, wider.        |
| далёкий, distant. | далѣ, more distant. |
| горький, bitter.  | горчѣ, bitterer.    |
| высокий, high.    | выше, higher.       |
| глубокий, deep.   | глубже, deeper.     |
| гадкий, horrid.   | гаже, more horrid.  |
| жидкий, liquid.   | жиже, more liquid.  |
| редкий, rare.     | рѣже, more rare.    |
| близкий, near.    | ближе, nearer.      |
| узкий, narrow.    | уже, narrower.      |
| сладкий, sweet.   | слаще, sweeter.     |

§ 104. The four following form the comparative irregularly:

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| великій, great. | больше, greater. |
| малый, little.  | меньше, less.    |
| хорошій, fine.  | лучше, finer.    |
| красный, fair.  | красе, fairer.   |

§ 105. The connexion between the two objects compared is sometimes expressed, as in English, by the particle *than*, нежели; but when the comparison is vague and indefinite, the particle is omitted, and the latter substantive put in the genitive case, as, весна́ пріятнѣ зимы, spring is more agreeable than winter.

§ 106. The comparison may be modified by adding the preposition *по*, or the adverb *гораздо*; the former diminishing, and the latter augmenting it, as, получше, a little better; гораздо лучше, much better.

§ 107. When the auxiliary verb to be, of the third person, either singular or plural, occurs in English between the substantive and the adjective, it is to be omitted in the Russian translation, as, здорóвiе дороже богáтства, health is more precious than riches. This rule relates also to adjectives in the positive degree V. § 88.

§ 108. Adjectives of the comparative degree are the same for all genders.



## THEME XI.

## ON THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

The rose is *more beautiful* than the lily. The eagle is stronger than the hawk. The *more simple* food is, the *more healthy* it is. Spring is *more agreeable* than winter. Gold is *more precious* than the other metals, but iron is *more useful* than gold. The works of nature are much *more majestic*, than all the productions

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| the rose, рѳза.        | winter, зимá.           |
| beautiful, прѳкрáсный. | gold, зѳлото.           |
| the lily, лйлія.       | precious, драгоцѳнный.  |
| the eagle, орѳль.      | than other metals, дру- |
| strong, сйльный.       | гихъ мѳпáлловъ.         |
| the hawk, ястребъ.     | but, но.                |
| the more food is, чѳмъ | iron, желѳзо.           |
| пйща бывáетъ, fol-     | useful, полѳзный.       |
| lowed by the comp.     | work, произвѳденіе.     |
| simple, прѳстый, V.    | nature, прирѳда.        |
| § 182.                 | much, V. § 106.         |
| the more it is, шѳмъ   | majestic, велйтѳствен-  |
| она.                   | ный.                    |
| healthy, здорѳвый.     | all, всѳ.               |
| spring, веснá.         | production, произве-    |
| agreeable, прйáтный.   | дѳніе.                  |

of art. A mountainous country is much *more attractive* than a dreary plain. The wool of the Saxon sheep is *finer* than the wool of the English. London is *more populous* than Paris. Asia is *more extensive* than Europe; but the Europeans are *more civilized* than the Asiaticks. The French language is *easier* than the Russian; but the Russian is *richer* than the French. Venus is *nearer* to the sun than the earth, and Mercury is *nearer* than Venus.

---

art, искусство.

Asia, Азія.

mountainous, гористый.

extensive, простран-  
ный.

country, страна.

Europe, Европа.

attractive, привлека-  
тельный.

a European, Европейецъ.

dreary, плоскій.

civilized, образованный

plain, равнина.

an Asiatick, Азіадецъ.

the wool, шерсть.

French, Французскій.

Saxon, Саксонскій.

language, языкъ.

sheep, (sing.) овца.

easy, лёгкій.

fine, тонкій, V. § 101.

Russian, Руской.

English, Англійскій.

rich, богатый, V. § 102.

London, Лондонъ.

Venus, Венера.

populous, многолюд-  
ный.

near, близкій V. § 103

the sun, солнце.

the earth, земля.

Paris, Парижъ.

Mercury, Меркурій.



## THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

§ 109. The superlative degree is formed from the comparative termination *те*, by changing the final *е* into *йшій*, ex.

*свѣтлѣ*, lighter, *свѣтлѣйшій*, the lightest.

§ 110. In those adjectives, in which the gutturals are changed into palatals, (V. § 101.) the *е* of the comparative is changed into *а* in the superlative degree, ex.

*блѣже*, nearer; *блѣжайшій*; the nearest.

§ 111. The superlative may also be formed as in English, by prefixing the adverb *сѣмѣй*, the most, to the positive degree, as: *сѣмѣй полѣзньй*, the most useful.

§ 112. When the quality of an object is to be expressed in a high degree, without comparison with, or reference to any other object, the adverb *весьма*, or *очень* is prefixed to the positive degree, as,

*весьма богѣйшій*, very rich.

*очень шрудньй*, very difficult,

§ 113. To increase the energy of expression *сѣмѣй*, *пре*, *все* or *нан* is sometimes prefixed to the superlative.

*книга сѣмая полѣзньйшая*, the most useful of  
books.  
*пресвѣтлѣйшій*, the brightest of all.



всемѣлостивѣйшій,            the most gracious of  
all.

наипрѣкраснѣйшій,           the most beautiful  
of all.

§ 114. The superlative may also be formed by prefixing the indefinite pronoun *всего́* to adjectives in the comparative degree, as :

всего́ древнѣе, the most ancient of all.



## THEME XII.

### ON THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Russia is the *most extensive* Empire in the world. Venus is the *brightest* of the planets. Self-love is the *most dangerous* flatterer. Natural history is one of the *most agreeable* sciences. Mercury is the *smallest* planet and the nearest

---

|                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Russia, Россія.             | flatterer, льстець.                 |
| extensive, <i>простран-</i> | natural, естествен-                 |
| ный.                        | ный.                                |
| empire, госудáрство.        | history, исторія.                   |
| world, свѣтъ.               | one, одна.                          |
| Venus, Венѣра.              | agreeable, пріятный.                |
| bright, свѣтлый.            | science, наука.                     |
| of, изъ.                    | Mercury, Меркүрій.                  |
| a planet, планѣта.          | small, <i>маленькій</i> , V. § 113. |
| self-love, самолюбіе.       | near, близкій.                      |
| dangerous, опасный.         | planet, планѣта.                    |

to the sun. The summits of the *loftiest* mountains are hid in the clouds. The horse is the *most beautiful*, and the sheep the *most useful* of all domestic animals. The ostrich is the *largest* of birds. The elephant is the *most sagacious* of all quadrupeds. It is considered as the *highest* degree of rudeness to interrupt the discourse of another person. A good example is the *strongest* incitement to

|                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| summit, вершина.             | quadruped, четвероногий.      |
| lofty, высокій.              |                               |
| mountain, горá.              | high, высокій.                |
| are hid, скрыва́ются.        | degree, стéпень.              |
| cloud, облако.               | rudeness, неучтíвость         |
| the horse, лошадь.           | it is considered, почитáется. |
| beautiful, краси́вый.        |                               |
| and the sheep, овца́ же.     | to interrupt, прерывáть.      |
| useful; полéзный.            |                               |
| of all, изъ всѣхъ.           | of another person, чужо́ю.    |
| domestic, домашнiй.          |                               |
| animal, живóтное.            | the discourse, рѣчь.          |
| the ostrich, спроусъ.        | good, хоро́ший.               |
| large, вели́кий.             | example, примѣръ.             |
| bird, пти́ца.                | strong, си́льный.             |
| the elephant, слонъ.         | incitement, побуждéníе.       |
| sagacious, смы́слён-<br>ный. | to, къ.                       |

virtue. China is the *most populous* country in the world.

---

China, Кита́й. country, страна́.  
 populous, *многолюдный*. world, свѣтъ.

~~~~~

## S E C T. IV.

### POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 115. Possessive adjectives are of two kinds : *personal* and *common*. *Personal* possessive adjectives are formed from names, professions &c by changing the *mas.* terminations into *овъ* and *евъ*, and the *feminine* into *инъ* and *цынъ*; ех. монаховъ, from монахъ, a monk, Царевъ, or Царскій from Царь a King; свекровинъ, from свекровь, mother-in-law, &c.

§ 116. *Common* possessive adjectives are formed from substantives, and terminate in the *nom. mas.* in *ый*, *скій*, *ній*, and *ій*. Those ending in *ый* are declined according to the first example of qualificative adjectives, *мудрый*, the rest according to the second of the following examples, *рыбій*.

**DECLENSION OF PERSONAL POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.**

поповъ, a priest's.			
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>of all gend.</i>
N. поповъ,	попова,	попово,	поповы.
G. попова,	поповой,	попова,	поповыхъ.
D. попову,	поповой,	попову,	поповымъ.
A. поповъ	попову,	попово,	поповъ
а			
			ы,
			ыхъ,
I. поповымъ,	поповою,	поповымъ,	поповыми.
P. о поповомъ,	о поповой,	о поповомъ,	о поповыхъ.

**DECLENSION OF COMMON POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.**

рыбій, fish (adj.)			
<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
	<i>Fem.</i>		<i>of all gen.</i>
Nom. рыбій,	рыбья,	рыбье,	рыбьи.
Gen. рыбьяго,	рыбьей,	рыбьяго,	рыбьихъ.
Dat. рыбьему,	рыбьей,	рыбьему,	рыбьимъ.
Acc. рыбъ	рыбью,	рыбье,	рыбь
и			
б			и
ьяго			ихъ.
Ins. рыбьимъ,	рыбьею,	рыбьимъ,	рыбьими.
Pг. о рыбьемъ,	о рыбьей,	о рыбьемъ,	о рыбьихъ.

The following examples will shew the manner of forming possessive adjectives from substantives.

<i>Substantives.</i>	<i>Poss. adjectives.</i>
Илья, Ely.	Ильинъ.
Монахъ, a monk.	монаховъ.
Ошѣць, father.	ошцевъ.

*Substantives.**Poss. adjectives.*

Пѣтръ , Peter.	Пѣтрѡвъ.
Свекрѡвъ, mother-in-law.	свекрѡвинъ.
Верблюдь , a camel.	верблюжій.
Волкъ , a wolf.	волчій.
Козá , a goat.	козій.
Овцá , a sheep.	овечій.
Птица , a bird.	птичій.
Деревня , a village.	деревенскій.
Звѣрь , an animal.	звѣрскій.
Зимá , winter.	зимній.



### THEME XIII.

**ON THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.**

*Cow's*, *sheep's* and *goat's* milk furnishes very healthy food. *Goat's* hair is employed in the manufacture of various stuffs. The Laplanders

---

milk , молоко.	is employed, употреб-
cow , корова:	ляютъ.
sheep , овца.	in the manufacture of,
goat , коза.	на.
furnishes, доставляетъ.	various , разныя.
very , весьма.	stuff, ткань.
healthy , здоровый.	a Laplander, Лаплá-
food , пища.	нецъ.

live upon *rein - deer* milk, and make themselves tents and clothing of the *rein - deer* skin. Hats, shawls and other articles are made of *camel* hair. *Ox* and *calf* skins are tanned for various uses. The inhabitants of the north clothe themselves in the winter in *sable, fox, bear*, and *wolf* skins. *Beaver* and *ermine* skins are high-

live upon, питаются.	are tanned, выдѣлываются.
a rein - deer, олень.	for various, для разнаго.
milk, молоко.	
they make themselves, дѣлаютъ себѣ.	use, употребленіе.
tent, шалашъ.	inhabitant, житель.
clothing, одежда.	the north, сѣверъ.
of, изъ, gov. the gen.	clothe themselves, одѣваются.
skin, кожа.	in the winter, зимою.
a camel, верблюды.	a sable, соболь.
hair, шерсть.	a fox, лисица.
a hat, шляпа.	a bear, медвѣдь.
a shawl, плащѣкъ.	a wolf, волкъ.
other, другія.	a beaver, бобръ.
article, издѣліе.	an ermine, горностай.
an ox, волъ.	
a calf, телѣта.	are highly valued, дорого цѣнятся.
skin, кожа.	

ly valued. *Hare* and *beaver* down is employed in the manufacture of hats.

---

a hare, <i>заяць</i> .	in, <i>для</i> , gov. the gen.
the down, <i>пухъ</i> .	manufacture, <i>дѣланіе</i> .
is employed, <i>служить</i> .	a hat, <i>шляпа</i> .

## S E C T. V.

### APOCOPATED ADJECTIVES.

§ 117. Adjectives may either be immediately prefixed to the substantive, as: *молодой человекъ*, a young man; *счастливая жена*, a happy wife, or connected by means of the auxiliary verb *быть*, to be. In the latter case, the verb is omitted in the present tense, and the adjective apocopated, ex. *онъ молодъ*, he *is* young; *она счастлива*, she *is* happy; *они здоровы*, they *are* healthy.

§ 118. Adjectives can only be apocopated in the positive degree V. § 88.

§ 119. Apocopated adjectives are formed from complete adjectives in the following manner.

<i>Comp. adjec.</i>	<i>apocopated adjec.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem. Neut. of all gen.</i>
дóбрый, good.	добрь,	ра́, ро́, дóбры.
мáлый, little.	малъ,	ла́, ло́, мáлы.
велíкий, great.	великъ,	ка́, ко́, велики.
хорóший, fine.	хорóшь,	ша́, шó, хороши.

#### IRREGULARITIES IN THE FORMATION OF THE АРОСОРЕ.

дóлгий, long.	дóлогъ,	лгá, лго́,
корóпкий, short.	корóшокъ,	шкá, шкó,
злыи, evil	золъ,	зла́, зло́,
тяжкíй, heavy.	тяжéкъ,	жкá, жко́,
сйльнии, strong.	силéнь,	льнá, льно́,
спокóйный, tranquil.	спокóень,	йна́, ойно́,

§ 120. The plural of apocopated adjectives is formed by changing the final *a* of the fem into *ы* or *и*, ex.

долгá,	дóлги.	тя́жка,	тя́жки.
корóшкá,	корóшки.	сильнá,	сйльны.
злá,	злы.	спокóйна.	спокóйны.

#### THEME XIV.

##### ON АРОСОРАТЕD ADJECTIVES.

*God is merciful. Virtue is modest. Be obedient*

---

merciful, *милосёрдый*, be, *будь*.  
modest, *скромный*. obedient, *покорный*.



in childhood, and thou wilt be *respected* in age. The road to fame *is difficult*. The society of the licentious *is contagious*. Even our enemies are sometimes *useful* to us by pointing out our defects. The tumultuous pleasures of the world *are deceitful*. Indolence *is disgraceful* and *injurious*. Man *is mortal*. The fox *is cunning*, the lion *magnanimous*, and the tiger *ferocious*.

---

childhood, дѣтство.	our, наши.
thou wilt be, будешь.	defect, недосѣпокъ,
respected, поэтённый.	V. § 14.
age, старость.	the tumultuous, шум-
the road, путь.	ный.
difficult, трудный.	pleasure, радость.
the society, сообще-	deceitful, обманчивый.
ство.	indolence, лѣность.
licentious, распущный.	disgraceful, постыд-
people, люди.	ный.
contagious, зарази-	injurious, вредный.
тельный.	mortal, смертный.
sometimes, иногда.	the fox, лисица.
even, самые.	cunning, хитрый.
enemy, врагъ, V. § 13.	the lion, левъ.
are, бывающъ.	magnanimous, вели-
to us, намъ.	кодушный.
useful, полезный.	the tiger, тигръ.
by pointing out, от-	ferocious, кровожад-
крываѣ.	ный.

Love is blind. Time is precious, and life is short.

---

love, любóвь.	precious, драгоцѣнный.
blind, слѣпый.	life, жизнь.
time, время.	short, короткій.

---

## S E C T. VI.

### AUGMENTATIVE AND DIMINUTIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ 121. Augmentative adjectives are only employed in the apocopated form, in the positive degree and nominative case.

§ 122. The augmentative terminations of adjectives are, *ехонекъ* and *ешенекъ*, either of which may be used.

	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
бѣлый, white,	бѣлѣхонекъ,	нѣка,	нѣко.
зелѣный, green,	зеленѣшенекъ,	нѣка,	нѣко.

§ 123. Diminutive adjectives are of two kinds: the first terminate in *онькій* and *енькій*, and relate to the diminutiveness of the object; as бѣленькой платóчикъ, a little white handkerchief; the second end in *еватый* and *оватый* and may be rendered in English by an

adjective with the modificative particle, *rather*;  
 Небо аловáто, the sky is *rather* red; онъ сла-  
 бовáтъ, he is *rather* weak.

*Formation of diminutive adjectives.*

	<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
плохой, bad.	плохóнькiй,	кая,	кое.
слабый, weak.	слабенькiй,	кая,	кое.
áлый, red.	аловáпый,	тая,	тое.

§ 124. The apocopated terminations of these  
 adjectives are *онекъ* or *енскъ*, *а*, *о*, pl. *и*;  
*оватъ* or *еватъ*, *а*, *о*, pl. *ы*.



PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON THE DECLENSION OF  
 ADJECTIVES.

The *gentle* and *refreshing* evening had succeed-  
 ed (already in place of) the *sultry* day, when  
*young* Uslad, the minstrel, approached the banks

---

gentle, <i>тiхий</i> .	day, <i>день</i> .
refreshing, <i>прохлад- ный</i> .	when, <i>когда</i> .
	Uslad, <i>Усладь</i> .
the evening, <i>вечеръ</i> .	young, <i>молодой</i> .
had succeeded, <i>засту- паль</i> .	minstrel, <i>пѣвецъ</i> .
	approached, <i>приблi- жился</i> .
already, <i>уже</i> .	
place, <i>мѣсто</i> .	bank, <i>берегъ</i> .
sultry, <i>палiщий</i> .	

of the Moscow river, on which he had past the flowery days of his youth. The smooth surface of the water, scarcely ruffled by the gentle zephyr, was covered with the radiant glory of the west. In its mirror were reflected from one side the dark forest and the castle of the terrible Rogdai, surrounded with a high oaken palisade (it was built on a steep hill,

Moscow, Москва́.	the west, запа́дь.
a river, ре́ка.	mirror, зерца́ло.
on which, на кото́-	was reflected, отража́-
рыхъ.	лись.
he had past, провёлъ.	from one side, съ од-
flowery, цвѣту́щей.	ной стороны.
his, своейъ.	dark, дремучѣй.
youth, юность.	forest, лѣсъ.
smooth, гладкій.	castle, кре́мль.
surface, по́верхность.	terrible, гро́зный.
water, вода́, (to be	Rogdai, Рогда́й.
put in the plu.)	surrounded, окру́жен-
scarcely, едва́.	ной.
ruffled, лобза́емый.	high, высо́кій.
gentle, лёгкій.	oaken, дубо́вый.
zephyr, выперо́къ.	palisade, ты́нь.
was covered, покры́та	it was built, онъ былъ
была́.	постро́енъ.
radiant, ро́зовый.	steep, кру́тый.
glory, сѣ́яніе.	hill, гора́.

there , where now we see the *embattled* walls of the Cremel , the *magnificent* halls of the ancient Russian Tsars ) from the other the *green* bank , covered with shrubs and scattered with the *lowly* cottages of the peasantry . All around , reigned tranquillity ; the air was impregnated with the fragrance of the *blooming* linden-tree ; at times the voice of the nightingale ,

there , тамъ.	scattered , <i>осыпанный</i> .
where , гдѣ.	lowly , <i>низкій</i> .
now , нынѣ.	cottage , хижина.
we see , видимъ.	all around , повсюду.
embattled , <i>зубчатой</i> .	reigned , царствовало.
a wall , стѣна.	tranquillity , <i>спокой-</i>
Cremel , Кремль.	<i>ствіе</i> .
magnificent , велико-	the air , воздухъ.
<i>лѣпный</i> .	was impregnated , былъ
hall , чертогъ.	<i>растворѣнъ</i> .
ancient , <i>древній</i> .	fragrance , благоуханіе.
Russian , Рускій.	blooming , <i>цвѣтущій</i> .
Tsar , Царь.	the linden-tree , липа.
from the other , съ дру-	at times , иногда.
гой.	the depth , глубина.
green , <i>зелёный</i> .	forest , лѣсъ.
bank , берегъ.	resounded , раздавался.
covered , <i>покрытый</i> .	the voice , голосъ.
shrubs , кустарникъ.	nightingale , соловей.

or the *plaintive* notes of the thrush resounded in the depth of the forest; at others the *fickle* breeze shook the tops of the trees, and the *timid* rabbit, startled by the rustling, skipped into the thicket and rattled among the *withered* branches. Usnad proceeded along the path-way, which wound among the trees; his soul, swelling with recollections of the past, was

plaintive, <i>пезáльный</i> .	(among, expressed by
notes, <i>пѣніе</i> .	the Ins. case)
the thrush, <i>иволга</i> .	withered, <i>изсóхшій</i> . *
at others, <i>иногда</i> .	branch, <i>въпвь</i> .
fickle, <i>непостоянный</i> ,	proceeded, <i>шелъ</i> .
the breeze, <i>въшерóкъ</i> .	along, <i>по</i> , gov. the dat.
shóok, <i>пошрясáлъ</i> .	the path-way, <i>про-</i>
the top, <i>вершина</i> .	<i>пѣнка</i> .
a tree, <i>дѣрево</i> .	which wound, <i>извивáв-</i>
timid, <i>рóбкій</i> .	<i>шейся</i> .
a rabbit, <i>крóликъ</i> .	among, <i>мѣжду</i> , gov.
startled, <i>испуганный</i> .	the ins.
the rustling, <i>шóрохъ</i> .	a tree, <i>дѣрево</i> .
skipped, <i>бросáлся</i> .	swelling, <i>напóлненная</i> .
the thicket, <i>кустар-</i>	recollection of the past,
<i>никъ</i> .	<i>воспоми́наніе</i> .
rattled, <i>шумѣлъ</i> .	was, <i>была</i> .

\* The participles are declined as adjectives.

plunged in pensiveness. Where art thou O happiness! exclaimed Uslad, I return to the spot, on which I once exulted in my existence: the *shady* grove, the *bright* river, the *green* banks are still the same, the *fragrant* linden - tree still sends forth its *grateful* odour, and the *plaintive* notes of the nightingale and thrush are still heard in the depth of the

plunged, погруженный.	bright, свѣтлый.
pensiveness, задумчивость.	river, рѣка.
where art thou, гдѣ ты.	green, зелѣный.
O happiness, мой радость.	are still the same, не измѣнилось.
exclaimed, воскликнулъ.	still, по прѣжнему.
I return, прихожѹ.	fragrant, благовоонный.
to, на.	the linden - tree, липа.
the same, тоже.	sends forth, разли- ваетъ.
spot, мѣсто.	grateful, сладостный.
on which, на которомъ.	odour, запахъ.
once, нѣкогда.	still, по прѣжнему.
exulted, восхищался.	plaintive, унылый.
in my existence, бы- шіемъ своимъ.	notes, пѣніе.
shady, тѣністый.	the nightingale, со- ловей.
a grove, роща.	the thrush, йволга.
	are heard, раздаётся.
	depth, глубина.

\* \*

forest; but he, who once delighted in the fragrance of the blooming linden - tree and the warbling of the nightingale, is now dead to joy. *Joukofsky.*

but he, а шопъ.                      fragránce, благово́нiе.  
 who, кто.                              blooming, цвѣту́щiй.  
 once, нѣкогда.                      warbling, пѣнiе.  
 delighted, усажда́лся. is now dead to joy,  
 (in, expressed by the шопъужѣ не похо́жъ  
    Ins. case.)                      на самаго́ себя.

TABLE FOR THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

<i>S i n g u l a r.</i>						
<i>M a s.</i>			<i>F e m.</i>		<i>N e u t.</i>	
Nom.	ый	ій	ая	яя	ое	ее
Gen.	аго	яго	ой, (ыя)	ей, (ія)	аго	яго
Dat.	ому	ему	ой	ей	ому	ему
Acc.	} ый	ій	ую	юю	ое	ее
		яго				
Ins.	ымъ	имъ	ою	ею	ымъ	имъ
Prep.	омъ	емъ	ой	ей	омъ	емъ
<i>P l u r u l.</i>						
Nom.	ые	іе	ыя	ія	ыя	ія
Gen.	ыхъ	ихъ	ыхъ	ихъ	ыхъ	ихъ
Dat.	ымъ	имъ	ымъ	имъ	ымъ	имъ
Acc.	} ые	іе	ыя	ія	ыя	ія
		ихъ				
Ins.	ыми	ими	ыми	ими	ыми	ими
Prep.	ыхъ	ихъ	ыхъ	ихъ	ыхъ	ихъ.



## C H A P. III.

## N U M E R A L S.

§ 125. Numbers are of two kinds : cardinal and ordinal; the former are declined as substantives, the latter have the termination and declension of adjectives.

## S E C T I.

## C A R D I N A L N U M B E R S.

одинъ,	one.
два,	two.
три,	three.
четыре,	four.
пять,	five.
шесть,	six.
семь,	seven.
восемь,	eight.
девять,	nine.
десять,	ten.
одиннадцать,	eleven.
двенадцать,	twelve.
тринадцать,	thirteen.

четырнадцать,	fourteen.
пятнадцать,	fifteen.
шестнадцать,	sixteen.
семнадцать,	seventeen.
восемнадцать,	eighteen.
девятнадцать,	nineteen.
двадцать,	twenty.
двадцать одинъ,	twenty - one.
двадцать два,	twenty - two &c.
тридцать,	thirty.
сорокъ,	forty.
пятьдесятъ,	fifty.
шестьдесятъ,	sixty.
семьдесятъ,	seventy.
восемьдесятъ,	eighty.
девяносто,	ninety.
сто,	a hundred.
сто одинъ,	a hundred and one &c.
двѣсти,	two hundred.
триста,	three hundred.
четыреста,	four hundred.
пять сотъ,	five hundred.
шесть сотъ,	six hundred &c.
тысяча,	a thousand.
двѣ тысячи,	two thousand.
пять тысячъ,	five thousand.
милліонъ,	a million.

§ 126. The collective numbers are; *па́ра*, a pair; *пятьо́къ*, five; *полдю́жины*, half a dozen; *деся́токъ*, ten; *дю́жина*, a dozen; *два деся́тка*, a score; *со́тня*, a hundred.

§ 127. The distributive numbers are: *половина*, half; *треть*, a third; *че́тверть*, a quarter; *полтора́*, one and a half; *полтретья́*, two and a half; *полчешверта́*, three and a half, &c.

§ 128. The proportional numbers are: *двойно́й*, double; *тройно́й*, treble; *чешверно́й*, quadruple; *стокра́тны́й*, centuple.

§ 129. The simple cardinal numbers are declined as the substantives, which have similar terminations; and the compound, as: *пятьдеся́тъ*, fifty; *шестьдеся́тъ*, sixty &c. being composed of two numbers, each number is declined according to its own termination.

*E x a m p l e.*

<i>Simple.</i>	<i>Compound.</i>
N. <i>шесть</i> , six.	<i>шестьдеся́тъ</i> , sixty.
G. <i>шестѣ</i> , of — — —	<i>шестѣдесяти</i> , of —
D. <i>шестѣ</i> , to — — —	<i>шестѣдесяти</i> , to —
A. <i>шесть</i> . — — — —	<i>шестьдеся́тъ</i> . — —
I. <i>шестью́</i> , by or with.	<i>шестью́ десяты́ю</i> , by or with.
P. о <i>шестѣ</i> , of — —	о <i>шестѣдесяти</i> , of.

§ 130. The following are declined as adjectives.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
N. одинъ, one.	одна, —	одно.	одни.
G. одного, of —	одной, —	одного,	однихъ.
D. оному, to —	одной, —	одному,	однимъ.
A. од { <sup>и</sup> нъ ногó — —	одну,	одно,	од { <sup>и</sup> нъ. нихъ.
I. однимъ, by or with.	одною,	однимъ,	одними.
P. объ одномъ, of одной,	одномъ,	однихъ.	

<i>Mas. and Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom. два, two. — — —	двѣ.
Gen. двухъ, of — — —	двухъ.
Dat. двумъ, to — — —	двумъ.
Acc. дв { <sup>а</sup> ухъ — — — —	дв { <sup>ѣ</sup> ухъ
Ins. двумя, by or with.	двумя.
Prep. о двухъ, of — —	о двухъ.

<i>Mas. and Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom. оба, both. — — —	обѣ.
Gen. обоихъ, of — — —	обоихъ.
Dat. обоимъ, to — — —	обоимъ.
Acc. об { <sup>а</sup> оихъ — — — —	об { <sup>ѣ</sup> вихъ.
Ins. обоими, by or with,	обими.
Prep. о обоихъ, of — —	о обоихъ.

*Of all three genders.*

Nom. три, three.	четыре, four.
Gen. трехъ, тройхъ — —	четырёхъ, of —

Dat. тремъ, троимъ — четыремъ, to—

Acc. тр<sup>и</sup>хъ, про<sup>е</sup>ихъ, — четыр<sup>е</sup>хъ. —

Ins. тремя, троими. — четырьмя, by or with.

Prep. о трехъ, тройхъ. — о четырёхъ, of.

§ 131. The numbers, триста, three hundred and четыреста, four hundred, are declined according to the first of the following examples, and шестьсотъ, six hundred; семьсотъ, seven hundred; восемьсотъ, eight hundred and девятьсотъ, nine hundred, according to the second.

N. двѣсти, two hundred. пять сотъ, five hundred.

G. двухъ сотъ, of — — пяти сотъ, of — —

D. двумъ стахъ, to — — пяти стахъ, to — —

A. двѣсти — — — пять сотъ. — — —

I. двумя стами, by or with. пятью стами, by or with.

P. о двухъ стахъ, of — — о пяти стахъ, of. —

§ 132. Each simple number or component part of a compound number (however many there may be) is declined according to its own termination.

Nom. пять-сотъ шестидесять семь.

Gen. пяти-сотъ шестидесяти семй.

Dat. пяти-стахъ шестидесяти семй.

Acc. пять-сотъ шестидесять семь.

Ins. пятью-стами шестьюдесятью семью.

Prep. о пяти-стахъ шестидесяти семй.



## THEME XV.

## ON THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

The universal deluge in the time of Noah , continued *three hundred and seventy - seven* days. The Israelites wandered *forty* years in the wilderness. The solar year consists of *three hundred and sixty - five* days , *five* hours and *forty - five* minutes. Rome was built *seven hundred and fifty - three* years before the birth of Christ. Ptolemy Philadelphus employed *seventy - two* interpreters in the translation of the old tes-

universal , всеобщій.

deluge , потопъ.

the time , время.

Noah , Ной ,

continued , продолжал-

ся.

day , день.

wilderness , пустыня.

the solar year , солнеч-

ный годъ.

consists , состоитъ.

of , изъ , gov. the gen.

hour , часъ.

minute , минуша.

Rome , Римъ.

was built , построень.

before , до , gov. the

gen.

the birth , рождествó.

of Christ , Христо́во.

Ptolomy Philadelphus ,

Пшоломэй Филадельфъ.

employed , употребилъ.

interpreter , толков-

никъ.

in , для , gov. the gen.

the translation , пере-

водъ.

old , вѣщій.

testament , завѣщъ.

tament into the Greek language. Constantinople was taken by the Turks, *one thousand one hundred and twenty-three* years after the removal thither of the capital by Constantine the Great, and *two thousand, two hundred and six* years after the building of the city of Rome. The Alexandrian library consisted of *three hundred thousand* volumes. Moses left Egypt with *six hundred thousand* Israelites, *four hundred and thirty* years after their first establishment in that country. A circle is divided into *three hundred and sixty*

---

into , на , gov. the acc.	Rome , Римъ.
Greek , Грѣческій.	Alexandrian , Алексан-
language , языкъ.	дрійскій.
Constantinople , Кон-	library , библіотека.
станшинópolis.	consisted , состояла.
was taken , былъ взятъ.	of , изъ , gov. the gen.
Turk , Турокъ.	volume , книга.
after , послѣ.	Moses , Моисѣй.
the removal , переселѣ-	left , оставилъ.
ніе	Egypt , Египетъ.
thither , туда.	their , ихъ.
the capital , столица.	establishment , посе-
Constantine , Констан-	лѣніе.
тинъ.	that , сей.
great , великій ,	country , страна.
the building , постро-	a circle , кругъ.
еніе.	is divided , раздѣляется.

degrees. The light of the solar rays reaches us in about *eight* minutes. Alexander the great ascended the throne at *twenty*, and died at *thirty* years of age. *Thirty thousand* Jewish prisoners of war laboured during *five* years at the erection of the Roman amphitheatre, known under the name of the Col<sup>o</sup>seum. The portico of this building was a *thousand* and *fifty* feet in circumference, and supported by *four* rows of

---

degree, градусъ.	under, подъ, gov. the inst.
the light, свѣтъ.	name, имя.
solar, солнечный.	Coloseum, Колизей.
ray, лучъ.	laboured, работали.
reaches, достигаешь	during, въ продолженіе.
to, до.	Jewish prisoners of war,
us, насъ.	военнопленныхъ Ев-
about, почти.	реевъ.
Alexander, Александръ.	the portico, портикъ.
ascended, вступилъ.	of this, сего.
the throne, престолъ.	building, зданіе.
of age, отъ роду.	was, имѣлъ.
at, при, gov. the prep.	a foot, футъ.
the building, построе-	circumference, окру-
ніе.	ность.
Roman, Римскій.	was, былъ.
amphitheatre, амфи-	supported, поддержи-
театръ.	ваемъ.
known, известный.	a row, рядъ.



pillars, each *two hundred and twenty-two* feet high. It was capable of containing a *hundred thousand* spectators, and not unfrequently a choir of *three thousand* singers and as many dancers amused the Roman public in this stupendous edifice. The height of the Mont-blanc is *fourteen thousand, five hundred and fifty-six* feet, and the height of the Chimborazzo *nineteen thousand, six hundred and two* feet. (*french.*)

---

a pillar, столбъ.	a singer, пѣвецъ.
height, выши́на.	as many, столько же.
each, кажды́й.	a dancer, танцѳщица.
it was capable of con-	amused, увеселяли.
taining, въ немъ по-	in this, въ семъ.
мѣщалось.	stupendous, огромный.
as many as, до, gov.	Roman, Римскій.
the gen.	public, публика.
a spectator, зритель.	Mont-blanc, Монбланъ.
not, не.	is, составляешь.
unfrequently, рѣдко.	Chimborazzo, Чимбо-
choir, хоръ.	рассо.

---

## S E C T. II.

## O R D I N A L N U M B E R S,

пёрвый ,	first.
второй ,	second.
третій ,	third.
четвёртый ,	fourth.
пятый ,	fifth.
шестой ,	sixth.
седьмой ,	seventh.
осьмой ,	eighth.
девятый ,	ninth.
десятый ,	tenth.
одиннадцатый ,	eleventh.
двѣнадцатый ,	twelfth.
тринадцатый ,	thirteenth.
четырнадцатый ,	fourteenth.
пятнадцатый ,	fifteenth.
шестнадцатый ,	sixteenth.
семнадцатый ,	seventeenth.
восемнадцатый ,	eighteenth.
девятнадцатый ,	nineteenth.
двадцатый ,	twentieth.
двадцать пёрвый ,	twenty-first.
двадцать второй ,	twenty-second. &c.
тридцатый ,	thirtieth.
сороковый ,	fortieth.
пятидесятый ,	fiftieth.
шестидесятый ,	sixtieth.

семидеся́тый ,	seventieth.
восми́деся́тый ,	eightieth.
девяно́сый ,	ninetieth.
со́тый ,	hundredth.
сто пе́рвый ,	hundred and first &c.
двухсо́тый ,	two hundredth.
трехсо́тый ,	three hundredth.
четырёхсо́тый ,	four hundredth.
пятисо́тый ,	five hundredth.
шести́сотый ,	six hundredth.
семисо́тый ,	seven hundredth.
восми́со́тый ,	eight hundredth.
девя́тисо́тый ,	nine hundredth.
ты́сячный ,	thousandth.
двухты́сячный ,	two thousandth.
пяти́тыся́чный ,	five thousandth.
миллио́нный .	millionth.

§ 133. Ordinal numbers are declined as adjectives.

#### Е X А М П Л Е .

##### *Singular.*

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. пе́рвый , the first.	пе́рвая ,	пе́рвое .
Gen. пе́рваго , of — —	пе́рвой ,	пе́рваго .
Dat. пе́рвому , to — —	пе́рвой ,	пе́рвому .
Acc. пе́рвый (аго) —	пе́рвую ,	пе́рвое .
Inst. пе́рвымъ , by or with.	пе́рвою ,	пе́рвымъ .
Prep. о пе́рвомъ , of —	о пе́рвой ,	о пе́рвомъ .

*P l u r a l.*

Nom.	пѣрвые,	пѣрвыя,	пѣрвыя.
Gen.	пѣрвыхъ,	пѣрвыхъ,	пѣрвыхъ.
Dat.	пѣрвымъ,	пѣрвымъ,	пѣрвымъ.
Acc.	пѣрвые (ыхъ),	пѣрвыя (ыхъ),	пѣрвыя.
Ins.	пѣрвыми,	пѣрвыми,	пѣрвыми.
Прер.	о пѣрвыхъ,	о пѣрвыхъ,	о пѣрвыхъ.

§ 134. In marking the date from any particular era, the Russians employ ordinal numbers, ex. книгопечатаніе изобрѣтено въ тысячѣ четыреста сороковомъ году, printing was invented in the thousand four hundred and fortieth year. (in the year one thousand four hundred and forty.)

§ 135. When the number is compound, or composed of several simple numbers, the ordinal termination is only added to the last, ex. Америка была открыта въ тысячѣ четыреста девяносто второмъ году, America was discovered in the thousand four hundred and ninety - second year (In the year one thousand four hundred and ninety - two.)



## THEME XVI.

## ON THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

On the monument of Peter the Great there is the following inscription: Catherine the *second* to Peter the *first*. The names of Peter the *first*, Fredrick the *second* and Henry the *fourth* are immortal in history. Rome had seven kings: the *first* was Romulus, the *second* Numa Pompilius, the *third* Tullus Hostilius, the *fourth* Ancus Martius, the *fifth* Tarquin Priscus, the *sixth* Servius Tullius, and the *seventh* and last, Tarquin the proud. The *first* month in

---

monument, пѣмѣшникъ.	was, былъ.
Peter, Пѣтръ.	Romulus, Рѣмуль.
there is, изображенѣ.	Numa Pompilius, Ну-
following, слѣдующій.	ма Помпѣлѣй.
inscription, нѣдпись.	Tullus Hostilius, Туль-
Catherine, Екѣтерѣна.	Гостѣлѣй.
name, ѣмя.	Ancus Martius, Анкъ
Fredrick, Фрѣдрихъ.	Мѣрцѣй.
Henry, Гѣнрихъ.	Tarquin Priscus, Тар-
immortal, безсмѣрт-	квѣнѣй Прискъ.
ный.	Servius Tullius, Сѣр-
history, истѣорѣя.	вѣй Тъллѣй.
Rome, Римъ.	Tarquin the proud, Тар-
had, имѣлъ.	квѣнѣй гѣрдѣй.
a King, Цѣрь.	month, мѣсяцъ.

the year is January, the *second* February, the *third* March, the *fourth* April, the *fifth* May, the *sixth* June, the *seventh* July, the *eighth* August, the *ninth* September, the *tenth* October, the *eleventh* November, the *twelfth* December. The compass was invented in the year *one thousand three hundred and three*. The Russian company was established in England in the year *one thousand five hundred and fifty-five*. Peter the Great defeated Charles the *twelfth* at Poltava in the year *one thousand seven hundred and nine*. America was discovered in the fifteenth century.

---

January, Генв́арь, V. invented, изобрѣ́хень.

§ 41. Russian, Россійскій.

February, Февра́ль. company, торго́вое о́б-

March, Маршъ. щество.

April, Апрѣ́ль. was established, осно́-

May, Май. вано.

June, Ю́нь. England, Англі́я.

July, Ю́ль. defeated, побѣ́диль.

August, Авгу́стъ. Charles, Карлъ.

September, Сентя́брь. at, при, gov. the prep.

October, Октя́брь. Poltava, Полта́ва.

November, Ноя́брь. was discovered, от-

December, Дека́брь. кры́ша.

the compass, компáсь. century, вѣ́къ.

was, былъ.



## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON NUMERALS.

Russia extends from East to West *one hundred and sixty - nine* degrees and a half, that is, from the *thirty - ninth* to the two *hundred and eighth* degree of longitude \*; but if we include the most distant isles of the eastern ocean (which reach to the *two hundred and twenty - fifth* degree), it extends *one hundred and ~~eighty - nine~~ <sup>eighty - six</sup>* degrees. In its greatest breadth from North to South it extends *thirty - eight*

---

Russia , Россія.	distant , отдалённый.
extends , простира́ет-	isle , о́стровъ.
ся.	eastern , восточный.
from , отъ , gov. the gen.	ocean , океа́нъ.
the east , востокъ.	which , кои.
the west , запа́дъ.	reach , доходя́тъ.
(here follows the pre-	(it extends , not to be
position на.)	repeated.)
and , съ , gov. the ins.	its greatest breadth ,
a half , полови́на.	са́мое большо́е про-
a degree , гра́дусъ.	тяже́ние.
that is , то есть.	the north , сѣверъ.
longitude , долго́та.	the south , ю́гъ.
but if we include , а	it extends , составля́-
включа́я.	е́тъ.

---

\* Reckoning from the meridian of the isle of Fero.

degrees, that is from the *seventy - eighth* to the *fortieth* degree of Latitude; consequently the greater part of Russia is situated in the temperate, and the smaller part in the frigid zone.

The whole surface of the Empire (exclusive of the isles of the Eastern ocean) covers a space of *three hundred and forty thousand* German Geographical square miles, or *sixteen millions, six hundred and sixty thousand* square versts.

---

latitude, широтá.	the Empire, Госудár-
consequently, слѣдо-	ство.
пательно.	exclusive, выключáя.
the greater part, вели-	covers a space of, про-
чайшая часть.	спира́ется на.
is situated, находится.	Geographical, Геогра-
temperate, умѣренный.	фическiй.
the smaller, сáмая мá-	square, квадра́нный.
лая.	German, Нѣмецкiй.
frigid, холóдный.	mile, мiля.
zone, поясь.	or, или.
the whole surface, вся	a verst, верста́.
же повёрхность.	

---



## C H A P. IV.

## P R O N O U N S.

## S E C T. I.

## G E N E R A L R E M A R K S.

§ 136. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

§ 137. Pronouns may be divided into personal, relative, possessive, demonstrative and indefinite.

§ 138. Pronouns are subject to the same modifications of number, gender and case as substantives.

§ 139. Personal pronouns are used instead of names. There are three persons: the first, who speaks, the second, the person spoken to, and the third, the person spoken of. I, thou, he; *я, ты, онъ*. plural: we, you, they; *мы, вы, они*.

§ 140. Relative pronouns relate to some preceding word or phrase.

§ 141. Possessive pronouns denote possession, as: *мой, my; твой, thy; его, his.* &c.

§ 142. Demonstrative pronouns, serve to point out objects, as, *сей, this; тотъ, that* &c. Indefinite pronouns are such as belong

to neither of the above kinds, as, *нѣко-  
торый*, a certain, *нѣкто* some one &c.

§ 143. Pronouns become interrogative by the construction of the sentence and the affix of the sign (?).

## S E C T. II.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

#### DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

##### 1st. *P e r s o n.*

##### *S i n g.*

##### *P l u.*

Nom.	я, I.	мы, we.
Gen.	меня, of me.	насъ, of us.
Dat.	мнѣ, to me.	намъ, to us.
Acc.	меня, me.	насъ, us.
Ins.	мною, by me.	нами, by us.
Prep.	о мнѣ, of me.	о насъ, of us.

##### 2nd. *P e r s o n.*

Nom.	ты, thou.	вы, you.
Gen.	тебя, of thee.	васъ, of you.
Dat.	тебѣ, to thee.	вамъ, to you.
Acc.	тебя, thee.	васъ, you.
Ins.	тобою, by thee.	вами, by you.
Prep.	о тебѣ, of thee.	о васъ, of you.

## 3rd. Person Singular.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom. онъ, he.	она́, she.	оно́, it.
Gen. егó, of him.	ея́, of her.	егó, of it.
Dat. ему́, 'to him.	ей́, to her.	ему́, to it.
Acc. егó, him.	ее́, her.	егó, it.
Ins. имъ, by him.	ею́, by her.	имъ, by it.
Prep. о немъ, of him.	о ней, of her.	о немъ, of it.

## P l u.

<i>Mas.</i>	<i>Fem. and. Neut.</i>
Nom. онѣ́, they.	онѣ́.
Gen. ихъ́, of them.	ихъ́.
Dat. имъ́, to them.	имъ́.
Acc. ихъ́; them.	ихъ́.
Ins. ими́, by them.	ими́.
Prep. о нихъ́, of them.	о нихъ́.

§ 144. The reflexive personal pronoun *себя́*, self, is of all three genders, and of both numbers: *самъ себя́*, himself; *сама себя́*, herself, *само себя́*, itself, *сами себя́*, themselves.

§ 145. *Самъ* is sometimes added to nouns and personal pronouns to mark with greater precision the identity of the person: *сами родители не красивы́, но дѣти ихъ́*, the parents themselves are not handsome, but their children.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
N.	самъ,	сама,	само,	сами.
G. себя,	самаго,	самой,	самаго,	самихъ.
D. себѣ,	самоу,	самой,	самоу,	самимъ.
A. себя,	самаго,	саму,	само,	самихъ.
I. собою,	самимъ,	самою,	самимъ,	самими.
P. о себѣ,	о самомъ.	о самой,	о самомъ,	о самихъ.

## T H E M E XVII.

### ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Tell *me* with whom *you* \* associate, and *I* will tell *you* \* who *you* \* are. Remember *me*, when *you* \* are fortunate. *He*, who is not for *me*, is against *me*. Aristotle, giving

---

tell, скажи.	are fortunate, будешь
with whom, съ кѣмъ.	счастливъ.
associate, обходишься.	he who, кто.
will tell, скажу.	is not, не.
who you are, кто ты	with, со, gov. the ins.
цаковъ.	is against, прошивъ.
remember, помни.	Aristotle, Аристотель.
when, когда.	giving, подавая.

---

\* In the above sentences, the second person plural of the English, when marked with an asterisk is to be rendered by the second person singular in Russ.

alms to an unworthy man , said : I do not give this to *him*, but to humanity. A true friend discovers to *us* our faults. Natural history gives (to) *us* an idea of *ourselves* , and of the objects which surround *us*. Reason points out (to *us*) the road to happiness ; but our passions divert *us* from it. Upon a certain Egyptian statue there was the following inscription : I am he, who was, is,

alms, милостыня.	which surround, окру-
unworthy, злой.	жающихъ.
said, сказалъ.	reason, разсудокъ.
I do not give, не даю.	points out, указываетъ.
but, а.	the road, путь.
humanity, человече-	to, къ, gov. the dat.
ство.	happiness, благополу-
true, вѣрный.	but, а. чие.
friend, другъ.	divert, отвлекающъ.
discovers, открываетъ.	from it, отъ онаго.
our, наши.	upon, на, gov. the prep.
fault, недостатокъ.	a certain, одна.
natural, естествен-	Egyptian, Египетскій.
ный.	statue, статуя.
history, исторія.	there was, была.
gives, даётъ.	following, слѣдующій.
an idea, понятіе.	inscription, надпись.
of, о, gov. the prep.	am he, есмь я.
ourselves, сами, V. § 145.	who was, кто былъ.
object, предметъ.	is, есть.

and will be for ever; no one has ever taken the veil off *me*. To be angry is to punish *one's self* for the fault of another. Beware of a fool, if *you\** touch *him*; of a wise man, if *you\** do (to) *him* an injury, and of a vicious man, if *you\** associate *with him*. Many people are like the current coin; not unfrequently we are obliged to receive *them* according to the rate of *exchange*, and not according to their intrinsick value.

---

will be , бѹдетъ.	a vicious man , злый.
for ever , въ вѣкъ.	associate , сведѣшь зна-
no one , никто.	комсшво.
has ever , ещё.	many , многіе.
taken , не снималъ.	people , люди.
off , съ , gov. the gen.	are like , подобны , gov.
veil , завѣса.	the dat.
to be angry , гнѣваться.	current , ходячіѣ.
is , значить.	coin , монѣта.
to punish , наказывать.	not unfrequently , не
for , за.	рѣдко.
the fault of another ,	we are , бываемъ.
чужю винѹ.	obliged , принужденъ.
Beware , берегись.	to receive , приниматъ.
a fool , глупецъ.	according , по , gov. the
if , если.	dat.
touch , тронешь.	the rate , not expressed.
a wise man , умный.	the exchange , курсъ.
do , причинишь.	intrinsick , истинный.
an injury , обѣда.	value , достоинство.

---

## S E C T III.

## R E L A T I V E P R O N O U N S.

§ 146. The relative pronoun **кошóрый**, which, is applied indiscriminately to persons, or things inanimate, and answers to the English personal and impersonal pronouns *who* and *which*.

## D E C L E N S I O N O F T H E R E L A T I V E P R O N O U N

кошóрый.

*S i n g.**M.**F.**N.*

N. кошóрый,	кошóрая,	кошóрое.
G. кошóраго,	кошóрой,	кошóраго.
D. кошóрому,	кошóрой,	кошóрому.
A. кошóр <sup>ый</sup> аго,	кошóрую,	кошóрбе.
I. кошóрымъ,	кошóрою,	кошóрымъ.
P. о кошóромъ,	о кошóрой	о кошóромъ.

*P l u.*

N. кошóрые,	кошóрья,	кошóрья.
G. кошóрыхъ,	кошóрыхъ,	кошóрыхъ.
D. кошóрымъ,	кошóрымъ,	кошóрымъ.
A. кошóр <sup>ые</sup> ыхъ,	кошóр <sup>ья</sup> ыхъ,	кошóрья.
I. кошóрыми,	кошóрыми,	кошóрыми.
P. о кошóрыхъ,	о кошóрыхъ,	о кошóрыхъ.

§ 147. When the style approaches the sublime, the relative pronoun **кой**, who, which, is employed instead of **кошóрый**; but it is never used in common conversation.

\* \*

DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN *кой*.

	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
Nom.	ко́й,	ко́я,	ко́е,	ко́и.
Gen.	ко́его,	ко́ей,	ко́его,	ко́ихъ.
Dat.	ко́ему,	ко́ей,	ко́ему,	ко́имъ,
Acc.	ко <sup>й</sup> <sub>его</sub> ,	ко́ю,	ко́е,	ко́ <sup>и</sup> <sub>ихъ</sub> ,
Ins.	ко́имъ,	ко́ею,	ко́имъ,	ко́ими.
Prep.	о ко́емъ,	о ко́ей,	о ко́емъ,	о ко́ихъ.

§ 148. The relative pronoun *кто*, who, can only relate to persons, and is declined as follows.

Nom.	кто, who.
Gen.	кого́, of whom.
Dat.	кому́, to whom.
Acc.	кого́, whom.
Ins.	къмъ, by or with whom.
Prep.	о комъ, of whom.

§ 149. The relative pronoun *что*, *what*, is impersonal.

Nom.	что, what.
Gen.	чегó, of what.
Dat.	чему́, to what.
Acc.	что, what.
Ins.	чѣмъ, by or with what.
Prep.	о чемъ, of what.



<i>M.</i>		<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>Plu.</i>
Nom. чей, whose.		чья,	чье,	чьи.
Gen. чьего, of — —		чей,	чьего,	чьихъ.
Dat. чему, to — —		чей,	чему,	чьимъ.
Acc. ч $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{ей,} \\ \text{ьего,} \end{array} \right.$ — —		чью,	чье,	чьи.
Ins. чьимъ, by or with.		чьёю,	чьимъ,	чьими.
Pr. - о чьёмъ, of — —		о чей,	о чьёмъ,	о чьихъ.

~~~~~

## T H E M E XVIII.

### ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Beware of him, *who* continually praises thee.  
 He is brave, *whom* nothing can disturb,  
 People seldom love him, *whom* they fear.

---

|                      |                     |               |
|----------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| beware, остерега́йся | to disturb,         | встрѣво́-     |
| of him, того́. *     |                     | жишь.         |
| continually, непре-  | can,                | не въ состо́- |
| ста́нно.             |                     | я́ннѣ,        |
| praises, хва́лишь,   | people, лю́ди.      |               |
| is brave, мѹжест-    | seldom, рѣ́дко.     |               |
| вень,                | love, любя́шь.      |               |
| nothing, ничто́.     | they fear, боя́тся. |               |

---

\* In such phrases, the Russians make use of the demonstrative pronoun *тотъ*, that one, instead of the personal pronoun.

Do not consider it a disgrace to learn in age, *what* you neglected in youth. Defer not until to - morrow, *what* thou canst perform to - day. Philip king of Macedon had an attendant, *who* used to remind him, that he was mortal. Life is like a dream, from *which* we are aroused in the hour of death. He is truly happy, *who* does not give way to his

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| prudent, благоразум-      | had, имѣлъ.              |
| ный:                      | an attendant, нароч-     |
| do not consider it, не    | ный.                     |
| почитай.                  | used to remind, напо-    |
| a disgrace, за стыдъ.     | миналъ.                  |
| to learn, учись.          | was mortal, смертный.    |
| age, старость.            | life, жизнь.             |
| neglected, не учился.     | is like, подобна, gov.   |
| youth, молодость.         | the dat.                 |
| defer not, не откладывай. | a dream, сонъ, dat, сну. |
| until, до, gov. the gen.  | from, отъ, gov. the gen. |
| to - morrow, завтра.      | we are aroused, про-     |
| thou canst, можешь.       | сыпаемся.                |
| perform, сдѣлаешь.        | the hour, часъ.          |
| to - day, сегодня.        | death, смерть.           |
| Philip, Филиппъ.          | truly, истинно.          |
| King, Царь.               | happy, счастливъ.        |
| of Macedon, Македон-      | does not give way, не    |
| скій.                     | даётъ воли.              |
|                           | to his, своимъ.          |

passions. Reflect previously - on *what* you \* intend to say. We are always fond of those *who* admire us, but not always of those, *whom* we ourselves admire. He, *who* justifies himself without being accused, only excites suspicion. It is difficult to love him, *whom* we do not respect. True civilization is that, which teaches us to be useful to the society, in *which* we live.

---

|                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| passion, страсть.        | accused, обвиняемъ.        |
| reflect, подумай.        | he, пошь.                  |
| previously, наперёдъ.    | only, только.              |
| on, о, gov. the prep.    | excites, возбуждаеъ,       |
| intend to say, хочешь    | suspicion, подозрѣнiе.     |
| сказаъ.                  | it is difficult, трудно.   |
| always, всегда.          | to love, любить.           |
| are fond, любимъ.        | we do not respect, не      |
| of those, тѣхъ.          | почищаемъ.                 |
| admire us, намъ уди-     | true, истинный.            |
| вляющся.                 | civilization, просвѣ-      |
| but not, а не.           | щенiе.                     |
| ourselves, сами.         | is that, есть то.          |
| we admire, удивляемъ.    | teaches, учиъ.             |
| justifies himself, опра- | to be, бышь, gov. the ins. |
| вдывается.               | useful, полезный.          |
| without being, не бѣ-    | society, общество.         |
| дучи.                    | live, живемъ.              |

---

## S E C T. IV.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

|       | <i>M.</i>          | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>Plu. of all gend.</i> |
|-------|--------------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------------|
| Nom.  | мой, my.           | моѣ ,     | моѣ ,     | моѣ .                    |
| Gen.  | моего ,            | моѣй ,    | моего ,   | моѣхъ .                  |
| Dat.  | моему ,            | моѣй ,    | моему ,   | моѣмъ .                  |
| Acc.  | мо } ѣй ,<br>его , | мою ,     | моѣ ,     | мо } ѣй .<br>ихъ .       |
| Ins.  | моѣмъ ,            | моѣю ,    | моѣмъ ,   | моѣми .                  |
| Прер. | о моѣмъ ,          | о моѣй ,  | о моѣмъ , | о моѣхъ .                |

§ 150. The possessive pronoun *свой*, is used instead of *мой*, when the possession relates to the nominative of the phrase, ex. я беру свою шляпу, I take my hat; онъ мнѣ показаль свою библиотѣку, he shewed me his library. When the possession does not relate to the nominative of the phrase, *мой*, *твой*, *его*, *нашъ*, *вашъ*, are employed, ex. онъ живётъ въ моѣмъ до́мѣ, he lives in my house; я читаю твою книгу, I read thy book. *Свой* and *твой* are declined in the same manner as *мой*.

|       | <i>M.</i>          | <i>F.</i>  | <i>N.</i>   | <i>Plu. of all gend.</i> |
|-------|--------------------|------------|-------------|--------------------------|
| Nom.  | нашъ, our.         | на́ша ,    | на́ше ,     | на́ши .                  |
| Gen.  | на́шего ,          | на́шей ,   | на́шего ,   | на́шихъ .                |
| Dat.  | на́шему ,          | на́шей ,   | на́шему ,   | на́шимъ .                |
| Acc.  | наш } ѣ ,<br>его , | на́шу ,    | на́ше ,     | наш } ѣи .<br>ихъ .      |
| Ins.  | на́шимъ ,          | на́шею ,   | на́шимъ ,   | на́шими .                |
| Прер. | о на́шемъ ,        | о на́шей , | о на́шемъ , | о на́шихъ .              |

§ 151. The possessive pronoun *вашъ*, your, is declined in the same manner as *нашъ*.

§ 152. In the Russian language there are no possessive pronouns for the third person singular or plural; but this defect is supplied by the genitive case of the personal pronouns *онъ*, he, *она*, she and *они*, they; as, *его* his, *ея*, her, and *ихъ*, their. These pronouns being themselves taken from an oblique case are indeclinable, and subject to no variations of gender.



## THEME XIX.

### ON POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

We should consider virtue *as our* best friend, for it is the source of *our* happiness, *our* honour and *our* peace. I honour *my* parents, for to them I am indebted for *my* life and education.

---

|                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| we should, мы должны.    | peace, спокойствіе.     |
| consider, почитать.      | parent, родитель.       |
| as, (expressed by the    | for, ибо.               |
| ins. case)               | I am indebted, обязанъ. |
| best, лучшій.            | for (expressed by the   |
| for it is, ибо она есть. | ins. case.)             |
| the source, источникъ.   | life, жизнь.            |
| happiness, счастье.      | education, воспитаніе.  |
| honour, честь.           |                         |

Avoid anger: it disfigures *thy* face, and still more *thy* mind. Speak not upon a subject, that is above *thy* capacity. Homer and Virgil are famous for *their* works. Be faithful to *thy* sovereign. The eagle, in its rapid flight, soars above the clouds. Endeavour to cultivate *thy* understanding, to ennoble *thy* mind and to strengthen *thy* body.

---

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| avoid, беречься, gov.   | be, будь.              |
| the gen.                | faithful, вѣренъ.      |
| anger, гнѣвъ.           | Sovereign, Госудáръ.   |
| disfigures, обезобра-   | the eagle, орёлъ.      |
| живаешь.                | rapid, быстрый.        |
| face, лице.             | flight, полётъ.        |
| and still, и ещё.       | soars, возно́сится.    |
| more, болѣе.            | above, превыше.        |
| mind, душá.             | cloud, облако.         |
| speak not, не говори.   | endeavour, старáйся.   |
| upon, о, gov. the prep. | to cultivate, образо-  |
| is above, превыше,      | вашъ.                  |
| gov. the gen.           | understanding, умъ.    |
| capacity, поня́тiе.     | to ennoble, облагоро́- |
| Homer, Омиръ.           | дишь.                  |
| Virgil, Виргилій.       | to strengthen, укрѣ-   |
| are famous, славны.     | пишь.                  |
| for, по, gov. the dat.  | body, тѣло.            |
| work, шворѣнiе.         |                        |



## S E C T. V.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

## DECLENSION OF DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

| <i>M.</i>                        | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>Plu. of all gen.</i>      |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-----------|------------------------------|
| N. сей, this.                    | сія ,     | сіе ,     | сіи , these.                 |
| G. сего́ ,                       | сей ,     | сего́ ,   | сихъ .                       |
| D. сему́ ,                       | сей ,     | сему́ ,   | симъ .                       |
| A. се } <sup>й</sup> ,<br>}го ,  | сію ,     | сіе ,     | с } <sup>и</sup> .<br>}ихъ . |
| I. симъ ,                        | сею ,     | симъ ,    | сіми .                       |
| P. о семъ ,                      | о сей ,   | о семъ ,  | о сихъ .                     |
| <i>M.</i>                        | <i>F.</i> | <i>N.</i> | <i>Pl. of all gend.</i>      |
| N. тотъ , that.                  | та ,      | то ,      | тѣ , those.                  |
| G. того́ ,                       | той ,     | того́ ,   | тѣхъ ,                       |
| D. тому́ ,                       | той ,     | тому́ ,   | тѣмъ ,                       |
| A. то } <sup>шъ</sup> ,<br>}го , | ту ,      | то ,      | т } <sup>ѣ</sup> .<br>}ѣхъ . |
| I. тѣмъ ,                        | тою ,     | тѣмъ ,    | тѣми ,                       |
| P. о томъ ,                      | о той ,   | о томъ ,  | о тѣхъ .                     |

§ 153. In the same manner is declined the demonstrative pronoun *этотъ*, *эта*, *это*, this; excepting the letter *т*, which is changed into *н* in the oblique cases; ex. *этимъ*, *эшими*. &c.

154. *Тотъ*, may often be rendered in English by a personal pronoun or substantive; *тотъ*, *которой*, he who, or the man who; *та*, *которая*, she who, or the woman who; *то*, *которое*, that which, or the thing which.

§ 155. The demonstrative pronoun *о́ный* *о́ная*, *о́ное*, *that*, is declined like an adjective of similar termination V. Chap. II. Sect. II. It may often be rendered in English by the personal pronoun *it*, or *the said*.



## T H E M E XX.

### ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Emperor Titus considered *that* day as lost, in which he did no good. Do not repeat in one company, (*that*) what you \* have heard in another. *Those* people are unhappy, who are always discontented with their condi-

---

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| the Emperor, Имперá-     | company, бесѣда.       |
| шоръ.                    | have heard, слышалъ.   |
| Titus, Тишъ.             | another, другóй.       |
| considered, считáлъ.     | are unhappy, злопо-    |
| day, день.               | лучны.                 |
| as lost, потерянны́мъ.   | people, люди.          |
| he did, не сдѣлалъ.      | always, всегда́.       |
| no good, ничегó добраго. | are discontented, не-  |
| do not repeat, не по-    | довóльны.              |
| вшорáй.                  | condition, состоя́нiе. |



tion. Labour strengthens the body, and idleness debilitates *it* (V. § 155.) *This* punishment is proportioned to *this* crime. *This* hill, *this* grove, *this* field and *this* humble cottage remind me of my native place. All *these* statues, these monumental inscriptions, *these* majestic ruins, *this* silence, *this* solitude, *these* great names attest times of past glory. It is impossible to describe the (*that*) ecstasy, which

labour, трудъ. statue, мраморъ.

strengthens, укрѣпляетъ. monumental, надгробный.

the body, тѣло. inscription, надпись.

idleness, праздность. majestic, величественный.

debilitates, ослабляетъ. ruin, развалина.

punishment, наказаніе. silence, безмолвіе.

is proportioned, со- solitude, уединеніе.  
размѣрно. name, имя.

crime, преступленіе. attest, свидѣтельству-  
hill, холмъ. юшъ.

grove, роща. time, время.

field, поле. past, протѣкшій.

humble, скромный. glory, слава.

cottage, хижина. it is impossible, ничто  
remind, напоминають, не можеть.

gov. the acc. to describe, изобра-  
native place, родина. зить.

all, всѣ. ecstasy, восторгъ.

fills the mind, when you enter the church of St. Peter for the first time; when you stand upon *this* vast pavement, between *these* stupendous columns, before *these* brass pillars, at the sight of all *these* paintings, *these* statues, of all *these* mausoleums, of all *these* altars, under *this* cupola.

---

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| fills, восхищáетъ.     | column, подпóра.        |
| the mind, душá.        | before, предъ.          |
| you enter, входить.    | brass, брóнзовый.       |
| church of St. Peter,   | pillar, колóнна.        |
| цérковь Св. Петра.     | at the sight, при видѣ. |
| for the first time, въ | painting, картинa.      |
| пérвый разъ.           | statue, стáпуя.         |
| you stand, стойшь.     | mausoleum, мавзолéй.    |
| vast, прострáнный.     | altar, жéртвенникъ.     |
| pavement, помóсть.     | under, подъ, gov. the   |
| between, мéжду.        | ins.                    |
| stupendous, ужáсный.   | cupola, кúполь.         |



## S E C T. VI.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 156. The indefinite pronouns are: нѣко-  
торый, a certain; нѣкто, somebody; нѣчто,  
что нибудь, something; нѣсколько, a few; иной,  
some; кто либо, кто нибудь, any body; другой,  
another; что либо, any thing; всякій, every-one;  
каждый, each; никакой, not one.

никто.  
nobody.  
ничто.  
nothing

§ 157. The above indefinite pronouns are  
declined as который, кто, что &c. without  
regard to the indeclinable particle, whether  
prefixed or added to the pronoun, ex.

|                    |           |                |
|--------------------|-----------|----------------|
| Nom. кто либо.     | нѣкто.    | кто нибудь.    |
| Gen. когò либо.    | нѣкого.   | когò нибудь.   |
| Dat. кому либо.    | нѣкому.   | кому нибудь.   |
| Acc. когò либо.    | нѣкого.   | когò нибудь.   |
| Ins. кѣмъ либо.    | нѣкѣмъ.   | кѣмъ нибудь.   |
| Prep. о комъ либо. | о нѣкомъ. | о комъ нибудь. |

|                    |           |                |
|--------------------|-----------|----------------|
| Nom. что либо.     | нѣчто.    | что нибудь.    |
| Gen. чегò либо.    | нѣчего.   | чегò нибудь.   |
| Dat. чему либо.    | нѣчему.   | чему нибудь.   |
| Acc. что либо.     | нѣчто.    | что нибудь.    |
| Ins. чѣмъ либо.    | нѣчемъ.   | чѣмъ нибудь.   |
| Prep. о чемъ либо. | о нѣчемъ. | о чемъ нибудь. |



## T H E M E XXI.

## ON THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*All* complain of the weakness of their memory, but *none* complain of the weakness of their understanding. *Every* (each) man must die. *Every* day brings with it *something* new. In this world there is *nothing* permanent. Do good and fear *no one*. *Not* a minute can be called ours, but the present. *Nothing* corrupts the manners so much, as bad society. Man,

---

|                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| complain, жалуются.    | there is, нѣтъ.           |
| of, на, gov. the acc.  | permanent, постоян-       |
| the weakness, сла-     | ный.                      |
| бость.                 | do good, дѣлай добръ.     |
| memory, пѣмѣять.       | fear, бойся.              |
| complain, не жалѣется. | minute, мину́та.          |
| understanding, умъ.    | can, не мѡжетъ.           |
| must, должень.         | be called, называться.    |
| die, умерѣть.          | but, кромѣ, gov. the gen. |
| day, день.             | the present, настоящій.   |
| brings, прино́ситъ.    | corrupts, не пори́шитъ.   |
| new, но́ваго.          | manner, нравъ.            |
| in, въ.                | bad, худой.               |
| world, свѣтъ.          | society, общество.        |

*whatever* be his condition, has always a *certain* kind of vanity.

|                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| whatever be his condi- | always, всегда.    |
| tion, какого бы со-    | kind, родъ.        |
| стоянія ни былъ.       | vanity, тщеславіе. |

### PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE ON PRONOUNS.

*Our native country.*

*What* is our native country? the place, where *we* were born; the cradle, in *which* *we* were rocked; the nest, in *which* *we* were cherished and brought up; the earth, where lie the ashes of *our* forefathers and where *we* ourselves

|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| what is, что такое.   | we were cherished, со- |
| our native country,   | грѣшы.                 |
| отѣчество.            | brought up, воспита-   |
| the place, страна.    | ны.                    |
| where, гдѣ.           | the earth, земля.      |
| were born, родились.  | lie, лежашъ.           |
| the cradle, колыбель. | the ashes, кости.      |
| were rocked, возле-   | forefather, отецъ.     |
| лѣяны.                | where, куда.           |
| the nest, гнѣздѣ.     | shall lie, ляжемъ.     |

shall lie. *What* spirit dares to break asunder *these* sacred ties! *what* heart can be insensible to *this* holy flame! The very birds and beasts are attached to *their* birth - place, and shall man, endowed with a rational soul, estrange *himself* from *his* country and *his* fellow-citizens? *What* wretch is there, *who* has no affection for *his* mother? and is *our* native country less to *us*, than our mother? The antipathy to *this* unnatural feeling

---

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| spirit, душá.           | soul, душá.              |
| dares, дерзнѣтъ.        | estrangle, ошдѣлйшъ.     |
| to break asunder, рас-  | from, отъ.               |
| пóргнуть.               | country, странá.         |
| sacred, крѣпкй.         | fellow - citizen, едино- |
| ties, ўзы.              | земець.                  |
| can be insensible, мо-  | wretch, извергъ.         |
| жетъ нечувствовать.     | has no affection, не     |
| holy, священный.        | любишъ.                  |
| flame, пламя.           | mother, мать.            |
| a bird, птица.          | and, но.                 |
| a beast, звѣрь.         | less, мѣньше.            |
| are attached, любяшъ.   | than, чѣмъ.              |
| birth-place, мѣсто рож- | the antipathy, отвра-    |
| дѣнiя.                  | щенiе.                   |
| and shall man, чело-    | to, отъ, (from).         |
| вѣкъ ли.                | unnatural, противу-      |
| endowed, одаренный.     | естѣственный.            |
| rational, разумный.     | feeling, мысль.          |

is so great, *that whatever* immorality and  
 vileness *we* may suppose in a man, even if  
*we* were to imagine to ourselves, *that such a*  
*one* may be found, *who* actually harbours  
 in *his* corrupt soul hatred towards *his* native  
 country, still; even *he* would be ashamed  
 to confess *it* publicly. All ages, all nations,  
 heaven and earth would cry out against *him*:  
 hell alone would applaud *him*. *Shishkoff.*

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| great , великій.         | harbours, пита́еть.      |
| whatever we may sup-     | hatred, ненави́сть.      |
| pose, какю́ бы ни        | still even, одна́ко же.  |
| положи́ли мы.            | would be ashamed, по-    |
| a man , челове́къ.       | стыди́лся бы.            |
| immorality, худая нра́в- | publicly , всена́родно   |
| ственно́сть.             | и громогласно.           |
| vileness , безстыд-      | to confess, призна́ться. |
| ство.                    | an age , вѣ́къ.          |
| even if, хотя́ бы и.     | a nation , наро́дъ.      |
| we were to imagine ,     | the earth, землѧ.        |
| предста́вили.            | heaven , небеса́.        |
| may be found , може́тъ   | would cry out, возопи́-  |
| найти́ся.                | ли бы.                   |
| such a one, тако́й.      | against, про́шивъ.       |
| corrupt , развра́щен-    | hell alone, одинъ адъ.   |
| soul , душа́.            | would applaud , спалъ    |
| actually, дѣйствитель-   | бы рукоплеска́ть.        |
| но.                      |                          |



## C H A P. V.

## V E R B S.

## S E C T I.

## G E N E R A L R E M A R K S.

§ 158. The verb is a part of speech, which expresses the action, state of being, or suffering of an object. Verbs may be divided into *active, passive, neuter, reflective, reciprocal, and common.*

§ 159. All verbs are either *transitive* or *intransitive*. A *transitive* verb expresses that sort of action, which passes over to an object; \* as, if we say; онъ любитъ, he loves; the question *whom?* naturally arises, and the phrase is not complete, until we add: своё дитя, his child, своёго отца, his father, or some other object. *Intransitive* verbs express existence in a particular state, or an action, which does not pass over from one object to another; as, онъ спитъ, he sleeps; я хожу, I walk.

---

\* It is the more necessary to pay attention to this distinction, as in the Russian language the accusative case is frequently different from the nominative V. § 10.



§ 160. Russian verbs are subject to modifications according to their *branch*, *mood*, *tense*, *number*, *person* and *gender*.

§ 161. The branches, being peculiar to the Russian language, require a more explicit definition. If we consider the duration of an action from the commencement to the end, we shall find, that it is subject to a great variety of modifications, that have no relation to time. These variations of the meaning of the original verb are commonly marked in English by the prefix of some explanatory verb or adverb; but four of the principal are expressed in the Russian language, by varying some of the letters of the verb itself. As the explanatory word used in English may be prefixed to the verb in its different tenses, so in the Russian language, each of these principal modifications has its own tenses and moods, which taken collectively form, what is called a branch of the verb. There are four branches: the *indefinite* \*, the *perfect*, the *semelfactive* and the *iterative*.

*The indefinite* expresses the action indeterminate with regard to its completion; as, онъ перо́ралъ, he moved.

---

\* A few verbs have a fifth branch called the *definite* V. table V of the irregular verbs.

*The perfect* marks the thorough accomplishment of the action; as, онъ расстрѣлалъ, he moved thoroughly, or has moved.

*The semelfactive* expresses the sudden and single occurrence of an action; as, стрѣльнушь, to shoot (once).

*The iterative* marks the frequent repetition of the action; as, стрѣливать, to fire away, or to fire repeatedly.

*Rem.* Not every verb has all the four branches, as the nature of the action sometimes precludes the use of one or the other of them. This will be better understood by the following examples: шарать, to stride, may be used in the semelfactive, as it is possible to say шарнуть, to take *one* stride; but the verb бѣгать, to run has no semelfactive, because the signification of a repeated motion is inseparable from the nature of the action.

§ 162. *Mood.* There are three moods in the Russian language: the infinitive, the indicative and the imperative. \*

§ 163. *Tense.* There are three principal tenses, the present, the past and the future.

---

\* The conditional and subjunctive are formed by the addition of the particle *бы* to the past tense of the indicative.

§ 164. *Number and Person.* Russian verbs have two numbers and three persons.

§ 165. *Gender.* The gender of the person affects the verb only in the singular number of the past tense, by varying its termination; as, онъ сказа́лъ, he said; она́ сказа́ла, she said; оно́ сказа́ло, it said. In passive verbs however the distinction of gender is carried through all the tenses.

§ 166. The *Participle* may be considered as a verbal adjective; for its declension see Chap. VI.

§ 167. The *Gerund* present is employed to express an action, that is commenced and still continues, or is supposed to continue; the past denotes, that the action was just completed, when another began: добродѣтель связуе́тъ люде́й *внуша́я* имъ взаимную до́вѣренность, virtue unites mankind *by inspiring* them with mutual confidence; запеча́тавъ писа́мо, having sealed the letter; прочита́вши кни́гу, having read the book &c.



## S E C T. II.

CONJUGATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *быть*, to be.

§ 168. The auxiliary verb *быть*, has two branches, the definite and the indefinite.

## D E F I N I T E   B R A N C H.

I N F I N I T I V E   M O O D, *быть*, to be.

I N D I C A T I V E   M O O D.

*P r e s e n t.**Sing.**Plu.*

я (есмь), I am.

мы (есмы), we are.

ты (еси), thou art.

вы (есме), you are.

онъ {  
она {  
оно {

есть,  
есть,  
есть,

{he,  
{she,  
{it,

is.

они {  
онѣ {

суть, they are.

*P a s t.*

я былъ, а, о, I was.

мы были, we were.

ты былъ, а, о, thou wast.

вы были, you were.

онъ былъ, he was.

они {  
онѣ {

были, they were.

она была, she was.

оно было, it was.

*F u t u r e.*

я буду, I shall be.

мы будемъ, we shall be.

ты будешь, thou wilt be.

вы будете, you will be.

онъ {  
она {  
оно {

будетъ,  
будетъ,  
будетъ,

{he,  
{she,  
{it,

они {  
онѣ {

будутъ, they  
will be.

*Imperative mood.**Sing.*

будь ты, be thou.

пусть  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{оно} \end{array} \right\}$  *бѹдетъ*, let  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{him} \\ \text{her} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\}$  be.

*Plu.*

бѹдьте вы, be ye.

пусть  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{они} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{array} \right\}$  *бѹдутъ*, let them be.

*Participle.*

Pres. сѹщій, being.

Past. бывшій, been, which was.

Fut. бѹдущій, which is to be.

*Gerund.*

Pres. бѹдучи, being.

Past. бывши, or бывъ, having been.

## INDEFINITE BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood.*

быва́тъ, to be.

*Indicative.*

## Present.

*Sing.*

я быва́ю, I am.

ты быва́ешь, thou art.

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{оно} \end{array} \right\}$  *быва́етъ*, he, she,  
it is.

*Plu.*

мы быва́емъ, we are.

вы быва́ете, you are.

$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{они} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{array} \right\}$  *быва́ютъ*, they  
are.

*P a s t.**S i n g.**P l u.*

я быва́лъ, а, о, I was. мы быва́ли, we were.  
 ты быва́лъ, а, о, thou wast. вы быва́ли, you were.  
 онъ быва́лъ, he was, они быва́ли } they were.  
 она быва́ла, she was. онѣ быва́ли }  
 оно быва́ло, it was.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Past. быва́вший, who has been.

*G e r u n d.*

Past. быва́вши, having been.

§ 169. The first and second persons singular and plural of the definite branch of the auxiliary verb are almost always omitted in the present tense, and the adjective, which follows apocopated. V. § 88. as, я дово́лень, I *am* content; ты лѣннѣвъ, thou *art* lazy; онъ учѣнь, he *is* learned; вы смѣлы, you *are* bold &c.

~~~~~  
 T H E M E XXII.

ON THE AUXILIARY VERB.

Day *is* the time for labour, and night for repose. Idleness *is* a vice. Virtue *is* its own

---

day, день.	repose, покой.
the time, время,	idleness, праздность.
for, expressed by the gen.	a vice, поро́къ.
labour, трудъ.	its own (to herself) са-
night, ночь.	ма себѣ.

reward. The end of wrath *is* the beginning of repentance. A man without fixed principles *is* the victim of his own passions. There *are* good and bad people in every nation. Roubles and copecks *are* coins used in Russia. Boasting and haughtiness *are* the offspring of ignorance. Our desires *are* often insatiable. The eyes *are* often the interpreters of the heart. People *are* not so liberal of any thing

---

reward, награда.	a coin, монета.
the end, конецъ.	used, употребляемая.
wrath, гнѣвъ.	Russia, Россія.
the beginning, начало.	boasting, хвастовство,
repentance, раскаяніе.	haughtiness, надмѣн-
without, безъ, gov the	носць.
gen.	the offspring, дѣти.
fixed, швѣрдый.	ignorance, невѣже-
principle, правило.	ство.
the victim, (sport) и-	desire, желаніе.
гралище.	insatiable, ненасыт-
passion, страсть.	ный.
every, всякій.	the eye, глазъ.
nation, народъ.	the interpreter, испол-
good, добрый.	кователь.
bad, злый.	the heart, сердце.
people, люди.	of any thing, ни на что.
a rouble, рубль.	so, такъ.
a copeck, копѣйка.	liberal, щѣдрый.

\* \*

as of advice. Pythagoras *was* the first of the Greek philosophers. The olive branch *was* a sign of peace among the ancients. The Romans *were* the greatest conquerors of antiquity. Alexander the great said: if I *were* not Alexander, I should wish *to be* Diogenes. Agriculture *was* in high esteem among the Romans. But few Europeans *have been* in the interior of Africa. God *is, was, and will be* for ever. Be temperate, and you *will be* healthy. *Be not*

as of, какъ.	said, сказа́ль.
advice, совѣтъ.	if, если, V. § 162. note.
Pythagoras, Пифагоръ.	should wish, хотѣлъ бы
of, изъ, gov. the gen.	Diogenes, Діогенъ.
Greek, Гре́ческий.	agriculture, хлѣбопá-
philosopher, мудре́ць.	шество.
olive, ма́сличный.	among, у, gov. the gen.
branch, вѣтвь.	esteem, почтѣ́нiе.
among the ancients, у	but few, не мно́гие.
дрѣвнихъ.	European, Европѣецъ.
a sign, знакъ.	in, во, gov. the prep.
peace, миръ.	the interior, внúтрен-
a Roman, Рѣмлянинъ.	ность.
great, вели́кий.	Africa, Аф́рика.
conqueror, побѣди-	for ever, въ вѣ́къ.
тель.	temperate, воздѣ́ржный.
of antiquity, дрѣвнихъ	healthy; здоро́вый.
вре́мѣнь.	not, не, (to precede the
Alexander, Александръ	verb.)



envious. *To be* content is *to be* rich. Every one is capable of *being* an enemy, but not every one of *being* a friend. It is possible *to be* happy in every condition. The *future* is hid from us by an impenetrable veil. *Being* in health, we laugh at sickness. Mozart, *being* still a boy, enchanted every body with his skill in music. The commerce of the Genoese, *which was* once the first in the world, is now in complete decay.

envious, завѣстливый.	veil, завѣса.
content, довольный.	in health, здоровы.
is, значить.	laugh, смѣемся.
rich, богатый.	at, надъ, gov. the ins.
capable, способный.	sickness, болѣзнь.
of being, (to be rendered by the infinitive.)	Mozart, Моцартъ.
friend, другъ.	still, еще.
condition, званіе.	a boy, малолѣтнимъ.
it is possible, можно.	transported, восхищаль.
happy, благополучный.	his, V. § 150.
the future, (to be rendered by the participle future of the indef.)	skill in music, игра.
is hid, скрыто,	the commerce, торговля.
from, отъ, gov. the gen.	a Genoese, Генуэзецъ.
impenetrable, непро-	once, нѣкогда.
ницаемый.	now, нынѣ.
	complete, великій.
	decay, упадокъ.

There ~~was~~ a time, when all Europe ~~was~~ plunged in ignorance. Let thy heart be a stranger to all falsehood.

---

there was, было.	ignorance, невѣжество
a time, время.	let, да.
when, когда.	thy heart, сердце твоё.
Europe, Европа.	a stranger, чуждо.
was plunged, была по-	all, всякій.
гружена.	falsehood, неправда.

---

### S E C T. III.

CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE AND NEUTER VERBS.

#### INDEFINITE BRANCH.

INFINITIVE MOOD, *тpóгати*, to touch.

*Indicative mood.*

P R E S E N T.

*S i n g.*

я *тpóгаю*, I touch.

ты *тpóгаешь*, thou touchest.

онъ	{	<i>тpóгаетъ</i> ,	{	he	{	touches.
она				she		
оно				it		

*P l u.*

мы *тpóгаемъ*, we touch.

вы *тpóгаете*, you touch.

они, онѣ *тpóгаютъ*, they touch.

( 151 )

*P a s s i.*

*S i n g.*

я трѡгалъ, а, о, I touched.

ты трѡгалъ, а, о, thou touchedst.

онъ трѡгалъ, he touched.

она трѡгала, she touched.

оно трѡгало, it touched.

*P l u.*

мы трѡгали, we touched.

вы трѡгали, you touched.

они, онъ трѡгали, they touched.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я буду трѡгать, I shall touch.

ты будешь трѡгать, thou wilt touch.

онъ } будешь трѡгать, { he }  
она } } she } will touch.  
оно } } it }

*P l u.*

мы будемъ трѡгать, we shall touch.

вы будете трѡгать, you will touch.

они } будуть трѡгать, they will touch.  
онъ }

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

*S i n g.*

трѡгай ты, touch thou.

пусть { онъ } трѡгаетъ, let { him }  
          { она } } her } touch.  
          { оно } } it }

*P l u.*

тpòгайтe вы , touch ye.

пусть они, онѣ тpòгають, let them touch.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

*Pres.* тpòгающій, ая, ея , who or which touches

*Past.* тpòгавшій, ая, ея , who or which touched.

*G e r u n d.*

*Pres.* тpòгая , оу тpòгаючи , touching.

*Past.* тpòгавши , оу тpòгавъ , having touched.

P E R F E C T B R A N C H.

I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

распpòгаль , to touch (thoroughly).

I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.

*P a s t \*.*

*S i n g.*

я распpòгалъ , а , о , I touched or have touched.

ты распpòгалъ , а , о , thou hast touched.

онъ распpòгалъ , he has touched.

она распpòгала , she has touched.

оно распpòгало , it has touched.

*P l u.*

мы распpòгали , we have touched.

вы распpòгали , you have touched.

они , онѣ распpòгали , they have touched.

---

\* The perfect branch expressing the thorough completion of the action has no present tense in the active or neuter form.

*F u t u r e.**S i n g.*

я распрòгаю, I shall touch.

ты распрòгаешь, thou wilt touch.

онъ } распрòгаешь, { he }  
 она } she { will touch.  
 оно } it {

*P l u.*

мы распрòгаемъ, we shall touch.

вы распрòгаете, you will touch.

они, онъ распрòгаютъ, they will touch.

*IMPERATIVE MOOD.**S i n g.*

распрòгай ты, touch thou.

пусть { онъ } распрòгаешь, let { him }  
 { она } { her } touch.  
 { оно } { it }

*P l u.*

распрòгаемъ мы, let us touch.

распрòгайте вы, touch ye.

пусть они, онъ распрòгаютъ, let them touch.

*Participle.*

Past. распрòгавшій, ая, ея, who, or which touched.

*Gerund.*

Past. распрòгавши, or распрòгавъ, having touched.

## SEMELFACTIVE BRANCH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

тpонуть, to touch (once).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P a s t . \***S i n g .*

я тpонулъ, а, о, I touched (once).

ты тpонулъ, а, о, thou touchedst.

онъ тpонулъ, he touched.

она тpонула, she touched.

оно тpонуло, it touched.

*P l u .*

мы тpонули, we touched.

вы тpонули, you touched.

они, онъ тpонули, they touched.

*F u t u r e .**S i n g .*

я тpону, I shall touch.

ты тpонешь, thou wilt touch.

онъ	} тpонешь,	{	he	} will touch.
она			she	
оно			it	

\* The semelfactive branch has no present tense, as it expresses the single and sudden occurrence of an action, the performance of which is not supposed to allow time for description.

*P l u.*

мы трѡнемъ, we shall touch.

вы трѡнете, you will touch.

они, онъ трѡнутъ, they will touch.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*S i n g.*

трѡнь ты, touch thou.

пусть  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{оно} \end{array} \right\}$  трѡнешъ, let  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{him} \\ \text{her} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\}$  touch.

трѡнемъ, let us touch.

трѡньте, touch ye.

пусть они, онъ трѡнутъ, let them touch.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Past. трѡнувшій, ая, ея, who or which touched.

*G e r u n d.*

Past. трѡнувши, or трѡнувъ, having touched.

ITERATIVE BRANCH.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

трѡгивать, to touch (repeatedly.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P a s t \*.*

*S i n g.*

я трѡгивалъ, I touched.

ты трѡгивалъ, thou touchedst.

онъ трѡгивалъ, he touched.

она трѡгивала, she touched.

оно трѡгивало, it touched.

---

\* The iterative branch is never employed in the present tense.

*P l u.*

мы шрёгивали, we touched.

вы шрёгивали, you touched.

они, онѣ шрёгивали, they touched.

*Participle.*

Past. шрёгивавшій, ая, ея, who or which touched.

*G e r u n d.*

Past. шрёгивавши, having touched.

§ 170. The above may be considered as a model for the conjugation of regular verbs both active and neuter, but as the final letters *тъ* of the infinitive are not always preceded by the same consonant and vowel as in the verb *шрёгати*, it is necessary to know, what changes are caused in the conjugation by the variation of those letters. V. § 172.



## S E C T. IV.

## FORMATION OF THE BRANCHES, MOODS, TENSES AND PERSONS.

§ 171. The infinitive of the indefinite branch is the root of the verb, and (in all regular verbs) ends in *тъ*, preceded by *а, и, ѣ, о, у, е, ъ* or *я*.

*Examples.*

желáтъ, to wish.

вѣнужь, to fade.

говорѣтъ, to speak.

шёрётъ, to rub.

владѣтъ, to possess.

мьётъ, to wash.

молóтъ, to grind.

мѣрятъ, to measure.



§ 172. The first person singular of the present indicative is formed from the infinitive, by varying the final letters *тъ* according to the consonant and vowel which precede that termination.

*Formation of the 1<sup>st</sup>. per. sing. indicative.*

THE TERMINATION *ать*.

<i>Preceded by</i>	<i>1 per. ind.</i>	<i>Example.</i>
с	. шу .	{ писа́ть, to write, пишу́. пахáть, to plough, пашу́.
х		
ск	. шу .	иска́ть, to seek, ищú.
б	. лю .	{ колеба́ть, to shake, коле́блю. сыпáть, to strew, сыплю́. дрема́ть, to doze, дремлю́.
п		
м		
д	. жу .	{ глода́ть, to gulp, гложу́. ма́зать, to smear, ма́жу.
з		
ш	. чу .	{ метáть, to cast, мечу́. кля́кать, to call, кличу́.
к		
ев	. юю, .	воева́ть, to combat, воюю́.
ов	. ую .	шрёб́овать, to demand, шрёбую́

THE TERMINATION *ить*.

<i>Preceded by</i>	<i>1 per. ind.</i>	<i>Example.</i>
a vowel	. ю .	спро́ить, to build, спро́ю.
л	. ю .	{ моли́ть, to pray, молю́. звони́ть, to ring, звоню́. говори́ть, to speak, говорю́.
н		
р		

<i>Preceded</i>	<i>1. per.</i>	<i>Example.</i>
<i>by.</i>	<i>ind.</i>	
б	. лю .	любѣть, to love, люблю.
в		ловѣть, to catch, ловлю.
м		ломѣть, to break, ломлю.
ф		топѣть, to heat, топлю.
п		пѣрафѣть, to hit off, пѣрафлю.
ж	. у .	служѣть, to serve, служу.
ч		учѣть, to teach, учу.
ш		рѣшѣть, to decide, рѣшу.
щ		тащѣть, to drag, тащу.
д	. жу	ходѣть, to walk, хожу.
з		возѣть, to carry, вожу.
с .	шу .	просѣть, to ask, прошу.
ш .	чу .	плащѣть, to pay, плачу.
сп .	щу .	чѣстѣть, to clean, чѣщу.

### THE TERMINATION *ть*.

<i>Preceded</i>	<i>1. per.</i>	<i>Example.</i>
<i>by</i>	<i>ind.</i>	
дѣ .	жу	видѣть, to see, вижу.
лѣ	. ю	велѣть, to order, велю.
нѣ		звенѣть, to sound, звеню.
рѣ		горѣть, to burn, горю.
бѣ	. лю	скорѣть, to mourn, скорблю.
мѣ		шумѣть, to make a noise, шумлю.
пѣ		шерпѣть, to suffer, терплю.
сѣ .	шу	висѣть, to hang, вишу.
шѣ .	чу	вершѣть, to turn, верчу.

*Rem. 1.* Almost all the Russian verbs are comprehended in the above three terminations, *ать*, *ить* and *ть* preceded by *ѣ*; the other vowels, which occur before the *ть* of the infinitive, are: *е*, *о*, *у*, and *я*.

колѣнь, to pierce, колю.

тяну́ть, to draw, тяну́.

мѣря́ть, to measure, мѣряю.

тере́ть, to rub, тпру.

*Rem. 2.* The verbs which terminate in *ать* and *ть* preceded by *ѣ* are not all subject to the above mentioned variations, some of them forming the first per. sing. without changing the consonant, ex.

куса́ть, to bite. куса́ю.

копа́ть, to dig. копа́ю.

пуска́ть, to let. пуска́ю.

слабѣ́ть, to weaken, слабѣ́ю.

твердѣ́ть, to harden. твердѣ́ю.

умѣ́ть, to be able, умѣ́ю.

*Formation of the 2<sup>nd</sup>. per. sing. indicative.*

§ 173. The second person singular ends either in *ешь* or *ишь*, and is formed by changing the final letter of the first person into one or the other of these terminations; as,

1<sup>st</sup>. per.

2<sup>nd</sup>. per.

жела́ю, I wish. жела́ешь, thou wishest.

говорю́, I speak. говорю́ишь, thou speakest.

§ 174. The changes, to which the final consonant of the first person is subject in the verbs inding in *ить*, do not extend to the second, which resumes the final consonant of the infinitive.

<i>inf.</i>	<i>1st. per.</i>	<i>2nd. per.</i>
ходить, to walk.	хожѹ, I walk.	ходишь.
просить, to ask.	прошѹ, I ask.	просишь.
платить, to pay.	плажѹ, I pay.	платишь.
чистить, to clean.	чѣшѹ, I clean.	чистишь.

§ 175. The verbs, which have the termination *ешь* in the second person sing. are :

1<sup>st</sup>. All the regular verbs, which terminate in *ать* in the infinitive; жел<sup>а</sup>ть, to wish, жел<sup>а</sup>ешь, thou wishest, &c.

2<sup>ly</sup>. All the regular verbs, that end in *ять* in the infinitive (unless this termination be preceded by *о*) as, мѣ<sup>р</sup>ять, to measure, мѣ<sup>р</sup>яешь, thou measurest.

3<sup>ly</sup>. All the verbs, ending in *ть* preceded by *ѣ* that have the termination *ѣю* in first the per. sing. as, владѣ<sup>н</sup>ь, to possess, владѣ<sup>ю</sup>, I possess, владѣ<sup>е</sup>шь, thou possessest.

4<sup>ly</sup>. All the verbs inding in *уть* in the infinitive; as,

тянѹ<sup>ш</sup>ь, to drag. тянѹ, I drag, тян<sup>е</sup>шь, thou draggest.

5ly. Those ending in the infinitive in *тъ* preceded by *е*, *мерѣтъ*, to rub; *мру*, I rub; *трешъ*, thou rubbest.

§ 176. The verbs, which have the termination *ишь* in the second person singular indicative are:

1st. All the regular verbs, that end in *итъ* in the infinitive; as,

*говорѣишь*, to speak; *говорѣишь*, thou speakest.

2ly. Those of the verbs, ending in *тъ* preceded by *ѣ* in the infinitive, which do not form the first person in *ѣю*; as, *вертѣтъ*, to turn, *верчѹ*, I turn, *вертишь*, thou turnest.

3ly. The verbs that end in the infinitive in *ать*, preceded by *о*; as,

*стоятъ*, to stand; *стойшь*, thou standest.

*Formation of the 3rd. per. plu. indicative.*

§ 177. The third person plural indicative is formed from the second person singular, and terminates in *ютъ*, *утъ*, *ятъ* or *атъ*.

1st. In *ютъ*, when the termination *еишь* of the 2nd. person singular is preceded by a vowel or by *ѣ*; as,

*лаѣешь*, thou barkest; *лаютъ*, they bark.

*дѹешь*, thou blowest; *дѹютъ*, they blow.

2ly. In *утъ*, when the termination *еишь* of the 2nd. per. sing. is preceded by a consonant; as,

несёшь, thou carriest; несутъ, they carry.  
пишешь, thou writest; пишутъ, they write.

4ly. In *ятъ*. when the termination *ишь* of the 2<sup>nd</sup>. per. sing. is preceded by any vowel or consonant, except a palatal; as,  
стойшь, thou standest. стоятъ, they stand.  
глядишь, thou lookest. глядятъ, they look.

5ly. In *ать* when the termination *ишь* of the 2<sup>nd</sup>. per. sing. is preceded by a palatal; as,  
учишь, thou teachest, учатъ, they teach.

§ 178. By the above rules, the first person indicative singular may be formed from the infinitive, the second person singular from the first, and the third person plural from the second person singular. These are the only persons of the verb, which present the least difficulty, the others being formed invariably according to the given example, by changing the termination *шь* of the second person singular into *тъ* for the third; into *мъ* for the first person plural, and into *те* for the second person plural; as, любишь, thou lovest; любятъ, he loves; любимъ, we love; любите, you love.

#### *Formation of the past tense.*

§ 179. The past tense of the indicative mood is formed from the infinitive by changing *тъ* into *лъ*, *ла*, *ло*: чита<sup>тъ</sup>, to read.

онъ читáлъ, he read.

она читáла, she read.

оно читáло, it read.

*Formation of the future tense.*

§ 180. The future indefinite is formed by adding the future tense of the auxiliary verb to the infinitive of the principal verb, as, писáть, to write. я буду писáть, I shall write.

*Formation of the imperative mood.*

§ 181. The second person singular of the imperative mood is formed from the second person singular of the indicative present by changing *ешь* and *ишь* into *й*, *и* or *ь*.

1. When *ешь* is preceded by a vowel, into *й*: гуляешь, thou walkest, гуляй, walk.

2. When it is preceded by a consonant into *и* or *ь*:

тонешь, thou sinkest. тонй, sink.

вянешь, thou witherest. вянй, wither.

By changing *ишь* into *и* or *ь*:

кричишь, thou cryest. кричи, cry.

споришь, thou disputest. спорь, dispute.

§ 182. The imperative terminates in *и*, when the accent falls upon the last syllable of the 1<sup>st</sup>. per. present, and in *ь*, when on any preceding syllable:

говорю, I speak.      говорѣ, speak.

плачу, I weep.      плачь, weep.

§ 183. The third person singular and plural of the imperative is formed from the same persons of the indicative present, by adding *пусть*; *пускай* от *да*.

пусть онъ говоритъ, let him speak.

пускай они пишутъ, let them write.

да благословитъ его Богъ, may God bless him.

§ 184. The second person plural is formed from the second person singular of the imperative by adding *те*:

дѣлай, do thou.      дѣлайте, do ye.

любѣ, love thou.      любите, love ye.

плачь, weep thou.      плачьте, weep ye.

*Formation of the participle and gerund.*

§ 185. The participle present is formed from the third person plural of the indicative present by changing *тъ* into *щій*, *щая*, *щее*.

вѣрують, they believe, вѣрующій, he who believes.

терпятъ, they suffer, терпящій, he who suffers.

§ 186. The participle past is formed from the past tense of the indicative by changing *лъ* into *вшій*, *вшая*, *вшее*.

бѣгалъ, he ran, бѣгавшій, he who ran.

строилъ, he built, строившій, he who built.



§ 187. The gerund present is formed from the third person plural of the indicative present by changing the three final letters into *a* or *я*, *ex*.

слѣдуютъ, they follow.      слѣдуя, following.  
служатъ, they serve.      служа, serving.

In common language the gerund frequently terminates in *ути* or *ючи*, *ex*.

тонутъ, to drown.      тонучи, drowning.  
гулять, to walk,      гуляючи, walking.

*Formation of the perfect branch.*

§ 188. The infinitive of the perfect branch is formed from the indefinite by the prefix of a preposition or particle; but as it is impossible to give determinate rules for the employment of these prepositions with the different verbs, the following list of those, which most frequently occur, is given with the subjoined particle in italics. V. § 161.

*о.*

огрѣбѣть, to pillage.	оклевещѣть, to calum-
озлѣть, to irritate.	ниате.
ознобѣть, to congeal.	окрестѣть, to christen.
озябнутъ, to freeze.	отягощѣть, to burden.
окаменѣть, to petrify.	обвѣнчѣть, to espouse.

## по.

поборóтъ, to wrestle.	помѣловать, to spare.
повалить, to upset.	посади́тъ, to plant.
погаси́тъ, to extinguish	поста́вить, to place.
поги́бнуть, to perish.	пожелтѣ́тъ, to turn yellow.
погуби́тъ, to ruin.	построи́тъ, to build.
покры́тъ, to cover.	

## изъ.

изга́дить, to defile.	истоло́чь, to pound.
изжа́рить, to roast.	истопи́тъ, to heat.
испо́ртить, to spoil.	истра́тить, to spend.
испу́гать, to frighten.	изорва́тъ, to tear.

## съ.

свари́тъ, to boil.	созрѣ́тъ, to ripen.
своди́тъ, to lead.	сыска́тъ, to find.
свози́тъ, to transport.	ску́шать, to eat.
сгорѣ́тъ, to burn, (neut).	спекъ, to bake.
сдвинуть, to move.	стерѣ́тъ, to rub.
сдѣла́тъ, to do.	сходи́тъ, to go.

## возъ.

взбѣ́ситься, to exasperate.	взлѣ́зтъ, to climb.
взволновáтъ, to agitate.	вспотѣ́тъ, to perspire.
вспахáтъ, to plough.	вспухну́тъ, to swell.

## у.

увя́нуть, to fade.	упáстъ, to fall.
ужа́лить, to sting.	урони́тъ, to let fall.
укра́сть, to steal.	услы́шать, to hear.

**за.**

задавить, to strangle. замёрзнуть, to freeze,  
 завинтить, to screw. (neut.)  
 задушить, to smother. заморозить, to congeal  
 заколѣть, to pierce. (act.)

**раз.**

разбогатѣть, to enrich. разломать, to break.  
 разбудить, to awake. растаять, to melt.  
 раздѣлить, to divide. распрѣгать, to touch.

**на.**

накормить, to feed. написать, to write.  
 напоить, to water. нарисовать, to draw.

**вы.**

выбѣлить, to whiten. вырасти, to grow up.  
 выгладить, to efface. выспрѣлить, to fire  
 выкрасить, to paint. (a musket.)  
 вылудить, to tin. высушить, to drain.  
 вылѣчить, to heal. выучить, to teach.  
 вымыть, to wash. вычернить, to blacken.  
 выпалить, to fire (a вычистить, to clean.  
 cannon.) выжечь, to conib.

§ 189. The perfect branch of several verbs ending in *ать* and *ять*, is formed by changing some of the final letters of the verb itself instead of prefixing a preposition or particle. — The following is a selection of such as are most commonly used :

<i>Indef.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>
бросáть, to throw.	бро́ситъ.
встрѣча́ть, to meet.	встрѣ́пишь.
конча́ть, to end.	ко́нчишь.
лиша́ть, to deprive.	ли́шишь.
обижа́ть, to offend.	оби́дѣшь.
ощуща́ть, to feel.	ощу́тишь.
понима́ть, to understand.	поя́нишь.
посо́блять, to assist.	посо́бишь.
посѣ́щать, to visit.	посѣ́тишь.
про́щать, to pardon.	прости́шь.
пуска́ть, to allow.	пусти́шь.
пла́нить, to charm.	пла́нишь.
рожда́ть, to bear.	ро́дишь.
рѣша́ть, to decide.	рѣ́шишь.
снабжа́ть, to furnish.	снаб́дишь.
соверша́ть, to complete.	соверши́шь.
сту́пать, to tread.	ступи́шь.
увольня́ть, to dismiss.	увол́ишь.
уничтожа́ть, to abolish.	уничто́жишь.
уподо́блять, to compare.	уподо́бишь.
учрежда́ть, to establish.	учре́дишь.
хв́ащать, to catch.	хв́атишь.
явля́ть, to shew.	яви́шь.

§ 190. The future perfect is formed by the prefix of a preposition or particle to the present tense of the Indefinite, ex.

я пишу́, I write. я напи́шу, I shall write.

But the future tense of those verbs, which have no preposition prefixed, is formed from the infinitive in the same manner as the present of the indefinite branch, see § 172, ex.

бро́ситъ, to throw. бро́шу, I shall throw.

All the other moods and tenses of the perfect branch are formed in the same manner as the indefinite.

*Formation of the semelfactive branch.*

§ 191. Those verbs, which have the semelfactive branch, form the infinitive by changing the termination of the indefinite into *нѹтъ* ex. пуга́тъ, to frighten; пугнѹтъ, to frighten (once). мелька́тъ, to sparkle, мелькнѹтъ, &c.

In some instances the consonant, which precedes the final termination of the infinitive is omitted, and in others changed, ex.

двѣ́гаъ, to move, двѣ́гнуъ.

крича́тъ, to cry, кри́кнуъ.

When the letter *л* occurs before the termination *нѹтъ*, the soft sign *ь* is inserted, ex.

колѡ́тъ, to pierce, кольнѹтъ.

спрѣ́лятъ, to fire, спрѣ́льнѹтъ.

§ 192. The future tense of the semelfactive branch is formed by omitting the final letters *тъ* of the infinitive, ex.

шагнѹтъ, to stride. я шагнѹ, I shall stride.

§ 193. The other modifications of this

branch are the same as those of the indefinite.

*Formation of the Iterative branch.*

§ 194. The infinitive of the iterative branch is formed from the infinitive indefinite by changing the final letters into *ивать* or *ивать* *ex.*

стрѣляшь, to fire, стрѣливатьъ.

рѣзатьъ, to cut, рѣзыватьъ.

When *o* occurs in the last syllable but one of the infinitive indefinite it is changed in the iterative into *a*, *ex.*

говоришь, to speak, говариватьъ.

In the formation of the iterative branch the consonants are subject to the variations, marked in § 5, *ex.*

ходишь, to walk. хаживатьъ.

просишь, to ask. прашиватьъ.

ловишь, to catch. лавливатьъ.



## THEME XXIII.

ON THE CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE AND  
NEUTER VERBS.

People *have* very different ideas of beauty. Without friendship life *has* no \* charms. We *love* the place of our nativity. The moon *borrow*s its light from the sun. The end *crowns* the work. Pure air *helps* much towards the

people, люди.	to borrow, <i>займство-</i>
to have, <i>имѣть</i> .	<i>вать</i> .
very, <i>весьма</i> .	light, <i>свѣтъ</i> .
different, <i>различный</i> .	from, <i>отъ</i> , gov. the gen.
idea, <i>понятіе</i> .	the end, <i>конѣцъ</i> .
beauty, <i>красота</i> .	to crown, <i>вѣнчать</i> .
friendship, <i>дружба</i> .	the work, <i>дѣло</i> .
no, <i>никакой</i> .	pure, <i>чистый</i> .
charm, <i>прелестъ</i> .	air, <i>воздухъ</i> .
to love, <i>любить</i> .	to help, <i>способство-</i>
place, <i>мѣсто</i> .	<i>вать</i> .
nativity, <i>рождѣніе</i> .	towards, <i>къ</i> , gov. the
the moon, <i>луна</i> .	<i>дат</i> .

\* The Russians employ a double negation, which has the same signification as the single negation in English; as, to have no charms, *не имѣть никакой прелести*.

curing of disease. Thou *thirstest* after glory ,  
 and he *seeks* riches. But few *do* good merely for  
 the sake of good. You *like* foreign countries ,  
 and I *love* my native country. If thou *buyest* ,  
 what is superfluous , thou *wilt* soon *sell* what  
 is necessary. The improvement of the telescope  
*has* greatly *contributed* to the modern discoveries  
 in astronomy. The ancient Egyptians *did* not

---

the curing , излѣченіе.	to buy , покупать.
disease , болѣзнь.	what is superfluous ,
to thirst , жаждать.	лишнее.
(after, expressed by the	soon , то скоро.
gen.)	to sell , продавать.
glory , слава.	what is necessary , нуж-
to seek , искать.	ное.
riches , богатство.	the improvement , усо-
but few , немногіе.	вершенствованіе.
to do good , творить	the telescope , теле-
добро.	скопъ.
merely for the sake of	greatly , много.
good ,	to contribute , способ-
по одной только люб-	ствовать.
ви къ добру.	modern , новый.
foreign , чужій.	in astronomy , астро-
a country , край.	номическій.
native country , оше-	discovery , открытіе.
чество.	ancient , древній.
if , если.	Egyptian , Египтянинъ.



*know* the use of paper, but *wrote* upon the leaves of a plant, called papyrus. To *lie* is to *forget* God, and to *fear* man. To *gamble* is to *throw* our fortune into the sea, in hopes, that we may *pick* it up again upon the shore. *Trust* in God. *Observe* the principles of honesty on all occasions. *Judge* not of things by their external appearance alone. *He who keeps*

---

to know, <i>знать</i> .	again, <i>снова</i> .
the use, употреблѣніе.	to pick up, <i>собрать</i> .
paper, бумага.	it, <i>оное</i> .
to write, <i>писать</i> .	shore, <i>берегъ</i> .
a leaf, <i>листь</i> .	to trust, <i>уповать</i> .
a plant, растѣніе.	in, на, gov. the gen.
to call, именовать.	to observe, <i>хранить</i> .
papyrus, папірусъ.	on, во, gov. the prep.
to lie, <i>лгать</i> .	all, <i>всякій</i> .
is, <i>значить</i> .	occasion, <i>случай</i> .
to forget, <i>забывать</i> .	principle, <i>правило</i> .
to fear, <i>бояться</i> .	honesty, <i>чѣстность</i> .
to gamble, <i>играть</i> .	to judge, <i>судить</i> .
to throw, <i>бросать</i> .	a thing, <i>вещь</i> .
our fortune, своё имѣ-	by, по, gov. the dat.
ніе.	alone, <i>одной</i> .
the sea, <i>море</i> .	external appearance,
in hopes, съ шюю на-	наружность.
дежду.	he, <i>человѣкъ</i> .
that we may, <i>чтобы</i> .	to keep, <i>хранить</i> .

silence, may observe the follies of others without *discovering* his own. Pliny *wishing* to explore the cause of the eruption of Mount-Vesuvius, *sacrificed* his life to his curiosity. Cicero in his oration against Catilina, *said*: it is impossible that thou shouldst remain with us any longer; I will not *allow* it, I *will* not bear it, I *will* not suffer it. *I came, I saw, I conquered*. Many of the works of the an-

---

silence, молчаніе.	Cicero, Цицеронъ.
can, можешь.	oration, рѣчь.
to observe, <i>примѣчать</i> .	against, прошивъ.
of others, чужія.	Catilina, Катилина.
a folly, глупость.	to say, сказать.
to discover, <i>показыва- вать</i> .	with us, съ нами.
his own, свойхъ.	to remain, быть, гов. the dat.
Pliny, Плиній.	any longer, больше.
to wish, <i>желать</i> .	it is impossible, не- возможно.
to explore, <i>извѣдать</i> .	to allow, <i>носить</i> .
the cause, причина.	to bear, <i>терпѣть</i> .
eruption, изверженіе.	to suffer, <i>пускать</i> .
mount, горá.	to come, прійти, irr.
Vesuvius, Везувій.	past tense, пришёлъ.
to sacrifice, <i>пожертво- вать</i> .	to see, <i>видѣть</i> .
curiosity, любопытство.	to conquer, <i>побѣдѣть</i> .
life, жизнь.	work, сочиненіе.

cients *are lost*. The autumn *set in* and the leaves *faded*. A favourable wind *filled* our sails, and the ship *flew* rapidly through the waves. An apple, *which fell* from a tree, *discovered* to Newton the law of gravitation. The huntsman *hallooed* and the hounds *started*. The lightning *flashed*, and the thunder *roared*. Virgil *has drawn* many ideas from Homer. The *past* is irrecoverable.

the ancients, древніе.	Newton, Невтонъ.
to lose, погибать.	gravitation, тяготѣ-
to set in, наступить.	ніе.
the autumn, осень.	the huntsman, охот-
a leaf, листь.	никъ.
to fade, желтѣть.	to halloo, крикнуть.
favourable, благопрі-	to start, вспрыгнуть.
ятный.	the hounds, гончіе.
wind, вѣтръ.	to flash, блеснуть.
to fill, надуть.	lightning, молнія.
a sail, парусъ.	to roar, грѣнуть.
the ship, корабль.	Virgil, Виргилій.
to fly, летѣть.	to draw, потерпѣть.
through, по, gov. the	idea, мысль.
dat.	from, изъ.
a wave, волна.	Homer, Гомеръ.
to fall, упасть.	to pass, миновать.
from, съ, gov. the gen.	is irrecoverable, невоз-
to discover, открыть.	вращимо.

Some saltpetre *which exploded* in a mortar *suggested* the idea of inventing gunpowder. At the Olympic games poets *used to read* their verses, and orators *to pronounce* their orations.

---

to explode, <i>всплѣхнутъ</i> .	Olympic, Олимпійскій.
a mortar, ступка.	game, игра.
saltpetre, селитра.	a poet, поэтъ.
to suggest, <i>подать</i> .	verses, стихотвореніе.
the idea, поводъ.	to read, <i>читатъ</i> .
of, къ, gov. the dat.	an orator, Орашоръ.
inventing, изобрѣтеніе	to pronounce, <i>говоритъ</i> .
gun-powder, порохъ.	an oration, рѣчь.



## S E C T. V.

### CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

§ 195. The mode of expression, called by grammarians a passive verb, is formed in the Russian language (as in English) by prefixing the auxiliary verb *быть*, *to be*, in its different tenses to the participle passive; as, онъ всѣми любимъ, he is beloved by all, онъ былъ всѣми почитаемъ, he was respected by all; Гомеръ будешь читанъ всѣми вѣками. Homer will be read in all ages.

§ 196. The distinction of gender is carried through all the tenses of passive verbs ; as,

онъ по́сланъ, he is sent.

она была по́слана, she was sent.

оно будетъ по́слано, it will be sent.

§ 197. In the infinitive mood, the participle is apocopated, and put in the dative case ; as, быть любѣ́му, to be loved.

§ 198. The participle passive of the present tense is formed from the first person plural indicative present, by changing *ъ* into *ый, ая, ое, аs*,

мы любимъ, we love, любѣ́мый, ая, ое, beloved.

мы шѣ́рзаемъ, we tear, шѣ́рзаемый, ая, ое, torn.

§ 199. The participle past is formed from the past tense of the indicative, by changing *лъ* into *нный, нная, нное*, for the perfect, indefinite and iterative branches.

онъ дѣ́лалъ, he did. дѣ́ланный, done.

онъ на́писалъ, he wrote. на́писанный, written.

онъ дви́галъ, he moved. дви́гиванный, moved.

§ 200. The participle passive of the semelfactive is formed from the past tense of the same branch, by changing *лъ* into *тый, тая, тое*; as,

онъ ки́нулъ, he threw. ки́нутый, thrown.

онъ шѣ́ронулъ, he moved, шѣ́рону́тый, moved.



## CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE VERB.

## INDEFINITE BRANCH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* быть прѡгаему, to be touched.*Past.* быть прѡгану, to have been touched.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.**S i n g.*

я	прѡгаемъ, а, о.	I am touched.
ты	прѡгаемъ, а, о,	thou art touched.
онъ	прѡгаемъ,	he is touched.
она	прѡгаема,	she is touched.
оно	прѡгаемо,	it is touched.

*P l u.*

мы	{ прѡгаемы,	{ we you they }	are touched.
вы			
они, онъ			

*P a s t.**S i n g.*

я	былъ, а, о, прѡганъ, а, о,	I was touched.
ты	былъ, а, о, прѡганъ, а, о,	thou wast touched.
онъ	былъ прѡганъ,	he was touched.
она	была прѡгана,	she was touched.
оно	было прѡгано,	it was touched.

мы	{ были прѡганы	{ we you they }	were touched.
вы			
они, онъ			

**F u t u r e.**

*S i n g.*

я бѹду трѡганъ, а, о. I shall be touched.  
ты бѹдешъ трѡганъ, а, о, thou wilt be touched.  
онъ будешъ трѡганъ, he will be touched.  
она бѹдешъ трѡгана, she will be touched.  
оно бѹдешъ трѡгано, it will be touched.

*P l u.*

мы будемъ троганы, we shall be touched.  
вы будете троганы, you will be touched.  
они, онѣ будутъ троганы, they will be touched.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*S i n g.*

будь трóгаемъ, а, о, be thou touched.  
 пусть  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{оно} \end{array} \right\}$  бѹдетъ трó- let  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{him} \\ \text{her} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\}$  be touched.  
 гаемъ, а, о,

*P l u.*

пусть  $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{они} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$  бѹдуть прогаемы, let them be touched.

*Participle.*

**Pres. трогаемый, ая, ое, who or which is touched.**  
**Past. троганный, ая, ое, who or which was touched.**

*G e r u n d.*

Pres. бѹдучи трѡгаемъ, а, о, being touched.  
Past. бывъ or бывши трѡганъ, а, о, having  
been touched.

## PERFECT BRANCH.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

быть распрóгану , to be touched (thoroughly).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.**Sing.*

я распрóганъ , а , о , I am touched.

ты распрóганъ , а , о , thou art touched.

онъ распрóганъ , he is touched.

она распрóгана , she is touched.

оно распрóгано , it is touched.

*Plu.*

мы	}	распрóганы,	{	we you they	}	are touched.
вы						
они, онѣ						

*Past.**Sing.*

я былъ , а , о , распрóганъ , а , о , I was touched.

ты былъ , а , о , распрóганъ , а , о , thou wast touched.

онъ былъ распрóганъ , he was touched.

она была распрóгана , she was touched.

оно было распрóгано , it was touched.

*Plu.*

мы	}	были распрóганы,	{	we you they	}	were touched
вы						
они, онѣ						



## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

бѹдь распрѹганъ, а, о, be thou touched.

пусть  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{оно} \end{array} \right\}$  бѹдетъ рас- let.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{him} \\ \text{her} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\}$  be touched.  
 шрѳганъ, а, о,

*P l u.*

будьте распрóганы, be ye touched.

пусть  $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{они} \\ \text{онѣ} \end{smallmatrix} \right\}$  будущь растрѣганы, let them be touched.

*Participle.*

*Past.* распрóбанный, ая, ае, which was touched.

*Gerund.*

*Past.* бывъ or бывши распрѣганъ, а, о, having been touched.

### SEMELFACTIVE BRANCH.

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

**быть шро́нута, to be touched, (once.)**

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P a s t.*

*S i n g.*

я былъ, а, о, трѣнушь, а, о, I was touched.

ты былъ, а, о, трѣнута, а, о, thou wast touched.

онъ былъ тронутъ, he was touched.

она была тронута, she was touched.

оно было трóнуто, it was touched.

*P l u.*

мы } были тронуты, { we }  
 вы } } you } were touched.  
 они, онъ } { they }

*F u t u r e.**S i n g.*

я буду тронуть, а, о, I shall be touched.  
 ты будешь тронуть, а, о, thou wilt be touched.  
 онъ будетъ тронуть, he will be touched.  
 она будетъ тронута, she will be touched.  
 оно будетъ тронута, it will be touched.

*IMPERATIVE MOOD.**S i n g.*

будь тронуть, а, о, be thou touched.

пусти } онъ } }  
 она } будетъ тро- let { him }  
 оно } нуть а, о, { her } be touched.  
 { it }

*Participle.*

*Past.* тронутый, ая, ое, who or which was touched.

*Gerund.*

*Past.* бывъ or бывши тронуть, а, о, having been touched.

*ITERATIVE BRANCH.**INFINITIVE MOOD.*

быть трогивану, to be touched (repeatedly).

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P a s t.**S i n g.*

я былъ трóгиванъ, а, о, I was touched.

ты былъ, а, о, трóгиванъ, а, о, thou wast touched.

онъ былъ трóгиванъ, he was touched.

она была трóгивана, she was touched.

оно было трóгивано, it was touched.

*P l u.*

мы	{	были трóгиваны	{	we you they	}	were touched.
вы						
они, онѣ						

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Past. трóгиванный, ая, ое, which was touched.

*G e r u n d.*Past. бывъ or бывши трóгиванъ, а, о, having  
been touched.

## T H E M E XXIV.

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

Egotism is frequently *punished* with contempt.  
Sicily *is subject* to frequent earthquakes. It is

---

egotism, самолюбіе.	Sicily, Сицилія.
frequently, часто.	to subject, подвергать.
to punish, наказывать.	earthquake, землетря-
contempt, презрѣніе.	сѣніе.

related, that Romulus and Remus *were* suckled by a she-wolf. Man *is created* with faculties, which distinguish him from all other creatures. At the sight of Achilles' tomb Alexander *was moved* to tears. The greater part of our knowledge *is drawn* from the works of the ancients. Hypocrisy is a tribute, *paid* by vice to virtue. The good,

---

they relate, <i>сказываютъ.</i>	Alexander, Алексáндръ.
Romulus, Рóмуль.	to move, <i>прóгать.</i>
Remus, Ремъ.	to, до, gov. the gen.
to suckle, <i>воскормить.</i>	a tear, слезá.
a she-wolf, волчица.	the greater part, больш-
to create; <i>сотворить.</i>	шая часть.
a faculty, даровáние.	knowledge, знáние (to
to distinguish, отли-	be put in the plu.)
чáть.	to draw, <i>потерпнуть.</i>
from, отъ, gov. the	from, изъ, gov. the gen.
gen.	work, творénie.
other, прóчій.	the ancients, дрéвнiе.
creature, тварь, gen.	hypocrisy, лицемѣрiе.
plu. твáрей.	tribute, дань.
at, при, gov. the prep.	to pay, <i>платить.</i>
the sight, видъ.	vice, поро́къ.
Achilles', Ахиллэсо-	virtue, добродѣтель.
вой.	to do, <i>содѣлать.</i>
tomb, гробни́ца.	the good, добрó.

*done* -by us, should be forgotten, but that  
*received* kept in perpetual remembrance. A man,  
 whose mind *is illumined* by the light of truth,  
 observing all around him traces of the power  
 and goodness of the Creator is lost in asto-  
 nishment; but minds, *plunged* in ignorance or  
 infidelity, amidst the innumerable wonders of  
 the universe see nothing but chance: like  
 those unfortunate beings, whose eyes *are*

---

should be forgotten, а mind, умъ.

должно забывашъ. to plunge, погружать.

but, а. ignorance, невѣжество

(that, not expressed.) infidelity, безвѣріе.

to receive, получить. amidst, средѣ.

kept in perpetual re- innumerable, безчи-

membrance, вѣчно сленный.

помнишь. а wonder, чудо.

to illumine, озарять. the universe, міръ.

truth, вѣра, (faith). to see, видѣть.

to observe, усматри- nothing, ничеро.

вашъ. but, кромѣ, (except.)

all around him, вездѣ. chance, слѣчай.

а trace, слѣдъ. like, онѣ подобны.

power, всемогущество. those, тѣ.

goodness, благасть. an unfortunate being,

the Creator, Создатель. несчастный.

is lost in astonishment. whose, ко́его.

дивящся имъ. eye, око, pl. очи.

*deprived* of sight; although they may turn towards the light of the sun, yet they discover nothing, but gloomy darkness.

---

to deprive, <i>лишѣть</i> .	light, <i>свѣтъ</i> .
sight, <i>зрѣніе</i> .	yet, <i>но</i> .
although, <i>хоть</i> .	but, <i>крѣмъ</i> .
to turn, <i>обращаться</i> .	gloomy, <i>мрачнѣй</i> .
of the sun, <i>солнечнѣй</i> .	darkness, <i>темнота</i> .
(solar.)	to discover, <i>встрѣчать</i> .



## S E C T. VI.

### REFLECTIVE, RECIPROCAL AND COMMON VERBS.

§ 201. Those verbs are called reflective, which denote an action, that recoils upon the agent; онъ моется, he washes himself; онъ бросається, he throws himself &c.

§ 202. Reciprocal verbs denote the action of two or more agents upon each other; as, они бьются, they beat each other.

§ 203. Reflective and reciprocal verbs are formed by adding *ся* or *сь* (the abbreviation of the pronoun *себѣ*, self) to all the tenses and persons of transitive verbs; as,

я мою , I wash.      я моюсь , I wash myself.  
она мыла, she washed. она мылась, she washed  
herself.

§ 204. Common verbs have the signification of neuter verbs; as, бояться to be afraid; стараться to endeavour &c; and generally express things that happen of themselves, or some internal action of the mind. Common verbs always end in ся, without which particle they have no signification.

§ 205. There are many verbs used as reflective in the Russian language, which are not so in English; some may be rendered by a passive and others by a neuter verb; as,

вѣчность *означается*      Eternity *is represented*  
кругомъ.      by a circle.

По мѣрѣ какъ мы отъ-      In proportion as we  
ляемся отъ предметовъ,      recede from objects  
они *кажутся* намъ мѣнѣе.      they *appear* less.



CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTIVE VERB.

INDEFINITE BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood, грѣться, to warm one's self.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P r e s e n t.*

*S i n g.*

я грѣюсь, I warm myself.  
ты грѣешься, thou warmest thyself.  
онъ грѣется, he warms himself.  
она грѣется, she warms herself.  
оно грѣется, it warms itself.

*P l u.*

мы грѣемся, we warm ourselves.  
вы грѣетесь, you warm yourselves  
они, онѣ грѣются, they warm themselves.

*P a s t.*

*S i n g.*

я грѣлся, I warmed myself.  
ты грѣлся, thou warmedst thyself.  
онъ грѣлся, he warmed himself.  
она грѣлась, she warmed herself.  
оно грѣлось, it warmed itself.

*P l u.*

мы грѣлись, we warmed ourselves.  
вы грѣлись, you warmed yourselves.  
они, онѣ грѣлись, they warmed themselves.



*F u t u r e.**S i n g.*

я буду грѣться, I shall warm myself.  
 ты будешь грѣться, thou wilt warm thyself.  
 онъ будешь грѣться, he will warm himself.  
 она будешь грѣться, she will warm herself.  
 оно будешь грѣться, it will warm itself.

*P l u.*

мы будемъ грѣться, we shall warm ourselves.  
 вы будете грѣться, you will warm yourselves.  
 они, онъ budúть грѣться, they will warm themselves.

*IMPERATIVE MOOD.**S i n g.*

грѣйся, warm thyself.

пусть	{	онъ грѣется,	{	let	him warm himself.
		она грѣется,		her warm herself.	
		оно грѣется,		it warm itself.	

*P l u.*

грѣйтесь, warm yourselves.  
 пусть они, онъ грѣются, let them warm themselves.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Present	{	Mas. грѣющійся, who warms himself.
		Fem. грѣющаяся, who warms herself.
		(Neut. грѣющееся, which warms itself.
Past.	{	Mas. грѣвшійся, who warmed himself,
		Fem. грѣвшаяся, who warmed herself.
		(Neut. грѣвшееся, which warmed itself.

*G e r u n d.*

Pres. грѣясь, warming one's self.

Past. грѣвшись, having warmed one's self.

PERFECT BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood*, согрѣться, to warm one's self.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P a s t.*

*S i n g.*

я согрѣлся, I warmed, or have warmed myself.

ты согрѣлся, thou hast warmed thyself.

онъ согрѣлся, he has warmed himself.

она согрѣлась, she has warmed herself.

оно согрѣлось, it has warmed itself.

*P l u.*

мы согрѣлись, we have warmed ourselves.

вы согрѣлись, you have warmed yourselves.

они, онъ согрѣлись, they have warmed themselves.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я согрѣюсь, I shall warm myself.

ты согрѣешься, thou wilt warm thyself.

онъ согрѣется, he will warm himself.

она согрѣется, she will warm herself.

оно согрѣется, it will warm itself.

*P l u.*

мы согрѣмся, we shall warm ourselves.

вы согрѣетесь, you will warm yourselves.

они, онѣ согрѣются, they will warm themselves.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

согрѣйся, warm thyself.

пусть { онѣ согрѣются, } { him warm himself.  
 она согрѣется, } let { her warm herself.  
 оно согрѣется, } { it warm itself.

*P l u.*

согрѣйтесь, warm yourselves.

пусть они, онѣ согрѣются, let them warm  
 themselves.

*Participle past.*

Mas. согрѣвшійся, who warmed himself.

Fem. согрѣвшаяся, who warmed herself.

Neut. согрѣвшееся, which warmed itself.

*G e r u n d.*

Past. согрѣвшись, having warmed one's self.



## T H E M E. XXV.

ON REFLECTIVE, RECIPROCAL AND COMMON  
VERBS.

Our faculties *develop themselves* with age. Ivy *intwines itself* round the oak (tree). Curtius *threw himself* from a precipice for the sake of his country. The English and the Portuguese have *distinguished themselves* by their frequent voyages round the world. The Chinese *consider themselves* the wisest people in the world. Hippocrates

---

faculty , способность.	country , отѣчество.
to develop , <i>развивать</i> .	an Englishman , Англичанинъ.
with , съ.	
age , возрастъ.	a Portuguese , Португалецъ.
ivy , плющъ.	
to intwine , <i>обвивать</i> .	to distinguish , <i>прославить</i> .
round , около , gov. the	
gen.	frequent , частый.
oak , дубовый.	voyage , путешествованіе.
a tree , дерево.	the world , свѣтъ.
Curtius , Кирцій.	a Chinese , Китайецъ.
to throw down , <i>низвергать</i> .	to consider , <i>пожимать</i> .
	wise , мудрый.
from , въ , gov. the acc.	people , народъ.
a precipice , пропасть.	Hippocrates , Гипократъ.
sake , спасеніе.	

and Galen are considered as the fathers of the healing art. Gibraltar is considered one of the strongest fortresses in Europe. Gold is tried by fire, and a friend by adversity. Criminals are punished according to the measure of their crimes. In Kamtchatka dogs are harnessed instead of horses. Diana was represented with a bow, and a quiver full of arrows. Every thing in nature changes. Through all the course

---

Galen, Галѣнь.	Kamtchatka, Камчатка.
the father, отецъ.	instead, вмѣсто.
healing, врачѣбный.	a horse, лошадь.
art, наука, (science.)	to harness, запрягать.
Gibraltar, Гибралтаръ.	a dog, собака.
strong, сильный.	Diana, Діана.
fortress, крѣпость.	to represent, изобра- жать.
Europe, Европа.	a bow, лукъ.
gold, золото.	a quiver, колчанъ.
to try, испытывать.	full, наполненный.
fire, огонь.	an arrow, стрѣла.
adversity, несчастье.	every thing, все.
a criminal, виновный.	nature, природа.
to punish, наказывать.	to change, измѣнять.
according, по, gov. the dat.	through, во.
measure, мѣра.	all, все.
a crime, пресупленіе.	the course, теченіе.

of this short life, we *struggle* with diseases, misfortunes, and above all, with our passions. All the world *complains* of the inconstancy of fortune. Virtue does not *dread* calumny. There are people, who *laugh* at others, but do not allow others to *laugh* at them.

---

short, краткій.	inconstancy, коловраш-
life, жизнь.	ность.
to struggle, бороться.	fortune, счастье.
disease, болѣзнь.	to dread, бояться.
misfortune, бѣда.	calumny, злословіе.
above all, болѣе всего.	there are, есть.
passion, страсть.	to laugh, смѣяться.
all the world, весь свѣтъ.	at, надъ, gov. the ins.
to complain, жаловаться.	but do not, а не.
to allow, позволять.	to allow, позволять.
of, на, gov. the acc.	at, надъ, gov. the ins.

~~~~~

## S E C T. VII.

### C O M P O U N D V E R B S.

§ 206. Compound verbs are formed by prefixing a preposition to simple verbs, and thereby modifying or changing their original signification; as, *безславить*, to *dishonour* &c.

*Rem.* In some instances the simple verb has become obsolete, while the compound remains in use; as, *воскресить* to raise up; *исчезать* to disappear &c.

§ 207. The indefinite branch of compound verbs is formed by prefixing a preposition to the iterative of simple verbs; and the perfect branch by prefixing a preposition to the indefinite simple; as, печата́ть, to seal, распечатыва́ть, to unseal; perf. распечатать &c.

§ 208. When the simple verb has the self-factive, the compound derived from it has also this branch; as, двину́ть, to move (once), воздви́гнуть, to erect.

## CONJUGATION OF A COMPOUND VERB.

### INDEFINITE BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood:* подпи́сывать, to undersign.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### *Present.*

#### *Sing.*

я подпи́сываю, I undersign.

ты подпи́сываешь, thou undersignest.

|     |                |     |             |
|-----|----------------|-----|-------------|
| онъ | подпи́сываетъ, | he  | undersigns. |
| она |                | she |             |
| оно |                | it  |             |

#### *Plu.*

мы подпи́сываемъ, we undersign.

вы подпи́сываете, you undersign.

они, онъ подпи́сываютъ, they undersign.

\* \*

( 196 )

*P a s t.*

*S i n g.*

я подписывалъ, а, о, I undersigned.  
ты подписывалъ, а, о, thou undersignedst.  
онъ подписывалъ, he undersigned.  
она подписывала, she undersigned.  
оно подписывало, it undersigned.

*P l u.*

мы подписывали, we undersigned.  
вы подписывали, you undersigned.  
они, онъ подписывали, they undersigned.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я буду подписывать, I shall undersign.  
ты будешь подписывать, thou wilt undersign.  
онъ }  
она } будешь подписывать, { he }  
она } { she } will undersign.  
оно } { it }

*P l u.*

мы будемъ подписывать, we shall undersign.  
вы будете подписывать, you will undersign.  
они, онъ будутъ подписывать, they will undersign.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

*S i n g.*

подписывай, undersign (thou).  
пусть { онъ }  
пусть { она } подписываетъ, let { him }  
пусть { оно } { her } undersign.  
пусть { оно } { it }



*P l u.*

подписывайте, undersign (ye).

пусть они, онъ подписываютъ, let them undersign.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Pres. подписывающій, ая, ея, who undersigns.

Past. подписывавшій, ая, ея, who undersigned.

*G e r u n d.*

Pres. подписывая, undersigning.

Past. подписывавши, having undersigned.

**P E R F E C T B R A N C H.**

*Infinitive mood.* подписа́тъ, to undersign.

**I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.**

*P a s t.*

*S i n g.*

я подписа́лъ, а, о, I have undersigned.

ты подписа́лъ, а, о, thou hast undersigned.

онъ подписа́лъ, he has undersigned.

она подписа́ла, she has undersigned.

оно подписа́ло, it has undersigned.

*P l u.*

мы подписа́ли, we have undersigned.

вы подписа́ли, you have undersigned.

они, онъ подписа́ли, they have undersigned.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я подпишѹ, I shall undersign.

ты подпишешь, thou wilt undersign.

|     |   |            |   |     |   |                 |
|-----|---|------------|---|-----|---|-----------------|
| онъ | { | подпишетъ, | { | he  | } | will undersign. |
| она |   |            |   | she |   |                 |
| оно |   |            |   | it  |   |                 |

*P l u.*

мы подпишемъ, we shall undersign.

вы подпишете, you will undersign.

они, онѣ подпишутъ, they will undersign.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.***S i n g.*

подпиши, undersign (thou).

пусть  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{оно} \end{array} \right\}$  подпишеть, let  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{him} \\ \text{her} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\}$  undersign.

подпишите, undersign (ye).

пусть они, онѣ подпишутъ, let them undersign.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Past. подписавшій, ая, ое, who undersigned.

*G e r u n d.*

Past. подписавши or подписавъ, having under-  
signed,

§ 209. The prepositions used in the formation of compound verbs are the following:

*Безъ*, (without) marks privation, ex.

безпокоить, to deprive of rest, to disturb

безобразить, to deprive of beauty, to disfigure.

*Во, въ* (in) adds the meaning of the preposition to the simple verb, ex. вставлятъ, to insert, вовлечь, to intrain.

*Воз, взо, вз*, (up) marks, 1<sup>st</sup>. ascension:

восходить, to ascend. взлѣсть, to climb up.

2<sup>ly</sup>. The commencement of an action;

возлюбить, to conceive an affection.

возненавидѣть, to begin to hate.

3ly. Reinstatement:

возвратить, to return.

возстановить, to replace.

**Вы**, (out) marks 1<sup>st</sup>. the passing of an object from the interior to the exterior, and corresponds to the latin preposition *ex*; as, выгнать, to expel.

вывозить, to export.

2ly. Duration:

выстоять, to stand all the time.

выслушать, to listen to the end.

3ly. Acquirement by means of exertion:

выльстить, to obtain by flattery.

выплакать, to obtain by tears.

**До**, (till, to) marks the boundary, or termination:

доходить, to arrive at a certain point.

дочитать, to read to a certain point.

**За**, (for) marks 1<sup>st</sup>. the commencement of an action.

заговорить, to begin to speak.

закипеть, to begin to boil.

2ly. The expansion of the action over an object:

задѣлать, to stop up.

закрасить, to cover over with colour.

3ly. Excess :

заговорѣться , to say too much.

заспáться , to oversleep.

4ly. Deviation :

заѣхать , to ride off the road.

5ly. Acquirement , by exertion.

зарабóтать , to earn by labour.

6ly. Descent.

заходить , to set , to go down.

**Изъ** , (from) has 1<sup>st</sup>. nearly the same signification as **вы** , but is used in a more elevated style.

изгнáть , to banish. избрáть , to elect.

2ly. Wasting by use :

износѣть , to wear out.

3ly. Exploring.

изыскивать , to search out.

**На** , (on) marks 1<sup>st</sup>. accumulation :

набросáть , to throw in a heap.

наговорѣть , to speak too much.

2ly. Witchcraft :

наговáривать , to foretell.

наколóвывать , to bewitch.

**Надъ** , (upon) Corresponding to the latin preposition *super*.

надспрóить , to build a superstructure.

надписáть , to superscribe.

**Низ**, (below) marks descent:

низвѣргнуть, to precipitate.

низходить, to descend.

**О**, **объ**, **обо** (about) corresponding to the latin preposition *circum*.

обливать, to circumfuse.

обходить, to circumambulate.

обнять, to embrace.

**Отъ**, (from) 1<sup>st</sup>. the separation of parts:

отбѣить, to detach.

отста́вить, to displace.

2<sup>ly</sup>. Cessation.

отписа́ть, to finish writing.

отпла́кать, to cease weeping.

3<sup>ly</sup>. With the particle *ся* deliverance:

отдѣлаться, to disencumber one's self.

отговориться, to excuse one's self.

**Пере**, (over) marks 1<sup>st</sup>. excess:

переполнить, to overfill.

переспѣть, to over - ripen.

2<sup>ly</sup>. Change of place:

перелить, to pour out of one vessel into  
another.

перевозить, to transport, to carry over.

3<sup>ly</sup>. Joined to the preposition *въ*, superiority:

превзойти, to surpass.

превосходить, to excel.

4<sup>ly</sup>. Repetition:

переписáть , to copy (to write over again).  
перечисáть , to read over again.

*По* , modifies the duration of the action :

поигрáть , to play a little.  
погостить , to pay a short visit.

*Подъ* , (under) corresponds in its first signi-  
fication to the particle *sub*.

подложить , to put under.  
подвергáть , to subject.  
подписáть , to subscribe (undersign).

2<sup>ly</sup>. Approach :

подъѣхать , to drive up.

*Предъ* , (before) corresponding to the particle *pre* :

предсказáть , to predict.  
предшествовать , to precede.  
предупреждáть , to anticipate.

*При* , denotes 1<sup>st</sup>. approach :

приѣхать , to arrive.  
прикасáться , to touch.  
присоединять , to unite.

2<sup>ly</sup>. Increase :

прибавлять , to add.  
прибывáть , to augment.

3<sup>ly</sup>. Concealment :

прикрывáть , to hide under.

*Про* , (through) denotes 1<sup>st</sup>. passage :

пронзйть , to run through.  
проходить , to pass through.

2ly. Duration :

простоять, to stand all the time.

3ly. Loss :

проспать, to lose by sleeping.

проиграть, to lose by gaming.

4ly. with the particle *ся*, a fault or mistake :

проболтаться, to speak incautiously.

*Противъ*, (against) marks opposition or contrariety :

противорѣчить, to contradict.

противустойть, to oppose.

*Разъ*, Marks 1st. separation :

разобрать, to sort.

раздѣлить, to divide.

2ly. Development :

развивать, to expand.

развернуть, to unfold.

3ly. With the particle *ся*, augmentation of the action :

разсердиться, to become very angry.

*Со, съ* (marks) 1st. connexion :

составить, to compound, mix.

сплести, to entwine, plait.

2ly. Descent :

сойти, to walk down.

сбросить, to throw down.

*У*, expresses 1st. departure :

унести, to carry away.

улетѣть, to fly away.

2ly. Arrangement :

убрѣть, to place in order.

уклѣсть, to pack up.

3ly. Diminution :

убывѣть, to decrease.

убавлять, to diminish.

4ly. Opposition :

устоять, to resist.

5ly. Persuasion.

убѣдить, to convince.

уговорить, to persuade.

6ly. Retention.

удержать, to stop, to arrest.



## THEME XXVI.

### ON COMPOUND VERBS.

The northern nations *harrassed* the Roman Empire by their frequent incursions. The Danube

---

|                                |                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| northern, сѣверный.            | Empire, Имперія.      |
| a nation, народъ.              | frequent, частый.     |
| to harass, <i>безпокоитъ</i> . | an incursion, набѣгъ. |
| Roman, Римскій.                | the Danube, Дунай.    |



*falls* into the Black-sea. The sight of the ocean *excites* admiration. The prayers of the righteous *ascend* to heaven. After the rain the sun *shone forth* again. It is impossible to *recall* lost time. The Neva *flows out* of the Ladoga lake. Troy *held out* a long time, but was taken at last. Priam *obtained* from Achilles the body of his son Hector. Paper is *made out* of rags.

|                                    |                                       |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| to fall, <i>па́дaть</i> .          | lost, пошѣрjанный.                    |
| the Black Sea, Чѣрное море.        | the Neva, Невá.                       |
| the sight, зрѣлище.                | to flow out, <i>выте-<br/>ка́тъ</i> . |
| the ocean, океáнь.                 | Ladoga, Лáдожскій.                    |
| to excite, <i>возбужда́тъ</i> .    | Troy, Трoя.                           |
| admiration, удивлѣнiе.             | to hold, <i>дѣржaтъ</i> .             |
| a prayer, моли́тва.                | at last, наконѣцъ.                    |
| a righteous man, прá-<br>ведный.   | to take, <i>взя́тъ</i> .              |
| to go, <i>ходíтъ</i> . *           | Priam, Прíамъ.                        |
| heaven, нѣбо.                      | to obtain, <i>вы́проси́тъ</i> .       |
| after, по́слѣ.                     | Achilles, Ахиллѣсь.                   |
| the rain, ненáстъ.                 | son, сынъ.                            |
| again, снóва.                      | Hector, Гѣкшоръ.                      |
| to shine-forth, <i>возсѣ́ять</i> . | paper; бума́га.                       |
| to recall, <i>возвратíтъ</i> .     | to make, <i>дѣла́тъ</i> .             |
|                                    | of, изъ.                              |

\* When the signification of the verb will allow of the separation the prefix of the preposition is left for the scholar.

No one has ever reached the pole. The Nile overflows the neighbouring countries annually. Speak candidly, but not imprudently. The sun had no sooner gone down, than the nightingale began to sing. The diligent deserve encouragement. Vesuvius emits flames. Bees extract honey from every flower. The alchymists endeavoured to

|                          |                                   |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a rag, пряпца.           | nightingale, соловей.             |
| no one, никто.           | to sing, пѣть.                    |
| ever, ещё.               | diligent, прилеж-                 |
| to reach, доходить.      | ный.                              |
| the pole, полюсь.        | to deserve, заслуживать.          |
| the Nile, Ниль.          | encouragement, одобрение.         |
| annually, каждый годъ.   | Vesuvius, Везувій.                |
| to overflow, затоплять.  | to emit, извергать.               |
| neighbouring, окрестный. | flames, пламя.                    |
| country, страна.         | a bee, пчела.                     |
| candidly, откровенно.    | to extract, извлекать.            |
| to speak, говорить.      | honey, медъ.                      |
| no sooner, лишь только.  | a flower, цвѣтъ.                  |
| to go down, закатиться.  | an alchymist, алхимикъ.           |
| than, какъ.              | to endeavour to find, изыскивать. |

*discover* the means of transforming the base metals into gold. Misers *heap up* wealth and their heirs spend it. The desires of an ambitious man are not easily *satisfied*. Gipsies *tell fortunes* by the hand. On the pillars of Hercules *were inscribed* the words: *nec plus ultra*. In Rome they used to *precipitate* criminals from the Tarpean rock. Drunkenness *obscures* the

---

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| the means, способъ.     | a gipsy, цыганка.       |
| to transform, превра-   | to tell, наговаривать.  |
| шить.                   | by, на, gov. the acc.   |
| base, низкій.           | a pillar, столпъ.       |
| metal, мешалъ.          | Hercules, Геркулесъ.    |
| into, въ, gov. the acc. | to inciribe, надписать. |
| gold, золото.           | nec plus ultra, не да-  |
| a miser, скупъй.        | лье сего.               |
| to heap up, накоплять.  | Rome, Римъ.             |
| wealth, богатства,      | to precipitate, низвер- |
| (plu).                  | гать.                   |
| an heir, наследникъ.    | a criminal, преступ-    |
| to spend, растогать.    | никъ.                   |
| desire, желаніе.        | from, съ, gov. the gen. |
| an ambitious man, че-   | Tarpean, Тарпейскій.    |
| столубецъ.              | a rock, скала.          |
| not easily, нескоро.    | drunkenness пьянство.   |
| to satisfy, насыщаться. | to obscure, омрачать.   |

understanding. Captain Cook sailed round the world three times. The dread of shame *deters* many from criminal actions. No one should *excuse himself* by pleading ignorance of the laws. *Satiated* with earthly grandeur Charles V retired to a monastery. Many nomadian tribes *have changed* their mode of life, and settled (themselves) in villages. No poet has

|                                           |                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| the understanding, раз-<br>сѹдокъ.        | to excuse one's self,<br><i>отговáриваться.</i> |
| Captain Cook, Капи-<br>танъ Кукъ.         | should, не должно.                              |
| three times, три раза.                    | to satiate, <i>пресыщáть.</i>                   |
| to sail round, <i>объѣхать.</i>           | earthly, земный.                                |
| the world, весь земной<br>шаръ.           | grandeur, величье.                              |
| the dread, опасеніе.                      | Charles, V. Карлъ пятый                         |
| shame, стыдъ.                             | to retire, <i>удалѣ́ться.</i>                   |
| to deter, <i>отвращáть.</i>               | to, <i>въ.</i>                                  |
| many, многихъ.                            | a monastery, мона-<br>стырь.                    |
| criminal, худой.                          | nomadian, кочевый.                              |
| an action, поступокъ.                     | a tribe, народъ.                                |
| (by pleading, expres-<br>sed by the ins.) | to change, <i>перемѣнѣ́ть.</i>                  |
| ignorance, незнаніе.                      | mode, образъ.                                   |
| the law, законъ.                          | to settle, поселѣ́ть V.                         |
| no one, никто́.                           | 203.                                            |
|                                           | a village, деревня.                             |
|                                           | a poet, стихотворецъ.                           |

ever *surpassed* Homer. Dark clouds *forebode* rain. We should *prefer* what is useful to that, which is agreeable. In spring numbers of birds *flock* to the north from warm countries. Hypocrites *conceal* their vices under a mask of sanctity. Science *enlightens* the understanding. Gamesters frequently *gamble away* all their fortunes.

---

|                                        |                                            |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| to surpass, <i>превзойти</i> .         | many, множество.                           |
| Homer, Гомеръ.                         | from, изъ, gov. the gen.                   |
| dark, мрачный.                         | warm, тёплый.                              |
| a cloud, облако.                       | a country, страна.                         |
| to forebode, <i>предвѣ-<br/>щать</i> . | a hypocrite, лицемеръ.                     |
| rain, дождь.                           | to conceal, <i>прикрывать</i> .            |
| we should, должно.                     | a mask, личина.                            |
| to prefer, <i>предпочи-<br/>тать</i> . | sanctity, святость.                        |
| that which is useful, полезное.        | science, наука, (to be<br>put in the plu.) |
| that which is agreeable, приятный.     | to enlighten, <i>просвѣ-<br/>щать</i> .    |
| in the spring, весною.                 | a gamester, игрокъ.                        |
| to the north, на сѣверъ.               | frequently, часто.                         |
| to flock, <i>прилетать</i> .           | to gamble away, <i>про-<br/>игрывать</i> . |
|                                        | a fortune, имѣние.                         |



## S E C T. VIII.

## I M P E R S O N A L V E R B S.

§ 210. A verb is called impersonal, when its nominative or agent is unknown, or considered as such; this unknown agent is expressed in English by, *it, one, they, people &c.* and in the Russian language as follows:

1<sup>st</sup>. By the third person singular of the reflective verb.

говоря́тся, it is said. ка́жется, it seems.

случа́ется, it happens. тре́буется, it is required.

уда́ется, it succeeds. повѣстѣ́уется, it is related.

запрещ́ается, it is forbidden. повел́яется, it is commanded.

2<sup>ly</sup>. By the third person singular of active or neuter verbs.

мерз́аетъ, it freezes. зависи́тъ, it depends.

недоста́етъ, it is not enough. принадле́житъ, it belongs.

есть, there is. при́личествуетъ, it is proper.

доста́етъ, it is enough. та́етъ, it thaws.

3<sup>ly</sup>. By the apocopated participle passive of the neuter gender.

сказано, it is said. вѣльно, it is commanded.  
 писано, it is written. приказано, it is ordered.  
 говорено, it is spoken. запрещено, it is forbidden.  
 должно, it must. позволено, it is permitted.  
 предписано, it is ordained. отмечено, it is marked.  
 ned.

4ly. By a verb used in the form of an adverb :

видно, it is evident. нужно, it is necessary.  
 желѣтельно, it is desirable. угодно, it pleases.  
 жалостно, it is pityable. известно, it is known.  
 досадно, it is vexing. опасно, it is dangerous.

*Rem.* These, and other impersonals, formed in the same manner, are conjugated with the auxiliary verb, as ;

Pres. приказано, it is ordered.

Past. приказано было, it was ordered.

Fut. приказано будетъ, it will be ordered.

5ly. Any active or neuter verb used in the third person plural without a pronoun :

пишутъ, they write. начинаютъ, they begin.  
 говорятъ, they say. сказываютъ, they relate.

6ly. By the second person singular of the verb ; as, ему говоришь, а онъ смеется, one speaks to him, and he laughs &c.

§ 211. Several verbs, which are impersonal in English have their subject in the Russian language ; as,

громъ гремитъ, it thunders.  
 молнія сверкаетъ, it lightens.  
 вѣтръ дуетъ, it blows.  
 дождь идётъ, it rains.  
 градъ идётъ, it hails.  
 снѣгъ идётъ, it snows.



## S E C T. IX.

### IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 212. Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the general rules of conjugation.

§ 213. In the Russian language the irregular verbs are :

1<sup>st</sup>. All monosyllabical verbs, except :  
 знать, to know.      спѣть, to mature.  
 зрѣть, to ripen.      прѣть, to perspire.  
 грѣть, to warm.      смѣть, to dare.  
 дуть, to blow.      тлѣть, to decay.

2<sup>ly</sup>. All the verbs ending in the infinitive in *тъ*.

3<sup>ly</sup>. All the verbs which terminate in the infinitive in *тъ* or *ти* preceded by a consonant.

4<sup>ly</sup>. The verbs, which form the perfect branch without the aid of a preposition.

5<sup>ly</sup>. The verbs, which have a definite branch.



## 1st. MONOSYLLABICAL VERBS.

| <i>Infin.</i>                 | <i>1 per</i> | <i>2 per</i> | <i>3 per.</i> | <i>Imp.</i> |
|-------------------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| бдѣть, to watch.              | бд-ю         | -яшъ         | -яшъ          | бди.        |
| брить, to shave.              | брѣ-ю        | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | брий.       |
| бить, to beat.                | бѣ-ю         | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | бей.        |
| врать, to lie.                | вр-у         | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | ври.        |
| выть, to burl.                | во-ю         | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | вой.        |
| вить, to wind.                | въ-ю.        | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | вей.        |
| гнить, to rot.                | гни-ю        | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | гни.        |
| гнуть, to bend.               | гн-у         | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | гни.        |
| драть, to tear.               | дер-у        | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | дри.        |
| длить, to prolong.            | дл-ю         | -инъ         | -яшъ          | дли.        |
| ждать, to expect.             | жд-у         | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | жди.        |
| жрать, to devour.             | жр-у         | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | жри.        |
| жать, to squeeze.             | жм-у         | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | жми.        |
| жать, to reap.                | жи-у         | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | жи.         |
| жить, to live.                | жив-у        | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | живи.       |
| звать, to call.               | зов-у        | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | зови.       |
| зрѣть, to behold.             | зр-ю         | -инъ         | -яшъ          | зри.        |
| крыть, to cover.              | кро-ю        | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | крой.       |
| лгать, to lie.                | лг-у.        | -жешъ        | -гушъ         | лги.        |
| лѣсничить, to flatter.        | лѣ-щу        | -сшишъ       | -сшишъ        | лѣснич.     |
| лить, to pour.                | лѣ-ю         | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | лей.        |
| лечь, to fly.                 | лч-у         | -ишъ         | -ашъ          | лчи.        |
| мнѣть, to knead.              | мн-у         | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | мни.        |
| мыслить, to think.            | мы-ю         | -ишъ         | -яшъ          | мыси.       |
| мшишь, to cover<br>with moss. | мш-у         | -ишъ         | -ашъ          | мши.        |
| мстить, to revenge.           | м-щу         | -спишъ       | -спишъ        | мсти.       |
| мыть, to wash.                | мо-ю         | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | мой.        |
| ночь, to cramp.               | но-ю         | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | ной.        |
| пить, to drink.               | пѣ-ю         | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | пей.        |
| плыть, to float.              | плыв-у       | -ешъ         | -ушъ          | плыви.      |
| пѣть, to sing.                | по-ю         | -ешъ         | -юшъ          | пой.        |
| рвать, to tear.               | рв-у         | -ещъ         | -ушъ          | рви.        |

| <i>Infinitive</i>   | <i>1 per</i> | <i>2 per</i> | <i>3 per</i> | <i>Imp.</i> |
|---------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| ржати, to neigh.    | рж-у         | -ешь         | -уишь        | ржи.        |
| рыть, to burrow.    | ро-ю         | -ешь         | -юишь        | рой.        |
| слать, to send.     | шл-ю         | -ешь         | -юишь        | шли.        |
| стлать, to spread.  | стел-ю       | -ешь         | -юишь        | стели.      |
| слыть, to pass for. | слыв-у.      | -ешь         | -уишь        | слыви.      |
| стыть, to congeal.  | стын-у       | -ешь         | -уишь        | стыни.      |
| ткать, to weave.    | т-ку         | -чешь        | -куишь       | тщи.        |
| чтить, to honour.   | чту          | -ишь         | -иишь        | чти.        |
| шить, to sew.       | шью          | -ешь         | -юишь        | шей.        |

§ 214 The past and future tenses of these verbs are formed regularly, the former by changing the termination *ть* of the infinitive into *лъ*, *ла*, *ло*, *ex.* *пѣть*, to sing; *я пѣлъ*, *а*, *о*, I sang; and the latter by the addition of the future tense of the auxiliary verb *быть* to the infinitive mood, *ex.* *я буду пѣть*, I shall sing.

#### 2ly. VERBS ENDING IN *ть*.

| <i>Infinitive</i>    | <i>1st per.</i> | <i>2nd per.</i> | <i>past.</i> |
|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| беречь, to preserve. | бере-гу         | -жешь           | берегъ.      |
| влекъ, to draw.      | вле-ку          | -чешь           | влекъ.       |
| жечь, to burn.       | ж-гу            | -жешь           | жегъ.        |
| мочь, to be able.    | мо-гу           | -жешь           | могъ.        |
| печь, to cook.       | пе-ку           | -чешь           | пекъ.        |
| стричь, to shear.    | стри-гу         | -жешь           | стригъ.      |
| сѣчь, to cut.        | сѣ-ку           | -чешь           | сѣкъ.        |
| печь, to flow.       | пе-ку           | -чешь           | пекъ.        |
| полочь, to pound.    | шол-ку          | -чешь           | шолокъ.      |

§ 215. The above verbs form the third person plural of the present tense, by the addition of *тъ* to the first person singular, ex. берегу, берегутъ; влеку, влекутъ. The feminine and neuter genders of the past tense are formed from the masculine, by changing the final *ъ* into *ла*, *ло*, ex беречь, берёгла, берёгло.

31y. VERBS ENDING IN *тъ* OR *ти* PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

| <i>Infinitive.</i>  | <i>1st. per.</i> | <i>2nd. per.</i> | <i>Past.</i> |
|---------------------|------------------|------------------|--------------|
| блюсти, to guard.   | блю-ду           | -ешь             | блюлъ.       |
| брести, to crawl.   | бред-у           | -ешь             | брель.       |
| гребть, to row.     | греб-у           | -ешь             | гребъ.       |
| гнестъ, to oppress. | гнеш-у           | -ешь             | гнелъ.       |
| грысть, to gnaw.    | грыз-у           | -ешь             | грызъ.       |
| клясть, to curse.   | клян-у           | -ешь             | клялъ.       |
| мести, to sweep.    | меш-у            | -ешь             | мелъ.        |
| прясть, to spin.    | пряд-у           | -ешь             | прялъ.       |
| плести, to plait.   | плет-у           | -ешь             | плелъ.       |
| пассти, to pasture. | пас-у            | -ешь             | пасъ.        |
| расти, to grow.     | рос-у            | -ешь             | росъ.        |
| трясти, to shake.   | тряс-у           | -ешь             | трясъ.       |
| цвѣсть, to blossom. | цвѣт-у           | -ешь             | цвѣлъ.       |

§ 216. The third person plural of the present tense, and the feminine and neuter genders of the past are formed in the same manner as in the verbs ending in *тъ*.

## 44. VERBS WHICH FORM THE PERFECT BRANCH WITHOUT A PREPOSITION.

| <i>Infinitive.</i>            | <i>Indicative.</i> |              |                  |            | <i>Imperative.</i> |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|--------------|------------------|------------|--------------------|
|                               | <i>Present.</i>    | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Future.</i>   |            |                    |
| Ind. брать } to take.         | беру               | бралъ        | буау брать       | бери.      | возьми.            |
| Perf. взять }                 |                    | взялъ        | возьму           |            |                    |
| Ind. давать } to give.        | даю                | давалъ       | буду давать      | давай.     | дай.               |
| Perf. дать }                  |                    | далъ         | дамъ             |            |                    |
| Ind. дѣвать } to place.       | дѣваю              | дѣвалъ       | буду дѣвать.     | дѣвай.     | дѣнь.              |
| Perf. дѣтъ }                  |                    | дѣлъ         | дѣну             |            |                    |
| I. начинать } to begin.       | начинаю            | начиналъ     | буду начинать    | начинай.   | начни.             |
| Perf. начать }                |                    | началъ       | начну.           |            |                    |
| Ind. падать } to fall.        | падаю.             | падалъ       | буду падать      | падай.     | пади.              |
| Perf. пасть }                 |                    | палъ         | паду             |            |                    |
| I. становиться } to stand up. | становлюсь         | становился   | буду становиться | становись. | стань.             |
| Perf. стать }                 |                    | спалъ        | спану            |            |                    |
| I. ложиться } to lie down.    | ложусь             | ложился      | буду ложиться    | ложись.    | лягу               |
| Perf. лечь }                  |                    | легъ         | лягу             |            |                    |

|                                          |                |             |                 |                        |                   |
|------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| Ind. садисься                            | } to sit down. | сажусь      | садился<br>сѣлъ | буду садисься<br>ссяу. | сидись.<br>ссядь. |
| Perf. сѣснѣ.                             |                |             |                 |                        |                   |
| Ind. класнѣ                              | } to put.      | кладу       | класъ           | буду класнѣ            | клади.<br>положи. |
| Perf. положишь,                          |                |             |                 |                        |                   |
| Ind. спашъ,                              | } to sleep.    | сплю        | спамъ           | буду спашъ             | спи               |
| Perf. уснууъ,                            |                |             |                 |                        |                   |
| 5ly. VERBS WHICH HAVE A DEFINITE BRANCH. |                |             |                 |                        |                   |
| Infinitive.                              |                | Indicative. |                 |                        |                   |
|                                          |                | Present.    | Past.           | Future.                |                   |
| Ind. бѣгамъ,                             | } to run.      | бѣгаю       | бѣгалъ          | буду бѣгамъ            | бѣгай.            |
| Def. бѣжамъ,                             |                | бѣгу        | бѣжалъ          | буду бѣжамъ            | бѣжи.             |
| Perf. побѣжашъ,                          |                |             | побѣжалъ        | побѣгу                 | побѣй.            |
| Ind. видамъ,                             | } to see.      | видаю       | видалъ          | буду видамъ            | видай.            |
| Def. видѣмъ,                             |                | вижу        | видѣлъ          | буду видѣмъ            | видѣ.             |
| Perf. увидѣмъ,                           |                |             | увидѣлъ         | увидю                  | увидѣ.            |

| <i>Infinitive.</i>                                | <i>Indicative.</i> |                             |                                     | <i>Imperative.</i>         |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
|                                                   | <i>Present.</i>    | <i>Past.</i>                | <i>Future.</i>                      |                            |
| Ind. водить ,<br>Def. вести ,<br>Perf. свести ,   | вожу<br>веду       | водилъ<br>велъ<br>свелъ     | буду водить<br>буду вести<br>сведу  | води.<br>веди.<br>сведи.   |
| Ind. возить ,<br>Def. везти ,<br>Perf. свезти ,   | вожу<br>везу       | возилъ<br>везъ<br>свезъ     | буду возить<br>буду везти<br>свезу  | вози.<br>вези.<br>свези.   |
| Ind. вѣшать ,<br>Def. вѣсить ,<br>Perf. свѣсиль , | вѣшаю<br>вѣшу      | вѣшалъ<br>вѣсилъ<br>свѣсилъ | буду вѣшать<br>буду вѣсить<br>свѣшу | вѣшай.<br>вѣсь.<br>свѣсь.  |
| Ind. гонять ,<br>Def. гнать ,<br>Perf. погнать ,  | гоняю<br>гоню.     | гонялъ<br>гналъ<br>погналъ  | буду гонять<br>буду гнать<br>погоню | гоняй.<br>гони.<br>погони. |

| <i>Infinitive.</i>                                                             | <i>Indicative.</i> |                              |                                      | <i>Imperative.</i>         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
|                                                                                | <i>Present.</i>    | <i>Past.</i>                 | <i>Future.</i>                       |                            |
| Ind. лазить,                    } to climb.<br>Def. лѣзть,<br>Perf. слѣзть,    | лажу<br>лѣзу       | лазилъ<br>лѣзъ<br>слѣзъ      | буду лазить<br>буду лѣзть<br>слѣзу   | лазь<br>лѣзь.<br>слѣзь.    |
| Ind. летать,                    } to fly.<br>Def. летѣть,<br>Per. полетѣть,    | летаю<br>лечу      | леталъ<br>летѣлъ<br>полетѣлъ | буду летать<br>буду летѣть<br>полечу | лешай.<br>лешы.<br>полети. |
| Ind. мѣрять,                    } to measure.<br>Def. мѣришь,<br>Per. смѣришь, | мѣряю<br>мѣрю      | мѣрялъ<br>мѣрилъ<br>смѣрилъ  | буду мѣрять<br>буду мѣришь<br>смѣрю  | мѣрий.<br>мѣрь.<br>смѣрь.  |
| * Ind. носить,                    } to bear.<br>* Def. нести,<br>Per. снеси,   | ношу<br>несу.      | носилъ<br>несъ<br>снесъ      | буду носить<br>буду нести<br>снесу   | носи.<br>неси.<br>снеси.   |

\* \*

| <i>Infinitive.</i>                                           | <i>Indicative.</i> |                               |                                        | <i>Imperative.</i>            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
|                                                              | <i>Present.</i>    | <i>Past.</i>                  | <i>Future.</i>                         |                               |
| Ind. плавать, } to swim.<br>Def. пласть, }<br>Per. поплыть.  | плаваю<br>плыву    | плавалъ<br>плыль<br>поплыль   | буду плавать<br>буду пласть<br>поплыву | плавай.<br>плыви.<br>поплыви. |
| Ind. ползать, }<br>Def. ползти, } to creep.<br>Per. сползти, | ползаю<br>ползу    | ползаль<br>ползъ<br>сползъ    | буду ползать<br>буду ползти<br>сползу  | ползай.<br>ползи.<br>сползи.  |
| Ind. сажать, } to plant.<br>Def. садить, }<br>Per. посадить, | сажаю<br>сажу      | сажалъ<br>ссадилъ<br>посадилъ | буду сажать<br>буду садить<br>посажу   | сажай.<br>сади.<br>посади.    |
| Ind. таскать, }<br>Def. тащить, } to drag.<br>Per. стащить,  | таскаю<br>тащу.    | таскаль<br>тащилъ<br>стащилъ  | буду таскать<br>буду тащить<br>стащу   | таскай.<br>тащи.<br>стащи.    |



§ 217. The definite branch corresponds to the prefix in English of the different tenses of the auxiliary verb *to be* to the gerund of the principal verb, ex. онъ ведётъ лошадь въ конюшню, he is leading the horse to the stable.

§ 218. The verbs ходить, to go, ѣздить, to ride and кушать, to eat, have also the definite branch: иди, to be going; ѣхаетъ, to be riding, and ѣстъ, to be eating; which being too irregular to be inserted in the preceding table, the full conjugation of the definite and perfect branches is here subjoined.

*Conjugation of the verb иди, to be going.*

#### DEFINITE BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood, идти, to be going.*

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### *P r e s e n t.*

##### *S i n g.*

я идѹ, I am going.

ты идёшь, thou art going.

онъ, она, оно идётъ, he, she, it is going.

##### *P l u.*

мы идёмъ, we are going.

вы идёте, you are going.

они, онѣ идѹтъ, they are going.

##### *P a s t.*

##### *S i n g.*

я шёлъ, шла, шло, I was going.

ты шёлъ, шла, шло, thou wast going.

онъ шёлъ, he was going.

она шла, she was going.

оно шло, it was going.

*P l u.*

мы шли, we were going.

вы шли, you were going.

они, онъ шли, they were going.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я буду идти, I shall be going.

ты будешь идти, thou wilt be going.

онъ, она, оно будетъ идти, he, she, it will be going.

*P l u.*

мы будемъ идти, we shall be going.

вы будете идти, you will be going.

они, онъ будутъ идти, they will be going.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

*S i n g.*

иди, go (thou).

пусть онъ, она, оно идетъ, let him, her, it go.

*P l u.*

идите, go (ye).

пусть они, онъ идутъ, let them go.

*Participle.*

Pres. идущій, ая, ея, who or which is going.

Past. шедшій, ая, ея, who or which was going.

*G e r u n d.*

Pres. идя or идучи, going.

Past. шедши, having gone.

PERFECT BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood, пойдѣти, to go.*

*P a s t.*

*S i n g.*

я пошѣлъ, пошла́, пошло́, I went.

ты пошѣлъ, пошла́, пошло́, thou wentest.

онъ пошѣлъ, he went.

она пошла́, she went.

оно пошло́, it went.

*P l u.*

мы пошли́, we went.

вы пошли́, you went.

они, онѣ пошли́, they went.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я пойду́, I shall go.

ты пойдѣшь, thou wilt go.

онъ, она, оно пойдѣтъ, he, she, it will go.

*P l u.*

мы пойдѣмъ, we shall go.

вы пойдѣте, you will go.

они, онѣ пойдѣтъ, they will go.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*S i n g.*

пойди́, go (thou).

пусть онъ, она, оно пойдѣтъ, let him, her, it go.

*P l u.*

пойдемъ, let us go.

пойдите́, go (ye).

пусть они, онѣ пойдѣтъ, let them go.

*Participle.*

Past. пошѣдшій, ая, ея, gone.

*Gerund.*

Past. пошѣвши, having gone.

*Conjugation of the verb ѣхать, to be riding.*

DEFINITE BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood, ѣхать, to be riding.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

*Sing.*

я ѣду, I am riding.

ты ѣдешь, thou art riding.

онъ, она, оно ѣдетъ, he, she, it is riding.

*Plu.*

мы ѣдемъ, we are riding.

вы ѣдете, you are riding.

они, онѣ ѣдутъ, they are riding.

*Past.*

*Sing.*

я ѣхалъ, а, о, I was riding.

ты ѣхалъ, а, о, thou wast riding.

онъ ѣхалъ, he was riding.

она ѣхала, she was riding.

оно ѣхало, it was riding.

*Plu.*

мы ѣхали, we were riding.

вы ѣхали, you were riding.

они, онѣ ѣхали, they were riding.

*F u t u r e.*

я буду ѣхать, I shall be riding.

ты будешь ѣхать, thou wilt be riding.

|     |   |               |   |     |   |                 |
|-----|---|---------------|---|-----|---|-----------------|
| онъ | { | будешь ѣхать, | { | he  | } | will be riding. |
| она |   |               |   | she |   |                 |
| оно |   |               |   | it  |   |                 |

*P l u.*

мы будемъ ѣхать, we shall be riding.

вы будете ѣхать, you will be riding.

они, онъ будутъ ѣхать, they will be riding.

## I M P E R A T I V E M O O D.

*S i n g.*

|       |   |     |   |        |     |   |     |   |       |
|-------|---|-----|---|--------|-----|---|-----|---|-------|
| пусть | { | онъ | { | ѣдетъ, | let | { | him | } | ride. |
|       |   | она |   |        |     |   | her |   |       |
|       |   | оно |   |        |     |   | it  |   |       |

пусть они, онъ ѣдутъ, let them ride.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Pres. ѣдущій, ая, ея, who or which is riding.

Past. ѣхавшій, ая, ея, who or which was riding.

*G e r u n d.*

Pres. ѣдучи, riding.

Past. ѣхавши, having been riding.

## P E R F E C T B R A N C H.

*Infinitive mood*, поѣхать, to ride.

## I N D I C A T I V E M O O D.

*P a s t.**S i n g.*

я поѣхалъ, а, о, I rode.

ты поѣхалъ, а, о, thou rodest.

онъ поѣхалъ, he rode.

она поѣхала, she rode.

оно поѣхало, it rode.

*P l u.*

мы поѣхали, we rode.

вы поѣхали, you rode.

они, онъ поѣхали, they rode.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я поѣду, I shall ride.

ты поѣдешь, thou wilt ride.

онъ, она, оно поѣдетъ, he, she, it will ride.

*P l u.*

мы поѣдемъ, we shall ride.

вы поѣдете, you will ride.

они, онъ поѣдутъ, they will ride.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

*S i n g.*

поѣзжай, ride (thou).

пусть  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{онъ} \\ \text{она} \\ \text{оно} \end{array} \right\}$  поѣдетъ, let  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{him} \\ \text{her} \\ \text{it} \end{array} \right\}$  ride.

*P l u.*

поѣзжайте, ride (ye).

пусть они, онъ поѣдутъ, let them ride.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Past. поѣхавшій, ая, ея, who or which rode.

*G e r u n d.*

Past. поѣхавши, having ridden.

*Conjugation of the verb ѣсть, to be eating.*

DEFINITE BRANCH.

*Infinitive mood, ѣсть, to be eating.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P r e s e n t.*

*S i n g.*

я ѣмъ, I am eating.

ты ѣшь, thou art eating.

онъ, она, оно ѣсть, he, she, it is eating.

*P l u.*

мы ѣдимъ, we are eating.

вы ѣдите, you are eating.

они, онъ, ѣдятъ, they are eating.

*P a s t.*

*S i n g.*

я ѣлъ, ѣла, ѣло, I was eating.

ты ѣлъ, ѣла, ѣло, thou wast eating.

онъ ѣлъ, he was eating.

она ѣла, she was eating.

оно ѣло, it was eating.

*P l u.*

мы ѣли, we were eating.

вы ѣли, you were eating.

они, онъ ѣли, they were eating.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я буду ѣсть, I shall be eating.

ты будешь ѣсть, thou wilt be eating.

онъ, она, оно будешь ѣсть, he, she, it will  
be eating.

*P l u.*

мы будемъ ѣсть, we shall be eating.  
вы будете ѣсть, you will be eating.  
они, онѣ, будутъ ѣсть, they will be eating.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*S i n g.*

ѣшь, eat (thou).  
пусти онъ, она, оно ѣсть, let him, her, it eat.

*P l u.*

ѣшайте, eat (ye).  
пусти они, онѣ ѣдятъ, let them eat.

*Participle.*

Pres. ѣдѣщій, ая, ея, who or which is eating.  
Past. ѣвшій, ая, ея, who or which was eating.

*Gerund.*

Pres. ѣдя, eating.  
Past. ѣвши, having eaten.

PERFECT BRANCH.

. *Infinitive mood*, съѣсть, to eat up.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*P a s t.*

*S i n g.*

я съѣлъ, съѣла, съѣло, I ate up.  
ты съѣлъ, съѣла, съѣло, thou atest &c.  
онъ съѣлъ, he ate.  
она съѣла, she ate.  
оно съѣло, it ate.



*P l u.*

мы съѣли, we ate.

вы съѣли, you ate.

они, онѣ съѣли, they ate.

*F u t u r e.*

*S i n g.*

я съѣмъ, I shall eat &c.

ты съѣшь, thou wilt eat.

онъ, она, оно съѣстъ, he, she, it will eat.

*P l u.*

мы съѣдимъ, we shall eat.

вы съѣдите, you will eat.

они, онѣ съѣдятъ, they will eat.

**IMPERATIVE MOOD.**

*S i n g.*

съѣшь, eat (thou) &c.

пусть онъ, она, оно съѣстъ, let him, her, it eat.

*P l u.*

съѣшайте, eat (ye).

пусть они, онѣ съѣдятъ, let them eat.

*P a r t i c i p l e.*

Past. съѣвшій, ая, ея, who or which ate &c.

*G e r u n d.*

Pres. съѣвши, having eaten &c.



## THEME XXVII.

## ON IRREGULAR VERBS.

In countries where there is no wood they *burn* coal, turf and even straw. Oak - wood is employed (*goes*) in the building of ships. The grape vine *cannot* grow in cold climates. Many Nomadian tribes inhabit (*live in*) Siberia. The hawk *soars* above the clouds. People *make* (*plait*) baskets of willow branches. Small offences *lead*

|                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| where there is no wood,   | cold , холодный.        |
| безлѣсный.                | climate , климашъ.      |
| country , странá.         | in , въ.                |
| to burn , жечь.           | Siberia , Сибирь.       |
| coal , каменное уголье.   | to live , жить.         |
| turf , турфъ.             | the hawk , ястребъ.     |
| even , даже.              | to soar , виться.       |
| straw , солома.           | above , надъ.           |
| oak-wood, дубовый лѣсъ.   | a cloud , облако.       |
| to go , идти.             | a basket , корзина.     |
| in , на, gov. the acc.    | to plait , плестъ.      |
| the building, строение.   | of , изъ, gov. the gen. |
| a ship, корабль, V. § 40. | willow , ивовый.        |
| grape , виноградный.      | branch , въпвь.         |
| vine , лозá.              | small , малый.          |
| to be able , могъ.        | offence, проступокъ.    |
| to grow , расти.          | to lead , вести.        |

to great crimes. Socrates *fell* a victim to the calumny and malice of his fellow-citizens Vasco de Gama *discovered* the passage by sea to the East-Indies (Eastern India) Mongolfier *invented* air balloons. Linæus *acquired* great fame by *reducing* (having reduced) natural history to a system. Peter the Great *established* the first Russian fleet. Where thou

---

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| great, большій.        | Mongolfier, Монголь-    |
| crime, преступлѣ-      | фіеръ.                  |
| ніе.                   | to invent, изобрѣсти.   |
| Socrates, Сократъ.     | air, воздушный.         |
| to fall, пасть.        | a balloon, шаръ.        |
| a victim, жертва.      | Linæus, Линей.          |
| to, to be rendered by  | to acquire, приобрести. |
| the gen. case.         | fame, слава.            |
| calumny, клеветѣ.      | by having, имѣя что.    |
| malice, злоба.         | to reduce, привести.    |
| fellow-citizen, согра- | natural, естествен-     |
| жданинъ.               | ный.                    |
| Vasco de Gama, Васко   | history, исторія.       |
| де Гама.               | a system, система.      |
| to discover, найши.    | Peter the Great, Пётръ  |
| by sea, морско́й.      | [Великій.               |
| the passage, путь.     | to establish, завести.  |
| to, въ, gov. the acc.  | Russian, Россійскій.    |
| Eastern, восточный.    | fleet, флотъ.           |
| India, Индія.          | where, гдѣ.             |

hast not sown (there) thou wilt not *reap*. *Come* and *take* them, said Leonidas to the king of Persia who demanded, that the Spartans should deliver up their arms.

|                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| to sow, сѣять.     | King, Царь.              |
| to reap, пожáть.   | Persian, Персидскій.     |
| to come, прійти.   | to demand, требовать.    |
| to take, взять.    | a Spartan, Спартанецъ.   |
| to say, отвѣчать.  | to deliver up, отдавать. |
| Leonidas, Леонидъ. | their arms, ору́жје.     |

## S E C T. X.

### REMARKS ON THE USE OF THE TENSES AND MOODS.

#### 1. T e n s e s.

§ 219. In general the present tense Russ answers to the present tense English.

§ 220. The present tense is sometimes used instead of the past in Russ, as well as in English, especially in narration, ex.

|                                                                                         |                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Наконѣць наступá-<br>етъ страшная ночь;<br>небо покрывáется чёр-<br>ными облаками и ши- | At length the dismal<br>night comes on; black<br>clouds cover the sky,<br>and a death-like si- |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

шина подобная смёр- lence reigns through  
 ши объёмлетъ всю при- all nature.  
 роду.

§ 221. In some instances the present tense is used instead of the future in both languages; as,

Она́ чрезъ мѣсяцъ от- She sets out on her  
 правлѣется пушешё- travels in a month.  
 ствовашъ.

Я за́втра обѣдаю до- I dine at home to-  
 ма. morrow.

§ 222. The past tense English preceded by the conjunction *if* or *whether* is rendered in Russ by the present tense; as,

Онъ спросилъ меня, He asked me, if I  
 пишу́ ли я письмó. was writing a letter.

Онъ хотѣлъ знать, He wished to know,  
 говорю́ ли я по Фран- if I spoke French.  
 цузски.

Я сомнѣва́лся, дѣй- I doubted whether  
 ствительно ли онъ чи- he actually read useful  
 таетъ полѣзныя книги. books.

§ 223. The past indefinite is rendered by the imperfect tense in English, as,

Я вчера́ писа́лъ пись- I wrote some letters  
 ма. yesterday.

Я никогда́ не чита́лъ I never read such an  
 тако́й забавной книги. amusing book.

*Rem.* If the action be correlative, or continuing, when another commences, this tense may be rendered in English by the auxiliary verb *to be*, joined to the gerund of the principal verb; as,

Я писалъ, когда онъ вошёлъ.      I *was writing*, when he entered.

Я думалъ о васъ вчера, когда я получилъ вашу записку.      I *was thinking* of you yesterday, when I received your note.

224. The past perfect corresponds to both the perfect and pluperfect English. When the action is of recent occurrence, it may be rendered by the former, and when of more remote occurrence and correlative, by the latter; as,

Я написалъ письмо.      I *have written* the letter.

Вы мнѣ сказали, что онъ уже прочиталъ книгу, а онъ еще читалъ ее, когда я вошёлъ.      You told me that he *had read* the book through, and he was reading it, when I went in.

§ 225. The past tense of the iterative, in addition to its signification of repetition, marks the remoteness of the action, and may be rendered in English by *used to* with the infinitive of the principal verb; as,

**Соловьъ говаривалъ :** Solon *used to say* :  
**познай самаго себя!** know thyself!

**Я часто къ нему хаживалъ.** I used often to visit him.

§ 226. The past tense of the semelfactive cannot be expressed by any particular tense in English without the aid of an adverb.

**Волна плеснула на палубу.** The wave broke (suddenly) on the deck.

**Ряды сомкнулись и войско двинулось.** The ranks closed (at once) and the army moved (suddenly).

§ 227. The future tenses of the indefinite, perfect and semelfactive branches are rendered in English by the first future.

**Въ деревнѣ я буду часто ѣздить верхомъ.** In the country I shall often ride on horseback.

**Завтра я поѣду за городъ.** To morrow I shall ride out of town.

**Онъ ничего не тронетъ.** He will not touch any thing.

§ 228. The Russian gerund present is rendered by the participle active English with the addition of *in*; as.

**Лодка, переправляясь черезъ рѣку, опрокинулась.** *In crossing the river,* the boat was upset.

*Читая* Гомерая вос- *In reading* Homer I  
хищаюсь красотою его am transported at the  
стиховъ. beauty of his poetry.

§ 229. The gerund past is rendered in English by the gerund present of the auxiliary verb *to have*, connected with the participle past of the principal verb; as,

*Снявшись* съ якоря, Having weighed an-  
мы пустились въ море. chor we put out to sea.

§ 230. The auxiliary verb *было* added to the past of the definite branch corresponds to the English pluperfect; as.

*Я сдѣлалъ было* ошиб- I had made a mis-  
ку, да успѣлъ ее по- take, but corrected it  
правиль. in time.

§ 231. The same verb with the past tense of the verb *хотѣть* and the infinitive of the principal verb corresponds to the English *was going*; as,

*Я хотѣлъ было* выѣ- I was going to ride,  
хать, но былъ удер- but was prevented by  
жанъ дурною погодою. the bad weather.

§ 232. The auxiliary verb *бывало* added to the past tense of a verb, corresponds to the English *used to* followed by the infinitive; as,

*Я бывало бѣгалъ по* I used to run about  
лугамъ. the meadows.



Я бывало хаживалъ I used to walk thirty  
по тридцати верстъ versts a day.  
въ день.

*Rem.* Prefixed to the present tense it expresses the same idea in a more lively manner.

Въ школѣ мы быва- At school we used to  
ло учимся, а онъ и- study, while he was  
граетъ. playing.

## 2. M o o d s.

§ 233. The infinitive is used in the Russian language without any preposition or sign; as,

Я желаю знать. I wish to know.

Учись говорить пра- Learn to speak cor-  
вильно. rectly.

§ 234. When the infinitive Russ is preceded by the conjunction чтобы or дабы it expresses the end of the action; as,

Дабы хорошо знать It is necessary to read  
языкъ, надобно много and write much to know  
читать и писать. a language well.

§ 235. The infinitive is frequently employed instead of the imperative; as,

Исполнишь по при- Let this be executed  
казанію. according to the order.

Быть по сему. So be it.

§ 236. The infinitive is sometimes followed by the interrogative particle *ли*, in which case it expresses doubt; as,

Видать-ли мнѣ еще Shall I see my native  
разъ мою родину? place *once more*?

When preceded by *не* it marks the certainty of the non-occurrence of an action; as,

Не видать тебѣ бо- Thou wilt never see  
же твою родину. thy native place more.

§ 237. In addition to the manner of forming the imperative shewn in the conjugation it may be expressed by the prefix of the particle *да*; in which form it corresponds to the optative English.

Да сохранишь васъ May God preserve  
Богъ. you.

Да исполнится ва- May your desire be  
ше желаніе. gratified.

Да будетъ воля Let thy will be done.  
твоя.

§ 238. There is neither conditional nor subjunctive mood in the Russian language; the former is expressed by the addition of the particle *бы* or *если бы* to the past indicative; as,

Безъ дружбы и люб- Without love and  
ви свѣтъ *былъ бы* пе- friendship the world  
чальною пустынею. would be a dismal wil-  
derness.

Еслибы я *былъ бо-* If I were rich &c.  
гатъ.

§ 239. The subjunctive is expressed in the Russian language by the particles *чтобы, дабы, or хотя бы*, added to the past tense of the indicative; as,

Онъ *требуетъ, что-* He requires that I  
*бы я съ нимъ поѣ-* should go with him.  
*халъ.*

*Дѣтей наказыва-* Children are punish-  
*ютъ, дабы они ис-* ed, that they may re-  
*правились.* form.



TABLE FOR THE CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

| Indefinite branch. |                                   |                                   |                  | Derivative branch. |      | Iterative branch.     |          |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|--------------------|------|-----------------------|----------|
| Inf.               | -шь                               |                                   |                  | Past.              | Fut. | -нуть                 | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | Pres.                             |                                   |                  |                    |      |                       |          |
| Indicative.        | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-ешь<br>-есть               | -ишь<br>-ишь<br>-ишь              | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -емъ<br>-еме<br>-юшъ<br>от<br>ишь | -имъ<br>-ине<br>-ашъ<br>от<br>ишь | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.                             |                                   |                  | Plural.            | Fut. | -ну<br>-нешь<br>-неть | -ы<br>-и |
|                    | -ю<br>-и<br>-а                    | -и<br>-и<br>-и                    | -а<br>-ла<br>-ло |                    |      |                       |          |
| Ger. Part. Imp.    | Sing.</                           |                                   |                  |                    |      |                       |          |

\* The perfect branch is not inserted in the above table as it is formed by the prefix of a preposition to the indefinite branch.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE.

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

*Howard's tomb.*

If I *tell* you, that at the very entrance of the town of Sympheropol, on the high road from Nicolaeff, there *stands* a monument to Howard, *you will think* that I *contradict myself* in an unpardonable manner — but *you will be mistaken*, the monument *is* actually there,

|                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| if, если.                  | to, expressed, by the        |
| to tell, <i>сказáть</i> .  | gen.                         |
| at, у, gov. the gen.       | Howard, Гоуардъ.             |
| the very, сáмый.           | to think, <i>подумáть</i> .  |
| entrance, въѣздъ.          | to contradict, <i>проти-</i> |
| of the town, въ гóродъ.    | <i>ворѣзъ</i> .              |
| of Sympheropol, Сим-       | in, expressed by the ins.    |
| ферóполь.                  | case.                        |
| on, по, gov. the dat.      | unpardonable, непро-         |
| high, большо́й.            | стѣпсельный.                 |
| road, доро́га.             | manner, образъ.              |
| from, отъ.                 | but, и.                      |
| Nicolaeff, Никола́евъ.     | to be mistaken, <i>оши-</i>  |
| there, not expressed.      | <i>бáться</i> .              |
| to stand, <i>стоя́ть</i> . | actually, <i>пóдлинно</i> .  |
| a monument, пáмьш-         | there, <i>шуть</i> .         |
| никъ.                      | to be, <i>находя́ться</i> .  |

high granite obelisk, the pedestal of which forms a sarcophagus with the *following* inscription: «Howard *departed* this life at the age of sixty five years, 1790.» It is *surrounded* by a circular stone wall with gates of iron railing opposite the inscription. This is all very well; thanks to him who first *conceived* the idea of *honouring* the memory of a man worthy of universal

---

high, высóкíй.

granite, гранитный.

obelisk, обелíскъ.

the pedestal, пьедесталь.

to form, составлять.

a sarcophagus, саркофагъ.

with, съ, гов. the gen.

to follow, слѣдовать.

inscription, надпись.

to depart this life, скончаться.

at the age of 65, на 65омъ году отъ рождéníя своего.

to surround, обнесётъ.

circular, круглый.

stone, каменный.

wall, ограда

railing, рѣшетчатый.

wide, ширóкíй.

gates, ворота.

opposite, насупротивъ.

all this, все это.

is very well, такъ.

thanks, и хвалá.

to conceive an idea, захотѣть.

to honour, почитать.

the memory, память.

worthy, достойный.

universal, всеобщíй.

esteem; but it is a monument, a cenotaph, and not the tomb of Howard. The ashes of this benefactor of the wretched *lie* about three versts from the town, where *I saw* a miserable mouldering brick pyramid, instead of the sun-dial, which *I hoped* to have found over his grave according to his last request. This circumstance may be perhaps unknown to you. In the year 1790, when a

|                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| esteem, уваженіе.        | miserable, бѣдный.        |
| but, но.                 | brick, кирпичный.         |
| it is, это.              | pyramid, пирамида.        |
| a cenotaph, кенота́фъ.   | instead, вмѣсто.          |
| and not, а не.           | the sun-dial, со́лнеч-    |
| the tomb, гробница.      | ные часы.                 |
| the ashes, прахъ (sing.) | to hope, желáть.          |
| benefactor, благошво-    | to find, найтѣ.           |
| рѣтель.                  | over, надъ, gov. the ins. |
| the wretched, стра́ж-    | according, согласно.      |
| дущіе.                   | last, послѣдній.          |
| to lie, погнѣать.        | request, воля.            |
| about, въ, gov. the      | circumstance, обстоя-     |
| prep.                    | тельство.                 |
| three, V. § 130.         | maybe perhaps, можетъ     |
| a verst, верста́.        | быть.                     |
| from, отъ.               | unknown, неизвѣст-        |
| where, и тамъ по.        | но.                       |
| to see, видѣть.          | when, когда.              |

★ ★

contagious putrid fever *raged* in the Crimea, Howard *happened* to be at Cherson on his way to Constantinople. You may easily *imagine*, that it *was difficult* for a man, who *considered* it as a sacred duty daily to *visit* prisons, hospitals and dungeons, to *escape* the contagion: he actually *fell* a sacrifice to it. *Feeling* that

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| to rage , свирѣпство-  | man , человекъ.         |
| вать.                  | to consider , ставить   |
| in the Crimea, въ Кры- | себѣ.                   |
| му.                    | as, въ, gov. the acc.   |
| contagious, прилипчи-  | sacred, неминуемый.     |
| вый.                   | duty, обязанность.      |
| putrid, гнилѡй.        | daily, ежедневно.       |
| fever, горячка.        | to visit, посѣщать.     |
| to happen, случиться.  | a prison, шюрма.        |
| to be, not expressed.  | an hospital, больница.  |
| at, въ, gov. the prep. | a dungeon, острогъ.     |
| Cherson, Херсонъ.      | to escape, избѣжать.    |
| on, на, gov. the prep. | the contagion, зараза.  |
| way, путь.             | actually, дѣйствитель-  |
| Constantinople, Царь-  | но.                     |
| градъ.                 | to fall, дѣлаться, gov. |
| easily, легко.         | the ins.                |
| to imagine, предста-   | a victim, жертва.       |
| вить себѣ.             | it, V. § 155.           |
| you may, можешь.       | to feel, чувствовать.   |



his end was approaching, he *called* his two friends, with whom he could *converse* in his native language, and *having bid* them *farewell* said: *I wish* for no monument, and *beg* you only *to place* a simple sun-dial over my grave. But this request *was forgotten*, there is no sun-dial over his grave; and it is a pity, a great pity! His friends *erected* a little brick pyramid, but now even that simple monument is *mouldering away*,

---

|                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| end, конѣць.                 | to place, поставитъ.          |
| was approaching, близокъ.    | grave, могила.                |
|                              | simple, простой.              |
| to call, призвать къ себѣ.   | sun-dial, солнечные           |
| a friend, пріятель.          | часы.                         |
| to be able, могъ. V.         | request, повелѣніе.           |
| § 215.                       | to forget, забыть.            |
| to speak, говорить.          | there is no, нѣтъ.            |
| native, природный.           | it is a pity, этого жаль.     |
| language, языкъ.             | a great pity, очень жаль.     |
| to bid farewell, проститься. | to erect, воздвигать.         |
|                              | a little, маленькій.          |
| them, съ ними.               | now, теперь.                  |
| to say, сказать.             | even, и.                      |
| monument, памятникъ.         | that, это.                    |
| no, никакого.                | simple, простой.              |
| to wish, хотѣть.             | to moulder away, разсыпаться. |
| to beg, просить.             |                               |

and e'er long the place will be unknown where  
lie the remains of this friend of suffering hu-  
manity.

*Mouravieff.*

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| e'er long, вскóръ.  | to lie, лежáть.        |
| will be unknown, не | the remains, оста́шки. |
| узна́ютъ.           | of suffering humanity, |
| the place, мѣсто.   | спрада́льцевъ.         |

## С Н А Р. VI.

### Р А Р Т И Ц И П Л Е С.

§ 240. The participle is a part of speech derived from the Verb, and combines the meaning of the relative pronoun кто, who; который, which, or что, that, with the signification of the verb, from which it is derived, ex. челове́къ, любя́щій правду, the man, *who loves truth.*

§ 241. Participles have the same declension as adjectives and vary according to the number, gender and case of the substantive, to which they are prefixed, ex. лучи́ восхо́дящаго со́лнца, the rays of the *rising* sun, &c.

## DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES.

знáющій, knowing, or who knows.

*S i n g.*

|       | <i>Mas.</i>               | <i>Fem.</i> | <i>Neut.</i> |
|-------|---------------------------|-------------|--------------|
| Nom.  | знáющій,                  | знáющая ,   | знáющее.     |
| Gen.  | знáющего ,                | знáющей ,   | знáющего.    |
| Dat.  | знáющему ,                | знáющей ,   | знáющему.    |
| Acc.  | { знáющего ,<br>знáющій , | знáющую ,   | знáющее.     |
| Ins.  | знáющимъ ,                | знáющею ,   | знáющимъ.    |
| Prep. | о знáющемъ ,              | о знáющей , | о знáющемъ.  |

*P l u.*

|       |                           |                         |             |
|-------|---------------------------|-------------------------|-------------|
| Nom.  | знáющие ,                 | знáущія ,               | знáущія.    |
| Gen.  | знáющихъ ,                | знáющихъ ,              | знáющихъ.   |
| Dat.  | знáющимъ ,                | знáющимъ ,              | знáющимъ.   |
| Acc.  | { знáющихъ ,<br>знáющие , | знáющихъ ,<br>знáущія , | знáущія.    |
| Ins.  | знáющими ,                | знáющими ,              | знáющими.   |
| Prep. | о знáющихъ                | о знáющихъ              | о знáющихъ. |



## THEME XXVIII.

## ON THE DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES.

The earth, *inhabited* by us is a planet, *belonging* to the solar system. The ruins of ancient Rome are monuments of its *former* greatness. A man, (*who is*) unmindful of his future destination, is like a traveller, *who has* no other end but the pleasures of the present moment. Russia is divided from America by Behring's straits,

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| the earth, земля.     | destination, опредѣ-    |
| by us, нами.          | ніе.                    |
| to inhabit, обитѣть.  | is like, подобенъ.      |
| a planet, планета.    | a traveller, путеш-     |
| to belong, принадле-  | ественникъ,             |
| жѣть.                 | not to have, не имѣть.  |
| solar, солнечный.     | any other, другой.      |
| system, система.      | end, цѣль.              |
| the ruins, развалины. | but, кромѣ.             |
| ancient, древній.     | of the present moment,  |
| Rome, Римъ.           | минутный.               |
| a monument, памят-    | pleasure, удовольствіе. |
| никъ.                 | Russia, Россія.         |
| former, бывшій.       | to divide, отдѣлять.    |
| its, его.             | from, отъ.              |
| greatness, величіе.   | America, Америка.       |
| to be unmindful, за-  | Behring, Бѣрингъ.       |
| бывашъ.               | strait, проливъ.        |

*which are about 73 versts wide. Of the rivers, which fall into the Caspian sea, the Volga is the most considerable. Among the poets, who have distinguished themselves in modern times in England, the most celebrated are Scott and Byron. Epaminondas, mortally wounded in the battle of Mantinea, said to his friends, who lamented that he should die without leaving any children; I leave two daughters, the victories of Leuctra*

---

which are, rendered by *Epaminondas*, *Епаминонда*,  
the participle of *имѣть*, *имѣющъ*.

to have. *mortally*, *смертельно*.

a verst, *верста*. to wound, *ранить*.

a river, *рѣка*. the battle, *сраженіе*.

to fall, *впадать*. Mantinea, *Мантинѣя*.

Caspian, *Каспійскій*. to say, *сказать*.

the Volga, *Волга*. a friend, *другъ*.

considerable, *значительный*. to lament, *соболезновать*.

among, *изъ числа*. that he should die, *о томъ что умирая*.

a poet, *стихотворецъ*. without leaving, *не оставляешь*.

to distinguish, *прославить*.

modern, *новѣйшій*. a child, *дитя*.

time, *время*. to leave, *оставляшь*.

England, *Англія*. daughter, *дочь*.

Scott, *Скоттъ*. the victory, *побѣда*.

Byron, *Бейронъ*. Leuctra, *Левкитра*.

and Mantinea. Ignorance *united* with modesty is more bearable than knowledge *accompanied* by haughtiness. A *perturbed* mind, like a *troubled* sea, reflects all the objects, *which surround it, distorted and broken*, communicating to them that disordered motion, by which it is itself *agitated*. It is necessary for man, who is hourly *tempest-tost* on the sea of life, to have faith

|                          |                            |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| ignorance, невѣжество.   | to distort, обезобра-      |
| to unite, соединять.     | живать.                    |
| with, съ.                | to break, преломлять.      |
| modesty, скромность.     | to communicate, со-        |
| bearable, сносный.       | общать.                    |
| knowledge, знаніе.       | that, може.                |
| to accompany, сопрово-   | disordered motion, вол-    |
| ждать.                   | неніе.                     |
| haughtiness, спесь.      | to agitate, обуревать.     |
| to perturb, встревоб-    | for, expressed by the dat. |
| жить.                    | hourly, ежечасно.          |
| mind, духъ.              | sea, море.                 |
| like, подобно.           | life, жизнь.               |
| to trouble, взволновать. | to tempest-toss, обуре-    |
| the sea, море.           | вать.                      |
| to reflect, отражать.    | it is necessary, необ-     |
| all, все.                | ходимо.                    |
| to surround, окружать.   | to have, имѣть.            |
| an object, предметъ.     | faith, вѣра.               |

in Providence for his pilot. The first step beyond the cottage presented me with the most enchanting view. The rays of the *rising* sun, *intercepted* by a range of rocky hills, shot their *enlivening* light through the rugged openings ; the valley partly *illuminated*, and partly *hid* in shade, exhibited the most varied display of colours. The Tartar village with its huts, *sending forth* their white clouds of

---

|                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| in, въ.                       | through, сквозь.               |
| Providence, Провидѣ-          | rugged opening, уголь.         |
| nie.                          | to enliven, <i>оживлять</i> .  |
| step, шагъ.                   | light, свѣтъ.                  |
| beyond, за.                   | the valley, долина.            |
| the threshold, поро́гъ.       | partly, час́тію.               |
| cottage, хѣжина.              | to illumine, <i>освѣщать</i> . |
| to present, достáвить.        | to hide, <i>скрывать</i> .     |
| enchanting, восхищѣ-          | shade, тѣнь.                   |
| пелый.                        | to exhibit, являть.            |
| view, взглядъ.                | varied, разнообразный.         |
| a ray, лучъ.                  | display, игра.                 |
| to rise, <i>восходить</i> .   | colour, цвѣтъ.                 |
| to intercept, <i>перехва-</i> | Tartar, Татáрскій.             |
| тывать.                       | a village, деревня.            |
| a range, стѣна.               | hut, до́микъ.                  |
| rocky, ка́менный.             | to send forth, <i>пущать</i> . |
| a hill, горá.                 | white, бѣлый.                  |
| to shoot, броса́ть.           | column, о́блако.               |

*curling* smoke through the dark foliage of the trees, was seated like the ruling genius of the mountain scene, *which served* as its crown; amidst the groves *which girded* it as with a luxuriant garland; and on the shore of the great deep, *which brought* to its feet the tribute of its waves.

---

|                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| to curl , <i>витья</i> .            | a crown , <i>внѣць</i> .        |
| smoke , <i>дымъ</i> .               | amidst , <i>мѣжду</i> .         |
| dark , <i>густый</i> .              | a grove , <i>роща</i> .         |
| foliage , <i>сѣнь</i> .             | to gird , <i>препоасывать</i> . |
| a tree , <i>дѣрево</i> .            | as , <i>въ образѣ</i> .         |
| was seated , <i>величалось</i> .    | luxuriant , <i>роскошный</i> .  |
| like , <i>какъ</i> .                | a garland , <i>гирлянда</i> .   |
| the ruling genius , <i>царяца</i> . | shore , <i>бѣрегъ</i> .         |
| of the mountain scene ,             | the great deep , <i>море</i> .  |
| <i>мѣжду горъ</i> .                 | to bring , <i>приносить</i> .   |
| to serve , <i>служить</i> .         | foot , <i>нога</i> .            |
| as its , <i>ей</i> .                | tribute , <i>дань</i> .         |
|                                     | a wave , <i>волна</i> .         |





---

## С Н А Р. VII.

### А D V E R B S.

§ 242. The adverb is commonly prefixed to the verb to express some qualifying circumstance of the action; as,

говори́ть *вня́тно*, to speak distinctly.

посту́пать *благоразу́мно*, to act prudently.

§ 243. The only variations, which adverbs are subject to, are the degrees of signification \* which are formed by changing the termination o into те for the comparative, and by prefixing пре, очень, or весьма́ to the positive for the superlative degree; as,

|           |          |               |               |
|-----------|----------|---------------|---------------|
| бы́стро,  | rapidly. | бы́стрѣ,      | more rapidly. |
| мно́го,   | much,    | премно́го,    | very much.    |
| ра́но,    | early,   | о́чень рано́, | very early.   |
| успѣ́шно, | success- | весьма́ ус-   | very success- |
|           | sully.   | пѣ́шно.       | fully.        |

1. *Adverbs of place, in answer to the question*  
гдѣ? *where?*

|              |                         |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| здѣсь, here. | гдѣ нибу́дь, any-where. |
| тамъ, there. | вездѣ                   |
| здесь, here. | повсю́ду } everywhere.  |

---

\* There are however diminutive adverbs, which are formed in the same manner as diminutive adjectives: *малова́шо*, rather little; *ранѣнько*, pretty early etc.

|                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| ѣндѣ, somewhere.   | въ низу́, below.         |
| круго́мъ, around.  | въ пра́во, on the right. |
| вокругъ, about.    | въ лѣво, on the left.    |
| вну́три, inside.   | посредѣ, in the middle.  |
| снару́жи, outside. | близко, near.            |
| въ передѣ, before. | далекó, far.             |
| назадѣ, behind.    | вдали́, at a distance.   |
| на верху́, above.  | вблизѣ́, near, at hand.  |

2. *Adverbs of movement, in answer to the questions куда? whither откуда? whence. &c.*

|                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| сюда́, hither.                 | отсю́да, hence.               |
| туда́, thither.                | оттуда́, thence.              |
| куда́ нибу́дь, some-<br>where. | извну́три, from out.          |
| пря́мо, straight forward.      | извнѣ́, from without.         |
| вкось, on one side.            | съ верху́, from above.        |
| вдо́ль, along.                 | съ низу́, from below.         |
| поперѣ́тъ, across.             | съ пе́реди, from before.      |
| вверхъ, up.                    | съ за́ди, from behind.        |
| внизъ, down.                   | издали́, from far.            |
| вну́три, into.                 | изблизѣ́, from near.          |
| наза́дъ, behind.               | съ лѣва́, from the left.      |
| впе́редъ, before.              | съ пра́ва, from the right.    |
| вда́ль, distantly.             | отовсю́ду, from all<br>sides. |
| вонъ, away.                    | прочь, away.                  |

3. *Adverbs of time, in answer to the question*  
*когда? when?*

|                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| тогда́, then.          | пóздо, late.             |
| тепéрь, now.           | дóлго, long.             |
| ны́нѣ, at present.     | ужé, already.            |
| сейча́сь, this minute. | отны́нѣ, henceforth.     |
| пoтчáсь, immediately.  | впредь, henceforward.    |
| иногда́, sometimes.    | сего́дня, to day.        |
| всегда́, always.       | завтра́, tomorrow.       |
| никогда́, never.       | вчера́, yesterday.       |
| рѣ́дко, seldom.        | прѣ́тьяго дня, the day   |
| ча́сто, often.         | before yesterday.        |
| давнó, long ago.       | послѣ́ завтра́, the day  |
| не да́вно, lately.     | after tomorrow.          |
| вѣ́чно, eternally.     | ежего́дно, annually.     |
| изда́вна, long since.  | ежедне́вно, daily.       |
| прѣ́жде, before.       | постепенéнно, gradually. |
| послѣ́, after.         | исподоволь, by and by.   |
| потóмъ, then.          | пока́, until.            |
| ра́но, early.          | посредѣ́, in the midst.  |

4. *Adverbs marking the order of time.*

|                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| во пѣ́рвыхъ, in the first | сперва́, at first.      |
| place.                    | прѣ́жде, before.        |
| во второ́рыхъ, in the se- | потóмъ, afterward.      |
| cond place.               | за сѣ́мъ, after this.   |
| снача́ла, from the be-    | мáло по мáлу, little by |
| ginning.                  | little.                 |

|                         |                 |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| дálше, farther.         | сно́ва, }       |
| наконéцъ, at last.      | вновь, } again. |
| напослѣдокъ, at length. | опя́шь, }       |

5. *Adverbs of repetition, in answer to the question сколько разъ?*

|                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| спóлько разъ, so many times. | нѣсколько разъ, several times. |
| однáжды, }                   | многokráтно, frequently.       |
| единожды, }                  | once.                          |
| о́днокрáтно, }               | ча́сто, often.                 |
| двáжды, twice,               | сто рáзь, a hundred times.     |

6. *Adverbs of quantity, in answer to the question сколько? how much?*

|                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| спóлько, so much. | довóльно, enough.         |
| мнóго, much.      | достáточно, sufficiently. |
| мáло, little.     |                           |
| нѣсколько, some.  | сли́шкомъ, too much.      |

7. *Adverbs of affirmation.*

|                    |                                |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| да, yes.           | конéчно, certainly.            |
| такъ, so.          | вѣ́рно, faithfully.            |
| то́чно, exactly.   | дѣ́йстви́тельно, actually.     |
| впрямь, surely.    |                                |
| по́длинно, indeed. | безъ сомнѣ́нiя, without doubt. |

|                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| пра́во , truly.             | на вѣ́рное , for cer- |
| въ са́момъ дѣ́лѣ , in fact. | tain.                 |

8. *Adverbs of negation.*

|              |              |                    |
|--------------|--------------|--------------------|
| не , not.    | опнѹ́дь ,    | } not at all.      |
| ни́тъ , no , | ника́къ ,    |                    |
| ни́мало ,    | } not in the | ничего́ , nothing. |
| ни́чуть ,    |              |                    |

9. *Adverbs of doubt.*

|                      |                           |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| едва́ ли , scarcely. | мо́жетъ бы́ть , perhaps.  |
| аво́сь , perchance.  | мо́жетъ ста́ться , maybe. |

10. *Adverbs of augmentation and excess.*

|                  |                       |                      |
|------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| гора́здо , much. | сли́шкомъ , too much. |                      |
| о́чень ,         | } very.               | чрезвычайно , uncom- |
| весьма́ ,        |                       |                      |
| кра́йне ,        | } excessively.        | совсе́мъ , entirely. |
| изли́шне ,       |                       |                      |

11. *Adverbs of comparison.*

|                     |                   |                      |
|---------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| та́къ какъ , so.    | равно́ , equally. |                      |
| та́къ же какъ , as. | подо́бно , like.  |                      |
| какъ бы ,           | } as if.          | и́на́че , otherwise. |
| бу́дто ,            |                   |                      |

12. *Adverbs of explanation.*

|                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| то е́сть , that is. | и́менно , namely. |
|---------------------|-------------------|

13. *Adverbs of quality in answer to the question*  
какъ? how?

|                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| такъ, so.               | обыкновенно, com-     |
| такимъ образомъ, in     | monly.                |
| such a manner.          | охотно, willingly.    |
| хорошо, well.           | добровольно, volun-   |
| худо, badly.            | tarily.               |
| изрядно, tolerably.     | насилъно, forceably.  |
| дурно, indifferently.   | нарочно, purposely.   |
| такъ и сякъ, so-so.     | явно, evidently.      |
| порядочно, pretty well. | легко, easily.        |
| посредственно, mid-     | удобно, conveniently. |
| lingly.                 | даромъ, gratis.       |
| вдругъ, all at once.    | тайно, secretly.      |
| внезапно, suddenly.     | щещно, fruitlessly    |
| опромѣшчиво, rashly.    | &c.                   |

14. *Adverbs of interrogation.*

|                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| гдѣ, where.            | сколько, how many. |
| куда, whither.         | сколько разъ, how  |
| откуда, whence.        | many times.        |
| докуда, how far.       | какъ, how.         |
| когда, when.           | какимъ образомъ in |
| доколь, till when.     | what way.          |
| сколь долго, how long. | почто, why.        |
| какъ часто, how often. | зачѣмъ, for what.  |



## THEME XXIX.

## ON ADVERBS.

The people are happy *there, where* industry is combined with good morals. We see *everywhere* traces of the wisdom of the Creator. Magellan performed the first voyage round the world. There is *no where* such a dense population as in China. In Egypt, *where formerly* the sciences flourished, ignorance *now* reigns. Anger *often* causes us to act *rashly*. As we ap-

---

|                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| are happy, благодѣн-    | there is, нѣтъ.       |
| ствуетъ.                | such, такой.          |
| industry, трудолюбіе.   | a dense population,   |
| to combine, соеди-      | многочисленность.     |
| нятъ.                   | China, Китай.         |
| morals, нравы.          | Egypt, Египетъ.       |
| to see, видѣть.         | a science, наука.     |
| a trace, слѣдъ.         | to flourish, процвѣ-  |
| wisdom, премудрость.    | твуетъ.               |
| of the Creator, Божіей. | to reign, царство-    |
| Magellan, Магелланъ.    | вать.                 |
| to perform, совершить.  | anger, гнѣвъ.         |
| voyage, путешествіе.    | to cause, заставлятъ. |
| round, кругомъ, gov.    | to act, дѣйствовать.  |
| the gen.                | as we approach, при-  |
| the world, свѣтъ.       | ближаясь.             |

proach the land we discover *first* the summits of the mountains, *then* the tops of towers, and at *last* the shore itself. A grateful man remembers *eternally* a benefit once conferred upon him. To speak *much* and reflect *little* is a sign of frivolity. We do not know *for certain how far* the Phenicians extended their navigation. *There is* no rule without exception. In some arts we can *scarcely* be compared with the ancients. A gentle spirit, *like* a smooth lake,

---

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| land, берегъ.           | a Phenician, Фини-     |
| to discover, примѣчать. | кіянинъ.               |
| (to observe.)           | to extend, прости-     |
| summit, вершина.        | расть.                 |
| a mountain, гора.       | navigation, плаваніе.  |
| tops, верхъ.            | a rule, правило.       |
| a tower, башня.         | exception, исключе-    |
| the shore, берегъ.      | ніе.                   |
| a grateful man, бла-    | art, искусство.        |
| годарный.               | we can, мы можемъ.     |
| to remember, пом-       | to compare, равняться. |
| нить.                   | with, съ.              |
| to confer, оказывать.   | the ancients, древніе. |
| a benefit, услуга.      | gentle, спокойный.     |
| a sign, признакъ.       | spirit, душа.          |
| frivolity, легкомысліе. | smooth, зеркальный.    |
| to know, знать.         | lake, озеро.           |



reflects every object in its just proportions. The Lacedæmonians, accustomed their children from their very infancy to speak *briefly* and *distinctly*. It is *easier* to govern the passions than to conquer them. People forgive malice *sooner* than contempt. Many people write *better* than they speak, and others speak *better* than they write. *Sooner*, said Pyrrhus, will the sun swerve from its course,

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| to reflect, отражать.  | to conquer, побѣж-     |
| object, предметъ.      | дашь.                  |
| in въ.                 | people, люди.          |
| just, надлежащій.      | soon, скоро.           |
| proportion, видъ.      | to forgive, прощать.   |
| a Lacedæmonian, Ла-    | malice, злоба.         |
| кедемѳнянинъ.          | than, нежели.          |
| from, съ.              | contempt, презрѣнiе.   |
| very, самый.           | many, многие.          |
| infancy, младенчество. | to write, писать.      |
| to accustom, приучать. | to speak, говорить.    |
| a child, дитя V. § 51. | to say, сказать.       |
| to speak, говорить.    | Pyrrhus, Пирръ.        |
| briefly, кратко.       | will swerve, совра-    |
| distinctly, ясно.      | тъишся.                |
| to govern, управлять.  | from, съ.              |
| passion, страсть.      | course, путь, V, § 40. |

than Fabricius from the path of virtue. Leaving our own country (Russia) at the commencement of autumn, in a few days we passed to the south of England, where delightful weather still lingered; and when even there the rains and fogs commenced, and the vegetative force of Nature began to decay, in the stormy month of December we passed over

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| its , свой.                  | delightful, прекрасный.      |
| Fabricius , Фабрицій.        | weather , погода.            |
| path , стезя.                | to linger , продолжаться.    |
| to leave , оставить.         | ся.                          |
| our own country , отечество. | even , и.                    |
| Russia , Россія.             | to commence , начинаться.    |
| at , при , gov. the prep.    | rain , дождь.                |
| commencement , наступление.  | fog , туманъ.                |
| autumn , осень.              | vegetative, растительный.    |
| in , въ.                     | force , сила.                |
| a few , нѣсколько.           | to decay , мёртвѣть.         |
| day , день.                  | stormy , бѣрный.             |
| to pass , перейти.           | month of December ,          |
| to , въ , gov. the ass.      | Декабрь.                     |
| south , южный.               | to pass over , переноситься. |
| England , Англія.            |                              |

to the still warmer climate of the south of Europe. *There* the most delightful summer *again* met us. *All* creation was full of life, *every thing* blossomed, *every thing* was clothed in green, and thousands of insects murmured in the air.

---

|                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| to, въ, gov. the acc.   | full, исполнено.      |
| still warmer, жаркій.   | life, жизнь.          |
| climate, климатъ.       | to blossom, цвѣсти.   |
| Europe, Европа.         | was clothed, одѣто.   |
| delightful, прекрасный. | green, зѣлень.        |
| summer, лѣто.           | an insect, насекомое. |
| to meet, встрѣтить.     | to murmur, шумѣть.    |
| creation, творѣнiе.     | the air, воздухъ.     |



---

## С Н А Р. VIII.

### PREPOSITIONS.

§ 244. Prepositions serve to point out the relation, in which objects stand to each other, as,  
книга лежи́шь *на* столѣ, the book lies *on*  
the table.  
красотá *безъ* пріятности, beauty *without*  
grace &c.

The following is a list of the prepositions alphabetically arranged. \*

|                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| безъ, without.         | изъ, from.           |
| близъ or близко, near. | кромѣ, besides.      |
| вдоль, along.          | къ or ко, to.        |
| вмѣсто, instead.       | между, between.      |
| внутри, inside.        | мимо, near by.       |
| внѣ, outside.          | на, on.              |
| возлѣ, near.           | надъ, above.         |
| вокругъ, around.       | напротивъ, opposite. |
| въ or во, in.          | около, about.        |
| для, for.              | окрестъ, around.     |
| до, until, before.     | опричь, besides.     |
| за, after.             | отъ, from.           |

---

\* For the different cases, which they govern see Syntax, Chap. II. Sect. VI.

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| по , according , until. | прóтивъ , against.         |
| повёрхъ , above.        | ради , for the sake .      |
| пóдлѣ , close.          | сверхъ , in addition.      |
| подъ , under.           | сквозь , through.          |
| позади , behind.        | спустя , after.            |
| поперёгъ , across.      | средѣ , amidst.            |
| пóслѣ , after.          | супротивъ , opposite.      |
| предъ , before.         | съ , or со , from , with , |
| прéжде , before.        | about.                     |
| про , about.            | чрезъ , through , by.      |



### THEME XXX.

#### ON PREPOSITIONS.

There is no fruit *without* labour. Near Schafhausen is the celebrated fall of the Rhine. Savages use sharp stones, or fish bones, *instead*

---

|                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| labour , трудъ.          | a fall , водопадъ.    |
| there is no , нѣтъ.      | savages , дикіе.      |
| fruit , плодъ.           | iron , желѣзо.        |
| Schafhausen , Шафрау-    | to use , употреблѣть. |
| зень.                    | sharp , острый.       |
| is , находится.          | a stone , камень.     |
| celebrated , слáвный.    | a fish , рыба.        |
| of the Rhine , Рейнскій. | bone , кость.         |

of iron. Learning serves as an ornament to man *in* prosperity, and a refuge *in* adversity. The planets revolve *round* the sun. The Ural mountains divide Siberia *from* European Russia. Pleasures are the rocks, *on* which many young people are wrecked. They press *after* them with all sails set; but *without* compass to guide their course, and *without* helm

iron, желѣзо.

learning, учѣніе.

to serve, служить.

prosperity, счастіе.

as, expressed by the ins.

an ornament, украше-

ніе.

adversity, несчастье.

a refuge, прибежище.

a planet, планета.

to revolve, обращаться

the sun, солнце.

Ural, Уральскій.

a mountain, гора.

to divide, отдѣлять.

European, Европей-

скій.

Russia, Россія.

Siberia, Сибирь.

pleasure, удовольіе.

a rock, скала.

on, о.

to be wrecked, раз-

биваться.

many, большая часть.

young, молодой.

people, люди.

to press, пускаются.

after, за.

with all sails set, на

всѣхъ парусахъ.

compass, компасъ.

to, для.

guide, направленіе.

course, плаваніе.

helm, кормило.

to steer the vessel, and so *instead* of enjoyment, they meet with shame and disappointment. What melancholy ideas of the transitory grandeur of nations are excited in Italy, *at* the foot of ancient columns; *on* the top of triumphal arches; *in the interior* of ruined tombs, and *on* the mossy banks of fountains. Apollo is sometimes represented *with* a lyre,

---

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| to steer the vessel, мо- | Italy, Италія.           |
| гущаго управлять         | the foot, подѡшва.       |
| кораблёмъ.               | ancient, дрѣвнѣй.        |
| and so, и потомъ.        | a column, колонна.       |
| enjoyment, удоволь-      | the top, высотѣ.         |
| ствіе.                   | triumphal, торжѣст-      |
| to meet, встрѣчашъ.      | венный.                  |
| shame, стыдъ.            | arch, ворота.            |
| disappointment, огор-    | of ruined, развалив-     |
| чѣніе.                   | шихся.                   |
| what, сколь.             | a tomb, гробница.        |
| melancholy, печальный.   | mossy, мшистый.          |
| idea, мысль.             | bank, берегъ.            |
| transitory, непостоян-   | a fountain, источникъ.   |
| ный.                     | Apollo, Аполлонъ.        |
| grandeur, величіе.       | sometimes, иногда.       |
| nation, народъ.          | to be represented, изоб- |
| are excited, рождѣющ-    | ражающъ.                 |
| ся.                      | a lyre, лира.            |

\* \*

and sometimes with a drawn bow. Innocence smiles like a vernal morning, *upon* her elevated brow sit peace of mind and tranquillity; unfading roses and lilies bloom *upon* her cheeks. The playful zephyrs sporting *around* her, wanton with her white and airy robe and floating locks. Crowned *with* the flowers of the Graces she glides *along* the smiling earth,

|                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| drawn , напѣнутый.             | playful , рѣзвый.         |
| bow , лукъ.                    | zephyr , зефиръ.          |
| innocence , невинность.        | to sport , вѣться , irr.  |
| to smile , улыбаться.          | to wanton , играть , gov. |
| like , подобно , gov.          | the ins.                  |
|                                | dat. airy , лѣгкій.       |
| elevated , высóкій.            | white , бѣлый.            |
| brow , челò.                   | robe , одѣжда.            |
| to sit , изображаться.         | floating , распущенный.   |
| peace of mind , душевный миръ. | lock , вòлосъ.            |
| tranquility , спокойствие.     | crowned , увѣнчанный.     |
|                                | flower , цвѣтъ.           |
| unfading , неувядаемый.        | the Graces , Грація.      |
| a rose , рóза.                 | to glide , шествовать.    |
| a lily , лйлія.                | along , по.               |
| to bloom , цвѣсти.             | smiling , благословенный. |
| the cheek , ланѣта.            | the earth , земля.        |



storms and clouds flee *at* her approach, and celestial happiness spreads itself *before* her *in* sunny rays. When mortals obeyed the voice of beneficent Nature, and lived *in* love, tranquillity and peace, innocence resided *upon* earth; but when man, *in* a fatal hour of error, spurned the laws of nature, then innocence returned (*up*) to heaven, her native place. *Since* that time she rarely visits the

|                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| a storm , бѹря.            | love , любовь V. § 36.   |
| clouds , мрáки.            | tranquility , шишинá.    |
| at her approach , ошъ      | peace , миръ.            |
| нее.                       | to reside , обитáть.     |
| to flee , удалятьcя.       | fatal , гíбельный.       |
| celestial , небéсный.      | hour , часъ.             |
| happiness , благасть.      | error , заблуждénie.     |
| to spread one's self , из- | to spurn , презирáть.    |
| ливáтьcя.                  | to return , возвращáть-  |
| ray , лучъ.                | ся.                      |
| sunny , сóлнечный.         | up , на.                 |
| a mortal , смёртный.       | heaven , нéбо , V. § 45. |
| to obey , повиновáть-      | to , съ.                 |
| ся.                        | her native place , своё  |
| the voice , гласъ.         | отéчество.               |
| beneficent , благодѣ-      | since , съ.              |
| пельный.                   | rarely , рѣдко.          |
| to live , жить.            | to visit , посѣщáть.     |

earth and is seldom seen by mortal eye. (visible to the eye of mortal).

---

to be visible, быва́шь the eye, око́, V. § 45.  
 вѣдиму. а mortal, смѣртный,  
 to, къ. V. § 23.

---

## С Н А Р. IX.

### С О Н Ј U N C T I O N S.

§ 245. The conjunction is a part of speech, which serves to connect words and parts of sentences.

§ 246. Conjunctions are divided, according to their signification, into:

#### 1) *Connective.*

|               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| и, and.       | такъ, so.             |
| да, and, but. | не то́лько, not only. |
| та́кже, also. | но и, but.            |
| какъ, as.     | да́же, even.          |

#### 2) *Distributive.*

|                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| и́ли, or.      | ни, not, nor.  |
| ли́бо, either. | не́жели, than. |

3) *Conditional.*

|                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| эжели , if.    | бўде , in case. |
| то , then.     | ко́ли , if.     |
| когда́ , when. | погда́ , then.  |

4) *Concessive.*

|                          |                     |       |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-------|
| пусть , or пускай , let. | ско́ль ни , however |       |
| хоть , } although.       |                     | much. |
| хоть бы , }              | ка́къ ни , however. |       |
| пра́вда , true.          | чтó ни , whatever.  |       |

5) *Adversative.*

|                        |                           |               |
|------------------------|---------------------------|---------------|
| а , but.               | напро́шивъ , on the con-  |               |
| но , but.              |                           | trary.        |
| одна́ко , still.       | то́лько or то́кмо , only. |               |
| же , than.             | не взира́я на то , not-   |               |
| впро́чемъ , otherwise. |                           | withstanding. |

6) *Causative.*

|                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| и́бо , for.         | потому́ что , } because. |
| поелы́ку , because. | для того́ что , }        |

7) *Conclusive.*

|                   |                      |            |
|-------------------|----------------------|------------|
| по сему́ , hence. | слѣдовательно , con- |            |
| и та́къ , and so. |                      | sequently. |
|                   | потому́ , therefore. |            |

8). *Comparative.*

|                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| какъ, as.       | шѣмъ, the.         |
| такъ, so.       | такъ-что, so that. |
| чѣмъ, the more. |                    |

9) *Relative.*

|                         |
|-------------------------|
| что, дабы, чтобы, that. |
|-------------------------|

## T H E M E XXXI.

## O N C O N J U N C T I O N S .

Forget not your own weakness, *that* you may the more readily excuse the errors of others. *Neither* precepts, *nor* severity act so powerfully on morals, as a good example. Na-

|                           |                      |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| to forget, забывать.      | another, другой.     |
| your own, собственный     | severity, строгость. |
| свой.                     | a precept, наставле- |
| weakness, слабость.       | nie.                 |
| readily, удобный.         | to act, дѣйствовать. |
| to be able, мочь (V. irr. | powerfully, сильно.  |
| verbs).                   | morals, нравы.       |
| to excuse, извинять.      | good, хорошій.       |
| an error, погрѣшность     | example, примѣръ.    |

ture produces talents, *and* education displays them. Death spares *neither* rich, *nor* poor. Fear not death, *but* shame. *Although* the commencement of learning is difficult, the end is delightful. Pythagoras obliged his scholars to remain silent five years, *that* they might learn to reflect. Avoid indolence: *for* it is the source of many vices. True civilization not only opens a way to fortune, *but*

|                                 |                                  |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| to produce , произво-<br>дѣть.  | delightful, пріятный.            |
| talent , дарованіе.             | Pythagoras , Пифагоръ.           |
| education , воспита-<br>ніе.    | to oblige , заспа-<br>вляшь.     |
| to display , обнаружи-<br>вашь. | a scholar , ученикъ.             |
| death , смерть.                 | five years , пять лѣтъ.          |
| to spare , щадить.              | to remain silent , мол-<br>чать. |
| a rich man , богатый.           | to learn , научиться.            |
| a poor man , бѣдный.            | to reflect , разсуждать.         |
| to fear , бояться.              | to avoid , убѣгать.              |
| shame , стыдъ.                  | indolence, праздность.           |
| the commencement, на-<br>чалъ.  | the source , источ-<br>никъ.     |
| learning , ученіе.              | true , истинный.                 |
| difficult , трудный.            | civilization , образова-<br>ніе. |
| the end , конецъ.               | to open , открывать.             |

confirms our internal happiness. Mental beauty is preferable to external beauty. Human happiness is so uncertain, *that* it may be destroyed in a moment. The heavier a body is, *the more* rapidly it falls to the earth. The Americans said to their oppressors: You, who behave so tyrannically and cruelly towards us, you must be *either* Gods, or such people as ourselves; *if* you are Gods, you should be

---

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| a way , путь.           | rapidly , скоро.        |
| to confirm , утверж-    | to fall , падашь.       |
| дѣть.                   | an American , Амери-    |
| internal , внутренній.  | канецъ.                 |
| happiness , благососто- | to say , говорить.      |
| яніе.                   | an oppressor , угнетѣ-  |
| mental , душевный.      | тель.                   |
| beauty , красота.       | so , столько.           |
| preferable , лучше.     | tyrannically , само-    |
| external , телесный.    | властно.                |
| uncertain , непостоян-  | cruelly , сурово.       |
| ный.                    | to behave , поступать.  |
| to be destroyed , измѣ- | towards , съ , gov. the |
| ниться.                 | ins.                    |
| a moment , мгновеніе.   | must , должны.          |
| a body , тѣло.          | such people as oursel-  |
| heavy , тяжёлый.        | ves , такіе же люди.    |

merciful to men, and *if* you are such creatures as ourselves, you should remember humanity.

---

merciful, милосердый. humanity, челове-  
to remember, помнить. ство.

---

## С Н А Р. X.

### I N T E R J E C T I O N S.

§ 247. Interjections are, mere sounds expressive of the different emotions of the soul, and denote,

*J o y.*

а! га! Ah! ура! hurra!

*G r i e f.*

увы! Alas! ахъ! Ah!

*S u r p r i s e.*

не ужель! Indeed!

*A v e r s i o n.*

тьфу! Fye!

*D e s i r e o f s i l e n c e.*

шсъ! Hush! Silence!

*P a i n.*

ай! Oh.

*Incitement of attention.*

чу! hear! Hark! Listen!

*Calling.*

эй! Holla!

*Encouragement.*

ну! ну же! now then!



## T H E M E XXXII.

## O N I N T E R J E C T I O N S .

Oh, endearing ties of country, kindred and friendship! Ah, how happy is he, who enjoys peace of mind! Alas! how uncertain is human happiness. Alas! all hope is vanished. Woe to thee thou impious man! Ah, how

endearing, мѣлый.

ties, узы.

country, отечество.

kindred, родство.

friendship, дружба.

happy, счастливъ.

to enjoy, наслаждаться.

peace, спокойствіе.

mind, духъ.

uncertain, непостоян-  
ный.

happiness, счастье.

human, человѣческій.

to vanish, исчезать.

hope, надежда.

impious man, не-  
честивый.



glad I am that I have met you. The troops met  
their beloved leader with loud cries of Hurra!

---

|                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| glad, радъ.           | beloved, любимый. |
| to meet, увидѣться.   | leader, вождь.    |
| the troops, войско.   | loud, громкій.    |
| to meet, встрѣшиться. | cry, крикъ.       |

---

## С Н А Р. XI.

### DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

#### S E C T I.

##### DERIVATION.

##### 1. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 248. Substantives are derived from other substantives by the addition of the following terminations, which denote the occupation of a person with the object, expressed by the primitive :

|          |       |
|----------|-------|
| -никъ.   | -акъ. |
| -овникъ. | -аръ. |
| -чикъ.   | -агъ. |
| -щикъ.   | -лкъ. |

( 278 )

in никъ.

|                   |                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| мѣдъ , a copper.  | мѣдникъ , a copper-smith.  |
| нечъ , a stove.   | печникъ , a stove-builder. |
| охота , a hunt.   | охотникъ , a hunter.       |
| совѣтъ , counsel. | совѣтникъ , a counsellor.  |

*Examples , in which the final consonant is changed.*

|                   |                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| сапогъ , a boot.  | сапожникъ , a boot maker.  |
| грѣхъ , sin.      | грѣшникъ , a sinner.       |
| башмакъ , a shoe. | башмашникъ , a shoe maker. |

in овникъ.

|                     |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| садъ , a garden.    | садовникъ , a gardener.  |
| полкъ , a regiment. | полковникъ , a colonel.  |
| санъ , a dignity.   | сановникъ , a dignitary. |

in чикъ.

|                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| переплётъ , binding.      | переплётчикъ , a book binder. |
| переводъ , a translation. | переводчикъ , a translator.   |

in щикъ.

|                    |                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| камень , a stone.  | каменщикъ , a stone-mason.   |
| могила , a grave.  | могильщикъ , a grave-digger. |
| практыръ , an inn. | практырщикъ , an inn-keeper. |
| барабанъ , a drum. | барабанщикъ , a drummer.     |

in акъ.

|                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| рыба , a fish.   | рыбакъ , a fisherman. |
| чудо , a wonder. | чудакъ , an original. |

in *арь*.

столь, a table. столáрь, a cabinet-maker.

звонъ, ringing. звонарь, a ringer.

in *ачь*.

труба́, a trumpet. трубагъ, a trumpeter.

скрипка, a violin. скрипагъ, a fiddler.

in *якъ*.

море, the sea. морякъ, a seaman.

земля, a country. землякъ, a countryman.

§ 249. When the derivatives terminating in *никъ* are not personal, or do not mark the occupation of a person with the object expressed by the primitive, they denote, that the derivative is a receptacle of the substance, expressed by the primitive; as,

чай, tea. чайникъ, a tea-pot.

молоко́, milk. моло́шникъ, a milk-pot.

кофе́й, coffee. кофе́йникъ, a coffee-pot.

250. The termination *ница* added to a primitive has a similar signification; as,

песо́къ, sand. песо́чница, a sand-box.

черни́ла, ink. черни́льница, an ink-stand.

госѣ, a guest. гостѣйница, an inn.

§ 251. This termination denotes also the occupation of a female with the substance expressed by the primitive, or the feminine of titles and professions ending in *никъ* and *тель*.

полковникъ, a colo- полковница, a colonel's wife.  
nel.

писатель, a writer. писательница, a female writer.  
молоко, milk. молочница, a milk-maid.

§ 252. The derivatives formed by the addition of *ство* denote a substance or quality connected with the signification of the primitive; ex.

сосѣдъ, a neighbour. сосѣдство, neighbourhood.

рабъ, a slave. рабство, slavery.

лѣкаръ, a doctor. лѣкарство, medicine.

§ 253. The derivatives ending in *іе* require the prefix of a preposition to the substantive, ex.

смерть, death. безсмертіе, immortality.

слава, glory. щеславіе, vain-glory, vanity.

гробъ, a coffin. надгробіе, a tomb-stone.

## 2. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 254. Substantives are derived from adjectives, by changing the adjectival terminations *ый* and *ій* into *ость*, *есть*, *ство*, *ина*, *ота*, *іе* and *ецъ*, ex.

гордый, proud. гордость, pride,

тяжелый, heavy. тяжесть, heaviness.

богатый, rich. богатство, riches.

тихий, tranquil. тишина. tranquillity.

толстый, thick. толсто́та, thickness.

здоровый, healthy. здоро́віе, health.

глупый, stupid. глупе́ць, a fool.

## 3. SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

§ 255. Substantives are derived from verbs by changing the final *ть* of the infinitive \* into *ба*, *нiе*, *тель*, *ецъ*, *унъ*, *окъ*, *никъ*, *щикъ*, *гикъ*, and *агъ*.

|                         |                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| служить, to serve.      | служба, service.                  |
| смотреть, to look.      | смотрѣнiе, inspection.            |
| писать, to write.       | писатель, a writer,<br>an author. |
| купить, to buy.         | купецъ, a buyer, a mer-<br>chant. |
| лгать, to lie.          | лгунъ, a liar.                    |
| играть, to gamble.      | игрокъ, a gambler.                |
| учить, to teach.        | ученикъ, a scholar.               |
| рѣзать, to carve.       | рѣщикъ, a carver.                 |
| подрядить, to contract. | подрядчикъ, a con-<br>tractor.    |
| ткашь, to weave.        | тказь, a weaver.                  |

## 4. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 256. Adjectives are derived from Substantives by the addition of the terminations : *ный*, *еный*, *истый*, *овый*, *ивый*, *ый*, *скій*, and *лный*, \**ех*.

\* By the above examples it will be seen, that the vowel, which precedes *те* is frequently changed in forming the derivative.

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| мѣдь, copper.    | мѣдный, copper, adj.   |
| соль, salt.      | солёный, salt, adj.    |
| лѣсъ, a wood.    | лѣсѣстый, woody.       |
| дубъ, an oak.    | дубовый, oaken, oak.   |
| поле, a field.   | полевой, field, adj.   |
| спесь, pride.    | спесивый, proud.       |
| золото, gold.    | золотый, golden, gold. |
| человѣкъ, a man. | человѣческій, human.   |
| водá, water.     | водный, aqueous.       |

§ 257. Several adjectives are derived from the plural of substantives by the addition of *ный*; as,

|                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| чудеса́, miracles.    | чуде́сный, miraculous. |
| небеса́, the heavens. | небе́сный, heavenly.   |

## 5. ADJECTIVES DERIVED FROM VERBS.

§ 258. Adjectives are derived from verbs by changing the termination *ть* of the infinitive into *ный*, *лый*, *кій*, *гій*, *жий* and *ивый*, ex.

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| погреба́ть, to bury.           | погреба́льный, burial.          |
| закоре́нѣть, to radi-<br>cate. | закоре́нѣлый, deep-roo-<br>ted. |
| лома́ть, to break.             | ло́мкій, brittle.               |
| рабо́тать, to labour.          | рабо́тгій, laborious.           |
| проходи́нь, to pass.           | прохо́жгій, transitory.         |
| игра́ть, to play.              | игру́вый, playful.              |

§ 259. Many adjectives, and derivatives with the adjectival termination, have the signification of substantives.

|                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| дѣкій, a savage.  | прохóжій, a passenger.    |
| кóрмчій, a pilot. | служѣвой, one who serves. |

## 6. VERBS DERIVED FROM SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 260. Verbs are derived from substantives by adding the infinitive terminations, *ать*, *ить*, *ять* and *тъ*, preceded by *ѣ* to the primitive, ex.

|                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| защѣта, defence. | защищáтъ, to defend.     |
| соль, salt.      | солѣтъ, to salt.         |
| мѣра, a measure. | мѣрятъ, to measure.      |
| шумъ, a noise.   | шумѣтъ, to make a noise. |

## 7. VERBS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 261. Verbs are derived from adjectives by changing the adjectival terminations *ый* and *ій* into the infinitive termination *тъ* preceded by a vowel, ex.

|                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| золотый, golden. | золотѣтъ, to gild.     |
| сухой, dry.      | сушѣтъ, to dry.        |
| красный, red.    | краснѣтъ, to blush.    |
| великій, great.  | величáтъ, to magnify.  |
| ясный, clear.    | объяснáтъ, to explain. |

## 8. ADVERBS DERIVED FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 262. Adverbs are derived from adjectives by changing the adjectival terminations *ый* and *ій* into *о*, *е*.

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| благочестѣивый, pious. | благочестиво, piously. |
| простый, common.       | просто, commonly.      |
| прилѣжный, diligent.   | прилѣжно, diligently.  |
| горькій, bitter.       | горько, bitterly.      |
| гладкій, smooth.       | гладко, smoothly.      |
| сстрогий, severe.      | сстро́го, severely.    |



## S E C T. II.

## C O M P O S I T I O N.

§ 263. Compound substantives may be formed:

1<sup>st</sup>. By the combination of a primitive with a verbal substantive ; as,

землеописáние, geography.  
кораблекрушénie, a shipwreck.  
мореплáвание, navigation.

2<sup>ly</sup>. By the combination of a substantive with an adjective.

доброду́шие, kindness.  
злонра́вие, wickedness.  
пустослóвие, nonsense.



3ly. By the combination of a verb with a substantive ; as ,

*честолюбіе* , ambition.

*рыболѡвство* , fishing.

*садовѡдство* , gardening.

4ly. By the combination of a numeral with a substantive ; as ,

*единодушіе* , unanimity.

*двоетѡчіе* , a colon.

*треугольникъ* , a triangle.

5ly. By the combination of a preposition with a substantive ; as ,

*надпись* , an inscription.

*предмѣстникъ* , predecessor.

*предопредѣленіе* , predestination.

§ 264. Compound adjectives may be formed:

1st. By prefixing a substantive to an adjective ; as ,

*правовѣрный* , orthodox.

*гостепріимный* , hospitable.

*громогласный* , thundering.

2ly. By the combination of two adjectives ; as ,

*свѣтло-голубый* , light-blue.

*темно-бурый* , dark-brown.

*остро-конечный* , sharp-pointed.

3ly. By the combination of a numeral with an adjective; as,

*единообразный*, uniform.

*четвероногий*, quadruped.

*пятиугольный*, pentangular.

§ 265. Compound verbs may be formed:

1<sup>st</sup>. By the combination of a substantive with a verb; as,

*благотворить*, to do good.

*путешествовать*, to travel.

*лицетворить*, to personify.

2ly. By the combination of an adjective with a verb; as,

*злословить*, to calumniate.

3ly. By the combination of two verbs; as,  
*любопытствовать*, to be curious.

4ly. By the combination of an adverb with a verb; as,

*мимоходить*, to pass by.

5ly. By the combination of a pronoun with a verb; as,

*самовластвовать*, to use an absolute authority.

6ly. By the combination of a preposition with a verb; as,

*изкоренить*, to eradicate &c.



---

## P A R T III.

### S Y N T A X.

§ 266. Syntax is that part of grammar, which shews the agreement or concordance of the different parts of speech, their government, or influence upon each other, and their right disposition in a sentence.

---

## C H A P I.

### C O N C O R D A N C E.

#### S E C T. I.

##### C O N C O R D A N C E O F N O U N S I N G E N E R A L.

§ 267. When two substantives occur together and relate to the same object, they are both put in the same case, ex. *рѣка Невá*, the river Neva; *мѣсяць Іюль*, the month of July; *на горѣ Этнѣ*, on Mount Etna &c.

§ 268. When one substantive relates to two or more objects it is put in the plural number, ex. *Апóстолы Пётръ и Пáвель*, the apostles Peter and Paul.

§ 269. Adjectives must agree with the substantives, to which they refer in gender, number and case, ex. *Слáвный народъ*, a famous people,

*дóбрыя нра́вы*, good manners; *скро́мная же́нщина*, a modest woman, *обши́рное о́зеро*, an extensive lake; *обита́тель холо́днаго кли́мата*, an inhabitant of a cold climate, &c.

§ 270. When a possessive adjective precedes two or more substantives, it agrees with the first in number, gender and case, ex. *оте́цская лю́бовь и попече́ние*, paternal love and care.

§ 271. When an adjective follows two substantives and relates to both, it is put in the plural, ex. *Гомеръ и Виргилій, сла́вные свои́ми стихотворе́нiями*, Homer and Virgil famous for their poems. When the substantives are of different genders the preference is given to the masculine, ex. *наро́ды и госу́да́рства знаменíтые въ исто́рин*, the nations and kingdoms, celebrated in history.

§ 272. When a common and proper noun occur together, the adjective must agree with the common, ex. *рѣ́ка Днѣпръ по причи́нѣ мно́жества поро́говъ неспосóбна къ судохо́дству*. The river Dneiper is unfit for the purposes of navigation on account of its numerous falls.

*Rem.* The above rules relate equally to the cardinal numbers, *одинъ*, one; *двѣ*, two, and *оба* both; to the ordinal numbers, and to the relative, possessive, demonstrative and indefinite pronouns.

EXAMPLES OF THE CONCORDANCE  
OF ADJECTIVES, NUMERALS, PRONOUNS, AND PARTICI-  
PLES WITH THEIR SUBSTANTIVES.

*A pronoun and adjective.*

*Mas. Sing.*

- N. мой вѣрный другъ, my true friend.  
G. моего вѣрнаго друга, of — — — —  
D. моему вѣрному другу, to — — — —  
A. моего вѣрнаго друга, — — — — —  
I. моимъ вѣрнымъ другомъ, by or with—  
P. о моемъ вѣрномъ другѣ, of — — — —

*P l u.*

- N. мои вѣрные друзья, my true friends.  
G. моихъ вѣрныхъ друзей, of — — — —  
D. моимъ вѣрнымъ друзьямъ, to — — — —  
A. моихъ вѣрныхъ, друзей, — — — — —  
I. моими вѣрными друзьями, by or with—  
P. о моихъ вѣрныхъ друзьяхъ, of — — — —

*A pronoun and participle.*

*Fem. Sing.*

- N. сія текущая рѣка, this flowing river.  
G. сей текущей рѣки, of — — — — —  
D. сей текущей рѣкѣ, to — — — — —  
A. сію текущую рѣку, — — — — —  
I. сею текущею рѣкою, by or with.  
P. о сей текущей рѣкѣ, of — — — — —

*P l u.*

N. сій текучія рѣки, these flowing rivers.

G. сихъ текучихъ рѣкъ, of — — —

D. симъ текущимъ рѣкамъ, to — — —

A. сій текучія рѣки, — — — — —

I. сими текущими рѣками, by or with —

P. о сихъ текучихъ рѣкахъ, of — — —

## A PRONOUN AND NUMERAL.

*Neut. Sing.*

N. ваше первое письмо, your first letter.

G. вашего перваго письма, of — — —

D. вашему первому письму, to — — —

A. ваше первое письмо, — — — — —

I. вашимъ первымъ письмомъ, by or with —

P. о вашемъ первомъ письмѣ, of — — —

*P l u.*

N. ваши первыя письма, your first letters.

G. вашихъ первыхъ писемъ, of — — — —

D. вашимъ первымъ письмамъ, to — — — —

A. ваши первыя письма — — — — —

I. вашими первыми письмами, by or with —

P. о вашихъ первыхъ письмахъ, of — — —



## S E C T. II.

## CONCORDANCE OF VERBS.

§ 273. The verb agrees with its nominative in person and number, ex. я гуляю, I walk; онъ пишетъ he writes; мы рисуемъ, we draw; вы желаете, you wish.

§ 274. In the past tense the verb must agree with its nominative in gender also, ex. громъ грянуль, мѳлнїя блеснула, и море зашумѳло, the thunder rattled, the lightning flashed, and the sea began to roar.

§ 275. Passive verbs agree with their nominative in gender and number through all the tenses, ex. Римъ былъ взятъ и разграбленъ Гѳллами, Rome was taken and pillaged by the Gauls. Италїя часто посѳщаема путешѳственниками, Italy is frequently visited by travellers.

§ 276. When two or more nouns or pronouns are connected together in a sentence as joint agents or subjects, the verb must be in the plural, ex. живопись и ваїніе процвѳтають въ Италїи, painting and sculpture flourish in Italy.



---

## С H A P. II.

### G O V E R N M E N T.

#### S E C T. I.

##### G O V E R N M E N T O F S U B S T A N T I V E S.

§ 277. When two substantives occur together, the one, which answers to the question *whose?* of *which?* of *what?* is put in the genitive case, ex. свѣтъ истины, the light of truth; цѣрствова́ніе Августа, the reign of Augustus.\*

§ 278. In such instances as the latter, where the relation of the two substantives denotes possession, a possessive adjective is frequently used instead of the genitive case, ex. Августово цѣрствова́ніе, Augustus' reign; Мо́наршая мѣлосѣ, the Monarch's bounty.

§ 279. Substantives, which denote quantity, measure or weight govern the genitive case, ex. мнѡжество наро́да, a multitude of people; стака́нь водо́й, a glass of water; пудъ му́ки, a pood of flour &c.

---

\* The dative case is sometimes used instead of the genitive, ex. хозя́инъ до́му, the master of the house; го́сподинъ имѣ́нію, the proprietor, or lord of the estate; ро́спись кни́гамъ, a catalogue of books.



§ 280. When a quality is ascribed to an object, the noun, which expresses that quality, is put in the genitive case, ex. *жѣнщина крѣткаго нрава*, a woman of mild manners; *мушѣнна высѣкаго рѣста*, a tall man.

§ 280. The word *охѣтникъ* (fem. *охѣтница*) an amateur, governs the gen. case with the preposition *до*, as: *она охѣтница до чтѣнїа*, she is a lover of reading; *онъ охѣтнику до лошадей*, he is an amateur of horses.



## § E C T. II.

### GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 281. The adjectives *достѣинъ*, worthy; *уждъ*, strange (free from); *пѣлонъ* full, govern, the gen. case; as, *человѣкъ достѣинный погтѣнїа*, a man worthy of respect; *сосѣдъ пѣлный воды*, a vessel full of water; *уждъ пристрѣстїа*, free from prejudice.

§ 282. The adjectives *вѣренъ*, faithful; *знакомъ*, known; *милъ*, agreeable; *любсѣзѣнъ*, lovely; *полѣзѣнъ*, useful; *прилїтѣнъ*, proper; *рѣвенъ*, equal; *подѣбенъ*, like; *покѣренъ*, humble; *соразмѣренъ*, proportioned; *угѣденъ*, pleasant, govern the dative case, as: *Вѣренъ Госудѣрю*, faithful to the sovereign; *милъ всѣкому*, agreeable to every one &c.

§ 283. The adjectives, *аленъ* greedy; *способенъ* or *годенъ*, fit; *прильженъ*, diligent; *пристрастенъ*, prejudiced; *готовъ*, ready; *склоненъ*, inclined; *страстенъ*, passionate; *сострадателенъ*, compassionate, govern the dative with the preposition *къ*, ех. *пристрастенъ къ игръ*, passionately fond of gaming; *сострадателенъ къ несчастнымъ*, compassionate to the unfortunate &c.

§ 284. The adjectives: *бережливъ*, careful; *похожъ*, like; *дерзокъ*, bold; *легокъ*, active (light), govern the accusative with the preposition *на*, ех. *онъ бережливъ на платьѣ*, he is careful of his clothes; *онъ дерзокъ на языкъ*, he is bold in his speech; &c.

§ 285. The adjectives *блѣденъ*, pale; *бѣденъ*, poor; *богатъ*, rich; *боленъ*, sick; *великъ*, great; *высокъ*, high; *дикъ*, wild; *доволенъ*, content; *знаменитъ*, *славенъ*, celebrated; *знатенъ*, distinguished; *крѣтокъ*, gentle; *малъ*, little; *низокъ*, low; *старъ*, old; *чистъ*, clean; *скѣденъ*, miserable; *слабъ*, weak; *крѣпокъ*, strong; *счастливъ*, fortunate; *провѣренъ*, active, govern the instrumental case, ех. *онъ блѣденъ лицемъ*, his face is pale; *она больна головою*, her head aches; *знатенъ поро́дою*, of a distinguished race &c.

§ 286. The adjectives : *искусенъ*, skilful; *исправенъ*, exact; *умѣренъ*, moderate; *твердъ*, firm; *постояненъ*, steady, govern the instrumental case with the preposition *въ*, ex. *Онъ исправенъ въ должности*, he is exact in his duty; *она умѣренна въ пищѣ*, she is moderate in her food &c.

§ 287. Adjectives of the comparative degree (when not connected with the substantive by the particle *нѣжели*, than) govern the gen. case, ex. *честь дороже жизни*, honour is dearer than life. The latter manner is generally employed, when the comparison is vague and indefinite.



## S E C T. III.

### GOVERNMENT OF NUMERALS.

§ 288. Два, two; оба both; три, three; and четыре, four, when used in the nominative, require the gen. sing. ex. *два рубля*, two roubles; *три дня*, three days; *четыре корабля*, four ships &c. When there is an adjective relating to the same substantive, it is frequently put in the genitive plural instead of the nominative case, ex. *два дома каменныхъ*, two stone houses; *три голубя прекрасныхъ*, three

beautiful pigeons. In the oblique cases these numbers agree with the substantives, to which they relate, ex. *трѣмъ воинамъ*, to three warriors &c.

§ 289. Cardinal numbers from five upwards govern the genitive plural, ex. *пять футовъ*, five feet; *шесть работниковъ*, six labourers &c. The numerals *двое*, *трое*, *четыре*, govern the same case, when they relate to animated objects.

§ 290. When numbers are used to mark the age of a person, they are put in the genitive case, ex. *онъ женился тридцати*, *а умеръ семидесяти лѣтъ*, he married at thirty, and died at seventy years of age.



## S E C T. IV.

### GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 291. Active verbs govern the accusative case, ex. *родители любятъ своихъ дѣтей*, parents love their children; *тояъ одерживаетъ славнѣйшую побѣду*, *кто себя самаго побѣждаетъ*, he gains the most glorious victory, who conquers himself. But if the action extends to only part of the verb, it then governs the genitive case, ex. *спустить воды*,

to let out part of the water ; *убавить парусовъ*, to take in some of the sails , &c.

§ 292. An active verb , preceded by a negation , governs the gen. case , ex. *безъ прилѣжанія не ожидай успѣха въ наукахъ*, expect not to make progress in learning without diligence.

§ 293. Reciprocal verbs govern the instrumental case with the preposition *съ* , ex. *сражаться съ непріятелемъ*, to combat with the enemy ; *бороться со страстьми*, to struggle with the passions ; *знаться съ честными людьми*, to be acquainted with honest people. Reflective verbs govern the same cases as the active verbs , from which they are derived.

§ 294. Compound verbs govern different cases according to the preposition , with which they are formed. The prepositions *въ* , *до* , *съ* , *отъ* and *предъ* are frequently repeated before the noun , ex. *дойти до крайности*, to be driven to extremity ; *предстать предъ судомъ*, to appear before the tribunal ; *соглашаться съ другомъ*, to agree with one's friend. Verbs , composed with the preposition *при* , and which signify the approach of one object towards another , require the dative case with the preposition *къ* , ex. *пристать къ берегу*, to land ; *приготовиться къ войнѣ*, to prepare for war ;

Those composed with the particle *вы* require the genitive case with the preposition *изъ*, *вырвать побѣду изъ рукъ непріятеля*, to wrest the victory out of the hands of the enemy. Those composed with the particle *воз* or *из* require the accusative case and the preposition *на*, *ех. взяться на дерево*, to climb up a tree, &c.

§ 295. The auxiliary verb *быть*, to be, governs the nominative case, when it expresses a permanent duration, and the instrumental when a temporary, *ех. смерть есть общій жребій человечества*, death is the common lot of humanity; *Шекспиръ былъ великій поэтъ*, Shakspeare was a great poet; *Иосифъ былъ нѣкоторое время рабомъ въ Египтѣ*, Joseph was for some time a slave in Egypt.

§ 296. The verbs: *желать*, to wish; *достигать*, to attain, *слѣдовать*, to follow; *избѣгать*, to avoid; *стыдиться*, to be ashamed; *ждать*, to await; *остерегаться*, to take care; *бояться*, to be afraid; *отчаиваться*, to despair; *чуждаться*, to estrange, govern the genitive case, *ех. желать счастья*, to wish for happiness; *страшиться смерти*, to be afraid of death. &c.

§ 297. When the passive form of the verb is used instead of the active, the nomi-

native case is employed in place of the accusative, and the instrumental instead of the nominative, ex. (active) *Богъ* создалъ *вселенную* , God created the universe; (passive) *Вселенная* создана *Богомъ*.

*Rem.* When the instrumental case occurs in the phrase, which is to be rendered by the passive voice, the preposition *отъ* with the genitive case is employed to avoid its repetition, ex. *Богъ* одарилъ *человѣка* разумомъ , God has endowed man with reason; *человѣкъ* одаренъ *отъ* *Бога* разумомъ , Man is endowed by God with reason. From the above rules it will be seen, that passive verbs govern either the instrumental, or the genitive case with the preposition *отъ*.

§ 298. The verbs *зависѣть*, to depend; *исцѣляться* or *вылѣчиваться*, to be cured; *беречься* or *храниться*, to preserve; *свободиться*, to liberate; *воздерживаться*, to refrain; *удаляться*, to depart; *очищаться*, to purify; *разрѣшаться*, to be delivered; *спасаться*, to be saved; *уклоняться*, to recede, govern the genitive case with the preposition *отъ*, ex. *разрѣшиться* *отъ* *бремени*, to be delivered of a burden; *спастись* *отъ* *смерти*, to be saved from death; *удалиться* *отъ* *родины*, to depart from our native place, &c.

§ 299. In general the same verbs, that are followed by the dative in English, govern that case in the Russian language, ex. повиноваться законамъ; to be obedient to the laws; внимать гласу совѣсти, to listen to the voice of conscience; прилѣжать къ учѣнію, to apply to learning &c. But in some instances the dative is employed after Russian verbs, when it cannot be used after the corresponding verbs in English, ex. удовлетворять своимъ желаніямъ, to satisfy our desires; учиться Латынскому языку, to learn the latin language; печаль вредитъ здоровью; sorrow injures the health &c.

§ 300. The verbs : править, управлять, to direct or govern; презирать, to despise; промышлять, to speculate; уважать, to esteem; располагать, to dispose; повелѣвать, to order (govern); предводительствовать, to conduct; владѣть, to rule; обладать, to possess; жертвовать, to sacrifice; дорожить, to esteem, немочь, to be ill; обильвать, to abound; слыть, to pass; жить, to live; мучиться, to be tormented; веселиться, to rejoice; звать-ся, называться, to call one's self; мѣняться, to change; возноситься, to exalt one's self; клясться, to swear; пользоваться, to profit, govern the instrumental case, ex. жертвовать имѣніемъ, to sacrifice one's estate; предво-



дѣйствовать *войскомъ*, to conduct an army; слыть *честнымъ человекомъ*, to pass for an honest man; жить *своими трудами*, to live by one's own labour; рѣки *изобилуютъ рыбою*, the rivers abound with fish, &c.

§ 301. The verbs *смотрѣть*, to look; *примѣчать*, to observe and *гоняться*, to pursue, in most instances, govern the instrumental case with the preposition *за*, ех. *смотрѣть за дѣломъ*, to look after an affair; *примѣчать за егó поведѣніемъ*, to observe his conduct; *гоняться за чести́ми и богатствомъ*, to pursue honours and riches.

§ 302. The verbs: *дѣйствовать*, to act; *умили́твляться*, to have compassion; *господствовать*, to domineer; *начальствовать*, to rule, and some other verbs of like signification, govern the instrumental case with the preposition *надъ*, ех. *краснорѣчіе дѣйствуетъ надъ сердца́ми слѣшателей*, eloquence affects the minds of the hearers, *стра́сти нерѣдко господствуютъ надъ разумомъ*, not unfrequently the passions domineer over reason; *сжали́лся надъ бѣднымъ*, to have compassion upon the poor, &c.

§ 303. The verbs *грани́чить*, to border; *сходствовать*, to resemble;  *согласо́ваться*, to

agree; равня́ться, to be equal; сообразо-  
ва́ться, to conform, govern the instrumen-  
tal case with the preposition *съ*, ex. Россія  
граничитъ *съ Кита́емъ*, Russia borders upon  
China; согласо́ваться *съ истиною*, to agree  
with truth, &c.

§ 304. The verbs: у́порствова́ть, to persist;  
успѣва́ть, to make progress; вини́ться, to  
accuse; исповѣ́дыва́ться, to confess (sins);  
признава́ться, to acknowledge; ошиба́ться,  
to be mistaken; упражня́ться, to exercise  
one's self; обмáныва́ться, to be mistaken;  
нужда́ться, to be in want; раскаи́ваться, to  
repent; сомнѣ́ваться, to doubt, followed by  
the preposition *въ*, govern the prepositional  
case, ex. у́порствова́ть *въ требова́нн*, to  
persist in a demand; раскаи́ваться *въ грѣ́дахъ*,  
to repent of one's sins; нужда́ться *въ деньгахъ*,  
to be in want of money, &c.

*Rem.* The verb сомнѣ́ваться is sometimes  
followed by the preposition *о*, ex. со-  
мнѣ́ваться *о истинѣ*, to doubt of the  
truth, &c.

§ 305. The verbs: осно́выва́ться, to found  
and утвержда́ться, to confirm, govern the pre-  
positional case with the preposition *на*, ex. осно́-  
выва́ться *на опыта́хъ*, to found upon experi-  
ments. &c.

§ 306. The verbs: бдѣть, to watch; мило-сѣрдоваць, to have compassion; ходатайст-вовать, to intercede; жалѣть and сожалѣть, to pity; плакать, to weep; хлопотать, to take pains, тужить and скорбѣть, to be afflicted; стараться, to endeavour; забот-лится, to take care, govern the preposi- tional case with the preposition о, ex. бдѣть о благосостояніи народа, to watch over the welfare of the people; заботиться о воспи- таніи дѣтей, to take care of the education of children.

§ 307. The verbs: велѣть, to command; гото́виться, to prepare one's self; дать, to give; допускать, and позволять, to allow; долженствовáть, to be obliged; думать, to think; желать, to wish; замыслѣть, to con- spire; проповѣдовать, to preach; запрещать, to prohibit; зарека́ться, to forswear; зашѣвать, to invent; зачина́ть, and начина́ть, to begin; знать, to know; любить, to like; моли́ть, to beg, мыслить, to imagine; мочь, to be able; надѣяться, to hope; обѣща́ть, to pro- mise; опасáться, to be afraid; поважива́ть- ся, and приуча́ть, to accustom one's self; покуша́ться, to try; понужда́ть, and при- нужда́ть, to oblige; предпринима́ть, to un- dertake; приказывать, to order; продолжа́ть,

to continue; *предписывать*, to ordain; *просить*, to ask; *сбираться*, to prepare one's self; *умѣть*, to know how; *уповать*, to trust; *хотѣть*, to desire, require to be followed by the infinitive of another verb, *ex. разсудокъ предписываетъ избиратьъ* полезное, reason directs (us) to choose what is useful; *законъ Божій повелѣваетъ любить другъ друга*, the law of God commands (us) to love one another.



## S E C T. V.

### GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

§ 308. The adverbs: *достойно*, worthily; *много*, much; *довольно*, enough; *мало*, little; *нѣсколько*, some; *близъ*, near; *касатель-но*, relatively; *вдоль*, along, *вмѣсто*, in- stead; *внутри*, inside; *вокругъ*, around; *позади*, behind; *поперѣкъ*, across; *сверхъ*, beyond govern the genitive case, *ex. вдоль берега*, along the coast; *внутри города*, in the interior of the city: *среди двора*, in the midst of the court; *сверхъ силъ*, beyond one's strength, &c.

§ 309. Adverbs of the comparative degree govern the genitive case; *ex. лѣто проходитъ*

горáздо веселѣе *зимѣ*, summer passes much more cheerfully than winter.

§ 310. The adverb: *вонъ*, out, governs the genitive case with the preposition *изъ*, from; \* *ex. вонъ изъ дому*, out of the house; *прогъ*, away, requires the same case with the preposition *отъ*, (from) *ex. прочъ отъ меня*, away from me, &c.

§ 311. The adverbs : *вопреки*, in opposition; *подобно*, like; *прилично*, пристойно, suitably; *противно*, in an opposite manner; *овоиственно*, naturally; *угодно*, agreeably, govern the dative case, *ex. Богъ общалъ Аврааму умножишь сѣмя его подобно песку морскому*, God promised Abraham to multiply his seed like the sand upon the sea shore; *ты долженъ жить пристойно состоянию*, you should live suitably to your condition.

§ 312. In general adverbs derived from other parts of speech, govern the same cases as their primitives.

\* *Изъ*, signifies the passing of an object from the interior; *отъ*, the mere removal of one object from another.



## S E C T. VI.

## GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS.

§ 313. Prepositions require the substantives, to which they are prefixed, to be put in certain cases.

I. PREPOSITIONS, WHICH GOVERN THE  
GENITIVE CASE.

|                           |                       |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| безъ , without.           | около , about.        |
| близъ , or близко , near. | опрѣстъ , around.     |
| вдоль , along.            | опрѣчь , besides.     |
| вмѣсто , instead.         | отъ , from.           |
| внушрь , inside.          | пóдлѣ , close.        |
| внѣ , outside.            | позади , behind.      |
| вóзлѣ , near-by.          | поперѣгъ , across.    |
| вокругъ , around.         | пóслѣ , after.        |
| для , for.                | прѣжде , before.      |
| до , until.               | прóтивъ , against.    |
| изключáя , except.        | ради , for the sake.  |
| изъ , from.               | сверхъ , in addition. |
| крóмѣ , besides.          | средь , amidst.       |
| мѣмо , close by.          | сýпротивъ , opposite. |
| напрóтивъ , opposite.     | у , at.               |

2. PREPOSITIONS, WHICH GOVERN THE DATIVE CASE.

къ or ко , to.

### 3. PREPOSITIONS, WHICH GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE CASE :

про, about.                      сквозь, through.  
 чрезъ, through.              спустя, after.

### 4. PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN THE INSTRUMENTAL CASE :

надъ, over.                      между, among.

*Rem.* между governs the genitive also.

§ 314. The following prepositions vary their signification according to the case of the substantive, to which they are prefixed.

*За*, governs the accusative, when it signifies for, and the instrumental, when it signifies behind.

*Подъ*, under, and *предъ*, before, govern the accusative case, when they denote the motion of one object towards another, and the instrumental case, when they express the stationary position of an object.

*Въ*, or *во*, in, and *на*, on, govern the accusative case, when they denote the motion of one object towards another, and the prepositional, when they express the stationary position of an object.

*Съ*, or *со*, from, governs the genitive case.

*Съ*, or *со*, with, governs the instrumental case.

*Съ*, or *со*, about, governs the accusative case.

*По*, according, governs the dative.

*По*, until, governs the accusative.

*По*, after, governs the prepositional.

§ 315. The prepositions *во*, *ко* and *со* are used instead of *въ*, *къ* and *съ*, when the word, to which they are prefixed, begins with two or more consonants, and the sound requires the intervention of the vowel, ex. *со скалы*, from the rock; *ко мнѣ*, to me; *въ старинѣ*, anciently.

*Rem.* When a noun is preceded by two prepositions the first is the governing preposition, ex. *изъ подъ столá*, from under the table, *изъ за стѣны*, from behind the wall &c.





---

## С Н А Р. III.

### С О Н С Т Р У К Ц И О Н.

§ 316. Construction treats of the arrangement of the different parts of speech in the formation of a sentence. In the Russian language words may be placed in the natural, the inversed, or the interrogative order, ex. я пишу письмо, I am writing a letter; письмо я пишу, a letter I am writing; писалъ ли я письмо? have I written a letter? &c.

§ 317. In the natural order the first place is occupied by the nominative of the phrase, the second by the verb and the third by the regimen of the verb. ex. она читаетъ книгу, she is reading a book; in which phrase, книга, a book, is put in the accusative case, being the regimen of the transitive verb читаетъ, to read; these three principal members of a sentence admit the insertion of explanatory parts of speech, as: adjectives, numerals, adverbs &c. in the arrangement of which the following rules are to be observed:

§ 318. The adjective should precede its substantive, ex. она читаетъ забавную книгу, she is reading an *amusing* book.

§ 319. The genitive case follows the nominative, ex. письма *Рѣскаго путешественника*, the letters of a Russian traveller.

§ 320. Numerals generally precede the nouns, to which they relate, ex. два часа, two hours. When the numeral follows the noun, the number is not marked with precision, ex. часа два, about two hours &c.

§ 321. Pronouns should precede their substantives, ex. сія страна, this country, and when the substantive is qualified by an adjective, they precede the adjective also, ex. сія прекрасная страна, this delightful country.

§ 322. The apposition is placed after the substantive, to which it belongs, ex. Вѣра, сія кроткая *дщерь* неба, утѣшаетъ насъ въ несчастіи, Faith, that gentle daughter of heaven, consoles us in misfortune.

§ 323. The adverb generally follows the verb, ex. я читалъ вчера книгу, I read a book yesterday.

§ 324. When two verbs occur in a phrase, the infinitive mood is placed after the indicative, ex. онъ заставилъ враговъ *трепетать*, he made the enemy (to) tremble.

*Rem.* Although the above may be the most natural disposition of the different parts of speech in a sentence, yet the Russian language (on account of its declensions by cases &c.) allows much greater liberty in construction, than can be taken in English composition without injury to perspicuity. The best Russian authors have paid much more attention to harmony than to the rules of construction, and in reading their works we continually meet with the following departures from the natural order.

§ 325. The adjective placed after the substantive, ex. Нарóдь *Россійскій*, the Russian people; мужъ *славный*, a celebrated man &c.

§ 326. The transposition of the pronoun, ex. ошѣць *мой*, my father; другъ *мой* любѣзный, my dear friend; мѣлосшивый госудáрь *мой*, my honoured sir &c.

§ 327. The apposition before the principal noun, ex. мужъ славный и учёный, Локъ, that celebrated and learned man, Locke.

§ 328. The infinitive before the indicative, ex. ужасáть врагóвъ жесшпоко́шню, было его прáвиломъ; It was a rule with him to terrify the enemy by his cruelty.

§ 329. Beginning the sentence with the word, to which it is intended to attract attention, ex.

*сего́дня я отъ васъ получи́лъ письмо́.*

*отъ васъ получи́лъ я сего́дня письмо́.*

*письмо́ получи́лъ я сего́дня отъ васъ.*

which transposition of words has the same effect in the Russian language, as the transposition of emphasis in English, ex.

I received a letter from you *to day*.

I received a letter *from you* to day.

I received *a letter* from you to day.

§ 330. A phrase becomes interrogative 1) by the transposition of the verb and the addition of the interrogative particle *ли*, ex. *вы были въ Москвѣ*, you have been in Moscow—*были ли вы въ Москвѣ?* have you been in Moscow? 2) by prefixing an interrogative pronoun or adverb, *когда* *были вы въ Москвѣ?* *when* were you in Moscow? *какой* *городъ вамъ бо́лѣ нра́вится* *Пари́жъ или Лондо́нь?* *which* city do you prefer, Paris or London?

§ 331. The interrogation may also be expressed by the mere elevation of the voice at the conclusion of the phrase, as: *и вы на́казываемые Бо́гомъ, де́рзаете учи́ть други́хъ? ска́заль Влади́миръ Иуде́йскимъ проповѣ́дникамъ, прише́дшимъ скло́нить его́ къ приня́тію сво́ей*

ей вѣры; And you, punished by the Almighty, pretend to teach others? said Vladimir to the Jewish Rabins, who had come to persuade him to adopt their faith. Сей храмъ строился сорокъ шесть лѣтъ, и ты въ три дня воздвигнешь его? Forty and six years was this temple in building, and wilt thou rear it up in three days?

§ 332. When the interrogative particle *ли* is used, it generally follows immediately after the verb, or the apocopated adjective, ex. знаешь ли ты свой долгъ? — do you know your duty? — остороженъ ли онъ? — is he cautious? — But it may also be placed after the other parts of speech, ex. это ли сынъ вашъ? is this your son? не правду ли я вамъ сказалъ? did I not tell you the truth? не уже ли ты больше отца нашего? Art thou greater than our father? &c.



## P A R T. IV.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 333. Orthography is that part of grammar, which treats of the correct combination of letters in the formation of words.

§ 334. In the Russian language words are written, as they are pronounced, every letter bearing its full and proper sound, consequently the only difficulty, that can occur in the choice of letters, arises from those characters, which are similar, or nearly similar in sound, but different in form, as, *e*, *ѣ* and *э*; *і*, *и* and *ы*; *ѡ* and *о*.

§ 335. The letter *ѣ* occurs:

1<sup>st</sup>. As the final of the prepositional singular of all substantives, except those, which terminate in the nominative singular in *ія*, *іе* and *ѡ* (fem); ex,

стуль, a chair, *prep.* на стуль.

покой, a room, — въ покой.

свадьба, a marriage, — по свадьбѣ.

кухня, a kitchen, — при кухнѣ.

письмо, a letter, — о письмѣ.

море, the sea, — на морѣ.

монастырь, a monastery, въ монастырѣ.

- 2<sup>ly</sup>. In the dative singular of substantives, ending in the nominative in *a* and *я*, as :  
 роса, dew,            *dat.* росѣ.  
 конюшня, a stable, — конюшнѣ.
- 3<sup>ly</sup>. In the dative and prepositional cases of the personal pronouns *я*, *і*; *ты*, thou, and *себя*, self; as, *мнѣ*, *тебѣ*, *себѣ* &c.
- 4<sup>ly</sup>. In the plural of the pronouns *то*тъ, that one, and *весь*, all, through all the cases, as : *тѣ*, *тѣхъ*, *тѣмъ*, &c.
- 5<sup>ly</sup>. In the instrumental singular of the pronouns *то*тъ, that; *кто*, who; *что*, what; *весь*, all, as : *тѣмъ*, *кѣмъ*, *чѣмъ* and *всѣмъ*.
- 6<sup>ly</sup>. In the nominative plural fem. of the pronoun *онѣ*, he, as : *онѣ*, they.
- 7<sup>ly</sup>. In the nominative plural feminine of the numerals *одинъ*, one, and *два*, two, as : *однѣ*, *двѣ*.
- 8<sup>ly</sup>. In the feminine of *оба*, both, through all the cases : *обѣ*, *обѣихъ*, *обѣими*, &c.
- 9<sup>ly</sup>. In the comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives, as :  
*ясный*, clear, *яснѣе*, and, *яснѣйшій*.
- 10<sup>ly</sup>. In all verbs, which have the sound of the letter *ā* before the final *тъ*; as, *пѣтъ*, to sing; *краснѣтъ*, to blush &c. *Ехсерт*, *мерѣтъ*, to die; *перѣтъ*, to push, and *шерѣтъ*, to rub.

\* \*

*Rem.* When the 1<sup>st</sup>. person indicative terminates in *ю*, the letter *ѣ* is retained through all the conjugation of the verb.

§ 336. In general it may be remarked, that when a primitive word, or root is written with *ѣ*, that vowel is retained in all the derivatives. The following is a list of the most useful words, in which this letter occurs, arranged according to the different parts of speech.

*S u b s t a n t i v e s.*

|                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Апрѣль, April.          | дѣло, an affair.        |
| бесѣда, conversation.   | дѣти, children.         |
| бѣда, calamity.         | желѣза, a gland.        |
| бѣсъ, a devil.          | желѣзо, iron.           |
| вѣдьма, a sorceress.    | запѣи, a scheme.        |
| вѣнó, marriage portion. | звѣзда, a star.         |
| вѣкша, a squirrel.      | звѣрь, an animal.       |
| вѣкъ, an age.           | змѣй, a serpent.        |
| вѣнѣцъ, a wreath.       | зѣнница, the eye-ball.  |
| вѣра, faith.            | клѣть, a cage.          |
| вѣсъ, weight.           | колѣно, the knee.       |
| вѣшвь, a branch.        | лѣнь, idleness.         |
| вѣтръ, wind.            | лѣсъ, a forest.         |
| гнѣвъ, anger.           | лѣстница, a stair-case. |
| гнѣздó, a nest.         | лѣшо, the summer.       |
| грѣхъ, sin.             | медвѣдь, a bear.        |
| дѣва, a virgin.         | мѣдь, copper.           |
| дѣдъ, grand-father.     | мѣлъ, chalk.            |



|                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| мѣль, a shallow.                  | свирѣль, a shepherd's<br>pipe. |
| мѣна, a change.                   | свѣтъ, light.                  |
| мѣра, a measure.                  | свѣча, a candle.               |
| мѣсто, a place.                   | слѣдъ, a trace.                |
| мѣсяць, a month.                  | смѣхъ, laughter.               |
| мѣша, a target.                   | снѣгъ, snow.                   |
| мѣхъ, fur.                        | сѡвѣсть, conscience.           |
| невѣста, a bride.                 | сосѣдъ, a neighbour.           |
| недѣля, a week.                   | спрѣла, an arrow.              |
| нѣга, indolence.                  | стѣна, a wall.                 |
| нѣдра, the bowels.                | сѣдло, a saddle.               |
| обѣдъ, a dinner.                  | сѣмя, seed.                    |
| обѣтъ, a vow.                     | сѣнь, a cover.                 |
| опрѣснокъ, unleaven-<br>ed bread. | сѣра, sulphur.                 |
| орѣхъ, a nut.                     | сѣно, hay.                     |
| плѣнь, captivity.                 | сѣтъ, a net.                   |
| побѣда, a victory.                | сѣверъ, the North.             |
| повѣтъ, a district.               | шелѣга, a cart.                |
| полѣно, a log.                    | тѣло, the body.                |
| поцѣлуй, a kiss.                  | тѣнь, a shadow.                |
| пѣна, froth.                      | тѣсто, dough.                  |
| пѣня, punishment.                 | хлѣбъ, bread.                  |
| рѣдка, a radish.                  | хлѣвъ, a sheep-house.          |
| рѣка, a river.                    | хмѣль, hops.                   |
| рѣпа, a turnip.                   | цвѣтъ, a flower.               |
| рѣсница, the eye-lid.             | цѣль, aim.                     |
| рѣчь, an oration.                 | цѣна, price.                   |

цѣпь , а chain.

цѣпь , а flail.

человѣкъ , а man.

хрѣнь , horse-radish.

*Adjectives.*

блѣдный , pale.

бѣдный , poor.

бѣлый , white.

гнѣдый , bay.

зрѣлый , mature.

извѣстный , celebrated.

лѣвый , left (side).

лѣнливый , idle.

мѣлкій , shallow.

нѣжный , tender.

нѣмъй , dumb.

пѣгій , piebald.

пѣшій , foot (soldier).

рѣдкій , rare.

рѣзвый , playful.

свирѣпый , ferocious.

свѣжій , fresh.

слѣпый , blind.

спѣлый , ripe.

сѣрый , grey.

тѣсный , crowded.

цѣлый , entire.

*Verbs.*

брѣю , I shave.

бѣгаю , to run.

встрѣчаю , to meet.

вѣдаю , to know.

вѣслю , to weigh.

вѣщаю , to tell.

вѣяю , to blow.

дѣваю , to dispose.

дѣлаю , to do.

дѣяю , to act.

зашѣваю , to contrive.

зашмѣваю , to obscure.

лѣзю , to climb.

лѣплю , to mould.

лѣчу , to cure.

мѣслю , to knead.

мѣшкаю , to hesitate.

обрѣваю , to find.

одѣваю , to clothe.

посѣщаю , to visit.

пѣняю , to complain.

рѣзаю , to cut.

рѣшѣть, to decide.      снѣдѣть, to consume.  
 смѣяться, to laugh.      спѣшить, to make haste  
 снабдѣвать, to supply.      сѣчь, to flog.

*A d v e r b s.*

вездѣ, every-where.      гдѣ, where.  
 вмѣстѣ, together.      здѣсь, here.  
 вмѣсто, instead.      нѣгдѣ, some-where.  
 внѣ, outside.      нѣкогда, once.

§ 337. The letter *э* occurs in words of foreign origin only, as: Экваторъ; the Equator; поэзія, poetry &c.

§ 338. The letters *й* and *і* are exactly similar in sound, the first is used before consonants, and the second before vowels; as,

долина, a valley.      Июль, July.  
 мельница, a mill.      чтѣніе, reading.  
 вишня, a cherry.      насиліе, violence.

*Rem. 1.* The only exception to the above rule is the word *міръ*, the world, in which the *і* occurs before a consonant to distinguish it from *миръ*, peace.

*Rem. 2.* Many writers retain *и* in all words composed of the preposition *при* and a word commencing with a vowel, as: *приобщѣть*, to communicate; *приѣхать* to arrive; but it is more regular to change the *и* into *і*, and to write such words *приобщѣть* and *приѣхать*. For the letter *й* V. § 5.

§ 339. The letter *ы* may always be distinguished from *и* by its guttural sound ; it occurs in the genitive singular and nominative plural of the substantives ending in *а*, and in the nominative plural of those ending in *ъ* V § 5.

§ 340. The letter *о* is commonly pronounced as *а* when it occurs in a syllable, upon which the accent does not fall, as :

конѣцъ, the end, pronounced kanetz.

§ 341. The consonants, having a definite sound, are not liable to be mistaken for each other, except the compound letters *ц* and *щ*, which may be written by mistake *тс* and *ст*, and *vice versa* :

|                         |          |            |
|-------------------------|----------|------------|
| цѣрковь, a church,      | and not. | шцѣрковь.  |
| щѣдрость, bounty,       | — — —    | сщѣдрость. |
| братскій, a brother's,  | — —      | брацкій.   |
| счисленіе, calculation, | — —      | щисленіе.  |

§ 342. The *з* of the particles *из*, *воз*, and *раз*, is changed into, *с* when the word, with which they are connected, begins with a hard consonant, *ex*.

|                                     |
|-------------------------------------|
| из, истребить, to destroy.          |
| воз, воскресеніе, the resurrection. |
| раз, распечатать, to unseal.        |

§ 343. The hard or soft sign (ъ or ъ) follows the last letter of every word, that ends in a consonant, as: глаго́ль, a verb; дво́рь, a court; вѣтвь, a branch; крѣпость, a fortress &c.

§ 344. In the modifications, to which the variable parts of speech are subject, the hard sign ъ occurs :

1<sup>st</sup>. In words composed with the prepositions *безъ, въ, изъ, объ, отъ, подъ, предъ, раз,* and *съ*, when the letter, which follows, the preposition is one of the vowels *е, и, ѣ, ю* or *я*.

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| безъимѣнный, anony-      | отъѣздъ, departure.    |
| mous.                    | подъячій, an attorney. |
| въездъ, entry.           | предъидущій, preceded- |
| изъявлѣніе, indication.  | ing.                   |
| объявлѣніе, declaration. | съездъ, an assembly.   |

2<sup>ly</sup>. In the conjugation of verbs, at the end of the third person singular, and of the second and third persons plural of the present, as:

онъ ѣздитъ, he rides. мы чита́емъ, we read.  
она пи́шетъ, she writes. они игра́ютъ, they play.

3<sup>ly</sup>. In the past tense of all three persons singular of the masculine gender, as, я ска́залъ, I said; ты отвѣча́лъ, thou answeredst; онъ молча́лъ, he kept silence.

§ 345. The soft sign ъ occurs :

- 1<sup>st</sup>. As the final of all regular verbs in the infinitive mood, as: *хóдитъ*, to walk; *говóришь*, to speak &c.
- 2<sup>ly</sup>. In the conjugation of verbs, as the final of the second person singular, present tense, ex. *ты любишь*, thou lovest; *ты страдаешь*, thou sufferest &c.
- 3<sup>ly</sup>. In the second person singular of the imperative, V § 182.
- 4<sup>ly</sup>. In the middle of many derivatives, as: *мѣльница*, a mill, &c.

§ 346. The signification of the following words is determined by the prefix of the hard or soft sign (ъ or ъ).

|                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| брáтъ, brother.        | бръáтъ, to take.  |
| въáзь, an elm.         | въáзь, a bog.     |
| клáдь, a treasure.     | клáдь, a cargo.   |
| крóвь, roof.           | крóвь, blood.     |
| мáтъ, mate (at chess). | мáтъ, mother.     |
| пѣрcтъ, a finger.      | пѣрcтъ, earth.    |
| плóтъ, a raft.         | плóтъ, the flesh. |
| пыль, heat.            | пыль, dust.       |
| столь, a table.        | столь, so much.   |
| ýголь, a corner.       | ýголь, coal.      |
| цѣпъ, a flail.         | цѣпъ, a chain.    |
| шесъ, a pole.          | шесъ, six.        |
| щегóль, a goldfinch.   | щегóль, a fop.    |

§ 347. The signification of the following words is determined by the position of the accent:

|                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| áтласъ , an atlas.      | аплáсъ , satin.           |
| вѣдро , fine weather.   | ведрó , a pail.           |
| вóлна , a fleece.       | волнá , a wave.           |
| губа , the lip.         | губá , a bay.             |
| желѣза , irons.         | желѣзá , a gland.         |
| зáмокъ , a castle.      | замóкъ , a lock.          |
| засыпашъ , to heap.     | засыпáшь , to doze.       |
| кóзлы , a coach-box.    | козлы , goats.            |
| крóю , I cover.         | крою , I cut-out.         |
| мокрóта , phlegm.       | мокротá , humidity.       |
| мѹка , torment.         | мукá , flour.             |
| пáры , pairs.           | пары , vapours.           |
| пáрить , to steam.      | парить , to soar.         |
| пóлонъ , full.          | полóнь , captivity.       |
| пóрохъ , gun-powder.    | порóкъ , vice.            |
| пráвило , a rule.       | правíло , a rudder.       |
| пѹшныя , a hermitage.   | пусты́ня , a desert.      |
| сѣмя , seed.            | семья́ , a family.        |
| та́ю , I thaw.          | таю , I hide.             |
| угóльный , coal. (adj.) | угóльный , corner, (adj.) |

§ 348. The only signs peculiar to the Russian language are ъ and ѣ; the former is placed over и, when that vowel is used in the diphthongs ай, ей, ий, ой, уй, ый, тй, эй, юй, and яй; the latter over е, when that vowel is pronounced as ео, ex. далёко, distant, pronounced *daleoko*. &c.

END OF THE FIRST BOOK.

## E R R A T A.

|             |     |             |    |                                   |
|-------------|-----|-------------|----|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Page</i> | 10  | <i>line</i> | 24 | for <i>numbes</i> read numbers.   |
| —           | 26  | —           | 10 | — <i>riches</i> — indolence.      |
| —           | 59  | —           | 18 | — <i>exceptions</i> — exceptions. |
| —           | 108 | —           | 7  | — <i>Coloseum</i> — Coliseum.     |
| —           | 115 | —           | 9  | — <i>sixty nine</i> — eighty six. |
| —           | 146 | —           | 13 | — <i>indefinite</i> — definite.   |



## O M I S S I O N S.

|             |     |             |    |                                                |
|-------------|-----|-------------|----|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Page</i> | 7   | <i>line</i> | 20 | omitted <i>animal</i> .                        |
| —           | 32  | —           | 15 | — — — whistling , свистъ.                      |
| —           | 40  | —           | 12 | — — — of the White sea , Бѣлаго моря.          |
| —           | 41  | —           | 11 | — — — gratitude, благодарность                 |
| —           | 135 | —           | 8  | — — — никто , nobody , and<br>ничто , nothing. |





**K E Y**  
**T O**  
**T H E   T H E M E S**  
**C O N T A I N E D   I N**  
**H E A R D ' S**  
**R U S S I A N   G R A M M A R ,**  
**T O   W H I C H   A R E   A D D E D**  
**A   V O C A B U L A R Y ,   D I A L O G U E S**  
**A N D**  
**R E A D I N G - L E S S O N S**  
**I N   P R O S E   A N D   V E R S E .**

---

*S t .   P E T E R S B U R G .*

**P R I N T E D   F O R   T H E   A U T H O R ,   A N D   S O L D   B Y   S L E U N I N E ,**  
**A N D   B Y   B O O S E Y   A N D   S O N S   L O N D O N . .**

**1827.**

## ПЕЧАТАТЬ ПОЗВОЛЕНО

съ тѣмъ, чтобы по напечатаніи, до выпуска изъ Типографіи, представлено было *семь* экземпляровъ сей книги въ Цензурный Комитетъ, для препровожденія куда слѣдуетъ, на основаніи узаконеній. С. Петербургъ, Іюня 30 дня, 1826 года.

*Цензоръ Александръ Красовскій.*

---

Въ типографіи Департамента народнаго  
просвѣщенія.

# CONTENTS.

## KEY

### PAGE.

|                                                      |    |
|------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Key to the themes on substantives . . . . .          | 1  |
| On adjectives . . . . .                              | 12 |
| On numerals . . . . .                                | 18 |
| On pronouns . . . . .                                | 22 |
| On verbs . . . . .                                   | 28 |
| On participles . . . . .                             | 41 |
| On adverbs . . . . .                                 | 43 |
| On prepositions . . . . .                            | 45 |
| On conjunctions . . . . .                            | 47 |
| On interjections . . . . .                           | 48 |
| VOCABULARY . . . . .                                 | 49 |
| Titles and ranks . . . . .                           | 88 |
| Table of Russian weights, measures and coins . . . . | 94 |

## DIALOGUES.

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Dialogue I. On the arrival of a foreigner at Cronstadt. | 96  |
| —— II. At an inn . . . . .                              | 102 |
| —— III. Expressions of politeness . . . . .             | 105 |
| —— IV. Remarkable objects at Petersburg . . . .         | 108 |
| —— V. Shopping . . . . .                                | 111 |
| —— VI. With tradespeople . . . . .                      | 113 |
| —— VII. Enquiries previous to a journey . . . .         | 115 |
| —— VIII. On the road to Moscow . . . . .                | 119 |
| —— IX. Remarkable objects at Moscow . . . .             | 121 |

# READING LESSONS IN PROSE.

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| An Oriental tale . . . . .            | 123 |
| The Bedouin Arab . . . . .            | 125 |
| Domestic scene . . . . .              | 132 |
| Gibraltar . . . . .                   | 135 |
| St. Petersburg . . . . .              | 141 |
| The first English in Russia . . . . . | 144 |

# READING LESSONS IN VERSE.

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| The ass and the nightingale . . . . . | 150 |
| Rich and poor . . . . .               | 154 |
| The church-yard . . . . .             | 158 |
| A national song . . . . .             | 162 |
| Good night . . . . .                  | 166 |
| The Hermit . . . . .                  | 172 |
| Gray's elegy . . . . .                | 186 |



## Т Е М Е    I.

### ON THE MASCULINE TERMINATION

Ъ.

Богъ есть Создатель *міра*.

Душа *человѣка* безсмертна.

Разумъ данъ *человѣку* для обузданія *спра-*  
*шней*.

Счастливъ тотъ юноша, который нашёлъ  
вѣрнаго *друга*.

Пьянство ослабляетъ *разсудокъ*.

Желѣзо напертое магнитомъ всегда пока-  
зываетъ на *Сѣверъ*.

Богословія есть наука, которая рассу-  
ждаетъ о *Богѣ*.

Поселянинъ говоритъ о *плугѣ* и о *косѣ*.

Санктпетербургъ есть одинъ изъ краси-  
вѣйшихъ *городовъ* въ Европѣ; въ семъ *городѣ*  
есть много великолѣпныхъ *домовъ*.

Опытъ есть наставникъ *глупцевъ*.

Любопытство влечетъ *разумъ* человѣческій  
къ новымъ *предметамъ*.

Дружба есть взаимное влеченіе добродѣтельныхъ сердець; люди злые имѣють *сообщниковъ порока*, распутные *соучастниковъ разврата*, сребролюбцы поварихей корысти, суетные состязателей тщеславія, — одни только добродѣтельные имѣють *друзей*.

Весною земля украшается *цвѣтами*.

Правовѣденіе есть наука *о законахъ*.

*Въ городахъ* обитаетъ роскошь, а *въ селахъ* простота.



## Т Е М Е II.

### ON THE MASCULINE TERMINATION

й.

Великодушіе есть свойство *истиннаго героя*.

Пойдемъ къ *ручью* купаться.

Садовникъ построилъ *улей*, въ кошоромъ онъ содержитъ *цѣлый рой* пчелъ.

Оемистоклъ изгнанъ былъ *жребіемъ* изъ отечества.

Супружескій союзъ установленъ былъ *взраю*.

Въ Африкѣ водятся ядовитыя *зми*.

Не пропускай удобных *случаевъ* къ приоб-  
рѣтенію познаній.

Смерть ужасна *злѣмъ*.

Древніе Египтяне обожали *амтевъ*.

Дождь напиталъ верхніе *слои* земли.

Темпѣйская долина орошаема многими *ру-  
чьями*.

Слава Александра великаго гремѣла во всѣхъ  
*краяхъ* вселенной.



### Т Е М Е III.

#### ON THE FEMININE TERMINATION

*a.*

Нѣтъ *розы* безъ шиповъ.

Кто не удивляется дѣйствіямъ *Природы?*

Гора *Рѳа* едва ли уступаетъ *въ* вышинѣ  
*горѣ* Монбланъ.

Работа укрѣпляетъ *силу* и здоровіе.

Древніе Римляне презирали *нѣгу* и роскошь.

Волга изобилуетъ *рыбою*.

Все *въ* *Природѣ* возвыщаетъ премудрость  
Творца.

Алпійскія *горы* суть высочайшіе *въ* Европѣ.

Египтяне вѣрили переселенію *душъ*.

\*\*\*

До изобрѣшенія компаса мореходцы направляли своё плаваніе по *звѣздамъ*.

Надёжда пишѣешь *дѣши* несчастныхъ.

Швейцарія изобилуетъ *горѣми и долинами*.

Греки при Олимпійскихъ *играхъ* вѣнчали побѣдителей лавровыми вѣнками.



#### Т Е М Е IV.

##### ON THE FEMININE TERMINATION

*Л.*

Страннопріимство, происпекавшее у древнихъ народовъ изъ чѣсшаго челоуѣколюбія нынѣ осноуыуаеуаеуа на выгодахъ *торговли*.

Воины должны слѣпо повиноуауаеуа *болѣ* своего предводителя.

Франклинъ изобрѣлъ средство ошврауауа *молнію* громовымъ ошводомъ.

Одно мгновѣніе ушекаеуа за другимъ, какъ струя за *струей* въ море вѣчности.

Люди, привыкшіе къ городской рѣскоши не нахѣдауаеуа никакого удовѣльствія въ *деревнѣ*.

Полковѣдецъ долженъ сохраниауаеуа присѣуаеуа дѣха среди свѣсша *пулей* и грома *пушекъ*.



Учреждѣніе *школъ по деревнямъ* содѣйствовало къ благосостоянію Шотландіи.

Африка заключаесть въ себѣ многія *пространныя пустыни*.

Изъ Россійскихъ стихотворцевъ Крыловъ, Демітріевъ и Хемницеръ прославились своими *баснями*.

Въ *разныхъ земляхъ*, разные обычаи.



## Т Е М Е V.

### ON THE FEMININE TERMINATION

ъ.

Здоровіе есть плодъ *умѣренности*.

Младенчество есть счастливѣйшее *время жизни*.

Добродѣтель предпочтительна богатству, дружество *лести*, а польза удовольствію.

Человѣкъ лѣнливый самъ себѣ бываесть въ *тягость*.

Щедрость должна бышь умѣряема *бережливостію*.

Азія была *колыбѣлю* рода человѣческаго.

Если хочешь быть добродѣтельнымъ, размышляй часто *о смѣрти*.

Правосудіе есть первая изъ добродѣтелей.  
Онасно предаваться неумѣреннымъ стра-  
стямъ.

Созерцаніе Природы внушаетъ величе-  
ственные мысли.

Разумъ часію помирается страстями.

Есть необыкновенные умы, прославившіеся  
во всѣхъ *вѣтвяхъ* человѣческихъ познаній.



## Т Е М Е VI.

ON THE SUBSTANTIVES ENDING IN *ъ*, WHICH  
ARE MASCULINE.

Тщѣтное усиліе *сочинителя* угождать вку-  
су всѣхъ своихъ *читателей*.

Ученикъ долженъ повиноваться своему *учи-  
телю*.

Южная Россія производить въ великомъ  
изобиліи *ягмень*, *прѣсо*, *овѣсь* и всякаго  
рода хлѣбныя растѣнія.

Рюрикъ былъ *основателемъ* Россійскаго  
Государства.

Непріятель опустошилъ всѣ города и села  
*огнемъ и мечемъ*.

Англичанинъ Чанселоръ, *пріѣхавъ на кораблѣ*  
къ берегамъ Бѣлаго моря, завелъ первыя *шор-  
говыя* связи съ Россіею.

*Завоеватели* въ одинъ годъ испровергають то, что учреждается вѣками.

Въ Англіи много отличныхъ *писателей*.

Россійскіе крестьяне носятъ вмѣсто обуви *лапти*, плетёныя изъ берёзовой коры.

Дишя оказываетъ своимъ *родителямъ* благодарность покорностію и почтёніемъ.

Египтяне были *учителями* Грековъ въ наукахъ и искусствахъ.

Учёность въ средніе вѣки процвѣтала въ однихъ только *монастыряхъ*.



## Т Е М Е VII.

### ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION

#### О.

Изъ Россіи вывозится много *железа*.

Вставать рано по *утру* здорово.

Трудъ и упражненіе укрѣпляютъ *тѣло*.

Истинно великій человекъ соединяетъ скромность съ *достоинствомъ*.

Мексиканскіе рудники изобилуютъ *золотомъ* и *серебромъ*.

Порядокъ требуетъ, чтобы всякая вещь хранилась на своёмъ *мѣстѣ*.

*Средства* самыя простыя суть часто самыя *лучшія*.

Иногда отъ малыхъ началъ рождаются великія дѣла.

Скромность принадлежитъ къ привлекательнѣйшимъ свойствамъ женскаго пола.

Сократъ превосходилъ всѣхъ своихъ согражданъ качествами ума и сердца.

Краснорѣчіе не состоятъ въ высокопарныхъ словахъ; но въ сильныхъ чувствахъ.



## Т Е М Е VIII.

### ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION

e.

Судьба человека большею частью зависитъ отъ собственнаго его поведенія.

Человекъ не имѣющій благодарнаго сердца неспособенъ къ добродѣтельному поступку.

Хвалить человека въ лицѣ значить уличать его въ тщеславіи.

Спешъ къ добродѣтели есть путь къ спокойствію.

Привычка подавляетъ воображеніе.

Утѣшеніе въры бываетъ вѣрнѣйшимъ нашимъ приближеніемъ въ негаснѣніи.

Славно умереть на полѣ битвы, сражаясь за опечесство.

*Въ сѣстѣи надлежѣшь хранѣшь воздѣржаніе, а въ нестѣстѣи терпѣніе.*

*Сердцѣ юношей равно ошверсты для добрыхъ и для худыхъ впечатлѣній.*

*Восхожденіе солнца на морѣ есть одно изъ ведичесшвеннѣйшихъ зрѣлищъ въ природѣ.*

*Предразсѣдокъ ослѣпляетъ глаза пустыми привидѣніями.*

*Добродѣтельный человѣкъ находѣшь въ собственныхъ своихъ чувствованіяхъ удовлетвореніе за всѣ превращенности міра.*



## Т Е М Е IX.

### ON THE NEUTER TERMINATION

*ИЯ.*

*Немнѣгіе люди умѣють цѣнѣшь важность времени.*

*Бѣольшая часть жителей, населяющихъ Россію, принадлежѣшь къ Славянскому племени.*

*Послѣ великихъ препяпствѣй Креспонѣсцы успѣли водрузѣшь знамя свое на стѣнахъ Іерусалима.*

*Не дѣлжно унывѣшь дѣже и подѣ бременѣ несчастій.*

О *времена!* о *права!*

Всякое изъ *временъ* года имѣеть свой прѣлести.

Исторія предаеть пошѣмству *именá* великихъ мужей.

Непріятель вступилъ въ городъ съ распущенными знаменами.

Мы имѣемъ мало извѣстій о *племенахъ* населяющихъ внутренность Африки.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

ON THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

*Финляндія.*

Здѣсь царство *зимы*. — Въ началѣ *Октябрá* все покрыто *снѣгомъ*. — Едва сосѣдняя скала выказываетъ безплодную *вершину*; иней падаетъ въ видѣ *густаго облака*. *Деревья*, при первомъ утпреннемъ *морозѣ*, блистають радугю, отражая солнечные *лучи* тысячью пріятныхъ *цвѣтовъ*. Но солнце, кажется, съ ужасомъ *взираетъ* на опустошенія *зимы*; едва явився и уже погружено въ багровый *туманъ*, предвѣстникъ сильной *стужи*. Мѣсяцъ въ *теченіе* всей *ночи* изливаетъ серё-

бренные *луги* свой и образуетъ *круги* на чѣистой *лазурѣ* небесной, по которой изрѣдка пролетаютъ блестящіе *метеоры*. Ни малѣйшее дуновеніе *вѣтра* не колеблетъ *деревъ*, облѣненныхъ *иной*: печальное, но пріятное зрѣлище! Какая необыкновенная тишина. Рѣбкая лань шоропомъ пробирается въ *тѣшу*, отрясая съ *роговъ* своихъ оледенѣлый *иной*; стадо *тѣтеревей* безопасно дремлетъ въ глубокой *тишинѣ лѣса*, и всякій шагъ *стрѣлика* слышанъ въ снѣжной *пустынѣ*.

Но и здѣсь природа улыбается веселою, но крѣпкою улыбкою. Когда *снѣга* растаяли отъ теплаго лѣтняго *вѣтра* и яркихъ *лучей солнца*; когда *воды* съ шумомъ утеклы въ *морѣ*, образовавъ въ *теченіи* своемъ тысячи *ручьевъ*, тысячи *водопадовъ*; тогда природа выходитъ изъ тягостнаго и продолжительнаго *усыпленія*. Вдругъ озимыя *поля* одѣваются зеленымъ *бархатомъ*, *луга* душистыми *цвѣтами*. Вчера все было мертво, — сего дня все цвѣтѣтъ, все благоухаетъ.



## Т Н Е М Е X.

## ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

Въ свѣтъ нѣтъ ничего *совершеннаго*.

Кто ищетъ себѣ друзѣй, тотъ долженъ прежде всего сдѣлаться *достойнымъ* дружбы.

Благодарный человѣкъ подобенъ *плодотворной* почвѣ, щедро награждающей шруды воздѣлы-вашеля.

Нѣтъ *истиннаго* благодѣнствія безъ добродѣтели.

*Доброе* намѣреніе не можетъ оправдывать *неблагоразумнаго* дѣла.

*Скромное* и *веселое* обхожденіе привлекаетъ сердца людей.

Человѣкъ съ *добрымъ* сердцемъ старается все обращать въ доброе, злой же находитъ и въ самомъ добромъ зло.

Въ жизни человѣческой нѣтъ *прочнаго* счастья.

Счастія должно искать не въ *шумномъ* вершеніи удовольствій; но въ *мирномъ* кругу *добродѣтельнаго* семейства.

*Древніе* стихотворцы говорятъ о *золотомъ*, *серебряномъ* и *железномъ* вѣкѣ.

*Древній* Римъ произвелъ многихъ *великихъ* мужей.



Христіанская вѣра приучаетъ насъ быть *благодѣтельными и словолюбивыми.*

Олѣни водятся шолько въ *холодныхъ*, а верблюды въ *тѣплыхъ* странахъ.

У Китайцевъ красота состоитъ въ *широкомъ* лицѣ, въ *узенькихъ* глазахъ, въ *сплюсненномъ* носѣ, въ *маленькихъ* ножкахъ и въ *дородномъ* шѣлѣ.



## Т Е М Е XI.

### ON THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

Роза *прекраснѣе* лиліи.

Орелъ *сильнѣе* нежели ястребъ.

Чѣмъ пища бываешь *проще*, тѣмъ она *здоровѣе*.

Весна *пріятнѣе* зимы.

Золото *драгоценнѣе* другихъ металловъ; но желѣзо *полезнѣе* золота.

Произведенія природы гораздо *величественнѣе* нежели всѣ произведенія искусствъ.

Гористая страна гораздо *привлекательнѣе* для глазъ, нежели плоская равнина.

Шерсть Саксонскихъ овецъ *тонѣе* нежели шерсть Англійскихъ.

Лондонъ *многолюднѣе* Паріжа.

Азія *пространнѣе* Европы, но Европѣйцы *образованнѣе* Азіатцевъ.

Французскій языкъ *лѣгче* Русскаго, но Русскій богаче Французскаго.

Венѣра *блѣже* къ солнцу нежели земля, а Меркурій *блѣже* нежели Венѣра.



## Т Е М Е XII.

### ON THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

Россія есть *пространнѣйшее* Государство въ свѣтѣ.

Венѣра есть *свѣтлѣйшая* изъ планетъ.

Самолюбіе есть *опаснѣйшій* льстецъ.

Естественная исторія есть одна изъ *пріятнѣйшихъ* наукъ.

Меркурій есть *самая меньшая* и *ближайшая* къ солнцу планета.

Вершины *высочайшихъ* горъ скрываются въ облакахъ.

Лошадь есть *красивѣйшее*, овца же *самое полезное* изъ всѣхъ домашнихъ животныхъ.

Стрѣусъ есть *величайшая* изъ птицъ.

Слонъ есть *самое смышленное* изъ всѣхъ четвероногихъ.

*Высочайшимъ* степенемъ неучтивства почитается прерывать чужую рѣчь.

Хорошій примѣръ есть *сильнѣйшее* побужденіе къ добродѣтели.

Китайъ есть *самая* многолюдная страна въ свѣтѣ.



### Т Е М Е XIII.

#### ON POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

Молоко *коровье*, *овечье* и *козье* доставляетъ весьма здоровую пищу.

*Козью* шерсть употребляютъ на разные шкани.

Лапландцы питаются *оленьимъ* молокомъ и дѣлаютъ себѣ шалаши и одежду изъ *оленьей* кожи.

Изъ *верблюжей* шерсти дѣлаются шляпы, плашки и другія издѣлья.

*Воловьёю* и *телячьёю* кожу выдѣлываютъ для разнаго употребленія.

*Жители* сѣвера одѣваются на зиму *собольими*, *лисьими*, *медвѣжьими* и *волчьими* мѣхами.

*Бобръвые* и *горностыевые* мѣхи хорошаго цѣнятся.

*Бобръвый* и *зайгій* пухъ служитъ для дѣланія шляпъ.



## Т Н Е М Е XIV.

## ON APROSOPATED ADJECTIVES.

Богъ *милосѣрдъ*.

Добродѣтель *скромна*.

Будь *покоренъ* въ дѣшствѣ, и ты будешь  
погнѣнъ въ старости.

Труденъ путь ко *славѣ*.

Сообщество развращенныхъ людей *заразитель-  
тельно*.

Иногда самыя враги бывають намъ *полѣзны*,  
открывая намъ наши недостатки.

Шумныя радости свѣта *обманчивы*.

Лѣность *постыдна* и *вредна*.

Человѣкъ *смертенъ*.

Лисица *хитра*, левъ *великодѣшенъ*, а шигрь  
*кровожаденъ*.

Любовь *слѣпа*.

Время *драгоценно*, а жизнь *кратка*.



## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

## ON THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

*Тихій и прохладный* вечеръ заступалъ уже  
мѣсто *палѣщаго* дня, когда *Услады, молодой*  
*пѣвецъ*, приближился къ берегамъ *Москвы*

рѣкъ, на кошóрыхъ провёлъ *цвѣту́щие* (\*) дни своей юности. *Гладкая* поверхность воды, едва лобзаемая лёгкимъ вѣтеркомъ покрýша была *розовымъ* сйя́нiемъ за́пада; въ зерцáлѣ ихъ отражались съ одной стороны *дремлúгiй* лѣсъ и шѣремъ *грознаго* Рогд́ая, окружённый *высокимъ дубóвымъ* шыномъ—(онъ былъ постро́енъ на *крутой* горѣ, тамъ, гдѣ нынѣ видимъ *зубатýю* спл́ыну Крёмля, *великол́пные* чершóги *древнихъ* Рýсскихъ Царей) — съ друго́й *зелёные* берега́, покрýтые кустáрникомъ и осы́панные *низкими* хйжинами земледѣльцевъ. Повсюду цáрствовало споко́иствiе: вóздухъ былъ раство́ренъ благоухáнiемъ *цвѣту́щей* ли́пы; иногда въ глубинѣ лѣса разда́лся го́лосъ соловья́, или печáльное пѣ́нiе йволги; иногда *непостоянный* вѣтерóкъ потрясáлъ вершiны деревъ; иногда *робкiй* кро́ликъ, испуганный шóрохомъ броса́лся въ кустáрникъ и шумѣлъ *иссохшими* вѣ́тками. — Усла́дъ шёлъ по тропи́нкѣ, изви́вавшейся ме́жду деревьями; ду́ша его́, на́полненная воспомина́нiями, погружена́ была въ задумчивос́ть. Гдѣ ты, моя́ радость? воскликнулъ Усла́дъ: прихо́жy на то́же мѣсто, на кошóромъ я нѣкогда восхища́лся бы́шiемъ своимъ: *тѣнистая* рóща, *свѣтлая* рѣ́ка, *зелёные* берега́ не измѣ́нились! Попрѣ́жнему благово́нная ли́па разлива́етъ свой *сладостный* за́пахъ, по

---

(\*) Participles have the same declension as adjectives.

прѣжнему *унылое* пѣніе соловья и ѣволги раз-  
дѣется въ глубинѣ *дремутаго* лѣса; а шотъ  
кто нѣкогда *улажда*лся *благовоніемъ* *цвѣтущей*  
лѣпы, и пѣніемъ соловья, шотъ ужѣ не *похожъ*  
на самаго себя!



## Т Н Е М Е XV.

### ON THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Всеобщій пошопъ во время Ноя продолжался  
*триста семдесятъ семь* дней.

Израильтяне *спраншвовали* *сорокъ* лѣтъ  
въ пустынь.

Солнечный годъ *состойтъ* изъ *трехъ сотъ*  
*шестидесяти пяти* дней *пяти* часовъ и *сорока*  
*пяти минутъ*.

Римъ *построень* за *семь сотъ* *пятьдесятъ*  
*три* года до Рождества Христова.

Пшоломѣй Филадельфъ, употребилъ *семь-*  
*десять двухъ* толковниковъ для перевода вѣш-  
аго завѣта на Греческій языкъ.

Константинополь былъ *взятъ* Турками *ты-*  
*сяча сто двадцать три* года послѣ перенесенія  
шуда столицы Константиномъ Великимъ и

*двѣ тысячи двѣсти шесть лѣтъ* послѣ построёнія города Рима.

Александрійская библіотѣка состояла изъ *трѣхъ сотъ тысячъ* книгъ.

Моисей оставилъ Египеть съ *шестьюстами тысячъ* Израильянъ спустя *четыреста тридцать лѣтъ* послѣ перваго ихъ поселенія въ сей странѣ.

Кругъ раздѣляется на *триста шестьдесятъ* градусовъ.

Свѣтъ солнечныхъ лучей достигаетъ до насъ почти въ *восемь* минутъ.

Александръ великій вступилъ на престолъ *двадцати*, а умеръ *тридцати* лѣтъ отъ роду.

При построеніи Римскаго Амфітеатра, известнаго подъ именемъ Колизея, работали въ продолженіе *пяти лѣтъ тридцать тысячъ* военнопленныхъ Евреевъ. Портикъ сего зданія имѣлъ *двѣ тысячи пятьдесятъ футовъ* въ окружности и былъ поддерживаемъ *четырьмя* рядами столбовъ въ *двести двадцать два* фута вышины каждый. Въ немъ помещалось до *ста тысячъ* зрителей и не рѣдко хоры въ *три тысячи* пѣвцовъ и столько же танцовщицъ увеселяли въ семъ огромномъ зданіи Римскую публику.

Высота Монблана составляетъ *четырнадцать тысячъ пять сотъ пятьдесятъ шесть*,

а высота Чимборассо *девятнадцать тысячъ шесть сотъ два* (Парижскихъ) фуша.



## Т Е М Е XVI.

### ON THE ORDINAL NUMBERS.

На пѣмятникѣ Петра Великаго изображена слѣдующая надпись: Петру *первому* Екашерина *вторая*.

Имена Петра *перваго*, Фридриха *втораго* и Генриха *четвертаго* безсмертны въ исторіи.

Римъ имѣлъ семь Царей: *первой* былъ Ромуль, *второй* Нума Помпилий, *третий* Тулль Гостилий, *четвертый* Анкъ Марцій, *пятый* Тарквиній Прискъ, *шестой* Сервій Туллий, *седьмой* и послѣдній Тарквиній Гордый.

*Первый* мѣсяцъ въ году Генварь, *второй* Февраль, *третий* Мартъ, *четвертый* Апрель, *пятый* Май, *шестой* Июнь, *седьмой* Июль, *восьмой* Августъ, *девятый* Сентябрь, *десятый* Октябрь, *одиннадцатый* Ноябрь, *двенадцатый* Декабрь.

Компасъ былъ изобрѣшенъ въ *тысяча триста третьемъ* году.



Россійское торговое общество основано въ Англіи въ *тысяча пятьсотъ пятьдесятъ* *пѣтомъ* году.

Петръ Великій побѣдилъ Кáрла *двѣнадцатаго* при Полшáвъ въ *тысяча семь сотъ девятомъ* году.

Амѣрика открыта въ *пятнадцатомъ* вѣ-

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

ON NUMERALS.

Россія простирается отъ востока къ западу на *сто шестьдесятъ девять* съ половиною градусовъ, ш. е. отъ *тридцать девятого* до *двухъ сотъ восьмага* съ половиною градусовъ длины; и включая самыя отдаленныя острова восточнаго Океана, (кои доходящъ до *двухъ сотъ двадцать пятаго* градуса,) на *сто восемьдесятъ шесть* градусовъ.

Самое большіе прозяженіе отъ сѣвера къ югу составляетъ *тридцать восемь* градусовъ то есть, отъ *сороковаго* до *семдесятъ восьмага* градуса широты: Слѣдовательно величайшая часть Россіи находится въ умеренномъ, а самая малая въ холодномъ поясъ. Вся же повѣрхность Государства исключая

острова восточнаго Океана, простирается на *триста сорокъ тысячъ* географическихъ квадратныхъ Немецкихъ миль, или *шесть-на́дцать миллио́новъ шестьсотъ шестьдесять тысячъ* квадратныхъ верстъ.



## Т Н Е М Е XVII.

### ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Скажи *мнѣ*, съ кѣмъ *ты* обходишься, и я *тебѣ* скажѹ, кто *ты* шакóвъ.

Помни *меня*, когда *ты* будешь счастливъ.

Кто не со *мною*, пошѣ про́шивъ *меня*.

Арисóпель, подавая злóму чело́вѣку мѣлоспыню, сказа́лъ: не *ему́* даю, а чело́вѣчеству.

Вѣрный другъ открывáетъ *намъ* на́ши недоспáшки.

Естѣственная истóрiя даётъ *намъ* понятiе о насъ самихъ и о предме́сахъ *насъ* окружающихъ.

Разсѹдокъ ука́зываетъ *намъ* путь къ благополѹчiю, а спрáсши отвлека́ютъ *насъ* ошѣ óнаго.

На одной Египетской стáтуѣ была́ слѣдующая нáдпись: я есмь *тошѣ*, кто былъ, и

есть, и бѹдетъ въ вѣкъ; никто́ еще не снималъ съ *меня* завѣсы.

Гнѣвъся значить наказывать *себя* за чужую вину.

Берегись дуракà, если *его* шрòнешь; умнаго, если причинишь *ему* обиду, и злаго, если сведешь съ *нимъ* знакомство.

Многіе люди подобны ходячей монетѣ: не рѣдко принуждены бываемъ принимать *ихъ* по кѹрсу, а не по истинному *ихъ* достоинству.



## Т Е М Е XVIII.

### ON RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

Осперегайся того́, *кто* тебя́ безпрестанно хва́лишь.

Мужесшвенъ топъ, *кого́* ничто́ встревò-жишь не въ состояніи.

Люди рѣдко любятъ того́, *кого́* боятся.

Не ночишай за стыдъ учиться въ зрѣлыхъ лѣтахъ тому́, *чему́* не научился въ младости.

Не откладывай до завтра, *что* можешь сдѣлать сегодня.

Филиппъ, Царь Македонскій имѣлъ у себя нарòчнаго, *который* напоминалъ ему́, *что* онъ смёршнѣй.

Жизнь подобна сну, *ошъ котораго* просыпаемся въ часъ смёрши.

Истинно счастливъ *шомъ*, *кто* не даёшь воли *своимъ* спрашьямъ.

Подумаи наперёдъ о *шомъ*, *что* хочешь сказаъть.

Мы всегда любимъ *шѣхъ*, *которыя* намъ удивляются, а не всегда *шѣхъ*, *которымъ* сами удивляемся.

*Кто* оправдываешься, не будучи обвиняемъ, *шомъ* только возбуждаешь подозрѣнiе.

Трудно любишь *шогò*, *кого* не почитаемъ.

Истинное просвѣщенiе есть *шо*, *которое* учишь насъ быть полезными *шому* обществу, въ *которомъ* мы живёмъ.



## Т Н Е М Е XIX.

### ON POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Мы должны почитать добродѣтель лучшимъ *своимъ* другомъ, ибо она есть источникъ *нашего* счастья, *нашей* чести и *нашего* спокойствiя.

Я почитаю *своихъ* родителей: ибо обязанъ имъ *моёю* жизнью и *моимъ* воспитанiемъ.

Берегись гнѣва: онъ обезображиваетъ *твоё* лице, и ещё болѣе *твою* душу.

Не говори о предметъ, который превъше  
*твоихъ* понятій.

Гомерь и Виргилій славны по *своимъ* твореніямъ.

Будь вѣренъ *своему* Государю.

Орель въ быстрой полѣтѣ *своемъ* возно-  
сится превъше облаковъ.

Старайся образовати *свой* умъ, облагоро-  
дишь свою *душѣ* и укрѣпишь *свое* шло.



## Т Н Е М Е XX.

### ON D'EMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Императоръ Титъ считалъ *тотъ* день по-  
теряннымъ, въ который не сдѣлалъ ничего  
добраго.

Не повторй въ одной бесѣдѣ *того*, что  
ты слышалъ въ другой.

Злополучны *тѣ* люди, которые всегда не-  
довольны своимъ состояніемъ.

Трудъ укрѣпляетъ шло, а праздность раз-  
слабляетъ *оное*.

*Сіе* наказаніе соразмѣрно *сему* преступленію.

*Сей* холмъ, *сія* роща, *сіе* поле, *сія* скром-  
ная хижина напоминають мнѣ мою родину.

Всѣ *сѣи* мраморы, *сѣи* надгробныя надписи, *сѣи* величественныя развалины, *сѣи* безмолвіе, *сѣи* уединеніе, *сѣи* великія имена свидѣтельствующъ времена протекшей славы.

Ничто не можетъ изобразить *того* восторга, который восхищаетъ душу, когда входишь въ церковь св. Петра въ первый разъ; когда стоишь на *семъ* пространнымъ помостѣ, между *сихъ* ужасныхъ подпоръ, предъ *сѣими* бронзовыми колоннами, при видѣ всѣхъ *сихъ* картинъ, всѣхъ *сихъ* спашуй, всѣхъ *сихъ* мавзолеевъ, всѣхъ *сихъ* жершвенниковъ, подъ *симъ* куполомъ.



## Т Н Е М Е XXI.

### ON INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

*Всѣ* жалуется на слабость памяти, *никто* не жалуется на слабость ума.

*Каждый* человекъ долженъ умереть.

*Всякій* день приносишь съ собою *что нибудь* новаго.

На *семъ* свѣтѣ нѣтъ *нигдѣ* постояннаго.

Дѣлай добро и *никого* не бойся.

*Никакѣя* минуша не можетъ назваться нашею, кромѣ настоящей.

*Никто* такъ не поршишь нравовъ, какъ худое сообщество.

Человѣкъ, *какого* бы состоянія ни былъ, имѣешь всегда *нѣкоторый* родъ щеслѣвія.



## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

### ON PRONOUNS.

*Что такое* Отечество? Справа, гдѣ мы родились; колыбель, въ *которой* мы возлелѣяны; гнѣздо, въ *которомъ* согрѣши и воспитаны; земля, гдѣ лежатъ кости опцевъ *нашихъ*, и куда мы *сами* ляжемъ. *Какѣя* душа держишь расшоргнувъ *сѣй* крѣпкія узы? *Какое* сердце можетъ не чувствовать *сего* священнаго пламени? *Самыя* птицы и звѣри любящъ мѣсто рожденія *своего*: человѣкъ ли, одаренный разумною душою, отдѣлишь *себя* отъ *справной своей*, отъ единосѣмцевъ *своихъ*? *Какой* извергъ не любитъ матери *своей*? Но отечество меньше ли *намъ*, чѣмъ матери? Отверженіе отъ *сей* противуестественной мысли такъ велико, *это* какую бы ни положили мы

★ ★

въ человѣкѣ худую нравственность и безстыдство; хотя бы и представили *себѣ, что* можешь найтись *такой, который* въ развращенной душѣ *своей* дѣйствительно питаешь ненависть къ отечеству *своему*; однако же и *тотъ* постыдился бы всенародно и громогласно въ *томъ* признаться. *Всѣ* вѣки, *всѣ* народы, земля и небеса возопіяли бы прошивъ *него*: одинъ адъ спалъ бы *ему* рукоплескать.



## Т Н Е М Е XXII.

### ON THE AUXILIARY VERB.

*День есть* время труда, а *ночь* время покоя.

*Праздность есть* порокъ.

*Добродѣтель есть* самá себѣ награда.

*Конѣцъ гнѣва есть* начало раскаянія.

Человѣкъ безъ твердыхъ правилъ *есть* игрище своихъ страстей.

*Есть* во всякомъ народѣ и добрые и злые люди.

Рубли и копейки *суть* монеты, употребляемыя въ Россіи.



Хвастовствó и надмѣнность *суть дѣши невѣжества.*

Желанія наши *бывають* ненасытны.

Глаза *бывають* истолкователями сердца.

Люди ни на что не *бывають* такъ щедры, какъ на совѣщы.

Пифагоръ *былъ* первый изъ Греческихъ мудрецовъ.

Масличная вѣщъ *была* у древнихъ знакомъ мѣра.

Римляне *были* величайшими побѣдителями древнихъ вѣмѣнь.

Александръ великій *сказалъ* : если бы я не *былъ* Александромъ , то хотѣлъ бы *быть* Діогеномъ. !

Хлѣбопашество *было* у Римлянъ въ великомъ почтеніи.

Немнóгіе Европéйцы *бывали* во внутрѣнности Африки.

Богъ *есть* , *былъ* и *будетъ* въ вѣкъ.

Будь воздѣрженъ и ты *будешь* здоровъ.

Не *будь* завѣспливъ.

Бышь довольнымъ значишь *быть* богатымъ.

Каждый человекъ способенъ *быть* врагомъ , но не всякій другомъ.

Во всякомъ званіи можно *быть* благополучнымъ.

*Будущее* скрыто отъ насъ непроницаемою завѣсою.

*Будути* здоровы, мы смѣемся надъ болѣзнями.

Моцартъ, *бывши* еще малолѣтнимъ, восхищаль уже всѣхъ своею игрою.

Торговля Генуэзцовъ, *бывшая* нѣкогда первою въ свѣтѣ, нынѣ въ великомъ упадкѣ.

*Было* время, когда вся Европа *была* погружена въ невѣжество.

Да *будетъ* сердце швое чуждо всякой неправды.



## Т Е М Е XXIII.

### ON THE CONJUGATION OF ACTIVE AND NEUTER VERBS.

Люди *имѣютъ* весьма различныя понятія о красотѣ.

Безъ дружбы жизнь не *имѣетъ* никакой прелести.

Мы *любимъ* мѣсто своего рожденія.

Луна *займствуетъ* свой свѣтъ отъ солнца.

Конѣцъ *внѣзаетъ* дѣло.

Чистый воздухъ много *способствуетъ* къ излѣченію отъ болѣзней.

Ты жаждешь славы, а онъ ищетъ богáшства.  
 Не многіе люди творятъ добро по одной  
 толькó любви къ добру.

Вы любите чужіе краи, а я люблю своё  
 опёчештво.

Если покупáешь лишнее, то скоро бѣдешь  
 продаватъ нѣжное.

Усовершенствованіе телескоповъ много  
 способствовало новымъ астрономическимъ от-  
 крытіямъ.

Древніе Египтяне не знали употребленія  
 бумаги, и писали на листьяхъ расщепленія, име-  
 ннаго папирусомъ.

Лгать, знáтитъ забывáтъ Бóга и боáтсья  
 людéй.

Игрáтъ, знáтитъ бросáтъ своеимѣніе въ море  
 съ тою надѣждою, чтóбы снова собрáтъ óное  
 на берегу.

Уповáй на Бóга.

Храни во всякомъ случаѣ правила чéстности.

Не судите о вещахъ по одной наружности.

Человѣкъ хранящій молчаніе можетъ при-  
 мѣгать чужія глупости, не показывая своихъ.

Плѣній, желая извѣдать причину изверженія  
 горы Везувія, пожертвовалъ своему любопыт-  
 ству жизнию.

Цицеронъ въ рѣчи своей прошивъ Капилины  
сказалъ : съ нами бытъ тебѣ больше не воз-  
можно ; не смесѹ , не стерплю , не поущѹ.

*Пришелъ , узрѣлъ и побѣдилъ.*

Многія сочиненія древнихъ погибли.

Наступила осень : листья пожелтели.

Благопріятный вѣтръ надѹлъ паруса наши,  
и корабль быстро полетѣлъ по волнамъ.

Упавшій съ дерева яблокъ , открылъ Невтону  
законъ тяготѣнія.

Охотникъ крикнулъ : вспрянули гончіе.

Блеснула молнія и грянулъ громъ.

Виргилій потерпнѹлъ многія мысли изъ Го-  
мера.

*Минѹвшее* невозвратимо.

Вспыхнувшая въ стѹпкѣ селитра подала  
поводъ къ изобрѣшенію пороха.

На Олимпійскихъ играхъ поэты читывали  
свой стихошворенія и ораторы говаривали  
рѣчи.



## Т Н Е М Е XXIV.

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

Самолюбіе часпо *бываесть* *наказываемо* презрѣніемъ.

Сицилія *подвѣрена* частымъ землетрясѣніямъ.

Ска́зываютъ, что Ромуль и Ремъ *были* *воскормлены* волчицею.

Человѣкъ *сотворѣнъ* съ дарованіями, отличающимися его отъ всѣхъ прочихъ шварей.

При видѣ Ахиллѣсовой гробницы Александръ *былъ тронутъ* до слезъ.

Большая часть нашихъ знаній *погѣрпнута* изъ твореній древнихъ.

Лицемеріе есть дань, *платимая* порокомъ добродѣтели.

*Содѣланное* нами добро должно забываться, а *полученное* вѣчно помнись.

Человѣкъ, *озаренный* свѣтомъ вѣры, усматривая вездѣ слѣды всемогущества и благости Создателя, дивится имъ; но умы *погруженные* въ невѣжество и безвѣріе, среди безчисленныхъ чудесъ міра не видяшь ничего,

крѡмѣ случая: онѣ подобны тѣмъ несчастнымъ, коихъ очи, лишённые зрѣнія, хотѣя обращающа къ солнечному свѣту; но крѡмѣ мрачной шемношѣ ничего не встрѣчаютъ.



## Т Е М Е XXV.

### ON REFLECTIVE, RECIPROCAL AND COMMON VERBS.

Способности наши *разви́ваются* съ возрастомъ.

Плещъ *обвива́ется* около дубовыхъ деревь.

Курцій *низвергся* въ пропаснь для спасенія своего ошечества.

Англичане и Португальцы *прославились* многочисленными пушешествіями около свѣта.

Китайцы *почита́ютъ* себя мудрейшимъ народомъ въ свѣтѣ.

Гипократъ и Галенъ *почита́ются* опцами врачебной науки.

Гибралтаръ *почита́ется* одною изъ сильнѣйшихъ крѣпостей въ Европѣ.

Золото *испытывается* огнёмъ, а другъ несчастіемъ.

Винóвные *нака́зываются* по мѣрѣ престу-  
плénія.

Въ Камчáшкѣ вмѣсто лошадей *запряга́ются*  
собáки.

Діáна *изобража́лась* съ лѹкомъ и колча́номъ  
напо́лненнымъ стрѣ́лами.

Все въ Приро́дѣ *измѣ́няется*.

Во все печéніе сей кра́шкѣй жѣ́зни мы  
*бо́ремся* съ болѣ́знями, съ бѣ́дами, а бо́лье  
всего́ со сшрас́тями.

Весь свѣ́тъ *жа́луется* на коловра́шность  
сча́стія.

Добродѣ́тель не *бои́тся* злосло́вія.

Есть люди, ко́торые *смѣ́ются* надъ дру́гими,  
а не шеря́тъ, чшо́бы надъ нѣ́ми *смѣ́лись*.



## Т Н Е М Е XXVI.

### ОН СОМРОUND VERBS.

Сѣ́верные наро́ды *безпоко́били* Рѣ́мскую Им-  
пе́рію ча́стыми набѣ́гами.

Дуна́й *впада́етъ* въ Чѣ́рное мо́ре.

Зрѣ́лище Оке́ана *возбужда́етъ* удивлénіе.

Мо́литвы пра́веднаго *возхо́дятъ* къ небеса́мъ.

Послѣ ненастья снова *возсѣло* солнце.

Невозможно *возвратѣть* потеряннаго времени.

Нева *вытекаетъ* изъ Ладожскаго озера.

Троя долго *выдерживала* осаду; но наконецъ была взята.

Приамъ *выпросилъ* у Ахиллеса шло сына своего Гектора.

Бумагу *выдѣлываютъ* изъ тряпичъ.

Никто еще не *доходитъ* до полюса.

Ниль каждый годъ *затопляетъ* окрестныя страны.

Говори откровенно, но не *заговаривайся*.

Лишь только *закатилось* солнце, какъ соловей запѣлъ.

Прилѣжный *заслуживаетъ* ободреніе.

Везувій *извергаетъ* пламя.

Пчѣлы *извлекаютъ* медъ изъ всѣхъ цвѣтѣвъ.

Алхимисты *изыскивали* способъ *превратѣть* низкіе металлы въ золото.

Скупые *накапливаютъ* богатства, а наследники ихъ *растотаютъ* оныя.

Желанія честолюбца не скоро *насыщаются*.

Цыганки *ниговариваютъ* на руку.

На столпахъ Геркулесовыхъ были *надписаны* слова: *не дѣльте сего*.



Въ Римѣ *низвергали* пресѣпниковъ съ  
Тарпейской скалы.

Пьянство *омрачаетъ* разсѣдокъ.

Капитанъ Кукъ шри рѣза *обвѣхалъ* весь  
земной Шаръ.

Опасеніе спыда *отвращаетъ* многихъ отъ  
худыхъ поступковъ.

Незнаніемъ законовъ никто *отговариваться*  
не долженъ.

*Пресыщенный* земнымъ величіемъ, Карлъ  
пѣтый удалился въ монастырь.

Многіе кочевые народы *перемѣнили* свой  
образъ жизни и *поселились* въ деревняхъ.

Ни одинъ стихотворецъ не *превозмогъ*  
Гомера.

Мрачныя шѣчи *предвѣщаютъ* дождь.

Должно *предпочитать* полезное пріятному.

Весною на сѣверъ *прилетаетъ* множествъ  
птицъ изъ теплыхъ странъ.

Лицемеры *прикрываютъ* свой пороки лич-  
ною святости.

Науки *просвѣщаютъ* разумъ.

Игроки часто *проигрываютъ* все свое имѣніе.



## Т Н Е М Е XXVII.

## ON IRREGULAR VERBS.

Въ безлѣсныхъ спранѣхъ *жгутъ* каменное  
уголье, шурфъ и даже солóму.

Дубóвый лѣсъ *идётъ* на строеніе кораблѣй.

Виноградная лоза не *можетъ* *расти* въ хо-  
лóдныхъ климатахъ.

Въ Сибири *живутъ* многія кочевья племенѣ.

Ястребъ *вьётся* надъ облаками.

Корзѣины *плетутъ* изъ ивовыхъ вѣтвей.

Малые просѣпки *ведутъ* къ большимъ пре-  
супленіямъ.

Сократъ *палъ* жершвою клеветы и злобы  
своихъ согражданъ.

Баско де Гама *нашелъ* морской путь въ  
Восточную Индію.

Монгольфьеръ *изобрѣлъ* воздушные шары.

Линней *пріобрѣлъ* великую славу тѣмъ, что  
*привелъ* Естественную Исторію въ систему.

Петръ Великій *завелъ* первый Россійскій  
флотъ.

Гдѣ не *посылъ*, тамъ и не *пожнешь*.

*Прійди* и *возми*, ошвѣчалъ Леонидъ Царю  
Персидскому, требовавшему, чтобы Спаршан-  
цы ошдали оружіе.



## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISE

## ON THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

Если я *скажѣ* тебѣ, что у самаго въѣзда въ городъ (Симферополь) по большой дорогѣ ошъ Николаева, *стоитъ* пѣмѣтникъ Гѣуарда, ты *подумаешь*, что я *противорѣчу* себѣ непроспѣтельнымъ образомъ — и ты *ошибѣшься*: пѣмѣтникъ пѣдлинно тушь *находится* — высокій гранѣшный обелѣскъ, кѣго пѣдестѣлъ *составляетъ* саркофагъ съ слѣдующею нѣдписью: Гѣуардъ *скончался* на шестѣдесять пѣшомъ годѣ ошъ рождѣнія своего въ 1790; онъ *обнесѣнъ* клѣглою кѣменною оградѣю, съ рѣшѣщачными ширѣкими желѣзными ворѣшами, насѣпрошивъ нѣдписи. — Все эшо такъ; и хвалѣ томѣ, кто *захотѣлъ* *погнѣтъ* пѣмѣть чѣловѣка, досѣйного всѣобщаго уважѣнія: но эшо пѣмѣтникъ, кѣнопафъ, а не грѣбница Гѣуарда. Прахъ сѣго благотворѣтеля стрѣждущихъ *погнѣваетъ* въ шрѣхъ верстахъ ошъ города; и тамъ-шо я *видѣлъ* *развалившуюся* бѣдную кирпичную пѣрамиду вмѣсто сѣлѣчныхъ часѣвъ, кѣторѣе я *желѣлъ* *найти* надъ могилою егѣ, соглѣсно съ послѣднею егѣ волею: эшо обстоѣшѣльство мо-

жеть бытъ себѣ неизвѣстно. — Когда въ 1790 году свирѣпствовали въ Крымѣ прилипчивыя гнилыя горячки, Гоуардъ *служился* въ Херсонѣ, на путь своемъ въ Царьградъ. Легко себѣ *представить можешь*, что человѣку, который *ставилъ* себѣ въ неминүемую обязанность ежедневно *посѣщать* шюрьмы, больницы, оспроги, трудно было *избѣжать* заразы: онъ дѣйствительно *сдѣлался* жѣршвою бной. Чувствуя, что конецъ его близокъ, онъ *призвалъ* къ себѣ двухъ пріятелей своихъ, съ коими могъ *говорить* на природномъ своемъ языкѣ и *простѣвшись* съ ними, *сказалъ*: пѣмятника я не *хочу*; а *прошу* васъ *поставить* надъ могилою моею простыя солнечныя часы; но повелѣніе сіе было *забыто*: нѣтъ солнечныхъ часовъ надъ его могилою; и эшаго жаль, очень жаль! Друзья его *воздвигли* маленькую кирпичную пирамиду, шеперь, и эшошъ простой пѣмятникъ *разсыпается* и вскорѣ не *узнаютъ* мѣста, гдѣ *лежатъ* ошашки друга *спрадальцевъ*.

*Муравьевъ.*



## Т Н Е М Е XXVIII.

## ON THE DECLENSION OF PARTICIPLES.

Земля, нами обитаемая, есть планета, принадлежащая къ солнечной системѣ.

Развалины древняго Рима суть памятники бывшаго его величія.

Человѣкъ, забывающій своё опредѣленіе для будущаго свѣта подобенъ путешественнику, не имѣющему другой цѣли кромѣ минутнаго удовольствія.

Россія отдѣляется отъ Америки Беринговымъ проливомъ, имѣющимъ ширину около семидесяти прехъ верстъ.

Изъ рѣкъ, впадающихъ въ Каспійское море Волга есть самая значительная.

Изъ числа стихотворцевъ, прославившихся въ новѣйшія времена въ Англіи, знаменнѣйшіе суть Вальтеръ Скоттъ и Бейронъ.

Эпаминондъ, смертельно раненный въ сраженіи при Мантиней, сказалъ друзьямъ своимъ, собиравшимся о томъ, что онъ умирая не оставляетъ дѣтей: я оставляю двухъ дочерей Левктры и Мантиней.

Невѣжество соединенное со скромностію, сноснѣе знаній, сопровождаемыхъ спесію.

*Встрѣженный духъ, подобно взволненному морю, отражаетъ всѣ окружающіе предметы обезображенными и преломленными, сообщая имъ тоже волненіе, коимъ онъ самъ обуреваемъ.*

Человѣку, ежечасно въ морѣ жизни обуреваемому, необходимо должно имѣть кормчимъ вѣру въ Провидѣніе.

Первой шагъ за порогъ хижины доспавиль мнѣ восхитительнѣйшій взглядъ. Лучи *восходящаго солнца, перехваченные* стѣною каменныхъ горъ, бросали сквозь углы ихъ *оживляющій* свѣтъ свой; долина, частію *освѣщенная*, а частію *скрытая* въ тѣни, являла самую разнообразную игру цвѣтовъ. Татарская деревня съ домиками, *пускающими* бѣлыя облака *вѣющагося* дыма сквозь густую сѣнь деревъ, величалась какъ Царьца между горъ, *служящихъ* ей вѣнцемъ; между рощей, *препоясывающихъ* ее въ образъ роскошныхъ гирляндъ; на берегу моря, *приносящаго* къ ногамъ ея дань своихъ волнъ.



## Т Н Е М Е XXIX.

## ON ADVERBS.

*Тамъ* благодѣнствуютъ народы, *гдѣ* трудолюбіе соединено съ добрыми нравами.

Мы видимъ *повсюду* слѣды премудрости Божіей.

Магелланъ совершилъ первое путешествованіе кругомъ свѣта.

*Нигдѣ* нѣтъ такого многолюдства, какъ въ Кишаѣ.

Въ Египтѣ, *гдѣ прежде* процвѣтали науки, нынѣ царствуетъ невѣжество.

Гнѣвъ *засто* заславляешь насъ дѣйствовать опрометчиво.

Приближаясь къ берегу, мы примѣчаемъ *сначала* вершины горъ, *потомъ* верхіи башенъ, а *наконѣцъ* и самый берегъ.

Благодарный *вѣчно* помнишь *единожды* оказанную ему услугу.

*Много* говорить и *мало* думать есть признакъ легкомыслія.

Мы не знаемъ *за подлинно* сколь далеко Финикіяне простирали свое плаваніе.

*Нѣтъ* правила безъ исключенія.

Въ нѣкоторыхъ искуствахъ мы *едва ли* можемъ равняться съ древними.

Спокойная душа *подобно* зеркальному озеру

отражаєть всякій предметъ въ надлежащемъ его видѣ.

Лакедемоняне съ самаго младенчества приучали своихъ дѣтей говорить *кратко и ясно*.

*Легче* управлять спрашнію, нежели потушійтъ оную.

Люди *скорѣе* прощають злѣбу, нежели презрѣніе.

Многіе люди пѣшуть *лучше*, чѣмъ говорятъ, а другіе *лучше* говорятъ, чѣмъ пѣшуть.

*Скопѣ*, сказаь Пирръ, соврашійтъ соьнце съ пути онаго: нежели Фабриція со спезій добродѣтели.

Остава опечество (Россію) при наступленіи осени въ нѣсколько дней перешлі мы въ южную Англію, *гдѣ* прекрасная погода *еще* продолжалась; когда же и *тутъ* начались дожди и туманы, и *когда* растительная сила природы и *тамъ* начинала мертваѣть, то въ бурномъ Декабрѣ перенеслісь мы въ жаркій климатъ Европы. *Тамъ* прекраснѣйшее лѣто *вновь* насъ встрѣшило. Все твореніе исполнено было жизни, все цвѣло, все одѣло зѣленью, и тысячи насѣкомыхъ шумѣли въ воздухѣ.





## Т Н Е М Е XXX.

## ON PREPOSITIONS.

*Безъ* труда нѣтъ плодѣ.

*Близъ* Шафгаузена находится славный Рейнскій водопадъ.

Дикіе *вмѣсто* желѣза употребляютъ острые камни и рыбу косить.

Ученіе слѣжитъ человѣку *въ* счастіи украшеніемъ, а *въ* несчастіи прибѣжищемъ.

Планеты обращаются *около* солнца.

Уральскія горы отдѣляютъ Европѣйскую Россію *отъ* Сибири.

Утѣхи суть скалы, *о* которыя разбивающія большая часть молодыхъ людей. Они пускаются *за* оными *на* всѣхъ парусахъ; но *безъ* компаса *для* направленія ихъ плаванія и *безъ* кормила могущаго управлять кораблемъ, и пошому *вмѣсто* удовольствія встрѣчаютъ стыдъ и огорченіе.

Сколь печальныя мысли *о* непостоянномъ величіи народовъ рождаются *въ* Италіи у подношвы древнихъ колоннъ, *на* высотѣ торжественныхъ вѣршъ, *внутри* развалившихся гробницъ, *на* мшистыхъ берегахъ ишѣчниковъ.

Аполлонъ иногда изображается *съ* лирою, а иногда *съ* напѣнушымъ лукомъ.

Невинность улыбаётся подобно утру весеннему, на высокомъ челѣ ея изображается душевный миръ и спокойствіе. Неувядаемыя рѣзы и лѣліи цвѣтуть на ея ланитахъ; рѣзвые зефіры, вѣясь *вокругъ* ея, играютъ легкою и бѣлою ея одеждою и разпущенными волосами. Увѣнчанная цвѣтами Грацій шествуетъ она *по* землѣ благословенной; бѣри и мраки *отъ* неѣ удаляются; небесная благасть изливается *предъ* нею *въ* лучахъ солнечныхъ. Когда смѣршныя повиновались гласу благодѣтельной природы и жили *въ* любви, пишинѣ и мѣрѣ, тогда невинность на землѣ обитала; но когда человекъ *въ* гибельный часъ заблужденія презрѣлъ законы природы, тогда невинность возвратилась на небеса *въ* своё отечество. Съ того времени она уже рѣдко посѣщаетъ зѣмлю, и рѣдко бываешь видима оку смѣршнаго.

*Karamzin.*



## Т Н Е М Е XXXI.

## ON CONJUNCTIONS.

Не забывай собственныхъ своихъ слабостей, *дабы* ты удобнѣе могъ извинять погрѣшности другаго.

*Ни* строгость, *ни* наставленія не дѣйствуютъ *столь* сильно на нравы *какъ* хорошій примѣръ.

Природа производитъ дарованія, *а* воспитаніе раскрываетъ оныя.

Смерть не щадитъ *ни* богатаго, *ни* бѣднаго.

Не смѣри, *но* стыда бойся.

Хотя начало ученія прѣдно; *но* конецъ онаго пріятенъ.

Пифагоръ заставлялъ учениковъ своихъ пять лѣтъ молчать, *чтобы* они научились разсуждать.

Убѣгай праздности, *ибо* она есть источникъ многихъ пороковъ.

Истинное образованіе *не только* открываетъ путь къ счастію; *но и* утверждаетъ внутреннее наше благососпояніе.

Душевная красота лучше, *нѣжели* телѣсная.

Счастіе человѣческое *столь* непостоянно, *что* можешь измѣниться въ одно мгновеніе.

*Чѣмъ тѣло тяжѣлѣе, тѣмъ скорѣе падаетъ къ землѣ.*

Америкáнцы говорили утѣснителямъ своимъ: вы, кѣи столь самовластно и споль сурово поступáете съ нáми, вы должны быть *или* бѣги, *или* такіе же люди: *ѣжели* вы бѣги, *то* должны быть къ людямъ милосѣрды; *а* *ѣсли* такіе же люди, *то* должны помнишь челоуѣчество.



## Т Н Е М Е XXXII.

### ON INTERJECTIONS.

*О* мѣлыя ўзы опѣчества, родствá и дрѹжбы!

*Ахъ*, сколь счáсливъ шощъ, кшо наслаждаѣтся спокойствіемъ дѹха!

*Увы*, сколь непостоянно счáстїе челоуѣческое.

*Увы*, изчѣзла надѣжда!

*Горе* тебѣ, нечестивому!

*Ахъ*! какъ я радъ, что увидѣлся съ вáми!

Вѣйско встрѣшило своего любимаго вождя грѣмкимъ крикомъ, *урá*!



# V O C A B U L A R Y . \*

## S P I R I T U A L O B J E C T S .

### *Substantives.*

|                                          |                                  |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Богъ , God.                              | Вѣра , the faith.                |
| Богъ Отецъ , God the Father.             | Христіанинъ , a Christian.       |
| Богъ Сынъ , God the Son.                 | язычникъ , a heathen.            |
| Иисусъ Христосъ , Jesus Christ.          | идолъ , an idol.                 |
| Духъ Святой , The Holy Ghost.            | идолопоклонникъ , an idolater.   |
| Провидѣніе , Providence.                 | вольномыслиецъ , a free-thinker. |
| Ангель , an Angel.                       | еретикъ , a heretick.            |
| Святые , the Saints.                     | лицемѣръ , a hypocrite.          |
| рай , paradise.                          | ханжа , a bigot.                 |
| страшный судъ , the day of judgment.     | судьба , fate.                   |
| Священное писаніе , the Holy scriptures. | вѣчность , eternity.             |
| Библия , the Bible.                      | таинство , a mystery.            |
| Вѣтхій заветъ , the old testament.       | заповѣдь , a commandment.        |
| Новый заветъ , the new testament.        | молитва , a prayer.              |
|                                          | богослуженіе , divine service.   |
|                                          | проповѣдь , a sermon.            |

---

\* The above arrangement has been adopted in preference to an alphabetical list, that the scholar might have an opportunity of increasing the number of grammatical exercises by connecting the different parts of speech and forming sentences.

*Adjectives.*

|                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| Божественный, God-like.   | правовѣрный, orthodox.     |
| Божескій, Divine.         | праведный, just.           |
| милосѣрдый, merciful.     | набожный, pious.           |
| Ангельскій, Angelic.      | избранный, elect.          |
| райскій, heavenly.        | тайнственный, mystic.      |
| адскій, infernal.         | бессмертный, immortal.     |
| вѣчный, eternal.          | суетный, superstitious.    |
| Безконечный, everlasting. | языческій, pagan, heathen. |
| Христіанскій, Christian.  |                            |

*Verbs.*

|                                            |                              |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| обожать, to adore.                         | вѣровать, to believe.        |
| поклоняться, to worship.                   | проповѣдывать, to preach.    |
| призывать, to implore.                     | спасаться, to be saved.      |
| молиться, to pray.                         | исповѣдываться, to confess.  |
| креститься, to make the sign of the cross. | причащаться, to communicate. |
| служить, to serve.                         | грѣшить, to sin.             |
| преклонять колѣна, to kneel.               | проклипать, to curse.        |
| обращаться, to be converted.               | опрекаться, to abjure.       |

*NATURAL OBJECTS.**Substantives.*

|                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| Природа, Nature.   | свойство, a quality. |
| начало, beginning. | величина, magnitude. |
| конецъ, end.       | длина, length.       |

рождѣніе, birth.  
 жизнь, life.  
 смерть, death.  
 движеніе, motion.  
 время, time.  
 мѣсто, place.  
 тѣло, a body.  
 цѣлое, the whole.  
 часть, a part.  
 существо, a being.  
 наружный видъ, exterior figure.

ширина, breadth.  
 выши́на, высота, height.  
 толщина, thickness.  
 глубина, depth.  
 пространство, extent.  
 тяжесть, weight.  
 количество, quantity.  
 число, number.  
 вещество, substance.  
 мѣра, measure.

### *Adjectives.*

природный, natural.  
 начальный, original.  
 конечный, final.  
 живо́й, living.  
 ме́ртва́й, dead.  
 большо́й, велико́й, great.  
 дли́нны́й, до́лгий, long.  
 широ́кій, wide.  
 высо́кій, high.  
 толсто́й, thick.  
 глубо́кій, deep.  
 тѣлесный, corporeal.  
 простран́ный, extensive.  
 неизме́римый, immeasurable.  
 тяжёлый, heavy.  
 безчислен́ый, innumerable.  
 твёрдый, hard.  
 гру́бый, rough, rude.

густо́й, dense.  
 кругло́й, round.  
 ста́рый, old.  
 престаре́лый, aged.  
 цѣлы́й, entire.  
 ско́рый, quick.  
 бы́стрый, rapid.  
 временно́й, temporal.  
 подви́жный, moveable.  
 неподви́жный, immovable.  
 Суще́ственны́й, substantial.  
 ма́лый, little.  
 коро́ткий, short.  
 узко́й, narrow.  
 низко́й, low.  
 то́нко́й, thin.  
 ма́лко́й, shallow.  
 тѣсны́й, confined.  
 безме́рный, immense.

★ ★

|                           |                     |
|---------------------------|---------------------|
| лёгкій, light.            | но́вый, new.        |
| многочисленный, numerous. | молодо́й, young.    |
| мягкій, soft.             | юный, youthful.     |
| нѣжный, tender.           | ча́стный, partial.  |
| рѣдкій, rare.             | мѣдленный, slow.    |
| о́стрый, sharp.           | внеза́пный, sudden. |
|                           | по́лный, full.      |

*Verbs.*

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| быть, to be.             | увеличива́ться, to en-   |
| существова́ть, to exist. | large.                   |
| начина́ть, to begin.     | продолжа́ть, to con-     |
| кони́ть, to end.         | tinue.                   |
| ро́дился, to be born.    | расши́рять, to widen.    |
| жи́ть, to live.          | возвыша́ть, to elevate.  |
| умира́ть, to die.        | шолсти́ть, to thicken.   |
| двига́ться, to move.     | углубля́ться, to deepen. |
| проходи́ть, минова́ть,   | распростра́нять, to      |
| to pass (away).          | spread.                  |
| изчеза́ть, to disappear. | вѣсить, to weigh.        |
| распи́, to grow.         | мѣря́ть, to measure.     |
| сара́ться, to grow       | счита́ть, to count.      |
| old.                     | обновля́ться, to renew.  |

## OF THE UNIVERSE.

*Substantives.*

|                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| Вселенная, the uni-      | коме́та, a comet.         |
| verse.                   | восто́къ, the east.       |
| ми́ръ, свѣтъ, the world. | за́падъ, the west.        |
| не́бо, heaven, the sky.  | сѣверъ, the north.        |
| со́лнце, the sun.        | ю́гъ, the south.          |
| луна́, мѣсяцъ, the moon. | восхо́ждѣнiе со́лнца,     |
| звѣзда́, a star.         | sun-rise.                 |
| созвѣздіе, a satellite.  | захо́ждѣнiе со́лнца, sun- |
| плане́та, a planet.      | set.                      |



|                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| шечёніе, бѣгъ, course.               | полнолѹніе, a full moon.              |
| свѣтъ, light.                        |                                       |
| лучъ, a ray.                         | послѣдняя чѣтверть, last quarter.     |
| затмѣніе, an eclipse.                |                                       |
| новолѹніе, новѣй мѣсяцъ, a new moon. | млѣчный путь, the milky-way.          |
| первая чѣтверть, first quarter.      | сѣверное сіяніе, the Northern-lights. |

*Adjectives.*

|                          |                                        |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| всемірный, universal.    | западный, west, western.               |
| небесный, celestial.     | сѣверный, полуночный, north, northern. |
| солнечный, solar.        |                                        |
| лѹнный, мѣсячный, lunar. | южный, полуденный, south, southern.    |
| звѣздный, starry.        | холодный, cold.                        |
| ясный, clear.            | шѣплый, warm.                          |
| шѣмный, dark.            | жаркій, hot.                           |

*Verbs.*

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| обращаться, to revolve.  | свѣтитъ, to light.       |
| освѣщать, to illuminate. | сіяетъ, to shine.        |
|                          | мелькаетъ, to glitter.   |
| согрѣвать, to warm.      | затмѣвается, to obscure. |
| восходитъ, to rise.      |                          |
| заходитъ, to set.        | казаться, to appear.     |

## OF THE ELEMENTS AND NATURAL PHENOMENA.

*Substantives.*

|                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| Стихія, an element. | дымъ, smoke.         |
| огонь, fire.        | искра, a spark.      |
| вода, water.        | плѣмя, a flame.      |
| воздухъ, air.       | зола, пѣпелъ, ashes. |
| земля, earth.       | уголь, coal.         |

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| ра́дуга, a rain-bow.   | дождь, rain.           |
| мо́лнія, lightning.    | ка́пля, a drop.        |
| вѣтеръ, wind.          | бу́ря, a storm.        |
| о́блако, a cloud.      | пого́да, weather.      |
| туманъ, a fog, vapour. | блудящій огонь, ignis- |
| роса́, dew.            | fatuus.                |
| иней, hoar-frost.      | громъ, thunder.        |
| морозъ, frost.         | вихрь, a whirlwind.    |
| снѣгъ, snow.           | непогода, bad weather. |
| градъ, hail.           | вьюга, метель, snow-   |
| ледъ, ice.             | storm.                 |

*Adjectives.*

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| огненный, igneous,    | дымный, smoky.          |
| fiery.                | громо́вой, thunder.     |
| водяной, aqueous, wa- | вѣтреный, windy.        |
| tery.                 | о́блачный, cloudy.      |
| воздушный, aerial.    | туманный, foggy.        |
| земной, terrestrial.  | пасмурный, misty, dark. |
| горючий, combustible. | снѣжный, snowy.         |
| пепельный, ashy.      | ледови́тый, icy.        |
| пламенный, flaming.   | дождево́й, rainy.       |
| угольный, coaly.      | бу́рный, stormy.        |

*Verbs.*

|                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| горѣть, to burn (v. neu-   | мо́лнія блестя́тъ, it   |
| ter.)                      | lightens.               |
| жечь, to burn (v. active.) | дождь иде́тъ, it rains. |
| наводня́тъ, to deluge.     | снѣгъ иде́тъ, it snows. |
| воспламеня́тъ, to in-      | градъ иде́тъ, it hails. |
| flame.                     | ду́тъ, to blow.         |
| дыми́ться, to smoke.       | морози́тъ, to freeze.   |
| громъ греми́тъ, it         | переменя́ться, to chan- |
| thunders.                  | ge.                     |

## OF THE EARTH AND ITS PARTS.

*Substantives.*

|                                     |                          |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| почва земли, the soil.              | поле, a field.           |
| поверхность, the surface.           | лугъ, a meadow.          |
| гора, a mountain.                   | садъ, a garden.          |
| холмъ, пригорокъ, a hill.           | степь, a waste.          |
| океанъ, the ocean.                  | пустыня, a wilderness.   |
| море, the sea.                      | приливъ, flow.           |
| заливъ, a gulph.                    | отливъ, ebb.             |
| проливъ, a strait.                  | волна, a wave.           |
| хребетъ горъ, a chain of mountains. | озеро, a lake.           |
| равнина, a plain.                   | прудъ, a pond.           |
| долина, a valley.                   | рѣка, a river.           |
| скала, a rock.                      | ручѣй, a rivulet, brook. |
| пещера, a cave.                     | болото, a bog, marsh.    |
| лѣсъ, a forest, wood.               | берегъ, a coast.         |
| роща, a grove.                      | островъ, an island.      |
|                                     | пропастъ, a precipice.   |
|                                     | бѣдна, an abyss.         |

*Adjectives.*

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| плодоносный, fruitful.       | безплодный, unfruitful.     |
| плодородный, fertile.        | морской, marine.            |
| ровный, plain, smooth.       | рѣчной, river.              |
| возвышенный, high, elevated. | зеленой, green.             |
| горястый, mountainous.       | болотистый, marshy, boggy.  |
| холмистый, hilly.            | береговой, coast.           |
| утесистый, rocky.            | дикій, wild.                |
| лѣсной, woody.               | пустынный, waste, solitary. |
| полевой, field.              | разнообразный, diversified. |
| степной, desert.             |                             |

*Verbs.*

|                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| рыть, to dig.                    | срывать, to tear up.          |
| пахать, to plough.               | проводить, to cut.            |
| обрабатывать, to cul-<br>tivate. | высушать, to drain.           |
| сажать, to plant.                | огораживать, to en-<br>close. |

OF THE PRODUCTIONS OF THE EARTH.  
THE MINERAL KINGDOM.

*Substantives.*

|                     |                                        |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------|
| рудá, a mine.       | магнитъ, loadstone.                    |
| металлъ, a metal.   | ржавчина, rust.                        |
| сталь, steel.       | сѣра, brimstone, sul-<br>phur.         |
| золото, gold.       | сѣльитра, salt-petre.                  |
| серебрó, silver.    | мѣлъ, chalk.                           |
| мѣдь, copper.       | соль, salt.                            |
| жѣлтая мѣдь, brass. | купоросъ, copperas.                    |
| олово, pewter.      | дорогой камень, a pre-<br>cious stone. |
| ртуть, quicksilver. | алмазъ, a diamond.                     |
| жестъ, tin.         | изумрудъ, an emerald.                  |
| свинѣць, lead.      | рубинъ, a ruby.                        |
| камень, a stone.    | жемчугъ, a pearl.                      |
| кремѣнь, a flint.   | яшма, jasper.                          |
| известъ, lime.      | сердоликъ, cornelian.                  |
| глина, clay.        | гранатъ, a garnet.                     |
| гранитъ, granite.   | аметистъ, amethyst.                    |
| мраморъ, marble.    | сафиръ, a sapphire.                    |
| песокъ, sand.       |                                        |
| жельзо, iron.       |                                        |

*Adjectives.*

|                        |                    |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| золотой, gold, golden. | оловянный, pewter. |
| серебряный, silver.    | жестяной, tin.     |
| мѣдный, copper.        | свинцовой, leaden. |

|                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| стальной, steel.    | бѣлый, white.               |
| железной, iron.     | чёрный, black.              |
| соляной, salt.      | красный, румяной, red.      |
| каменный, stone.    | зелёный, green.             |
| кремнистый, flinty. | жёлтый, yellow.             |
| известковый, limy.  | синий, blue.                |
| глинистый, clayey.  | фиолетовый, violet.         |
| сухой, dry.         | серый, grey.                |
| вязкий, adhesive.   | коричневый, brown.          |
| грубый, rude.       | бѣловатый, whitish.         |
| гладкий, smooth.    | черноватый, blackish.       |
| мраморный, marble.  | красноватый, reddish.       |
| стеклянный, glass.  | зеленоватый, greenish.      |
| ковкий, malleable.  | синеватый, bluish.          |
| плотный, solid.     | изжелта красный, light red. |
| плавкий, fusible.   | прозрачный, transparent.    |
| рыхлый, loose.      |                             |
| крѣпкий, massy.     |                             |

*Verbs.*

|                        |                      |
|------------------------|----------------------|
| плавить, to melt.      | бѣлить, to whiten.   |
| ковать, to forge.      | чёрнить, to blacken. |
| ломать, to break.      | краснѣть, to redden. |
| серебрить, to plate.   | копать, to dig.      |
| золотить, to gild.     | рѣзать, to cut.      |
| лудить, to tin.        | смѣшивать, to mix.   |
| полировать, to polish. |                      |
| красить, to colour.    |                      |

## THE VEGETABLE KINGDOM.

*Substantives.*

|                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| растѣние, a plant. | стволь, a stem.  |
| дерево, a tree.    | вѣтвь, a branch. |
| корень, a root.    | листь, a leaf.   |

|                  |                 |               |               |
|------------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|
| цвѣтъ ,          | цвѣто́къ , а    | рожь ,        | rye.          |
|                  | flower.         | пшени́ца ,    | wheat.        |
| пѣ́чка ,         | a bud.          | ячме́нь ,     | barley.       |
| се́мя ,          | a seed.         | ове́сь ,      | oats.         |
| зерно́ ,         | a grain.        | про́со ,      | millet.       |
| пло́дъ ,         | fruit.          | ри́сь ,       | rice.         |
| ко́ра ,          | the rind, bark. | карто́фель ,  | potatoes.     |
| же́лудъ ,        | an acorn.       | ви́шня ,      | a cherry.     |
| дубъ ,           | an oak.         | пе́рсикъ ,    | a peach.      |
| и́лимъ ,         | an elm.         | абрикóсъ ,    | an apricot.   |
| ель ,            | a fir.          | я́блоко ,     | an apple.     |
| берё́за ,        | a birch.        | гру́ша ,      | a pear.       |
| оси́на ,         | an aspen.       | сли́ва ,      | a plum.       |
| бу́къ ,          | a beech.        | сморо́дина ,  | a currant.    |
| кле́нь ,         | a maple-tree.   | кры́жовникъ , | a goose-      |
| ли́па ,          | a linden tree.  |               | berry.        |
| я́сень ,         | an ash tree.    | мали́на ,     | a raspberry.  |
| со́сна ,         | a pine.         | зе́мляника ,  | a straw-      |
| и́ва ,           | a willow.       |               | berry.        |
| я́блоня ,        | an apple tree.  | орѣ́шникъ ,   | a nut-tree.   |
| ку́стъ ,         | a bush.         | орѣ́хъ ,      | a nut.        |
| ку́старникъ ,    | a shrub-        | ми́нда́ль ,   | an almond.    |
|                  | bery.           | каштанъ ,     | a chesnut.    |
| бу́зинá ,        | an alder-tree.  | лимо́нъ ,     | a lemon.      |
| мо́зжевельникъ , | mul-            | поме́ранецъ , | a lime.       |
|                  | berry-tree.     | ово́щи ,      | garden-stuff. |
| плю́щъ ,         | ivy.            | горо́хъ ,     | pease.        |
| кра́пива ,       | a nettle.       | чече́вица ,   | lentil.       |
| прось ,          | a reed.         | бобы ,        | beans.        |
| ше́рно́вникъ ,   | a thorn         | капу́сша ,    | cabbage.      |
| пра́ва ,         | grass.          | ре́па ,       | a turnip.     |
| се́но ,          | hay.            | морко́вь ,    | a carrot.     |
| дернъ ,          | turf.           | ре́дька ,     | a radish.     |
| хлѣ́бъ ,         | corn.           | лу́къ ,       | an onion.     |
| ко́лосъ ,        | an ear of corn. | чесно́къ ,    | garlick.      |

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| сте́бель , stubble.      | спáржа , asparagus.      |
| пешру́шка , parsley.     | жасми́нь , jasmine.      |
| ды́ня , a melon.         | фи́алка , a violet.      |
| ты́ква , a pumpkin.      | тюльпа́нь , a tulip.     |
| арбу́зь , a water-melon. | нарци́ссъ , narcissus ,  |
| огурцы́ , cucumbers.     | гя́цинтъ , hyacinth.     |
| щавéль , sorrel.         | гвозди́ка , a pink.      |
| мя́та , mint.            | василéкъ , corn-flower.  |
| хмѣль , hops.            | незабúдка , forget-me-   |
| солóма , straw.          | not.                     |
| сокъ , sap.              | левко́й , a gilliflower. |
| виногра́дь , grapes.     | ла́ндышь , a may-flower. |
| виногра́дная лоза́ , a   | подсолнечникъ , a sun-   |
| grape-vine.              | flower.                  |
| виногра́дная кисть , a   | макъ , a poppy.          |
| bunch of grapes.         | ревéнь , rhubarb.        |
| цвѣты́ , blossoms.       | таба́къ , tobacco.       |
| ро́за , a rose.          | лёнь , flax.             |
| лиле́я , a lily.         | пенька́ , hemp.          |

### *Adjectives.*

|                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| вѣтви́стый , branchy.  | оси́нный , aspen.          |
| сучковáтый , knotty.   | кислýй , sour.             |
| пустóй , hollow.       | горькóй , bitter.          |
| колю́чий , prickly.    | сла́дкóй , sweet.          |
| цвѣшýщий , blooming.   | прíятный , agreeable.      |
| плодо́вый , fruitful.  | благоухáнный , ду́ш-       |
| безпло́дный , unfruit- | стый , aromatic.           |
| ful.                   | краси́вый , beautiful.     |
| дубóвый , oaken.       | прелéстный , charming.     |
| берéзовый , birch.     | зрѣ́лый , ripe.            |
| елóвый , fir.          | вкус́ный , fine flavoured. |
| ли́повый , linden.     | сочный , juicy.            |

*V e r b s.*

|                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| расти, to grow.                 | вянуть, блѣкнуть, to<br>wither. |
| садить, to plant.               |                                 |
| сѣять, to sow.                  | жать, to reap.                  |
| вырывать, полоть, to<br>weed.   | собира́ть, to gather.           |
| срубать, to cut down.           | молотъ, to thrash.              |
| поливáть, to water.             | созрѣва́ть, to ripen.           |
| цвѣсти, to blossom.             | пада́ть, to fall.               |
| распуска́ться, to put<br>forth. | благоуха́ть, to per-<br>fume.   |
|                                 | пахáть, to plough.              |

THE ANIMAL KINGDOM.

*S u b s t a n t i v e s.*

Четвероногія животныя, quadrupeds.

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| лѣвъ, a lion.          | олѣнь, a rein-deer.    |
| слонъ, an elephant.    | волкъ, a wolf.         |
| верблю́дь, a camel.    | ба́рсь, a leopard.     |
| медвѣ́дь, a bear.      | ло́сь, an elk.         |
| тигръ, a tiger.        | за́яць, a hare.        |
| каба́нь, a wild boar.  | соболь, a sable.       |
| бобръ, a beaver.       | горноста́й, an ermine. |
| лиси́ца, a fox.        | ежъ, a hedge-hog.      |
| куни́ца, a marten.     | кро́ликъ, a rabbit.    |
| крошъ, a mole.         | ко́нь, a steed.        |
| бѣлка, a squirrel.     | лоша́къ, a mule.       |
| лоша́дь, a horse.      | кобы́ла, a mare.       |
| осе́лъ, an ass.        | коро́ва, a cow.        |
| жеребе́ць, a stallion. | овца́, a sheep.        |
| быкъ, a bull.          | коза́, a she-goat.     |
| бара́нь, a ram.        | ко́шка, a cat.         |
| козе́лъ, a goat.       | кры́са, a rat.         |
| соба́ка, a dog.        | мышь, a mouse.         |



## Птицы, birds.

|                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| орёлъ, an eagle.         | айсть, a crane.        |
| соко́лъ, a falcon.       | скворе́ць, a starling. |
| сова́, an owl.           | жа́воронокъ, a lark.   |
| со́ро́ка, a mag-pie.     | йволга, a thrush.      |
| жура́вь, a stork.        | воробе́й, a sparrow.   |
| попуга́й, a parrot.      | павлинь, a peacock.    |
| соловѣ́й, a nightingale. | пѣту́хъ, a cock.       |
| щего́ль, a gold-finch.   | гусь, a goose.         |
| ла́сточка, a swallow.    | го́рлица, a dove.      |
| стро́усь, an ostrich.    | лебе́дь, a swan.       |
| ястребъ, a hawk.         | ку́рица, a hen.        |
| во́ронъ, a raven.        | у́тка, a duck.         |
| га́лка, a jack-daw.      | го́лубь, a pigeon.     |

## Рыбы, fishes.

|                   |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| ки́тъ, a whale.   | аку́ла, a shark.     |
| щу́ка, a pike.    | ка́рпъ, a carp.      |
| се́мга, a salmon. | осе́тръ, a sturgeon. |
| у́горь, an eel.   | сельдь, a herring.   |

## Земноводныя животныя, amphibious animals.

|                          |                      |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| крокоди́ль, a crocodile. | ящери́ца, a lizard.  |
| зми́я, a serpent.        | черепа́ха, a turtle. |
| лягу́шка, a frog.        | жа́ба, a toad.       |
| у́стрица, an oyster.     | ра́къ, a crab.       |

## Насѣкомыя, insects.

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| саранча́, a locust. | пчела́, a bee.         |
| кома́ръ, a gnat.    | ба́бочка, a butterfly. |
| моль, a moth.       | блоха́, a flea.        |

|                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| пау́къ, a spider.     | муравей, an ant. |
| му́ха, a fly.         | жу́къ, a beetle. |
| сверчѣ́къ, a cricket. | клопъ, a bug.    |

*Adjectives.*

|                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| звѣрскій, brute.         | ужасный, horrid.      |
| космáтый, shaggy.        | спра́шный, frightful. |
| горя́чий, рѣзвый, fiery. | вредный, noxious.     |
| ручнóй, tame.            | ди́кий, wild.         |
| домáшнй, domestic.       | лю́тый, ferocious.    |
| голо́дный, hungry.       | сви́ръпый, savage.    |

*Verbs.*

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| ловѣ́тъ, to catch.      | мыча́тъ, to bellow.      |
| спръля́тъ, to shoot.    | пища́тъ, to squeek.      |
| лая́тъ, to bark.        | куса́тъ, to bite.        |
| ржа́тъ, to neigh.       | пожира́тъ, to devour.    |
| пѣ́тъ, to sing.         | поглоща́тъ, to gulp.     |
| сви́ста́тъ, to whistle. | щипа́тъ, to nip.         |
| крича́тъ, to cry.       | пры́га́тъ, to jump.      |
| визжа́тъ, to yell.      | по́лза́тъ, to creep.     |
| вы́тъ, to roar.         | пастѣ́ся, to pasture.    |
| лета́тъ, to fly.        | гне́зди́ться, to nestle. |
| пла́ва́тъ, to swim.     | пой́тъ, to water.        |
| бѣ́га́тъ, to run.       | кормѣ́тъ, to feed.       |

## О Б М А Н.

*Substantives.*

|                    |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| человѣ́къ, man.    | старѣ́къ, старѣ́ецъ, an |
| мужчи́на, a man.   | old man.                |
| же́нщина, a woman. | стару́ха, an old woman. |

мальчикъ, a boy.  
 дѣвушка, a girl.  
 особа, лицѣ, a person.  
 мозгъ, the brains.  
 мясо, the flesh.  
 кровь, the blood.  
 жилы, the veins.  
 волосъ, the hair.  
 черепъ, the scull.  
 голова, the head.  
 лицѣ, the face.  
 лобъ, челó, the fore-head.  
 глазъ, an eye.  
 бровь, an eye-brow.  
 вѣжди, eye-lids.  
 зрачóкъ, an eye-ball.  
 челюсть, a jaw.  
 ротъ, the mouth.  
 губы, the lips.  
 зубы, the teeth.  
 языкъ, the tongue.  
 десна, the gums.  
 подборóдокъ, the chin.  
 борода, the beard.  
 шея, the neck.  
 горло, the throat.  
 плечó, a shoulder.  
 грудь, the breast.  
 спина, the back.  
 рука, a hand.  
 лóкошь, an elbow.  
 палець, a finger.  
 ногóшь, a nail.

тѣло, the body.  
 кожа, the skin.  
 кóсти, the bones.  
 брюхо, живóтъ, the belly.  
 ногá, a foot.  
 икра, the calf of the leg.  
 лядвея, the thigh.  
 колѣно, the knee.  
 подóшва, the sole of the foot.  
 носъ, the nose.  
 щекá, a cheek.  
 виски, the temples.  
 ухо, an ear.  
 потъ, perspiration.  
 слезá, a tear.  
 членъ, a member.  
 составъ, a joint.  
 слюна, expectoration.  
 пята, the heel.  
 внутрénность, the inside.  
 сёрдце, the heart.  
 ребро, a rib.  
 лёгкое, the lungs.  
 печénка, the liver.  
 желчь, the gall.  
 почки, the kidneys.  
 желúдокъ, the stomach.  
 образъ, видъ, form.  
 морщина, a wrinkle.  
 станъ, shape.  
 походка, gait.

*Adjectives.*

|                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| человѣческій, human.         | борода́тый, bearded:     |
| мужеской, masculine.         | бѣлокúрый, fair.         |
| жѣнской, feminine.           | смúглый, dark.           |
| стрóйный, well-made.         | блѣдный, pale.           |
| благообразный, proportioned. | дорóдный, corpulent.     |
| изувѣчный, mutilated.        | дюжій, muscular.         |
| горба́тый, hump-backed.      | сухощáвый, thin, meagre. |
| безобразный, deformed        | сла́бый, weak.           |
| сѣдой, grey.                 | кривóй, crooked.         |
|                              | косóй, squint-eyed.      |

*Verbs.*

|                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| ходíть, to walk.    | дѣлать, to make, to do.   |
| сидѣть, to sit.     | встава́ть, to rise.       |
| лежа́ть, to lie.    | ѣсть, to eat.             |
| спать, to sleep.    | пить, to drink.           |
| трога́ть, to touch. | жева́ть, to chew.         |
| бра́ть, to take.    | гло́та́ть, to swallow.    |
| кла́сть, to put.    | плева́ть, to expectorate. |

## OF THE HUMAN MIND AND FACULTIES.

*Substantives.*

|                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| душа́, the soul.           | представлѣ́нiе, conception. |
| умъ, the mind.             | па́мь, memory.              |
| разумъ, the understanding. | воспо́минанiе, remembrance. |
| остро́та, wit.             | вообра́женiе, imagination.  |
| остроу́мiе, acuteness.     | чу́вствованiе, sentiment.   |
| разсúдокъ, reason.         | желáнiе, desire.            |
| разсуждѣ́нiе, reflection   |                             |
| понáшiе, comprehension.    |                             |

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| воля, will.            | злоба, malice.          |
| рѣшеніе, resolution.   | ревность, jealousy.     |
| намѣреніе, intention.  | знаніе, познаніе, свѣ-  |
| поступокъ, action.     | дніе, knowledge.        |
| предубѣжденіе, pre-    | нравъ, manner.          |
| possession.            | характеръ, character.   |
| мысль, idea.           | поведеніе, conduct.     |
| мнѣніе, opinion.       | прихоть, whim.          |
| сомнѣніе, doubt.       | сонъ, сновидѣніе, a     |
| предразсѣдокъ, preju-  | dream.                  |
| dice.                  | мечта, a vision.        |
| чувство, feeling.      | забота, care.           |
| зрѣніе, sight.         | суесть, vanity.         |
| слухъ, hearing.        | трудъ, labour.          |
| осязаніе, touch.       | наказаніе, punishment.  |
| вкусъ, taste.          | мученіе, torment.       |
| обоняніе, smell.       | страданіе, suffering.   |
| рѣчь, discourse.       | должность, обязан-      |
| слово, a word.         | ность, duty.            |
| звукъ, a sound.        | упрѣкъ, reproach.       |
| голосъ, the voice.     | досада, vexation.       |
| крикъ, a cry.          | способность, capacity.  |
| языкъ, a language.     | дарованіе, talent.      |
| разговоръ, a dialogue. | совѣсть, conscience.    |
| выраженіе, an expres-  | мудрость, wisdom.       |
| sion.                  | благоразуміе, pru-      |
| предложеніе, a pro-    | dence.                  |
| position.              | выборъ, choice.         |
| склонность, inclina-   | смѣхъ, laughter.        |
| tion.                  | плачь, weeping.         |
| страсть, a passion.    | подозрѣніе, suspicion.  |
| пристрасіе, parti-     | почтеніе, respect.      |
| ality.                 | презрѣніе, contempt.    |
| любовь, love.          | отвращеніе, antipathy.  |
| ненависть, hatred.     | дружба, пріянь, friend- |
| зависть, envy.         | ship.                   |

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| вражда, enmity.           | ра́дость, joy.           |
| нѣжность, delicacy.       | печа́ль, sorrow.         |
| гру́бость, rudeness.      | приско́рбие, affliction. |
| страхъ, fear.             | удовольствіе, pleasure.  |
| наде́жда, hope.           |                          |
| отча́яніе, despair.       | гнѣвъ, wrath, anger.     |
| удивле́ніе, astonishment. | я́рость, fury.           |

*Adjectives.*

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| у́мственный, mental.     | рѣши́тельный, decisive.  |
| у́мный, wise.            | твёрдый, firm.           |
| разу́мный, prudent.      | сомни́тельный, doubtful. |
| разсуди́тельный, con-    | свѣдущій, well-inform-   |
| siderate.                | ed.                      |
| моня́сливый, intelli-    | своена́вный, self-will-  |
| gent.                    | ed.                      |
| о́стрый, quick, clever.  | прихо́сливый, whim-      |
| о́строу́мный, witty.     | sical.                   |
| замыслова́шый, inge-     | мечта́тельный, fan-      |
| nious.                   | ciful.                   |
| чу́вственный, feeling.   | забо́сливый, careful.    |
| безчу́вственный, un-     | трудолю́бный, dili-      |
| feeling.                 | gent.                    |
| слѣпо́й, blind.          | твёрды́й, patient.       |
| глухо́й, deaf.           | способный, capable.      |
| нѣмо́й, dumb.            | со́вѣсливый, consci-     |
| словоохо́тной, loqua-    | entious.                 |
| cious.                   | безсо́вѣстный, incon-    |
| вырази́тельный, ex-      | scionable.               |
| pressive.                | му́дрый, wise.           |
| скло́нный, inclined.     | благоразу́мный, pru-     |
| стра́стный, passionate   | dent.                    |
| забы́чивый, forgetful.   | смѣшно́й, ridiculous.    |
| разсѣ́янный, distracted. | плаче́вной, melancholy.  |
| чувствѣ́тельный, sen-    | пристра́стный, partial.  |
| sible.                   |                          |

|                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| злѣбный, malicious.          | отвращительный, disgusting. |
| ревнивый, jealous.           |                             |
| завистливый, envious.        | дружный, friendly.          |
| почтительный, respectful.    | страшный, terrible.         |
| почтенный, respectable.      | безнадѣжный, hopeless.      |
| презрительный, contemptible. | удивительный, astonishing.  |
| подозрительный, suspicious.  | радостный, joyful.          |
|                              | печальный, mournful.        |
|                              | довольный, contented.       |
|                              | яростный, furious.          |

*Verbs.*

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| умѣть, to be able.          | желать, to desire.          |
| разумѣть, to understand.    | мыслишь, to reflect.        |
| разсуждать, to consider.    | думать, to think.           |
| понимать, to comprehend.    | знать, to know.             |
| предсказывать, to conceive. | вести себя, to behave.      |
| помнить, to remember.       | рѣшаться, to decide.        |
| воображать, to imagine.     | намѣряться, to intend.      |
| ощущать, to feel.           | послушать, to act.          |
| видѣть, to see.             | видѣть во снѣ, to dream.    |
| слышать, to hear.           | заботиться, to mind.        |
| осязать, to touch.          | суетиться, to bustle.       |
| вкусать, to taste.          | трудиться, to work.         |
| обонять, to smell.          | страдать, to suffer.        |
| говорить, to speak.         | досадовать, to vex.         |
| чувствовать, to feel.       | шерсть, to bear.            |
| нравиться, to please.       | выбирать, to choose.        |
| хотѣть, to wish.            | смѣяться, to laugh.         |
|                             | плакать, to weep.           |
|                             | кричать, to cry (out).      |
|                             | разговаривать, to converse. |
|                             | выражать, to express.       |

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| любитьъ , to love.        | спрашивать , to be       |
| ненавидѣть , to hate.     | afraid.                  |
| завидовать , to envy.     | бояться , to fear.       |
| злѣбствовать , to bear    | надѣяться , to hope.     |
| malice.                   | отчаяваться , to des-    |
| ревновать , to be jea-    | pair.                    |
| lous.                     | удивляться , to wonder.  |
| подозрѣвать , to suspect. | радоваться , to rejoice. |
| почитать , to respect.    | печалиться , to mourn.   |
| презирать , to despise.   | гнѣваться , to be angry. |
| гнушаться , to abhor.     | яриться , to be furious. |

## V I R T U E S   A N D   V I C E S .

*S u b s t a n t i v e s .*

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| добродѣтель , virtue.   | человѣколюбіе , phi-     |
| набожность , piety.     | lanthropy.               |
| смирѣніе , humility.    | доброшá , goodness.      |
| унованіе , trust.       | жалость , pity.          |
| надѣжда , hope.         | постоянство , constan-   |
| терпѣніе , patience.    | stancy.                  |
| крѣтость , gentleness.  | откровенность , cand-    |
| вѣрность , fidelity.    | dour.                    |
| чѣстность , honesty.    | правосудіе , justice.    |
| благодарность , grati-  | прозорливость , pene-    |
| tude.                   | tration.                 |
| воздержаніе , tempe-    | прилежаніе , industry.   |
| rance.                  | цѣломудріе , chastity.   |
| бережливость , careful- | скромность , modesty.    |
| ness.                   | услужливость , com-      |
| щѣдрость , bounty.      | plaisance.               |
| великодушіе , magna-    | учтливость , politeness. |
| nimity.                 | послушаніе , obedience.  |
| храбрость , bravery.    | осторожность , care-     |
| смѣлость , boldness.    | fulness.                 |



|                                        |                               |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| порокъ, vice.                          | малодушіе, pusillanimity.     |
| беззаконіе, irreligion.                | дерзость, temerity.           |
| высокомеріе, надменность, haughtiness. | безчеловѣчіе, inhumanity.     |
| гордость, pride.                       | злость, malice.               |
| неперпымливость, impatience.           | жестокость, cruelty.          |
| щеславіе, vanity.                      | непостоянство, inconstancy.   |
| вѣроломство, infidelity.               | хитрость, artifice.           |
| плутовствѣ, villainy.                  | безпѣчность, indifference.    |
| несправедливость, injustice.           | лѣность, idleness.            |
| неблагодарность, ingratitude.          | распутство, licentiousness.   |
| невоздержность, intemperance.          | безстыдство, imprudence.      |
| распачишельность, extravagance.        | грубость, rudeness.           |
| скѣность, avarice.                     | упрямство, obstinacy.         |
|                                        | неосторожность, carelessness. |

### *Adjectives.*

|                           |                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| добродѣтельный, virtuous. | великодушный, magnanimous.  |
| благочестивый, pious.     | храбрый, brave.             |
| смирѣнный, humble.        | смѣлый, bold.               |
| перпымливый, patient.     | человѣколюбивый, humane.    |
| крѣпкій, gentle.          | добрый, good.               |
| вѣрный, faithful.         | жалосливый, compassionate.  |
| честный, honest.          | постоянный, constant.       |
| справедливый, just.       | откровенный, candid.        |
| благодарный, grateful.    | претерпѣливый, penetrating. |
| умѣренный, temperate.     |                             |
| бережливый, careful.      |                             |
| щедрый, bounteous.        |                             |

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| прилежный, diligent.         | скупой, miserly, avaricious. |
| цѣломудренный, chaste.       |                              |
| стыдливый, modest.           | малодушный, pusillanimous.   |
| услужливый, obliging.        |                              |
| учтивый, polite.             | робкій, timid.               |
| послушный, obedient.         | безчеловѣчный, inhuman.      |
| осторожный, careful.         |                              |
| порочный, vicious.           | злой, evil.                  |
| беззаконный, impious.        | жестокій, cruel.             |
| высокомерный, proud.         | легкомысленный, inconstant.  |
| неперпѣливый, impatient.     | хитрый, cunning.             |
| щеслѣвный, vain.             | безпечный, careless.         |
| вѣроломный, unfaithful.      | лѣнливый, indolent.          |
| безчестный, dishonest.       | распутный, licentious.       |
| неправосудный, unjust.       | наглый, impudent.            |
| неблагодарный, ungrateful.   | неуслужливый, disobliging.   |
| неумѣренный, intemperate.    | грубый, rude.                |
| распѣшительный, extravagant. | упрямый, obstinate.          |
|                              | неосмотрительный, careless.  |

# *V e r b s.*

|                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| смиряться, to submit.              | гордиться, to pride                 |
| уговѣваться, to trust.             | однаго себя, one's self.            |
| терпѣть, to bear.                  | щеслѣвиться, to exalt               |
| благодарить, to thank.             | однаго себя, one's self.            |
| беречь, to take care.              | обманывать, to cheat.               |
| воздерживаться, to refrain.        | распѣшивать, to spend.              |
| ослаживаться, смѣшать, to venture. | пьянствовать, to drink (to excess.) |
| жалѣть, to pity.                   | робѣть, to be afraid.               |

|                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| предвидѣть, to foresee.  | льстить, to flatter.         |
| радѣть, to mind.         | лѣниться, to be lazy.        |
| услужить, to oblige.     | упрямиться, to be obstinate. |
| слушаться, to obey.      |                              |
| осерегаться, to be ware. | грубить, to be rude.         |
|                          | суешииться, to be vain.      |

## C L O T H I N G.

*S u b s t a n t i v e s .*

|                                |                                         |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| одежда, clothing.              | чулокъ, a stocking.                     |
| платье, clothes.               | носокъ, a sock.                         |
| шляпа, a hat.                  | платокъ, a handkerchief.                |
| шапка, a cap.                  | шаль, a shawl.                          |
| шинель, a cloak.               | носовой платокъ, a pocket-handkerchief. |
| салопъ, a lady's cloak.        | сапогъ, a boot.                         |
| кафтанъ, a coat.               | башмакъ, a shoe.                        |
| камзолъ, a vest.               | туфля, a slipper.                       |
| жилетъ, a waistcoat.           | пряжка, a buckle.                       |
| серпукъ, a great-coat.         | подвязка, a garter.                     |
| рубашка, a shirt.              | перчатка, a glove.                      |
| галсшукъ, a neck-handkerchief. | кольцо, } a ring.                       |
| панталоны, pantaloons.         | перстень, }                             |
| рукавъ, a sleeve.              | лента, a riband.                        |
| карманъ, a pocket.             | ноясъ, a girdle.                        |
| пешля, a button-hole.          | пуговица, a button.                     |
| подкладка, lining.             | гребень, a comb.                        |
| воронникъ, a collar.           | парикъ, a wig.                          |
| пулупъ, a fur-coat.            | пудра, powder.                          |
| чепчикъ, a (lady's) cap.       | серги, ear-rings.                       |
| юбка, a petticoat.             |                                         |

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| ожерѣлье, a necklace. | кошелекъ, a purse.   |
| зѳнтикъ, an umbrella. | мѳфпа, a muff.       |
| парасоль, a parasol.  | корсѣшь, a corsette. |
| опашало, a fan.       | часы, a watch.       |
| очки, spectacles.     | цепочка, a chain.    |
| лорнетъ, a lorgnette. | печать, a seal.      |

*Adjectives.*

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| богáтой, rich.                 | простѳй, plain.                 |
| опря́тнѳй, neat.               | нечѳстый, dirty.                |
| новомѳдный, fashion-<br>nable. | неопря́тнѳй, untidy.            |
| пѳлнѳй, full.                  | старомѳдный, old-<br>fashioned. |
| одѳшѳй, dressed.               | нагѳй, naked.                   |

*Verbs.*

|                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| надѳвâть, to put on.   | раздѳвâть, to undress.         |
| одѳвâть, to dress.     | шнуровâть, to lace.            |
| покрывâть, to cover.   | причѳсывâть, to comb.          |
| украшâть, to ornament. | разстѳгивâть, to un-<br>brace. |
| застѳгивâть, to brace. | развѳзывать, to untie.         |
| свѳзывать, to tie.     | пѳдришь, to powder.            |
| мыть, to wash.         |                                |

*HABITATION.**Substantives.*

|                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| строѳеніе, a build-<br>ing. | хѳжина, a cottage.              |
| жилище, an abode.           | основаніе, the founda-<br>tion. |
| цѳрковь, a church.          | крѳвя, the roof.                |
| дворѳць, a palace.          | стѳнâ, a wall.                  |
| домъ, a house.              | дворъ, a yard.                  |

|                            |                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| лѣстница , stair-case.     | стойло , a stall.        |
| ступень , a step.          | сарай , a shed.          |
| перила , railings.         | голуби́шня , a dove-cot. |
| за́ла , a hall.            | ла́вка ,                 |
| ко́мната , a room.         | магази́нь , } a shop.    |
| прихо́жая , anti-chamber.  | жи́шня , a barn.         |
| столо́вая , dining-room.   | ку́хня , a kitchen.      |
| спáльня , bed-room.        | шруба́ , a chimney.      |
| кабинéтъ , cabinet.        | замóкъ , a lock.         |
| окно́ , a window.          | ключь , a key.           |
| окóнчины , a window-frame. | ру́чка , a handle.       |
| ста́вня , shutters.        | задви́жка , a bolt.      |
| поль , the floor.          | бревнó , a log.          |
| пополо́къ , the ceiling.   | доска́ , a board.        |
| дверь , a door.            | жи́лье , a story.        |
| пéчь , a stove.            | эша́жъ , a floor.        |
| коню́шня , a stable.       | черда́къ , a garret.     |
|                            | по́гребъ , a cellar.     |
|                            | коло́дезь , a well.      |

*Adjectives.*

|                                     |                             |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| дрéвний , старинный , old.          | общéственный , common.      |
| четыреуго́льный , quadrangular.     | церко́вный , church.        |
| поко́йный , удо́бный , comfortable. | дворо́вый , court.          |
| обши́рный , spacious.               | домáшній , domestic.        |
| сосéдний , neighbouring.            | необита́емый , uninhabited. |
|                                     | да́льний , distant.         |
|                                     | ча́стный , private.         |

*Verbs.*

|                        |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| стро́ить , to build.   | нанима́ть , to hire.     |
| жи́ть , to live.       | срыва́ть , to pull down. |
| обита́ть , to inhabit. | помѣща́ть , to hold.     |

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| отворѣть, to open.      | мостить, to pave.      |
| закрывать, to cover.    | очистить, to quit.     |
| ломать, to break.       | обивать, to hang.      |
| убирать, to clear away. | затворять, to shut.    |
| сѣзжать, to leave.      | открывать, to uncover. |

## HOUSEHOLD FURNITURE.

*Substantives.*

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| мѣбель, furniture.        | кремѣнь, a flint.        |
| обои, tapestry.           | ковѣръ, a carpet.        |
| столъ, a table.           | скатерть, a table-cloth. |
| стулъ, a chair.           | полотѣнцо, a napkin.     |
| крѣсла, an arm-chair.     | салфѣтка, a towel.       |
| скамья, a bench.          | тарѣлка, a plate.        |
| ковѣръ, a carpet.         | солонка, a salt-cellar.  |
| комодъ, drawers.          | блюдо, a dish.           |
| шкапъ, a cupboard.        | ложка, a spoon.          |
| лавка, a shelf.           | вилка, a fork.           |
| зеркало, a looking-glass. | ножъ, a knife.           |
| постель, a bed.           | стаканъ, a glass.        |
| кровать, a bed-stead.     | рюмка, a wine-glass.     |
| занавѣсъ, a curtain.      | чашка, a cup.            |
| покрывало, a bed-cover.   | кружка, a jug.           |
| шюфлякъ, a mattress.      | бутылка, a bottle.       |
| подушка, a pillow.        | тазъ, a bason.           |
| простыня, a sheet.        | ушатъ, a tub.            |
| наволочка, a pillow-      | ведро, a pail.           |
| case.                     | корзина, a basket.       |
| фонарь, a lantern.        | мѣшокъ, a bag.           |
| свѣча, a candle.          | чемоданъ, a portman-     |
| подсвѣчникъ, a candle-    | teau.                    |
| stick.                    | сундукъ, a trunk.        |
| щипцы, snuffers.          | щетка, a brush, broom.   |
| дрова, fire-wood.         | ножницы, scissors.       |
| уголь, coal.              | булавка, a pin.          |

шрѹтъ , tinder.  
огньво , a steel.

игóлка , a needle.  
кѡшка , a cage.

### *Adjectives.*

богáтый , rich.  
великолѣпный , magni-  
ficent.

простый , common.  
посрѣдственный , pass-  
able.

отбóрный , chosen.  
хорóший , fine.  
прилѣчный , proper.  
порядочный , tolerable.  
нѹжный , necessary.  
бѣдный , poor.

худóй , bad.  
гошóвый , ready-made.  
непристóйный , im-  
proper.  
лóмкій , brittle.  
излишнѣй , superfluous.

### *Verbs.*

наполня́тъ , to fill.  
ли́тъ , налива́тъ , to pour.  
стира́тъ , to rub.  
зажигáтъ , to kindle.  
освѣща́тъ , to light.  
шоло́чь , to pound.  
шере́тъ , to rub.  
мести́ , to sweep.  
прѣсать , to spin.

гла́дитъ , to iron.  
опоро́жнишь , to empty.  
пролива́тъ , to spill.  
пошу́шить , to extin-  
guish.  
снима́тъ со свѣчи́ , to  
snuff a candle.  
рѣза́тъ , to cut.  
чи́стишь , to clean.

### RELATIONSHIP.

#### *Substantives.*

семейство , a family.  
родъ , race.  
родствó , relationship.  
родсвенникъ , родня ,  
a relation.  
женихъ , a bridegroom.  
прѣдки , ancestors.  
прадѣдъ , great grand-  
father.

дѣдъ , дѣдушка , grand-  
father.  
родители , parents.  
оте́ць , father.  
супрѹгъ , мужъ , husband.  
сынъ , son.  
внукъ , grand-son.  
правнукъ , great grand-  
son.

\* \*

|                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| дѣя , uncle.                       | бабушка , grand-mother            |
| племянникъ , nephew.               | дѣти , children.                  |
| шуринъ , brother - in-law.         | мать , mother.                    |
| зять , son-in-law.                 | супруга , жена , wife.            |
| тестъ , father-in-law.             | дочь , daughter.                  |
| братъ , brother.                   | внучка , grand-daughter.          |
| двоюродный братъ ,<br>cousin. m.   | правнука , great grand-daughter.  |
| вотчимъ , step-father.             | тётка , aunt.                     |
| пасынокъ , step-son.               | племянница , niece.               |
| вдовецъ , a widower.               | свояченица , sister-in-law.       |
| кумъ , a gossip. m.                | невѣстка , daughter-in-law.       |
| крестный отецъ , god<br>father.    | теща , mother-in-law.             |
| опекунъ , guardian.                | сестра , sister.                  |
| бракъ , супружество ,<br>marriage. | двоюродная сестра ,<br>cousin. f. |
| свадьба , a wedding.               | мачиха , stepmother.              |
| сговоръ , contract.                | падчерица , step daughter.        |
| обручѣнiе , espousals.             | вдова , a widow.                  |
| невѣста , a bride.                 | кума , a gossip.                  |
| потомки , descen-<br>dents.        | крестная мать , god-mother.       |
| прабабушка , great-grand mother.   | сиротá , an orphan.               |

### *Adjectives.*

|                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| семе́йственный , family. | супру́жескiй , matrimo-<br>nial. |
| родно́й , related.       | холосто́й , unmarried.           |
| жена́шый , married.      | материнскiй , maternal.          |
| оте́ческiй , paternal.   | до́черинскiй , filial.           |
| сыно́внiй , filial.      | сва́дебный , marriage.           |
| братскiй , brotherly.    |                                  |



## A TOWN AND ITS ENVIRONS.

*Substantives.*

|                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| городъ , a city, town.      | хижина , a cottage , hut. |
| предмѣстіе , suburbs.       | монастырь , a mona-       |
| крѣпость , a fortress.      | stery.                    |
| замокъ , a castle.          | кладбище , a burying-     |
| башня , a tower.            | ground.                   |
| церковь , a church.         | часовня , a chapel.       |
| колокольня , a belfry.      | садъ , a garden.          |
| мостъ , a bridge.           | рынокъ , market-place.    |
| улица , a street.           | площадь , a square.       |
| переулокъ , a lane.         | большая дорога , the      |
| ворота , gates.             | high-road.                |
| застава , a barrier.        | постоялый дворъ ,         |
| валъ , a wall.              | трактиръ , an inn.        |
| бѣдка , a watch-house.      | каналъ , a canal.         |
| монѣтный дворъ , the        | ровъ , a ditch.           |
| mint.                       | шаможня , the custom-     |
| биржа , the exchange.       | house.                    |
| арсеналь , the arsenal.     | гумно , a barn.           |
| анбаръ , a store-house.     | смирительный домъ ,       |
| почта , the post.           | house of correction.      |
| госпиталь , an hospital.    | домъ сумасшедшихъ ,       |
| деревня , село , a village. | a mad-house.              |
| окрѣстность , neigh-        | шюрма , a prison.         |
| bourhood.                   |                           |

## TITLES AND DIGNITIES.

*Substantives.*

|                         |                          |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| Государь , a Sovereign. | Великій Князь , a Grand- |
| Императоръ , an Em-     | Duke.                    |
| peror.                  | Великая Княгиня , a      |
| Императрица , an Em-    | Grand-Duchess.           |
| press.                  |                          |

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Король , a King.         | Игумень , an Abbot.      |
| Королева , a Queen.      | проповѣдникъ,apreach-    |
| Герцогъ , a Duke.        | er.                      |
| Герцогиня , a Duchess.   | монахъ , a monk.         |
| Князь , a Prince.        | монахиня , a nun.        |
| Княгиня , a Princess.    | Священникъ , a priest.   |
| Графъ , a Count.         | господинъ , a master.    |
| Графиня , a Countess.    | помѣщикъ , a land-ow-    |
| Баронъ , a Baron.        | ner.                     |
| Баронесса,aBaronness,    | начальникъ , a chief.    |
| Посолъ , an Ambassas-    | Казначей , a treasurer.  |
| sador.                   | Докторъ,врачъ,a doctor   |
| Посланникъ, an Envoy.    | челобитчикъ , an as-     |
| Фельдмаршалъ,a Field-    | cuser                    |
| Marshal.                 | природный житель ,       |
| Генералъ , a General.    | a native.                |
| Полковникъ,a Colonel.    | подданный , a subject.   |
| Подполковникъ,a Lieu-    | погребщикъ,wine-mer-     |
| tenant-colonel.          | chant.                   |
| Маіоръ , a Major.        | шюрѣмщикъ , a turn-      |
| Капитанъ , a Captain.    | key.                     |
| Поручникъ,a Lieutenant.  | поваръ , a cook. m.      |
| Корнетъ , a Cornet.      | кучеръ , a coachman.     |
| Прапорщикъ , an En-      | поселянинъ , a villager. |
| sign.                    | слуга , a servant.       |
| Губернаторъ , a Go-      | крестьянинъ , a pea-     |
| vernor.                  | sant.                    |
| Судья , a Judge.         | дворянство , nobility.   |
| Духовѣнство,the clergy.  | дворянинъ , a noble-     |
| Патріархъ , a Patriarch. | man.                     |
| Митрополитъ , a Me-      | купѣцъ , a merchant.     |
| tropolitan.              | кавалеръ , a knight.     |
| Архіепископъ,an Arch-    | свидѣтель , a witness.   |
| bishop.                  | народъ , the people.     |
| Епископъ , a Bishop.     | гражданинъ , a citizen.  |

|                                         |                                 |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| солда́тъ , a soldier.                   | иноста́нецъ , a fo-<br>reigner. |
| мѣща́нство, citizenship.                | ла́вочникъ, a shop-keep-<br>er. |
| мѣща́нинъ , a citizen.                  | пала́чь, an executioner.        |
| секрета́рь, a secretary.                | куха́рка , a cook. f.           |
| стря́пчій , a lawyer.                   | изво́щикъ , a hack-dri-<br>ver. |
| обвиня́емый , an accu-<br>sed (person). |                                 |
| прися́жный , a juror.                   |                                 |

*Adjectives.*

|                                           |                                |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Импера́торскій , Цар-<br>скій , Imperial. | Короле́вскій , Royal.          |
| верхо́вный , high.                        | дѣйствительный , ac-<br>tual.  |
| гла́вный , head, prin-<br>cipal.          | наро́дный , popular.           |
|                                           | посторо́нный , acces-<br>sory. |
| поче́тный , venerable.                    | ни́зкій , low, base.           |
| вое́нный , military.                      | ста́тскій , civil.             |

*Verbs.*

|                                         |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ца́рствовать , to reign.                | повино́ваться , to obey.              |
| прика́зывать , to com-<br>mand.         | поко́рствовать , to sub-<br>mit.      |
| проповѣ́дывать , to<br>preach.          | внима́ть , to hear with<br>attention. |
| судя́тъ , to judge.                     | нака́зывать , to punish.              |
| опредѣ́лять , to decree,<br>to appoint. | опра́вдывать , to ju-<br>stify.       |
| защища́тъ , to defend.                  | казни́тъ , to execute.                |

## O F W A R.

*Substantives.*

|                                   |                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| война́ , war.                     | сою́зникъ , an ally. |
| ми́ръ , peace.                    | щи́тъ , a shield.    |
| тишина́ , tranquillity.           | стрѣ́ла , an arrow.  |
| возмуще́ние , a distur-<br>bance. | меча́ , a sword.     |
|                                   | пу́шка , a cannon.   |

|                              |                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ядро , a cannon-ball.        | лукъ , a bow.                        |
| бѣмба , a bomb.              | колчанъ , a quiver.                  |
| оружіе , arms.               | копье , a lance.                     |
| порохъ , gun-powder.         | лафетъ , a carriage (for<br>cannon). |
| шпага , a sword.             | пуля , a ball.                       |
| кинжалъ , a dagger.          | гранатъ , a grenade.                 |
| клинокъ , a blade.           | ружье , a gun (musket).              |
| барабанъ , a drum.           | дрѣбъ , shot.                        |
| литавра , a kettle-drum.     | сабля , a sabre.                     |
| портупей , a sword-<br>belt. | штыкъ , a bayonet.                   |
| ножны , a scabbard.          | труба , a trumpet.                   |
| походъ , a campaign.         | ефесъ , the hilt.                    |
| ставка , палатка , a tent.   | сѹмка , a sash.                      |
| войско , an army.            | лагерь , станъ , a camp.             |
| полкъ , a regiment.          | осада , a siege.                     |
| рота , a company.            | гарнизонъ , a garrison.              |
| эскадронъ , a squadron.      | патруль , a patrol.                  |
| баталіонъ , a battalion.     | рундъ , a round.                     |
| конница , cavalry.           | пикетъ , a piquet.                   |
| артиллерія , artillery.      | караулъ , a guard.                   |
| сраженіе , a battle.         | шпіонъ , a spy.                      |
| выстрѣлъ , firing.           | пѣхота , infantry.                   |
| побѣда , victory.            | пріступъ , an attack.                |
| мятежъ , бунтъ , a revolt.   | стычка , a skirmish.                 |
| непріятель , an enemy.       | слава , glory.                       |

### *Adjectives.*

|                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| миръный , peaceful.                | союзный , allied.              |
| возмутительный , se-<br>ditionous. | пушечный , cannon.             |
| походный , campaign.               | барабанный , drum.             |
| конный , horse.                    | непріятельскій , ad-<br>verse. |
| убитый , killed.                   | ружейный , musket.             |
| раненный , wounded.                | трубный , trumpet.             |

|                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| побѣдный, victorious.        | осадный, besieged.         |
| кровопролитный, bloody.      | пѣхотный, foot.            |
| войнственнѣй, warlike.       | плѣнный, captive.          |
| оборонительный, defensive.   | славный, glorious.         |
| войнскій, военный, military. | непобѣдимый, invincible.   |
| мятежный, rebellious.        | неприсутный, inaccessible. |
|                              | наступательный, offensive. |

*V e r b s.*

|                                     |                                     |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| воевать, to make war.               | распускать, to disband.             |
| набирать, to collect.               | усмирять, to quell.                 |
| возмущаться, to excite.             | укрощать, to subdue.                |
| бунтовать, to rebel.                | ранишь, to wound.                   |
| убивать, to kill.                   | взять приступомъ, to take by storm. |
| идши на приступъ, to attack, storm. | заряжать, to load.                  |
| стрѣлять, палить, to fire.          | отступать, to retreat.              |
| подступать, to approach.            | нападать, to attack.                |
| осаждаъ, to besiege.                | защищать, обороняться, to defend.   |
| вспомогать, to aid.                 | бомбардировать, to bombard.         |
| укрѣплять, to fortify.              | рубить, to cut.                     |
| колѣть, to pierce.                  | умерщвлять, to kill.                |
| бѣжать, to fly.                     | опустошать, to devastate.           |
| разорять, to destroy.               | дашь сраженіе, to give battle.      |
| грабить, to pillage.                |                                     |
| заключатъ миръ, to conclude peace.  |                                     |

## THE ARTS AND SCIENCES.

*Substantives.*

|                                              |                                       |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Наука, a science.                            | Врачъ, мѣдикъ, a physi-<br>cian.      |
| Богослѳвія, Theology.                        | Филѳсофъ, a Philoso-<br>pher.         |
| Правовѣдѣніе, Juris-<br>prudence.            | Стихотворецъ, a Poet.                 |
| Врачебная наука, the<br>healing art.         | Ораторъ, an orator.                   |
| Филосѳфія, Philosophy                        | Историкъ, an Historian.               |
| Словесность, Litera-<br>ture.                | Сочинитель, Писа-<br>тель, an Author. |
| Грамматика, Gram-<br>mar.                    | Библиотѣкаръ, a li-<br>brarian.       |
| Стихотворство, поэ-<br>зія, Poetry.          | Перевѳдчикъ, a trans-<br>lator.       |
| Краснорѣчіе, Eloquen-<br>ce.                 | рѣчь, an oration.                     |
| Исторія, History.                            | стихи, verses.                        |
| Географія, землеопи-<br>саніе, Geography.    | правило, a rule.                      |
| Фѳзика, Physic.                              | поэма, a poem.                        |
| Естѳественная Истѳ-<br>рія, Natural History. | слогъ, style.                         |
| Математика, Mathe-<br>matics.                | слово, a word.                        |
| Астрѳномія, Astronomy.                       | пѣсня, a song.                        |
| учѣніе, learning.                            | письмо, a letter.                     |
| Профѳессоръ, a Profes-<br>sor.               | книга, a book.                        |
| Учитель, a Teacher.                          | листь, a leaf.                        |
| Богословъ, a Theolo-<br>gian.                | страница, a page.                     |
| Правовѣдъ, Законовѣ-<br>децъ, a Lawyer.      | перѳ, a pen.                          |
|                                              | чернила, ink.                         |
|                                              | бумага, paper.                        |
|                                              | худѳжество, искѳство,<br>an art.      |
|                                              | мѳзыка, music.                        |
|                                              | ваяніе, скульптура,<br>sculpture.     |

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| жйвопись, painting.    | збдчй, архитекторъ,    |
| рѣзба, carving.        | an architect.          |
| збдчество, архитек-    | изобрѣшатель, an in-   |
| шѹра, architecture.    | ventor.                |
| кораблеплаваніе, na-   | земледѣлецъ, an agri-  |
| vigation.              | culturist.             |
| книгопечатаніе, print- | хлѣбопашецъ, a hus-    |
| ing.                   | bandman.               |
| прбмысль, a trade.     | рыболовъ, a fisherman. |
| земледѣіе, хлѣбопаше-  | рудокопъ, a miner.     |
| ство, agriculture.     | охотникъ, a hunter.    |
| рыболовство, fishing.  | пастухъ, a shepherd.   |
| охбша, звѣроловство,   | изобрѣшеніе, an inven- |
| hunting.               | tion.                  |
| скошовбдство, breed-   | открытіе, a discovery. |
| ing of cattle.         | картина, a picture.    |
| рудокбпство, mining.   | портретъ, a portrait.  |
| торгбвя, commerce.     | кисть, a pencil.       |
| худбжникъ, an artist.  | рѣзецъ, a chisel.      |
| музыканшъ, a musician. | флейта, a flute.       |
| виршубзъ, a virtuoso.  | свирѣль, a pipe.       |
| ваятель, скульпторъ,   | скрипка, a violin.     |
| a sculptor.            | фабрика, a manufac-    |
| живопйсецъ, a painter. | tory.                  |
| гравёръ, an engraver.  | машина, a machine.     |
| рѣзчикъ, a carver.     | плугъ, a plough.       |

*Adjectives.*

|                          |                       |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| учёный, learned.         | живопйсный, pictu-    |
| врачѣбный, medical.      | resque.               |
| краснорѣчивый, eloquent. | архитектѹрный, ar-    |
| прбвильный, correct.     | chitectural.          |
| письменный, written.     | промышленный, enter-  |
| изѹстный, extempore.     | prising.              |
| искѹственный, arti-      | торгбвый, commercial. |
| ficial.                  | изобрѣшательный, in-  |
| музыкальный, musical.    | ventive.              |

*Verbs.*

|                                  |                               |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| учить, to teach.                 | изобрѣтать, to invent.        |
| учиться, to learn.               | играть, to play.              |
| писать, to write.                | живописать, to paint.         |
| читать, to read.                 | рѣзать, to carve.             |
| разговаривать, to con-<br>verse. | плавать, to melt.             |
| сочинять, to compose.            | печатать, to print.           |
| лѣчить, to heal.                 | промышлять, to con-<br>trive. |
| описывать, to describe.          | пахать, to plough.            |
| повѣствовать, to relate.         | сѣять, to sow.                |
| переводить, to trans-<br>late.   | боронить, to harrow.          |
| вычислять, to calculate.         | молотить, to grind.           |
| считать, to reckon.              | копать, to dig.               |
|                                  | ловить, to catch.             |

*OF TRADES. &c.**Substantives.*

|                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ремесло, a trade.                | сѣдельникъ, a harness-<br>maker.  |
| ремесленникъ, an artist.         | ткачъ, a weaver.                  |
| плотникъ, a carpenter.           | портной, a tailor.                |
| столяръ, a cabinet-<br>maker.    | шляпникъ, a hat-maker.            |
| токарь, a turner.                | скорняжникъ, a furrier.           |
| карѣшникъ, a carriage-<br>maker. | сапожникъ, a boot-<br>maker.      |
| каменщикъ, a stone-<br>mason.    | стекóльщикъ, a gla-<br>zier.      |
| хлѣбникъ, a baker.               | гончаръ, горшечникъ, a<br>potter. |
| мясникъ, a butcher.              | мѣдникъ, a copper-<br>smith.      |
| пирожникъ, a pastry-<br>cook.    | оловянникъ, a tin-man.            |
| кожевникъ, a tanner.             |                                   |



|                                            |                          |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| красильщикъ , a dyer.                      | кузнѣцъ , a black-smith. |
| мельникъ , a miller.                       | молотило , a flail.      |
| слѣсарь , a lock-smith.                    | уздá , a bridle.         |
| золотыхъ дѣль ма-<br>стеръ , a gold-smith. | сѣдло , a saddle.        |
| переплѣщикъ , a book-<br>binder.           | шпора , a spur.          |
| перевóщикъ , a water-<br>man.              | сѣть , } a net.          |
| работникъ , a labourer.                    | менѣта , }               |
| морехóдецъ , a seaman.                     | удá , a fish-hook.       |
| солдáтъ , a soldier.                       | телѣга , a cart.         |
| орудíе , tools.                            | сáни , a sledge.         |
| топоръ , an axe.                           | карѣта , a carriage.     |
| стрѹгъ , a plane.                          | коляска , a calash.      |
| пила , a file or saw.                      | колесó , a wheel.        |
| осѣлокъ , a hone.                          | станóкъ , a press.       |
| колóдка , a block.                         | шерпѹгъ , a rasp.        |
| ножницы , scissors.                        | бурáвъ , a gimblet.      |
| мѣрка , a measure.                         | кора́бль , a ship.       |
| вилы , a pitch-fork.                       | сѹдно , a vessel.        |
| рыча́гъ , a lever.                         | ло́дка , a boat.         |
| серпъ , a sickle.                          | па́русъ , a sail.        |
| косá , a scythe.                           | сна́сть , the rigging.   |
|                                            | руль , a rudder.         |
|                                            | весло́ , an oar.         |
|                                            | мáчта , a mast.          |

*V e r b s.*

|                                    |                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| молóтъ , to grind ,<br>(corn.)     | переплетáтъ , to bind ,<br>(books.) |
| бурáвить , сверля́тъ ,<br>to bore. | лудíтъ , to tin.                    |
| шочíтъ , to sharpen.               | пая́тъ , to solder.                 |
| ковáшь , to shoe (a<br>horse.)     | рубíтъ , to cut.                    |
|                                    | спирѹгáтъ , to plane.               |
|                                    | колóшь , to split.                  |

## О Ф Т И М Е.

*Substantives.*

|                                               |                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| время, time.                                  | Июль, July.                      |
| мгновѣніе, a moment.                          | Августъ, August.                 |
| минута, a minute.                             | Сентябрь, September.             |
| часъ, an hour.                                | Октябрь, October.                |
| полчасá, half an hour.                        | Ноябрь, November.                |
| четверть часá, a quarter of an hour.          | Декабрь, December.               |
| три четверти часá, three quarters of an hour. | годъ, a year.                    |
| день, day.                                    | полгода, half a year.            |
| ночь, night.                                  | полтора года, a year and a half. |
| утро, the morning.                            | праздникъ, a holiday.            |
| вѣчеръ, the evening.                          | новый годъ, the new year.        |
| полдень, mid-day, noon.                       | постъ, a fast.                   |
| полночь, midnight.                            | масляница, the carnival.         |
| недѣля, a week.                               | Святáя недѣля, Easter week.      |
| Воскресѣніе, Sunday.                          | Троицынъ день, Witsuntide.       |
| Понедѣльникъ, Monday.                         | Рождествó, Christmas.            |
| Втóрникъ, Tuesday.                            | вѣкъ, an age.                    |
| Средá, Wednesday.                             | время года, a season.            |
| Четвѣргъ, Thursday.                           | весна, spring.                   |
| Пятница, Friday.                              | лѣто, summer.                    |
| Суббота, Saturday.                            | осень, autumn.                   |
| мѣсяцъ, a month.                              | зима, winter.                    |
| Январь, January.                              | срокъ, a period, term.           |
| Февраль, February.                            | вѣчность, eternity.              |
| Мартъ, March.                                 | рождѣніе, birth-day.             |
| Апрѣль, April.                                | имянины, names-day.              |
| Май, May.                                     |                                  |
| Іюнь, June.                                   |                                  |

*Adjectives.*

|                        |                         |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| го́ди́чный, annual.    | весё́нный, spring.      |
| годо́вой, yearly.      | лѣ́тний, summer.        |
| дневно́й, daily.       | зы́мний, winter.        |
| но́чной, nocturnal.    | осе́нный, autumn.       |
| ежего́дный, yearly.    | полу́денный, mid-day.   |
| еженеде́льный, weekly. | полуно́чный, mid-night. |
| ежедне́вный, daily.    | предше́дущій, the pre-  |
| ежеча́сный, hourly.    | ceding.                 |
| у́тренний, morning.    | после́дующій, the fol-  |
| вече́рный, evening.    | lowing.                 |

*Verbs.*

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| на́ступать, to begin.  | прохо́дить, to pass.   |
| продолжа́ться, to con- | ока́нчиваться, to end. |
| tinue.                 | счита́ть, to count.    |



---

---

## TITLES AND RANKS.

Emperors and Kings are addressed by the title of *Ваше Величество*, Your Majesty; the former being distinguished by the epithet *Императорское*, Imperial, and the latter by *Королевское*, Royal. All the members of the Imperial family, except the Emperor and Empress, are addressed by the title of *Ваше Императорское Высочество*, Your Imperial Highness.

Foreign Princes and Dukes, and a few Russian Princes, have the title of *Ваша Светлость*, which may be rendered in English, according to the dignity of the person addressed, Your Serene Highness, or Your Grace.

Russian Princes (*Князья*) and Counts (*Графы*) are addressed by the title of *Ваше Сиятельство*, Your Lordship.

Those Persons, who are not distinguished by any hereditary title, are divided into 14 classes, and addressed according to their rank in the civil or military service.

*1<sup>st</sup> Class.*

|                                              |                                             |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Государственный Канцлеръ.                    | The Chancellor of the Empire.               |
| Генераль - Фельдмаршалъ.                     | General-Field-Marshal.                      |
| Генераль-Адмираль.                           | Admiral in chief.                           |
| Дѣйствительный Тайный Совѣтникъ 1-го класса. | Actual Privy Counsellor of the first class. |

*2<sup>nd</sup> Class.*

|                                                   |                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Генераль отъ Инфантеріи , Кавалеріи и Артиллеріи. | General of infantry, cavalry or artillery. |
| Адмираль.                                         | Admiral.                                   |
| Дѣйствительный Тайный Совѣтникъ.                  | Actual Privy Counsellor.                   |

These two classes are addressed by the title of Ваше Высокопревосходительство , Your High Excellency.

*3<sup>rd</sup> Class.*

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| Генераль-Лейтенантъ. | Lieutenant-General. |
| Вице-Адмираль.       | Vice Admiral.       |
| Тайный Совѣтникъ.    | Privy Counsellor.   |

*4<sup>th</sup> Class.*

|                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Генераль-Маіоръ.                   | Major-General.              |
| Консръ-Адмираль.                   | Rear Admiral.               |
| Дѣйствительный Спашскій Совѣтникъ. | Actual Counsellor of State. |

The above two classes are addressed by the title of Ваше Превосходительство, Your Excellency.

5<sup>th</sup> *C l a s s.*

|                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| Бригадиръ.          | Brigadier.           |
| Капитанъ Командоръ. | Commodore.           |
| Статскій Совѣтникъ. | Counsellor of State. |

This class is addressed by the title of Ваше Высочество, which may be rendered in English by Your Honour.

6<sup>th</sup> *C l a s s.*

|                                    |                        |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Полковникъ.                        | Colonel.               |
| Флоша Капитанъ пер-<br>ваго ранга. | Post Captain.          |
| Коллежскій Совѣтникъ.              | Counsellor of College. |

7<sup>th</sup> *C l a s s.*

|                                    |                      |
|------------------------------------|----------------------|
| Подполковникъ.                     | Lieutenant Colonel.  |
| Флоша Капитанъ вто-<br>раго ранга. | Captain in the Navy. |
| Надворный Совѣтникъ.               | Counsellor of Court. |

8<sup>th</sup> *C l a s s.*

|                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Маіоръ.                         | Major.                         |
| Флоша Капитанъ Лей-<br>тенантъ. | Lieutenant and Com-<br>mander. |
| Коллежскій Ассессоръ.           | Assessor of College.           |

The above three classes are addressed by the title of Ваше Высочество.

( 91 )

9<sup>th</sup> *C l a s s.*

|                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| Капитанъ.                   | Captain (army).         |
| Флота Лейтенантъ.           | Lieutenant in the Navy. |
| Тишударный Совѣтъ-<br>никъ. | Titulary Counsellor.    |

10<sup>th</sup> *C l a s s.*

|                                            |                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Штабс-Капитанъ.                            | Captain of the 2 <sup>nd</sup> rank.                |
| Коллежскій Секретарь.                      | Secretary of College.                               |
| Переводчикъ Коллегіи<br>иностранныхъ дѣлъ. | Interpreter in the Col-<br>lege of foreign affairs. |

*Rem.* The 11<sup>th</sup> class has been suppressed.

12<sup>th</sup> *C l a s s.*

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Поручикъ.             | Lieutenant. (army).   |
| Мичманъ.              | Midshipman.           |
| Губернскій Секретарь. | Provincial Secretary. |

13<sup>th</sup> *C l a s s.*

|                                          |                                   |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Подпоручикъ.                             | Second Lieutenant.                |
| Сенатскій и Синод-<br>скій Регистраторъ. | Senate or Synod Re-<br>gistrator. |

14<sup>th</sup> *C l a s s.*

|                               |                       |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Прапорщикъ и Кор-<br>нетъ.    | Ensign and Cornet.    |
| Коллежскій Регистра-<br>торъ. | Registrar of College. |

The above five classes have the appellation  
of Ваше Благородіе.

**MANNER OF ADDRESSING LETTERS TO PERSONS  
OF DIFFERENT RANKS.**

**TO THE EMPEROR.**

Его Императорскому Величеству, Всемило-  
стивѣйшему Государю Императору НИКОЛАЮ  
ПАВЛОВИЧУ.

**TO THE EMPRESS.**

Ея Императорскому Величеству, Всемило-  
стивѣйшей Государынѣ Императрицѣ АЛЕК-  
САНДРѢ ФЕОДОРОВНѢ.

**TO THE SUCCESSOR TO THE THRONE.**

Его Императорскому Высочеству, Государю  
Наслѣднику и Великому Князю АЛЕКСАНДРУ  
НИКОЛАЕВИЧУ, Милостивѣйшему Государю.

**TO THE GRAND DUKE CESAREWITCH.**

Его Императорскому Высочеству, Государю  
Цесаревичу и Великому Князю КОНСТАНТИНУ  
ПАВЛОВИЧУ, Милостивѣйшему Государю.

**TO THE GRAND DUKE.**

Его Императорскому Высочеству, Милости-  
вѣйшему Государю Великому Князю МИХАИЛУ  
ПАВЛОВИЧУ.

**TO THE GRAND DUCHESS.**

Ея Императорскому Высочеству, Государынѣ,  
Великой Княгинѣ, \* followed by the pa-  
tronymic etc. Милостивѣйшей Государынѣ.

---

\* If the Grand Duchess be unmarried the address is Вели-  
кой Княгинѣ, the same applies to Princesses before marri-  
age, Ея Сіятельству, милостивой государынѣ Княгинѣ  
Софіи Михайловнѣ etc.



## TO A PRINCE OR COUNT.

Его Сіятельству Милостивому Государю  
Князю *or* Графу, Александру Ивановичу &c.  
Ея Сіятельству Милостивой Государынѣ Кня-  
гинѣ *or* Графинѣ Аннѣ Петровнѣ &c.

## TO A PERSON OF THE FIRST CLASS.

Его Высѣкопревосходишельству, Милости-  
вому Государю &c. Letters are addressed in the  
same manner to persons of the other classes  
according to their ranks, as : Его Превосхо-  
дительству, *or* Его Высѣкородію &c. Мило-  
стивый Государь being applied to them all.

Letters to Princes and Counts usually com-  
mence with : Сіятельнѣйшій Князь, *or* Сія-  
тельнѣйшій Графъ ; to Princesses *or* Count-  
esses Сіятельнѣйшая Княгиня, *or* Сіятель-  
нѣйшая Графиня, and terminate with вашего  
Сіятельства, Милостивѣйшаго Государя, *or*  
милостивѣйшей Государыни, всепокорнѣйшій  
слуга &c. To other persons of elevated rank  
the letter may commence with Милостивый  
Государь, and to Ladies, Милостивая госуда-  
рыня, and terminate with честь имѣю пре-  
быть

Вашимъ покорнѣйшимъ слугою.



# TABLE OF RUSSIAN WEIGHTS, MEASURES AND COINS.

## *Weights.*

- 1 Берковецъ contains 10 пудъ \*
- 1 Пудъ — — — — 40 фуншовъ.
- 1 Фунтъ — — — — 32 лоша.

## *Dry measure.*

- 1 Ласъ contains 12 четвертей \*\*
- 1 Четверть — — — — 2 осмины.
- 1 Осмина — — — — 2 пайка.
- 1 Паёкъ — — — — 2 четверика.
- 1 Четверикъ — — — — 4 четвершки.
- 1 Четвершка — — — — 2 гарнца.

*Rem.* The sack (куль) contains 10 tchetveriks.

## *Liquid measure.*

- 1 Анкерокъ contains 3 ведра \*\*\*
- 1 Ведро — — — — 4 четвершки.
- 1 Четвершка — — — — 2 осмухи.

## *Long measure.*

- 1 Верста contains 500 сажень \*\*\*\*
- 1 Сажень — — — — 3 аршина \*\*\*\*\*
- 1 Аршинъ — — — — 16 вершковъ.

\* A good Russ is equal to  $36\frac{1}{12}$  lb. avoir dup. consequently a Russian pound weighs 6373 grains English.

\*\* A tchetvert is equal to  $\frac{18}{25}$  of a quarter English.

\*\*\* A vedro is equal to  $3\frac{1}{4}$  gallons English.

\*\*\*\* A sajen (сажень) is equal to 7 feet English.

\*\*\*\*\* The arshine (аршинъ) is equal to  $\frac{7}{9}$  of an English yard, consequently  $77\frac{4}{5}$  yd. contain 100 arshines.

*Rem.* Land, in Russia, is divided into desiateens (десятина), each desiateen containing 2400 square sajens (сажень).

## C o i n s.

*G o l d.*

- 1 Имперіаль is equal to 10 рублей (sil) \*  
 1 Полумперіаль — — — 5 рублей.

*S i l v e r.*

- 1 Рубль is equal to 100 копѣекъ.  
 1 Полтинникъ — — — 50 — — —  
 1 Полуполтинникъ — 25 — — —  
 1 Гривенникъ — — — 10 — — —  
 1 Пяшачекъ — — — 5 — — —

*C o p p e r.*

- 1 Грошъ is equal to 2 копѣйки.  
 1 Копѣйка — — — — 2 деньги.  
 1 Деньга — — — — 2 полушки.

\* The intrinsic value of the silver rouble is about 3 Sh. 2½; the value of the paper rouble fluctuates according to the rate of the exchange; at the present period (1827) it is worth about ½ of the silver rouble.



---

## DIALOGUES.

---

### DIALOGUE I.

ON THE ARRIVAL OF A FOREIGNER AT CRONSTADT  
AND PETERSBURG.

Перевóщикъ , свези      Waterman! take me  
меня на́ берегъ.      on shore.

Могу́ ли я взятьъ съ      Can I take my lug-  
собо́ю покла́жу?      gage with me?

Вы мо́жете взятьъ      You may take a small  
то́лько небольшо́й      portmanteau ; all the  
чемодáнь; все прочее      rest must go to the  
должно́ бытъ опп́ра-      custom house for exa-  
влено въ шамóжню для      mination.  
осмóтра.

Есть ли въ го́родъ      Are there any good  
хоро́шие практѣры?      inns in the town?

Вы найдёте два или      You will find two  
три Англѣйскихъ пра-      or three English hou-  
ктѣра.      ses.

Человѣкъ! снеси́ э́тотъ      Porter! carry this port-  
чемодáнь въ практѣрь.      manteau to the inn.

‘Далеко́ ли отсюда?      Is it far?

Гдѣ живётъ Англѣй-      Where does the  
скій Ко́нсуль?      English Consul live?

Въ этомъ ли дѣмъ?

Is this the house?

Это ли Англійскій  
практыръ?

Is this an English  
tavern?

Понеси мой чемоданъ  
на верхъ.

Bring the portman-  
teau up-stairs.

Покажите мнѣ вашъ  
пашпортъ.

Shew me your pass-  
port.

Вотъ онъ.

Here it is.

Мнѣ должно взять  
его съ собою и если  
вамъ угодно прійти за-  
втра въ Контору, вы  
получите другой, ко-  
торой послужить вамъ  
до Петербурга.

I must take it with  
me, and if you will  
come to morrow to the  
alien office, you will  
receive another, that  
will serve you to Pe-  
tersburg.

Въ какомъ часу  
должно мнѣ быть тамъ?

At what o'clock must  
I be there?

Около перваго часа.

About 12 o'clock.

Надѣюсь, что ме-  
ня не спанутъ задер-  
живая, я хочу за-  
втра отправишься въ  
Петербургъ.

I hope I shall not  
be detained, as I wish  
to go to Petersburg to-  
morrow.

Пароходъ сейчасъ  
отправится.

The steam - boat is  
ready to start.

Сколько времени

In what time does

идётъ пароходъ до Петербурга?

the steam boat usually perform the voyage to Petersburg?

Около трехъ часовъ, а иногда и мѣнѣе при благопріятномъ вѣтрѣ.

In about three hours, and sometimes less, when the wind is fair.

Найдёмъ ли мы у пристани наёмныя кареты?

Shall we find any hackney-coaches at the landing place?

Нѣтъ, но довольно дрожекъ, небольшой экипажъ въ одну лошадь.

No, but plenty of *droshkies*, a small vehicle with one horse.

Бывали ли вы уже въ здѣшнемъ краю?

Were you ever in this country before?

Нѣтъ, сударь, я въ первый разъ здѣсь.

No, sir, it is my first visit.

Долго ли вы намерены остаться въ Петербургѣ?

Do you intend to make a long stay in Petersburg?

Будучи побуждаемъ однимъ любопытствомъ, я по осмѣтрѣ главныхъ достопримѣчательностей Петер-

As the object of my journey is mere curiosity, after having seen what is worthy notice in Petersburg, I shall

бурга, отпра́влюсь въ proceed to Moscow.  
Москвѣ?

Вы найдёте въ Пе- You will find many  
тербургѣ множество of your countrymen in  
вашихъ земляковъ. Petersburg.

Не знаете ли вы, Do you know wheth-  
живётъ ли тамъ Г-нъ er Mr. N. resides there?  
Н, я имѣю къ нему ре- I have a letter of re-  
комендательное пись- commendation to him.  
мо.

Я его очень хорошо I know him very well:  
знаю: онъ живётъ he lives on the English  
по Англійской набе- quay.  
режной.

Какимъ образомъ со- What plan would  
вѣтовали бы вы ино- you advise a stranger  
странцу распорядить- to adopt in this town  
ся въ семь городѣ въ in regard to his lodg-  
разсужденіи кварши- ings?  
ры?

Въ случаѣ коротка- If his stay be short,  
го пребыванія оста- to live at an hotel, but  
новившись въ практи- if he intend residing  
рѣ, а если онъ намѣренъ here a considerable  
оспаиваться д о л г о е time it is better to hire  
время, — нанять ча- private lodgings.  
сную кварширу.

★ ★

Котóрые самыя луч- Which are the best  
шіе практіры въ го- hotels in the town.  
родѣ?

Демутовъ прак- Demuth's hotel, the  
тіръ, городъ Лондонъ, hotel de Londres,  
Луисовъ ошэль и проч. Louis' hotel &c.

Послужитъ ли мнѣ Will the passport,  
пашпорітъ, котóрый which I received at  
я получилъ въ Крон- Cronstadt, serve for my  
штатъ, для пребыванія residence in Peters-  
въ Петербургъ? burg?

Нѣтъ, вы получите No, it must be chan-  
другой: сейчасъ по при- ged; upon your ar-  
ѣздѣ въ городъ, вамъ rival you will deliver  
надобно отдасть паш- it to the landlord of  
портъ хозяину дома, the house, in which  
въ котóромъ вы оста- you take up your  
новитесь; онъ ото- abode, and he will  
шлётъ его въ Адрессъ- send it to the alien  
Контору, изъ которой office, from whence,  
вы, являсь туда сами, upon personal appli-  
получите билетъ для cation you will receive  
пребыванія на годъ. a billet of residence.

А поклажа, котóрую And my luggage,  
я оставилъ въ Крон- which I have left at  
штатъ? Cronstadt?



Она́ бѣдетъ отпра-  
влена въ Пѣтербѹрг-  
скую тамо́жню, гдѣ  
вамъ дѣлжно бѣдетъ  
объ ней справитьсѣ.

Станутъ ли осмѣ-  
ривать наши вѣщи,  
когда мы выйдемъ на  
берегъ ?

Можетъ быть осмѣ-  
рять вашу чемоданъ ?

Извѣстникъ, свези ме-  
ня въ пракширь Лон-  
донъ.

Въ Дѣмутовъ прак-  
ширь.

На Англійскую на-  
бережную.

Въ Галѣрную улицу.

На Нѣвскій про-  
спектъ.

Какая это улица ?

Это ли пракширь ?

Стой здѣсь !

It will be sent to  
the custom house at  
Petersburg, where you  
must apply for it.

Will our luggage be  
examined, when we  
land ?

Perhaps they may  
look into your portman-  
teau.

Coachman ! take me  
to the London hotel.

To Demuth's hotel.

To the English quay.

To the Galernoy street.

To the Nevsky Pro-  
spect.

What street is this ?

Is this the hotel ?

Stop here !



DI A L O G U E II.

A T A N I N N.

Есть ли у васъ по-  
рожня комнаты?

Have you any unoc-  
cupied rooms?

Въ какомъ этажѣ  
желаете вы ихъ имѣть?

On which floor would  
you like to live?

Пожалуйте, покажи-  
те мнѣ ваши комнаты.

Have the goodness to  
shew me your apart-  
ments.

Мнѣ надобны спаль-  
ня, гостиная, и пе-  
редняя.

I shall want a bed-  
room, a sitting room  
and a servant's room.

Что вы берете за  
наемъ этихъ комнатъ  
на мѣсяцъ, на недѣлю,  
на день?

What will be the rent  
of these rooms per  
month, per week, per  
day?

Прикажете внести  
сюда мой чемоданъ и  
развести огонь въ го-  
стиной.

Let my luggage be  
brought in, and order  
a fire to be made in the  
sitting room.

Пригласуйте мнѣ  
ужинъ, какъ можно  
скорѣе.

Let me have supper  
as soon as possible.

|                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Прикажіте хоро-        | Order the sheets to   |
| шеньковъ высушить про- | be well aired and the |
| стыни и посласть по-   | bed to be made.       |
| стѣль.                 |                       |

|                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| Принеси мнѣ горя- | Bring me some hot |
| чей воды бриться. | water to shave.   |

|                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| Вычищены ли мои  | Are my boots cleaned  |
| сапоги и платье? | and my clothes brush- |
|                  | ed?                   |

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Гдѣ мой слуга? приш- | Where is my ser-     |
| лите его сюда.       | vant? send him here. |

|                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| Готовъ ли постѣль. | Is my bed ready. |
|--------------------|------------------|

|                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| Разбуди меня за-в-   | Call me to morrow at |
| тра въ шесть часовъ. | six o' clock.        |

|                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| Подай поскорѣ за- | Let me have, break- |
| втракъ.           | fast immediately.   |

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| Чего вамъ угодно къ | What would you wish    |
| завтраку?           | to have for breakfast? |

|      |      |
|------|------|
| Чаю. | Tea. |
|------|------|

|       |         |
|-------|---------|
| Кофе. | Coffee. |
|-------|---------|

|           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| Шеколáду. | Chocolate. |
|-----------|------------|

|         |       |
|---------|-------|
| Молока. | Milk. |
|---------|-------|

|               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| Хлѣба, масла. | Bread and butter. |
|---------------|-------------------|

|           |      |
|-----------|------|
| Ветчиннѣ. | Ham. |
|-----------|------|

|                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| Свѣжихъ яицъ, въ | Fresh eggs, not too |
| смятку.          | much boil'd.        |

|          |        |
|----------|--------|
| Сухарей. | Rusks. |
|----------|--------|

Найми мнѣ коляску      Hire me a calash and  
и пару лошадей на день.      pair of horses for to  
day.

Сколько просятъ за      What do they charge  
день?      a day?

Я возвращусь къ обѣ-      I shall come back to  
ду около четырёхъ ча-      dinner about four o'  
совъ.      clock.

Готовъ ли обѣдъ?      Is the dinner ready?

Принеси мнѣ бутыл-      Bring me a bottle  
ку Поршвейна.      of Port-wine.

Мадеры.      Madeira.

Шампанскаго.      Champaign.

Портеру.      Porter.

Пива.      Beer.

Крѣпкаго пива.      Ale. &c.

Чашку кофе съ слив-      A cup of coffee,  
ками или безъ сливокъ.      with, or without cream.

Чаю.      Tea.

Бутылку рому или      A bottle of rum or  
водки, горячей воды,      brandy, hot water, su-  
сахара, лимоновъ и пр.      gar, lemons &c.

Не можете ли вы оп-      Can you recommend  
рекомендовать мнѣ хо-      me a good servant?

Есть ли у тебя ап-      Have you a character  
постать за послѣднее      from your last place?  
время твоёй службы?

У какихъ господъ ты      In whose service did  
прежде служилъ?      you live last?

Говоришь ли ты по      Can you speak Russ,  
Русски, по Француз-      French, German, &c.  
ски, по Нѣмецки, и пр.

Умѣешь ли ты пи-      Can you write?  
сать?

Хочешь ли ты ѣхать      Are you disposed to  
со мною въ Москвѣ?      go with me to Moscow?

Сколько ты про-      What wages do you  
сишь жалованья?      expect?

Сто рублѣй въ мѣ-      A hundred roubles a  
сяцъ, на своемъ ку-      month, and I will board  
шаньѣ.      myself.

Приходи завтра въ      Call to-morrow at ten  
одиннадцатомъ часѣ.      o'clock.



### DIALOGUE III.

#### EXPRESSIONS OF POLITENESS.

Здоровы ли вы, сѣ-      How do you do Sir,  
дарь, сударыня?      Madam, Miss?

Слава Бѣгу, здоровъ,      Very well, I thank  
здоровъ.      you.

Я очень радъ уви-      I am very glad to see  
дѣться съ вами.      you.

Здорóвъ ли вашъ ба-  
пюшка, вáша мáпуш-  
ка, вáша сестрѣца ?

How is your father,  
your mother, your si-  
ster ?

Здорóва ли вáша су-  
прѹга ?

How is your wife ?

Здорóвы ли вáши  
дѣти ?

How are your child-  
ren ?

Благодарю васъ, онѣ  
совершенно здорóвы.

They are quite well,  
I thank you.

Я этому óчень радъ.

I am very glad to  
hear it.

Засвидѣтельствуй-  
те моё почтѣнiе вá-  
шему батюшкѣ, и пр.

Present my respects  
to your father &c.

Не сдѣлаете ли вы  
мнѣ чѣсти сего́дня со  
мною отобѣдать ?

Will you do me the  
favour to dine with me  
to day ?

Съ удовольствіемъ,  
въ ко́боромъ часу ?

With pleasure, at  
what hour ?

Мы обыкновенно  
обѣдаемъ въ пять ча-  
совъ.

We dine usually at  
five o'clock.

Желáю вамъ, сѹдарь,  
дóбраго ўтра.

Good morning, sir.

Дóбраго вѣчера, су-  
дáрыня.

Good evening, Madam

Покóйной нóчи.

Good night!

Прощáйте.

Farewell!

Сча́сливо оста-  
ва́ться.

Сдѣлайте мѣло́сть  
скажи́те мнѣ, гдѣ га-  
ле́рная у́лица?

Я вамъ о́чень обя-  
занъ.

Спроси́те пожа́луй-  
те э́того челове́ка,  
что ему́ на́добно; я  
его́ не понима́ю.

Вы меня́ кра́йне обя-  
за́ли, госуда́рь мой.

Когда́ бу́ду я имѣ́ть  
удово́льствіе уви́дѣть-  
ся съ вами?

Прошу́ проща́нія.

Не уго́дно ли вамъ  
войти́?

Садѣ́тесь.

Извини́те меня́ на  
нѣско́лько мину́тъ, я  
сейча́съ бу́ду къ вамъ.

Давно́ ли вы при́ѣха-  
ли въ Пе́тербу́ргъ?

Adieu ! good by!

Have the goodness  
to inform me, which  
is the Galernoy street.

I am exceedingly ob-  
liged to you.

Do me the favour to  
ask this man what he  
wants; I do not under-  
stand him.

You are very obli-  
ging sir.

When shall I have  
the pleasure of seeing  
you.

I beg your pardon.

Walk in, if you  
please.

Take a seat.

If you will excuse  
me for a few minutes,  
I will be with you al-  
most immediately.

When did you arrive  
in Petersburg, sir?



## D I A L O G U E IV.

## REMARKABLE OBJECTS AT PETERSBURG.

Видѣли ли вы уже Have you seen any  
нѣкоторыя изъ досто- of the curiosities of  
примѣчательностей the place?  
сего́ города?

Весьма́ немно́го, но Very few, which are  
я буду вамъ очень обя- the most remarkable  
занъ, если вы назовете objects? You will great-  
мнѣ самыя достопри- ly oblige me by na-  
мѣчательныя предме- ming them.  
ты.

Памятникъ Петра The monument of  
Великаго—произведе- Peter the Great a pro-  
ніе знаменитаго Фаль- duction of the celebra-  
конёша; Зимній дво- ted Falconet; the Win-  
рець съ богатѣйшимъ ter palace and the rich  
собраніемъ картинъ и collection of paintings  
рѣдкостей въ эрмита- and curiosities in the  
жѣ; кунсткамера или Hermitage; the mu-  
натуральный каби- seum, or cabinet of na-  
неть; Академія худо- tural history; the Aca-  
жествъ; лѣтній садъ demy of arts; the sum-  
съ великолѣпною же- mer garden with its  
лѣзною рѣшешкою и magnificent iron rai-  
проч. ling &c. &c.



Какія изъ церквей  
заслуживають особ-  
бенное примѣчаніе?

Which of the churches are most worthy  
of observation?

Соборъ Невской Ла-  
вры, въ коёмъ покоятся  
мощи Святаго Алек-  
сандра Невского, пере-  
несённые сюда Пе-  
тромъ Великимъ при  
основаніи столицы;  
Казанскій Соборъ, воз-  
двигнутый Россійски-  
ми художниками въ цар-  
ствованіе Александра  
I, въ коёмъ Рос-  
сійскіе профёи осыня-  
ють пѣмяшникъ Фельд-  
маршала Князя Куту-  
зова Смоленскаго; и  
Петропавловскій Со-  
боръ въ крѣпости,  
гдѣ находятся гробни-  
цы всѣхъ Россійскихъ  
Государей, начинають  
Петра Великаго.

The church of St. Ale-  
xander Nevsky, which  
contains the shrine of  
that saint, brought hith-  
er by Peter the Great  
when he founded the  
city; The Cazan cathed-  
ral, erected by Russian  
artists during the reign  
of the Emperor ALE-  
XANDER I, in which  
the trophies of the  
Russian arms, oversha-  
dow the monument of  
Field Marshal Prince  
Kutusoff Smolensky; the  
cathedral of St. Peter  
and Paul in the fortress,  
which contains the  
tombs of the Rus-  
sian sovereigns since  
Peter the Great.

Вы такъ же съ боль-  
шимъ удовольствіемъ

You will also be gra-  
tified by visiting the

осмотрите, огромный воспитательный Домъ, въ коёмъ воспитываются нѣсколько сотъ дѣтей.

Сколько въ Петербургѣ публичныхъ театровъ ?

Два театра, въ которыхъ попеременно играютъ на Русскомъ, Французскомъ и Нѣмецкомъ языкахъ.

Осмотрѣвъ главные достопримѣчательности города вы познакомитесь съ нѣкоторыми изъ окрестностей онаго; съ Императорскими лѣтними дворцами въ Царскомъ селѣ, въ Петергофѣ, въ Павловскѣ, въ Ораниенбаумѣ, Гатчинѣ, Спрельнѣ, Ропшѣ и проч. съ островами Крестовскимъ, Елагинымъ, Каменнымъ и пр.

vast establishment of the foundling hospital, in which many hundreds of children are educated.

How many public theatres are there in Petersburg?

There are two, in which, pieces are performed alternately in the Russian, German and French languages.

After you have seen the most remarkable objects in the town itself, you can visit the environs; The Imperial summer residences of Tsarskoe-selo, Peterhoff, Pavlovsky, Oranienbaum, Gatchina, Strelnia, Ropsha, &c. The islands of Chrestofsky, Yelaguin, Kamennoi, &c.

. DIALOGUE V.

S H O P P I N G.

Хотѣте ли вы ид-  
ти со мною въ Гос-  
тиной дворъ?

Will you go with me  
to the great market  
(Gostiny-dvorr).

Что вы покупаете,  
сударь?

What do you wish  
to buy, sir?

Шляпу.

A hat.

Пару перчатокъ.

A pair of gloves.

Тонкаго сукна.

Some fine cloth.

Пару сапоговъ.

A pair of boots.

Пару башмаковъ.

A pair of shoes.

Тонкаго полотна.

Some fine linnen.

Бумажные, шерстя-  
ные, шелковые чулки.

Some cotton, wors-  
ted or silk stockings.

Покажите мнѣ шля-  
пу лучшей доброты,  
другаго фасона.

Let me see a hat of  
the best quality, of a  
different form.

Эта шляпа мала.

It is too small.

Эта шляпа велика.

It is too large.

Что стоитъ эта  
шляпа?

What is the price of  
this hat?

Это слишкомъ до-  
рого, я не дамъ болѣе  
двадцати рублѣй.

That is too dear, I  
will give you twenty  
roubles.

Есть ли у васъ пер-  
чатки? бѣлыя, желтыя,  
чёрныя, подбитыя мѣ-  
хомъ ?

Have you any gloves ?  
white , yellow , black ,  
or lined with fur ?

Почемъ аршинъ это-  
го сукна ?

What is this cloth a  
yard ?

Нѣтъ ли у васъ получ-  
ше? это слишкомъ гру-  
бо: Цвѣтъ мнѣ не нра-  
вится: онъ слишкомъ  
тѣмный, слишкомъ свѣ-  
телъ.

Have you no better?  
this is too coarse, the  
colour does not please  
me ; it is too dark ,  
it is too light.

Что крайняя цѣна  
этому сукну ?

What is the lowest  
price for this ?

Отрѣжьте мнѣ ку-  
сокъ въ пять аршинъ  
и пришлите ко мнѣ на  
квартиру — вошь мой  
адресъ.

Measure me five yards  
and send it to my lodg-  
ings , here is my ad-  
dress.

Не можете ли вы  
мнѣ сдать мѣлкихъ де-  
негъ? серебра? мѣлкихъ  
ассигнацій? мѣди ?

Can you give me  
change , small change?  
silver money ? small  
notes ? copper ?



## . DIALOGUE VI.

## WITH TRADESPeOPLE.

Не можете ли вы Can you recommend  
 ошрекомендовать мнѣ me a good tailor, shoe-  
 хорошаго портнаго, maker &c.  
 сапожника? и проч.

Сколько аршинъ сук- How many yards of  
 на идѣшь на пару cloth are necessary for  
 пластья? a suit of clothes?

Снимй съ меня мѣр- Take measure of me.

ку; смотри, чѣмъ Do not make them  
 пластье не было сѣш- too large, too small,  
 комъ широко, сѣш- too tight, too loose,  
 комъ узко, сѣшкомъ too short, too long.  
 тѣсно, мѣшковато,  
 коротко, длинно.

Скоро ли онѣ будутъ When can I have  
 готовы? them?

Мнѣ надобно скорѣ. I want them sooner.

Надобно, чѣмъ было I must have them in  
 готово въ три дни. three days.

Какія пуговицы при- What buttons would  
 кажите положить на you like to have on  
 фракъ? свѣшлыя, или the coat, gilt buttons,  
 шелковыя пуговицы. or silk buttons?

Что берѣшь за ра- What do you charge  
 боту съ фрака, жи- for making a coat, a

лѣта и пары панталона- a waistcoat, pantaloons?  
лоновъ ?

Смотри же , чтобъ Be sure to let me.  
непремѣнно было го- have them in three days  
тово въ три дни.

Не заставь меня Do not disappoint me.  
ждать.

Сапожникъ пришёлъ. The boot - maker is  
here.

Пусть онъ войдѣтъ. Ask him in.

Есть ли у тебя хо- Have you any good  
хшіе готовые сапоги? ready-made boots ?

Покажи мнѣ пару. Shew me a pair.

Эти мнѣ не въ пору, They do not fit me,  
они жмутъ, они слыш- they pinch me , they  
комъ просторны, слыш- are too wide, too long,  
комъ велики, слыш- too small.  
комъ малы.

Подай примѣришь Let me try another  
другую пару. pair.

Скоро ли можешь How soon can you  
мнѣ сдѣлать пару са- make me a pair of  
погоровъ и пару башма- boots and a pair of  
ковъ ? shoes ?

Сними мѣрку и сдер- Take measure , but  
жи своё слово. do not fail to let me  
have them.



## DIALOGUE VII.

## ENQUIRIES PREVIOUS TO A JOURNEY.

Ско́лько верста́тъ отъ Пе́тербурга до Москвы́?      How many versts is it from Petersburg to Moscow?

728 верста́тъ.      728 versts.

Хороша́ ли доро́га?      Is the road good?

Доро́га о́коло двухъ сто́лицъ весьма́ хоро́ша́ и сдѣлана по Ма́къ-Адамову пла́ну.      The road is very good near the two capitals, where it is made upon the plan of Mac. Adam.

Прі́ятно ли мѣстопо́ложіе, по кото́рому иде́тъ доро́га?      Does the road lie through a fine country?

Мѣстопо́ложіе до Ва́лдайскихъ горъ весьма́ плóское, но здѣсь станóвится бо́ле разнóобразнымъ и прі́ятымъ.      It is very flat until you reach the Valdai hills, where the scenery becomes more diversified and agreeable.

Есть ли по доро́гѣ хоро́шія гості́нницы?      Are there any good inns upon the road?

На нѣ́которыхъ ста́нціяхъ вы найдёте но́выя гості́нницы по́строенныя для удо́бства́ пу́тешествен-      At some stages there are new inns erected for the accomodation of travellers, where all kinds of refresh-

никовъ, и снабжённые всеми необходимыми по потребностямъ.      ments may be procured.

Какъ обыкновенно путешествуя въ Россіи?      Which are the most usual modes of travelling, in this country?

Или въ дилижансѣ, или въ своёмъ экипажѣ на почтовыхъ лошадяхъ.      Either in the stage-coach (*diligence*), or in your own carriage with post horses.

Если вы хотѣте ѣхать въ дилижансѣ, то спойте вамъ только получить паспортъ и взявъ мѣсто въ дилижансовой канторѣ; если же намѣрены ѣхать по почтѣ, то должны получить изъ канцеляріи Военнаго-Генерала - Губернатора подорожную или приказаніе почтмейстерамъ по дорогѣ снабжать васъ лошадьми.      If you travel by the diligence, you have only to procure a passport and take your place at the coach-office; but if you take post horses you must procure a government order (called a *podoroshnaya*) from the office of the Governor General to the postmasters on the road to furnish you with horses.

Сколько положено платить за лошадь съ версты?      What do they charge for each horse per verst?



По осьмѣй копѣекъ , Eight copecks , besides what you pay for  
сверхъ платы за подо- your podoroshnaya.  
рожную.

Не должно ли пла- Is it customary to give  
тить и извощикамъ ? the postilion any thing?  
Бездѣлицу. A trifle.

Сколько отъ Петер- How many stages are  
бурга до Москвы стѣн- there between Peters-  
цій ? burg and Moscow ?

26 стѣнцій ; начи- There are 26; in tra-  
ная отъ Петербурга velling from Peters-  
въ слѣдующемъ поряд- burg in the following  
кѣ : order.

*С. Петербургской Government of St.  
Губерніи. Petersburg.*

|       | Версты |        | Versts. |
|-------|--------|--------|---------|
| Софія | 22.    | Sophia | 22.     |
| Ижора | 11.    | Ijora  | 11.     |
| Тосна | 25.    | Tosna  | 25.     |

*Новгородской Гу- Government of Nov-  
берніи. gorod.*

|                  |     |                  |     |
|------------------|-----|------------------|-----|
| Померанія        | 32. | Pomerania        | 32. |
| Чудово           | 25. | Tchoodovo        | 25. |
| Спасская Полясть | 24. | Spaskaya Poliste | 24. |
| Подберезье       | 24. | Podberezye       | 24. |
| Новгородъ        | 22. | Novgorod         | 22. |
| Бронницы         | 35. | Bronnity         | 35. |

|                   |     |                    |     |
|-------------------|-----|--------------------|-----|
| Зайцова           | 27. | Zaitzova           | 27. |
| Крестцы           | 31. | Krestzy            | 31. |
| Ракино            | 16. | Rakino             | 16. |
| Яжелбицы          | 22. | Yajelbitzy         | 22. |
| Зимогорье(Валдай) | 22. | Zimogorye (Valdai) | 22. |
| Едрово            | 20. | Edrovo             | 20. |
| Хопилово          | 36. | Khotilovo          | 36. |

*Тверской Губер- Government of  
ния. Tver.*

|                 |     |                   |     |
|-----------------|-----|-------------------|-----|
| Вышний Волочёкъ | 36. | Vishney Volotchok | 36. |
| Выдропуское     | 33. | Vidropooskoe      | 33. |
| Торжёкъ         | 38. | Torjok            | 38. |
| Мѣдное          | 33. | Maydnoe           | 33. |
| Тверь           | 30. | Tver              | 30. |
| Воскресёнское   | 26. | Voskresenskoe     | 26. |

*Московской Гу- Government of Mo-  
бернии. scow.*

|              |             |                 |             |
|--------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Завидово     | 31.         | Zavidovo        | 31.         |
| Клепъ        | 26.         | Kleen           | 26.         |
| Пѣшки        | 31.         | Peshki          | 31.         |
| Чёрная грязь | 22.         | Tchernaya Griaz | 22.         |
| Москва       | 28.         | Moscow          | 28.         |
|              | <u>728.</u> |                 | <u>728.</u> |



DIALOGUE VIII.

ON THE ROAD TO MOSCOW.

Какáя это стáнція?      What is the name of  
this stage?

Далекó ли до слѣдующей стáнціи?      How far is it to the  
next stage?

Хорошá ли дорогá,      Is the road good,  
не тяжелá ли, не песчáна ли? не горйша ли?      heavy, sandy, hilly?

Не нáдобно ли взять бóльше лошадей?      Is it not necessary  
to take more horses.

Скóро ли лошади будутъ гошóвы?      How long will it be  
before the horses are ready?

Скóлько на этой стáнціи дёржатъ лошадей?      How many horses are  
kept at this stage?

Осмотрй карётные рессóры; не попорпились ли онй.      Examine the springs  
of the carriage, and see  
if they are not injured.

Скажи извóщику, чтобы онъ сей часъ закладывалъ лошадей.      Order the postilion  
to put the horses to  
immediately.

Мáзаны ли колéса?      Are the wheels greased?

|                                                                 |                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Все ли готово?                                                  | Is every thing ready?                                         |
| Сступай.                                                        | Drive on.                                                     |
| Сступай проворнѣе.                                              | Drive faster.                                                 |
| Сступай по шйше.                                                | Drive slower.                                                 |
| Стой! и отвори дверь, я выйду и пойду пѣшкомъ на гору.          | Stop! and open the door, I will get out and walk up the hill. |
| Эшо ли почтовой дворъ?                                          | Is this the post-house?                                       |
| Могутъ ли я здѣсь обѣдать?                                      | Can I dine here?                                              |
| Что у васъ готово-го къ обѣду?                                  | What have you got ready dressed?                              |
| Сколько мнѣ приходится платить за лошадей до ближайшей станціи? | How much have I to pay for the horses to the next stage.      |
| Какой эшо городъ?                                               | What town is this?                                            |
| Какая деревня?                                                  | Village?                                                      |
| Что эшо за строеніе?                                            | Building?                                                     |
| Какая эшо рѣка?                                                 | River?                                                        |
| Держись большій дороги и не сворачивай въ спору.ну.             | Keep on the high road, don't turn into any by-road.           |
| Сколько еще остаётся верстъ до станціи?                         | How many versts have we still to go?                          |



## DIALOGUE IX.

## REMARKABLE OBJECTS AT MOSCOW.

Сдѣлайте милость  
укажите мнѣ нѣкоп-  
рые изъ достопримѣ-  
чательнѣйшихъ пред-  
метовъ сего города.

Will you do me the  
favour to point out  
some of the objects  
most worthy a stran-  
ger's notice in this  
town.

Мы сперва осмó-  
тримъ Кремль, дрѣв-  
нее и великолѣпное  
мѣстопребываніе Ца-  
рѣй, гдѣ вы найдё-  
те драгоцѣнное соб-  
раніе дрѣвностей,  
царскія сокровища,  
весьма замѣчательную  
оружейную палату и  
другія рѣдкости. От-  
туда пойдѣмъ въ  
Успенскій Соборъ, пá-  
мятникъ Грѣко-Ита-  
ліанской Архитекту-  
ры XV вѣка, постро-  
енный въ царствова-  
ніе Іоánна IV Василье-  
вича Аристотелемъ

We will first visit  
that ancient and mag-  
nificent residence of  
the Tsars, the Kremlе,  
where you will find a  
most precious collec-  
tion of antiquities and  
curiosities, the crown  
jewels, a curious ar-  
moury &c. &c. From  
thence we will go to  
the Uspensky cathe-  
dral a monument of the  
Greek-Italian Archi-  
tecture of the XV cen-  
tury, built by Aristotle  
of Bologna, in the reign  
of Ivan Vassilievitch,  
and which contains

Болонскимъ, и содержащій въ себѣ гробницы Патріарховъ и Митрополитовъ. Взглянемъ на колокольню Ивана великаго, нѣкогда примѣчательную по своему колоколу, величайшему въ Европѣ, вылитому въ царствованіе Алексѣя Михайловича вѣсомъ въ 8000 пудъ, и упавшему во время пожара.

Изъ прочихъ достопримѣчательныхъ предметовъ осматривъ Музей естественной исторіи, разныя частныя собранія картинъ и древностей, воспитательный домъ и другія чело-вѣколюбивыя заведенія, новыя кремлевскіе сады, дворцовый садъ, два театра и Италіанскую оперу.

the tombs of the Patriarch and Metropolitans. The belfry of Ivan Veliky is also remarkable, as having once contained the largest bell in Europe, cast in the reign of Alexy Michailovitch and weighing 8000 poods. A fire having consumed the rafters and supporters it fell to the ground.

The other objects we shall visit are the museum of natural history, several private collections of pictures and antiquities, the founding hospital and other benevolent institutions, the New Kremel gardens, the palace garden, the two theatres and the Italian opera.



## READING LESSONS IN PROSE.

### LESSON I.

#### AN ORIENTAL TALE.

Аббáсь, Сóфи <sup>1</sup> Персидскій, <sup>2</sup> объѣзжалъ <sup>3</sup> области свой, никѣмъ не <sup>4</sup> знае́мъ. Молодой <sup>5</sup> пасху́хъ <sup>6</sup> понравился ему́, <sup>7</sup> благоразу́миемъ рѣче́й своихъ еще́ болѣе, не́жели пріятно́стію <sup>8</sup> ви́да. Сóфи, <sup>9</sup> открывъ ему́ <sup>10</sup> санъ свой, говори́тъ: Али Бегъ (такъ называ́лся пасху́хъ) приро́да <sup>11</sup> произвела́ тебя́ къ другому <sup>12</sup> званію. Оста́вь поля́ свой, <sup>13</sup> послѣдуй за мною́: я поста́влю тебя́ <sup>14</sup> па́стыремъ люде́й. Пасху́хъ послѣдовалъ. Онъ былъ <sup>15</sup> нелице́мѣрный дру́гъ Госуда́ря своего́, всегда́ говори́лъ ему́ пра́вду, и <sup>16</sup> спаса́лъ наро́ды отъ <sup>17</sup> утѣ́сненія <sup>18</sup> зло́бныхъ. Но Аббáсь <sup>19</sup> сконча́лся. Молодо́му сыну́ его́ <sup>20</sup> ласка́тели <sup>21</sup> оклевета́ли Али-Бе́га. Онъ собра́лъ себѣ́ <sup>22</sup> сокрови́ща, говори́ли они́, слеза́ми <sup>23</sup> сира́го и

---

1 Persian. 2 visited. 3 Provinces. 4 incognito. 5 shepherd. 6 pleased 7 wisdom. 8 appearance. 9 having discovered. 10 dignity. 11 destined. 12 condition 13 follow. 14 pastor. 15 faithful. 16 saved. 17 oppression. 18 the wicked. 20 flatterers. 21 calumniated. 22 treasures. 23 orphan.

вдовицы. <sup>25</sup> Воспалёнъ гнѣвомъ, сынъ Аб-  
басовъ идѣтъ самъ въ домъ Али-Беговъ, <sup>26</sup> удо-  
сповѣриться своими глазами въ испинѣ <sup>27</sup> до-  
носа. Вездѣ находишь <sup>28</sup> умѣренность, <sup>29</sup> про-  
стошю, <sup>30</sup> сѣльскіе нравы. Но вдали видны  
<sup>31</sup> желѣзныя <sup>32</sup> двѣри. За ними, <sup>33</sup> шепчуть  
<sup>34</sup> клеветники, <sup>35</sup> сохраняются сокровища Али-  
Беговы. <sup>36</sup> Распворяють двѣри, что находятъ  
въ <sup>37</sup> казнѣ его? <sup>38</sup> Посохъ, <sup>39</sup> свирѣль, пла-  
тье, которое онъ пастухомъ носилъ. Али-  
Бегъ <sup>40</sup> обнимаетъ <sup>41</sup> колѣна Государя своего :  
• Не <sup>42</sup> отнимай у меня сихъ сокровищъ : я  
съ ними былъ и опяшь могу быть <sup>43</sup> счаст-  
ливъ. Позволь мнѣ <sup>44</sup> возвратиться въ дере-  
вню. » Приведенный въ <sup>45</sup> умиленіе, Государь  
отдалъ <sup>46</sup> справедливость оклеветанной доб-  
родѣтели и <sup>47</sup> грознымъ <sup>47</sup> взоромъ <sup>48</sup> изгналъ  
ласкателей <sup>49</sup> навсегда.

*Mouravieff.*

---

24 widow. 25 exasperated. 26 ascertain. 27 report. 28 mo-  
deration. 29 simplicity. 30 village. 31 iron. 32 doors. 33 whis-  
per. 34 calumniators. 35 are kept. 36 they open. 37 coffer.  
38 a staff. 39 shepherd's pipe 40 embraces. 41 the knees.  
42 deprive. 43 happy. 44 to return. 45 moved. 46 justice.  
47 threatening. 47 glance. 48 banished. 49 for ever.





## LESSON II.

## THE BEDOUIN ARAB.

Караванъ <sup>1</sup> молельщиковъ <sup>2</sup> выступаль изъ <sup>3</sup> вратъ Діарбѣка. Впередѣ его ѣхаль Османъ и бросаль въ <sup>4</sup> народъ деньги; — Иманъ <sup>5</sup> благословляли опходящихъ <sup>6</sup> странниковъ; жили <sup>7</sup> усыпали цвѣтами путь ихъ.

Въ шестой разъ <sup>8</sup> отправлялся Османъ съ караваномъ въ Мекку, и начальствоваль надъ охраннымъ <sup>9</sup> войскомъ. Всѣ были увѣрены въ <sup>10</sup> благополучномъ <sup>11</sup> окончаніи своего путешествія; ибо ни однажды еще не <sup>12</sup> случилось съ Османомъ никакого <sup>13</sup> несчастья: <sup>14</sup> бури не засыпали въ <sup>15</sup> степяхъ Аравіи ни одного человека изъ <sup>16</sup> шествовавшихъ съ Османомъ; ни однажды <sup>17</sup> Аравіянне не <sup>18</sup> нападали на него. Такая <sup>19</sup> благоуспѣшность въ <sup>20</sup> предпріятіяхъ его <sup>21</sup> почиалась <sup>22</sup> плодомъ Османовой <sup>23</sup> набожности, <sup>24</sup> щедрости и <sup>25</sup> мужества.

---

1 Pilgrims. 2 departed. 3 gates. 4 people. 5 blessed. 6 strangers. 7 strewed. 8. set out. 9 military escort. 10 happy. 11 termination. 12 happened. 13 misfortune. 14 storms. 15 deserts. 19 who went. 17 Arabian. 18 attacked. 19 success. 20 enterprises. 21 considered. 22 fruit. 23 piety. 25 generosity. 25 bravery.

<sup>26</sup> Спусти́а нѣсколько недѣль, послѣ отбытія изъ Діарбѣка, <sup>27</sup> приближился караванъ къ <sup>28</sup> славному въ <sup>29</sup> древности Евфрату, рѣкѣ, <sup>30</sup> современной міру. При <sup>31</sup> пѣніи стиховъ изъ Алкорана, <sup>32</sup> переправились чрезъ нее моельщики и вступили въ <sup>33</sup> песчаныя <sup>34</sup> равнины <sup>35</sup> Аравіи. Туть присоединился къ каравану <sup>36</sup> Бедуинъ, на прекрасной <sup>37</sup> вороной лошади; онъ равнымъ образомъ ѣхалъ на <sup>38</sup> поклоненіе <sup>39</sup> колыбѣли и <sup>40</sup> гробу Магомешову.

Османъ вступилъ съ нимъ въ <sup>41</sup> разговоръ, <sup>42</sup> коснувшійся до <sup>43</sup> преимущества ихъ народовъ. Бедуинъ отвѣчалъ коротко, но благородно; хвалилъ достойное похвалы въ своемъ народѣ, и <sup>44</sup> охуждалъ то, что казалось ему <sup>45</sup> дурнымъ. <sup>46</sup> Непримѣшнымъ образомъ <sup>47</sup> отдалились они отъ каравана. Османъ съ жаромъ началъ <sup>48</sup> выхвалять Ошпомановъ.

« Тѣрки » — говорилъ онъ Бедуину — <sup>49</sup> издавна славятся по всему <sup>50</sup> Востоку <sup>51</sup> хра-

---

26 after. 27 approached. 28 celebrated. 29 ancient times. 30 coeval. 31 chanting. 32 passed. 33 sandy. 34 deserts. 35 Arabia. 36 Bedouin Arab. 37 black. 38 worship. 39 cradle. 40 tomb. 41 conversation. 42 concerning. 43 superiority. 44 blamed. 45 bad. 46 imperceptibly. 47 wandered. 48 to exalt. 49 long since. 50 the East. 51 bravery.

бросію , <sup>52</sup> добродушіємъ и <sup>53</sup> милосѣрдіємъ ,  
издавна рѣдкія сіи <sup>54</sup> качества <sup>55</sup> снискали  
намъ <sup>56</sup> уваженіе цѣлаго свѣта , вездѣ ежели  
хотѣшь <sup>57</sup> изобразить <sup>58</sup> непобѣдимость <sup>59</sup> во-  
ина , шо говорѣшь : *онъ храбръ , какъ Түрокъ!*  
<sup>60</sup> купцы , желая выразить чье нибудь <sup>61</sup> без-  
корыстіе въ <sup>62</sup> превосходной степеніи , гово-  
рѣшь : *онъ <sup>63</sup> справедливъ какъ Түрокъ!* — Чѣмъ  
напрóшивъ того , <sup>64</sup> отличился пвой бѣдный  
народъ , <sup>65</sup> шатающийся по степямъ <sup>66</sup> каме-  
нистой и пустой Аравіи ? какая <sup>67</sup> молва идеть  
о васъ ? — Та , что вы не имѣете ни чести ,  
ни <sup>68</sup> совѣсти ; вы <sup>69</sup> исповѣдуете одну Вѣру  
съ нами , но вамъ платить Султанъ ежегод-  
но <sup>70</sup> знатную сѹмму , дабы спасти отъ ва-  
шего <sup>71</sup> хищничества главный караванъ мо-  
лельщиковъ ; <sup>72</sup> грабительство сдѣлало васъ  
<sup>73</sup> презрѣнными <sup>74</sup> бродягами въ глазахъ всяка-  
го истиннаго Мусульманина . — <sup>75</sup> Признѣйся ,  
товарищъ , въ справедливости моихъ словъ ;  
признѣйся , что вашъ народъ не что иное ,  
какъ <sup>76</sup> шайка <sup>77</sup> разбойниковъ .

---

52 kindness. 53 compassion. 54 quality. 55 has called forth.  
56 respect. 57 portray. 58 invincible. 59 warrior. 60 mer-  
chants. 61 disinterestedness. 62 surpassing. 63 just. 64 is  
distinguished. 65 roving. 66 stony. 67 fame. 68 conscience.  
69 profess. 70 considerable. 71 rapacity. 72 pillage. 73 despi-  
cable. 74 vagabonds. 75 confess. 76 a band. 77 robbers.

« Мы по́слѣ <sup>78</sup> окóнчимъ нашъ разговоръ »... сказа́лъ ему́ Бедуи́нь, <sup>79</sup> указы́вая на <sup>80</sup> поскользну́вшася <sup>81</sup> верблюда, ко́торый упáлъ и <sup>82</sup> придави́лъ собо́ю <sup>83</sup> вожа́шаго — « по́слѣ; на́перѣдъ по́сѣбимъ несча́стному? »

« Поди́ и <sup>84</sup> по́сѣблай ты! » — отвѣча́лъ Осма́нь; — « я не хочу́ <sup>85</sup> оказа́ть ника́кой <sup>86</sup> услу́ги э́тому <sup>87</sup> бездѣ́льнику: онъ <sup>88</sup> перекупи́лъ у меня́ верблюда, че́тыре года́ по́му <sup>89</sup> наза́дъ; тепе́рь я о́чень радъ, что сей же са́мый верблюдъ <sup>90</sup> о́тмсти́лъ ему́ за меня́. Ежели бы́ негодя́й <sup>91</sup> издыха́лъ, и о́дно моё сло́во мо́гло <sup>92</sup> возвра́титъ ему́ жизнь, то я, — да <sup>93</sup> про́спѣю моё <sup>94</sup> согрѣ́шеніе Алла́ и его́ Вели́кій <sup>95</sup> Проро́къ! — то я <sup>96</sup> заши́лъ бы себѣ́ ро́шъ. »

Ме́жду тѣ́мъ Бедуи́нь <sup>97</sup> вы́свободилъ изъ по́ды верблюда́ вожа́шаго, и <sup>98</sup> возвра́щался къ своему́ <sup>99</sup> спѹ́тнику; онъ уже́ недале́ко отъ него́ нахо́дился, какъ вдругъ <sup>100</sup> стра́шный шигрь <sup>101</sup> вы́скочилъ изъ за ку́ста, по́длѣ ко́тораго ѣ́халъ <sup>102</sup> неоспоро́жный Осма́нь, ошда́ясь отъ Карава́-

---

78 finish. 79 pointing. 80 stumbled. 81 a camel. 82 crushed. 83 guide. 84 aid. 85 to render. 86 service. 87 rascal. 88 overbid. 89 ago. 90 has avenged. 91 was expiring. 92 restore. 93 forgive. 94 sins. 95 prophet. 96 would sew up. 97 delivered. 98 returned. 99 fellow-traveller. 100 horrid. 101 started. 102 careless.

на; онъ пришёлъ въ <sup>103</sup> смяшеніе, ужаснулся, и упалъ безъ <sup>104</sup> чувствъ на зѣмлю.

Бедуинъ <sup>105</sup> опрометью поскакалъ, не <sup>106</sup> прочь отъ него, но прямо къ нему; вынулъ пистолѣшъ и въ ту самую мину, какъ <sup>107</sup> кровожадный звѣрь <sup>108</sup> прыгнулъ на свою <sup>109</sup> добычу, выстрѣлилъ по нему; — <sup>110</sup> мёртвый шигръ расстянулся подъ полумёртвого Османа.

Наконѣцъ Османъ открылъ глаза; спасеніе его казалось ему <sup>111</sup> сверхъестественнымъ; онъ <sup>112</sup> обнялъ Бедуина и въ первомъ жару <sup>113</sup> благодарности своей, <sup>114</sup> предлагалъ ему со слезами, яко слабѣйшій <sup>115</sup> знакъ должной <sup>116</sup> признательности, кошелёкъ со спа секінами.

Бедуинъ, къ немалому удовольствію Османа, <sup>117</sup> отказался.

Въ сіе время <sup>118</sup> подошёлъ къ нимъ <sup>119</sup> нищій на деревянной ногѣ, покрытый рубищемъ и <sup>120</sup> ранами; онъ <sup>121</sup> обратился къ Осману, державшему кошелёкъ съ секінами, и говорилъ:

103 lost presence of mind. 104 insensible. 105 precipitately. 106 away. 107 bloodthirsty. 108 flew. 109! prey. 110 lifeless. 111 supernatural. 112 embraced. 113 thankfulness. 114 offered. 115 token. 116 gratitude. 117 refused. 118 came up. 119 beggar. 120 wounds. 121 turned.

« <sup>122</sup> Милосѣрдіе должно быть тебѣ знако-  
мо, богатыи <sup>123</sup> спранники; <sup>124</sup> утоли <sup>125</sup> го-  
лодь и <sup>126</sup> жажду твоего <sup>127</sup> одноземца! удѣ-  
ли <sup>128</sup> неимущему одну рупію изъ тѣлснаго  
кошелька твоего; одна рупія <sup>129</sup> избавитъ  
меня отъ мучительнаго <sup>130</sup> зною; къ вечеру  
надѣюсь съ эшою помощію <sup>131</sup> добрести до  
города; безъ неѣ лишусь силъ, и прину-  
жденъ буду <sup>132</sup> погибнуть отъ <sup>133</sup> люшосши дѣ-  
кихъ живѣшнихъ.»

« Да поможешь тебѣ Алла! » — отвѣчалъ  
Османи, <sup>134</sup> спрятавъ въ карманъ шѣлсый  
кошелѣкъ съ секинами: » у меня же нѣтъ для  
тебѣ ни одной рупіи, я иду на <sup>135</sup> богомолье  
въ Мѣкку и Медіну изъ Діарбека, и болѣе  
денегъ, сколько мнѣ нужно для пушй суда и  
<sup>136</sup> обрашно, не имѣю. Всѣ лишнія <sup>137</sup> раздалъ я  
народу при <sup>138</sup> выѣздѣ изъ отечества; <sup>139</sup> жа-  
лѣю о тебѣ, но пособить не могу. »

Бедуинъ вынулъ мѣшокъ съ <sup>140</sup> сорочинскимъ  
пшеномъ и мѣхъ съ водою, и подалъ <sup>141</sup> убого-  
му. « На! утоли твой голодь и жажду, <sup>142</sup> под-  
крѣпи ослабѣвшія <sup>143</sup> силы, и пойдѣмъ вмѣстѣ.

---

122 mercy. 123 stranger. 124 appease. 125 hunger. 126 thirst  
127 fellow-countryman. 128 to him who is destitute. 129 will  
save. 130 excessive heat. 131 to reach. 132 to perish. 133  
ferocity. 134 hiding. 135 pilgrimage. 136 back again. 137  
distributed. 138 departure. 139 I am sorry. 140 rice. 141 poor  
man. 142 recruit. 143 forces.

Городъ, куда ты идёшь, лежить на дорогѣ, по кошорой идёшь караванъ: я провожу тебя. »

« Но я идѹ <sup>144</sup> мѣдленно, часто <sup>145</sup> отды-  
хаю » — говорилъ нищій.

« Такъ сядь на мою лошадь! » отвѣчалъ Бедуинъ, <sup>146</sup> соскочилъ съ неѣ, посадилъ бѣднаго, взялъ за <sup>147</sup> узду и повѣлъ <sup>148</sup> пошхоньку. <sup>149</sup> « Брось его! » — сказалъ Османъ Бедуину; — « кончимъ нашъ разговоръ, <sup>150</sup> докажемъ другъ другу.... »

*Разговоръ нашъ — отвѣчалъ Бедуинъ — давно уже кончился: мы ясно доказали другъ другу превосходство нашихъ народовъ въ храбрости, добродѣши и <sup>151</sup> щедрости. <sup>152</sup> Замѣть себѣ, Османъ, что вездѣ есть <sup>153</sup> добродѣтельные люди, вездѣ есть и злые!*

Османъ <sup>154</sup> выразумѣлъ всю <sup>155</sup> колючесть сего отвѣта, и <sup>156</sup> поклялся <sup>157</sup> бородою своего <sup>158</sup> прадѣда <sup>159</sup> отомстить Бедуину за его <sup>160</sup> дерзость. Скоро случай къ <sup>161</sup> исполненію <sup>162</sup> намѣренія <sup>163</sup> открылся. Бедуинъ <sup>164</sup> заснулъ весьма крѣпко; караванъ <sup>165</sup> поднялся, и Ос-

---

144 slowly. 145 rest. 146 leaped off. 147 bridle. 148 gently. 149 leave him. 150 will prove. 151 generosity. 152 observe. 153 benevolent. 154 understood. 155 pointedness. 156 swore. 157 beard. 158 great-grandfather. 159 to be revenged. 160 insolence. 161 fulfilment. 162 intention. 163 offered itself. 164 slept. 165 departed.

манъ оставилъ своего благодѣтеля средѣ пустыни; оставилъ на жёрству вѣсьмъ бѣдствіямъ, и дабы онъ не могъ <sup>166</sup> настѣчь каравана, то <sup>167</sup> укралъ у него прекрасную вороную лошадь, все <sup>168</sup> имѣущество Бедуина.

И <sup>169</sup> судьба не <sup>170</sup> наказала его? — Нѣтъ! онъ въ полномъ удовольствіи жилъ, и окружёнъ радостями, умеръ. Діарбекірцы <sup>171</sup> упоминають объ немъ съ <sup>172</sup> сожалѣніемъ; опцы и матери <sup>173</sup> ставяшъ его въ <sup>174</sup> примѣръ дѣтямъ своимъ.

Увы! какъ много погрѣбно знать, какъ долго надобно <sup>175</sup> изслѣдывать человѣка, дабы не <sup>176</sup> ошибиться и въ самой его добродѣтели!

*Benitzky.*



### LESSON III.

#### DOMESTIC SCENE.

Вчера послѣ ужина простился я съ <sup>1</sup> гостепріимнымъ <sup>2</sup> семействомъ, чтобы выѣхать сегодня на <sup>3</sup> разсвѣтъ; но такъ <sup>4</sup> сладокъ и самой сонъ въ семь дѣмъ, что я, также какъ

166 overtake. 167 stole. 168 riches. 169 fate. 170 punished. 171 make mention. 172 regret. 173 set him up. 174 example. 175 to trace. 176 to be mistaken.

1 hospitable. 2 family. 3 dawn. 4 delightful.



и <sup>5</sup> люди мой, проспаль до пяти часовъ. Вы <sup>6</sup> приворожили меня къ себѣ конечно, ска- залъ я Г-ну Матіасу: мнѣ отсюда не выѣз- жать, чувствую, что <sup>7</sup> тайная сила души меня удерживаетъ. — Онъ <sup>8</sup> пожалъ мою руку и <sup>9</sup> повелъ къ женѣ, кою по обыкновенію своему встала еще до солнечнаго <sup>10</sup> восхо- жденія и сидѣла съ дѣтьми. Я похвалилъ еѣ, что она <sup>11</sup> просыпается вмѣстѣ съ <sup>12</sup> пшич- ками, но она <sup>13</sup> удивилась, слыша отъ меня, что Москóвскія <sup>14</sup> красавицы не позволяють никóгда ушреннымъ лучамъ солнца <sup>15</sup> заглядыва- вать въ ихъ спальню и <sup>16</sup> шревожишь ихъ нѣжнаго <sup>17</sup> сна.

Между тѣмъ подали чай; мы сѣли всѣ <sup>18</sup> круж- комъ подъ открытое окно; ароматы <sup>19</sup> справъ мѣшались съ ароматами чаю; свѣжій ушрен- ній воздухъ <sup>20</sup> прохлаждалъ насъ; предъ нами цвѣткѣ <sup>21</sup> спрѣхивали съ себѣ <sup>22</sup> блестяція <sup>23</sup> жемчужины; листочки шихо <sup>24</sup> шевелились; пшички <sup>25</sup> пѣли; <sup>26</sup> вдали шумѣло море; къ намъ отъ минуты до минуты прилеталъ <sup>27</sup> въ- шерокъ, прикасался съ нѣжностью къ <sup>28</sup> свѣ- жему лицу госпожи Матіасъ (копóрое дѣла-

---

5 servants. 6 enchanted. 7 secret. 8 pressed. 9 led. 10 sunrise. 11 wakes. 12 birds. 13 was surprised. 14 fair ones. 15 to peep. 16 to disturb. 17 slumber. 18 around. 19 herbs. 20 refreshed. 21 shook. 22 glittering. 23 pearly drops. 24 trembled. 25 sang. 26 at a distance. 27 zephyr. 28 fresh.

лось отъ того свѣжѣ и пріятнѣ), къ чернымъ волосамъ ея, къ легкому <sup>29</sup> покрывалу груди. — Мы пили чай съ опмѣннымъ вкусомъ и дышали <sup>30</sup> сладостию ўтра.

Какое ўтро! сказалъ <sup>31</sup> важный Матіасъ со <sup>32</sup> вздохомъ (и сей вздохъ по флегматическому характеру души его слѣдуетъ у него всегда и за <sup>33</sup> движеніемъ радости и за движеніемъ <sup>34</sup> горести).

Какое прекрасное ўтро! сказала съ чувствомъ нѣжная его <sup>35</sup> супруга.

Какъ весело лешають пшійки! <sup>36</sup> воскликнули дѣти съ <sup>37</sup> улыбною.

Какое прѳогательное <sup>38</sup> согласіе сердець! повторилъ я за всѣми: какое сладкое чувство! какое <sup>39</sup> невинное счастье! мы жалуемся на <sup>40</sup> несовершенство человеческое, продолжалъ я съ нѣкопорымъ <sup>41</sup> жаромъ: мы <sup>42</sup> сѣтуемъ на судьбу, мы <sup>43</sup> обвиняемъ небо; но скажите, не далъ ли намъ Природа все, что только нужно для спокойствія и радости — тихія убѣжища, землю <sup>44</sup> украшенную зеленью и цвѣтами, милыхъ дѣтей, пріятность <sup>45</sup> семейственной жизни, и сверхъ того сердце

---

29 veil. 30 sweetness. 31 stately. 32 a sigh. 33 emotion. 34 sorrow. 35 partner. 36 exclaimed. 37 a smile. 38 accord. 39 innocent. 40 imperfection. 41 fervour. 42 repine. 43 accuse. 44 ornamented. 45 domestic.

доброе, чувствительное, нѣжное? Чего <sup>46</sup> недостаётъ для наслажденія чувствъ и для <sup>47</sup> занятія мысли? Ахъ! если человекъ недоволенъ судьбою своею, то это отъ того, что <sup>48</sup> искусственной порядокъ общества <sup>49</sup> разрушилъ порядокъ души и природы! Хозяинъ и хозяйка взглянули на меня съ <sup>50</sup> прѣгательнымъ взоромъ, коюрой <sup>51</sup> изъяснилъ мнѣ ихъ чувство.

Едва ли могъ я принудить себя сказать имъ: просшите. *Ismailoff.*



## LESSON IV.

### ГИБРАЛТАРЪ.

Не видавъ нѣсколько дней кромѣ неба и земли съ удовольствіемъ смотрю на тѣ Геркулесовы <sup>1</sup> столпы, коюрыми <sup>2</sup> означался <sup>3</sup> предѣлъ древняго міра. Высокая <sup>4</sup> утѣсистая <sup>5</sup> скала Гибралтара, кажется падаетъ на корабль мой, и подобно какъ все великое и сильное <sup>6</sup> обращаетъ на себя вниманіе. На <sup>7</sup> вершинѣ ся въ <sup>8</sup> поднебѣсной высотѣ,

---

<sup>46</sup> still wanting. <sup>47</sup> occupation. <sup>48</sup> artificial. <sup>49</sup> has destroyed. <sup>50</sup> full of feeling. <sup>51</sup> told.

<sup>1</sup> pillars. <sup>2</sup> marked. <sup>3</sup> boundary. <sup>4</sup> steep. <sup>5</sup> rock. <sup>6</sup> attracts. <sup>7</sup> summit. <sup>8</sup> towering.

видѣнь телеграфъ, а при ономъ домикъ,  
 9 мелькающій между <sup>10</sup> проходящихъ облаковъ;  
 къ сѣверу <sup>11</sup> пологій зелёный берегъ Андалузіи  
 узкимъ песчанымъ <sup>12</sup> перешейкомъ едва ка-  
 сается гранишной <sup>13</sup> громадѣ Гибралшара;  
 обширная <sup>14</sup> бухта въ <sup>15</sup> окружности около  
 бо верстѣ, идѣтъ отъ крѣпости на западъ,  
<sup>16</sup> загибаясь въ <sup>17</sup> правильномъ <sup>18</sup> полукругѣ,  
 открытомъ къ Африканскому берегу. По на-  
 бережной сего <sup>19</sup> залива, видно множество  
 селеній, <sup>20</sup> крѣпостей и городовъ; только  
 на <sup>21</sup> пушечный выстрѣлъ отъ Гибралшара  
 одна за одною лежатъ <sup>22</sup> Испанскія крѣ-  
 пости *Санъ Филиппа* и *Санъ Рока*; прямо  
 противъ ихъ видѣнь *Алжезирасъ*. Къ Сѣверу  
 вдали <sup>23</sup> синѣющія горы Андалузіи, къ Югу  
 же берегъ Африки <sup>24</sup> украшается <sup>25</sup> огромными  
 горами. Абилла, высочайшая изъ нихъ, со-  
 ставляетъ второй <sup>26</sup> столпъ Геркулесовыхъ  
 воротъ. Цейша, Испанская крѣпость, леж-  
 ащая на Варварійскомъ берегу, шакъ сказа-  
 ть <sup>27</sup> стережешь Гибралшаръ.

---

9 just visible. 10 passing. 11 sloping. 12 neck of land.  
 13 mass. 14 bay. 15 circumference. 16 bending. 17 regular.  
 18 semicircle. 19 gulph. 20 fortresses. 21 cannon. 22 Spa-  
 nish. 23 appear. 24 is ornamented. 25 vast. 26 pillar 27 se-  
 ems to guard.

Нѣсколько узкихъ, <sup>28</sup> кривыхъ <sup>29</sup> улицъ составляютъ небольшой городокъ, шолстая <sup>30</sup> стѣна съ юга, запада и сѣвера <sup>31</sup> закрываетъ его такъ, что ни съ моря, ни отъ Испанскихъ крѣпостей его не <sup>32</sup> видно. Дóмы вновь <sup>33</sup> построенные на Англійскій <sup>34</sup> вкусъ, дѣлаютъ совершенную <sup>35</sup> противоположность съ <sup>36</sup> старыми Испанской архитекшúры, кошóрыхъ <sup>37</sup> плоскiя <sup>38</sup> крыши и <sup>39</sup> четвероугольныя <sup>40</sup> башенки, какъ по дикому, <sup>41</sup> унылому положенiю, такъ и великимъ жарамъ, здѣсь бывающимъ, болѣе <sup>42</sup> приличествуютъ и климашу и мѣспу, нежели <sup>43</sup> веселые, красивые Англiйскiе домики. Два дни <sup>44</sup> бродили мы по горѣ, <sup>45</sup> взбирались къ облакамъ, <sup>46</sup> спускались въ <sup>47</sup> пропасти и лáзили по <sup>48</sup> крушизнамъ. <sup>49</sup> Непрису́пность Гибралтáра съ пѣрваго взгляда <sup>50</sup> очевидна; по шóчному же изслѣдованiю укрѣплѣнiя его непреодолимы. Представьте себѣ гранишную гóру, копóрой сѣверная и востóчная стóроны <sup>51</sup> совершенно <sup>52</sup> отвѣсны, западная и южная хотя не такъ высоки, но такъ же <sup>53</sup> круты. Море при <sup>54</sup> по-

---

28 crooked. 29 streets. 30 wall. 31 covers. 32 seen. 33 rebuilt. 34 taste. 35 contrast. 36 antique. 37 flat. 38 roofs. 39 quadrangular. 40 towers. 41 dreary. 42 adapted. 43 cheerful. 44 wandered. 45 climbed up. 46 descended. 47 abyss. 48 precipices. 49 the impregnability. 50 evident. 51 entirely 52 perpendicular. 53 steep. 54 foot.

дошвъ горы съ двухъ сторонъ устьяно под-  
водными <sup>55</sup> камнями; волны, <sup>56</sup> разбиваясь объ  
нихъ производятъ <sup>57</sup> бурюнь, <sup>58</sup> препяшству-  
ющий <sup>59</sup> приставашь <sup>60</sup> шлюпкамъ. Новая мола,  
<sup>61</sup> единственное мѣсто, гдѣ можно <sup>62</sup> выса-  
дись войска, какъ и вся западная спорона  
покрыша башарѣями.

<sup>63</sup> Укрѣпленія на сѣверной споронѣ <sup>64</sup> за-  
служивають особенное <sup>65</sup> вниманіе. Въ нѣ-  
сколькихъ <sup>66</sup> шагахъ отъ устья постронъ  
<sup>67</sup> правильный <sup>78</sup> валъ, со рвомъ и равелиномъ,  
<sup>49</sup> занимающий всю небольшую ширину пе-  
решѣйка, копорый въ нѣкопоромъ <sup>70</sup> раз-  
стойніи отъ гласиса <sup>71</sup> перерѣшь каналомъ  
со <sup>72</sup> шлюзами, помощію коихъ въ случаѣ  
<sup>73</sup> осады, все пространство до Испанскихъ  
линій <sup>74</sup> наводняется. Отсюда по лѣстницѣ,  
глубоко <sup>75</sup> выстѣченной въ <sup>76</sup> обрывистой горѣ,  
взошедъ на высоту 200 <sup>77</sup> сажень, чрезъ дверь  
вошли мы въ главныя галлерѣи, изстѣчен-  
ныя въ <sup>78</sup> упробѣ каменной горы. Каждый

---

55 rocks. 56 breaking. 57 surf. 58 preventing. 59 to ap-  
proach. 60 boats. 61 the only. 62 land. 63 fortifications.  
64 are deserving. 65 attention. 66 paces. 67 regular.  
68 rampart. 69 occupying. 70 distance. 71 cut. 72 sluice.  
73 siege. 74 inundated. 75 cut out. 76 rocky. 77 fathom.  
78 bowels.

каземать имѣеть 48 или 24 фунтовую 79 пушку и просторно помѣстить можеть 30 солдатъ. 80 Толщина 81 наружной стѣны имѣеть около 4 сажень; амбразуры, въ ней пробитыя, служать вмѣстѣ для свѣта и для 82 сообщенія воздуха. Позади каземата, дѣлье внутрь горы высечень 83 пороховый погребъ; а вѣль комнага, гдѣ лежатъ всѣ 84 снаряды для одной пушки. Обошедъ нѣсколько комнага, я думалъ, что должны будемъ по прежней 85 опасной лѣсницѣ 86 спускаться внизъ; но насъ повелѣи вверхъ и мы вошли во вѣпорую галлерѣю подобную первой. Осмотрѣвъ оную, ещѣ при рѣза мы должны были 87 подыматься. 88 Переходы сѣи 89 освѣщающаея небольшойми въ горѣ пробитыми окнами. 90 Пробывъ нѣсколько времени во 91 внутренности горы, на высотѣ 300 или 400 сажень 92 излазивъ всѣ галлерѣи и переходы, наконецъ 93 уставъ до 94 чрезмѣрности вышли на 95 вершину, откуда городъ, рейдъ, Испанскія линіи 96 предстали какъ на 97 черпежѣ. И здѣсь на 98 ужасной высотѣ на самомъ 99 краю горы, откуда

---

79 a cannon. 80 the thickness. 81 external. 82 communication. 83 powder - magazine. 84 apparatus. 85 dangerous. 86 descend. 77 ascend. 88 passage. 89 lighted. 90 having remained. 91 the interior. 92 having climbed through. 93 fatigued. 94 excess. 95 summit. 96 appeared. 97 drawing. 98 tremendous. 99 edge.

безъ <sup>100</sup> замѣранія сердца смотрѣть внизъ не  
возможно, <sup>101</sup> поставлены тяжёлыя <sup>102</sup> орудія,  
а позади ихъ моршйры. Со стороны <sup>103</sup> Сре-  
дизёмнаго моря, на углу скалы, природа  
<sup>104</sup> образовала родъ <sup>105</sup> круглой колонны, ко-  
торую называють <sup>106</sup> *дёртова башня*. Невоз-  
можно кажется <sup>107</sup> изчислить сколько <sup>108</sup> изж-  
ивенія, трудовъ и времени стоили сій гал-  
лерей; въ нихъ ни <sup>109</sup> ядра, ни бомбы не  
могутъ <sup>110</sup> причинить никакого <sup>111</sup> вреда гар-  
низону, а какъ нельзя <sup>112</sup> предполагать, чтобы  
можно было <sup>113</sup> подкопать, и <sup>114</sup> обрушить  
каменную гору вышиною болѣе версты; по  
посему Гибралтаръ <sup>115</sup> единственная въ свѣ-  
тѣ крѣпость, гдѣ 5000 солдатъ, имѣя ну-  
жныя <sup>116</sup> запасы, могутъ <sup>117</sup> противустать  
100,000 <sup>118</sup> осаждающихъ.

*Bronefsky.*

---

100 shuddering. 101 are placed. 102 guns. 103 Mediter-  
ranean. 104 has formed. 105 circular. 106 the devil's  
tower. 107 to calculate. 108 expence. 109 cannon ball. 110  
cause. 111 injury. 112 suppose. 113 undermine 114 blow-  
up. 115 unique. 116. amunition. 117 hold out against-  
118 besiegers.





## LESSON V.

St. PETERSBURG.

Вчерашній день по утру, сѣдя у окна моего съ Винкельманомъ въ рукѣ, я <sup>1</sup> предался <sup>2</sup> сладостному <sup>3</sup> мечтанію, въ которомъ тебѣ не могу дать <sup>4</sup> ошчѣта; книга и чѣпанное мною было <sup>5</sup> совершенно забыто. <sup>6</sup> Помню только, что взглянувъ на Неву, покрытую <sup>7</sup> судами, взглянувъ на <sup>8</sup> великолѣпную <sup>9</sup> набережную, на которую <sup>10</sup> благодаря <sup>11</sup> привычку, жили Петербургскіе смѣшрять <sup>12</sup> холоднымъ окомъ, — любясь <sup>13</sup> безчисленнымъ народомъ, который <sup>14</sup> волновался подь моими окнами, симъ <sup>15</sup> чудеснымъ <sup>16</sup> смѣшеніемъ всѣхъ <sup>17</sup> націй, въ которомъ я опличалъ Англичанъ и <sup>18</sup> Азіатцевъ, Французовъ и Калмыковъ, Русскихъ и Финновъ, я сдѣлалъ себѣ слѣдующій <sup>19</sup> вопросъ: что было на этомъ мѣстѣ <sup>20</sup> до построенія Петербурга? Можетъ быть <sup>21</sup> сосновая роща, сырѣй <sup>22</sup> дремучій <sup>23</sup> боръ или <sup>24</sup> топкое болото, <sup>25</sup> поросшее <sup>26</sup> мхомъ

---

1 gave myself up. 2 delightful. 3 reverie. 4 account. 5 entirely. 6 I remember. 7 vessels. 8 grand. 9 quay. 10 thanks. 11 habit. 12 cold, indifferent. 13 innumerable. 14 moved. 15 surprising. 16 mixture, assemblage. 17 nations. 18 Asiatick. 19 question. 20 before. 20 the building. 21 fir. 22 gloomy. 23 wood. wilderness. 24 marshy. 25 over-grown 26 moss.

и <sup>27</sup> брусникою; — ближе къ берегу — <sup>28</sup> ла-  
чуга <sup>29</sup> рыбака, кругомъ которой <sup>30</sup> развѣ-  
шены были мережи, <sup>31</sup> néвода и весь <sup>32</sup> гру-  
бый снарядъ <sup>33</sup> скѹднаго <sup>34</sup> промысла. Сюда,  
можеть быть, съ трудомъ <sup>35</sup> пробира́лся  
<sup>36</sup> охотникъ, какой нибудь <sup>37</sup> длинновласый  
Финь.....

Здѣсь все было <sup>38</sup> безмолвно. Рѣдко чело-  
вѣческій гóлосъ <sup>39</sup> пробуждалъ молчаніе <sup>40</sup> пу-  
стыни дикой, мрачной; а нынѣ? Я взгля-  
нулъ невольно на Троицкій <sup>41</sup> мостъ, по-  
помъ на <sup>42</sup> хижину Великаго Монарха, и  
<sup>43</sup> воображеніе моё <sup>44</sup> представило мнѣ Петра,  
который въ первый разъ <sup>45</sup> обозрѣвалъ берега  
дикой Невы, нынѣ столь прекрасные! — Изъ  
крѣпости Нюсканцъ ещё <sup>46</sup> гремѣли <sup>47</sup> Шведскія  
пушки; <sup>48</sup> устье Невы ещё было покрыто <sup>49</sup> не-  
пріятелемъ, и частые ружейные <sup>50</sup> выстрѣлы  
<sup>51</sup> раздавались по <sup>52</sup> болòшнымъ берегамъ, когда  
великая мысль родилась въ умѣ великаго чело-  
вѣка! здѣсь будетъ гòродъ, сказалъ онъ, <sup>53</sup> чѹдо  
свѣта. Сюда призову всѣ <sup>54</sup> Художества, всѣ  
Искусства. Здѣсь Художества, Искусства, <sup>55</sup> гра-

---

27 cranberries. 28 hut. 29 fisherman. 30 hung np. 31 nets.  
32 coarse. 33 poor. 34 trade. 35 made his way through. 36  
huntsman. 37 long-haired. 38 silent. 39 awaked. 40 wild, desert.  
41 bridge. 42 cottage. 43 imagination. 44 represented. 45 ex-  
plored. 46 thundered. 47 Swedish. 48 mouth. 49 the enemy.  
50 firing. 51 resounded. 52 boggy. 53 wonder. 54 arts. 55 civil.

жданскія <sup>56</sup> установлѣнія и закѣны <sup>57</sup> побѣдѣтъ сѣмую природу. Сказѣлъ и Петербургъ <sup>58</sup> возникъ изъ дѣкаго болѣша.

Съ какѣмъ <sup>59</sup> удовѣльствѣемъ я воображѣлъ сѣбѣ Монѣрха, <sup>60</sup> обѣзрѣвающаго начѣльныя рабѣшы: здѣсь валъ крѣпѣщи, тамъ магазѣны, фѣбрики, адмиралшѣйство. Въ ѣжидѣніи <sup>61</sup> обѣдни въ <sup>62</sup> прѣздничный день или въ день <sup>63</sup> шоржествѣ побѣды, Госудѣрь чѣсто сѣживѣлъ на нѣвомъ валѣ съ плѣномъ гѣрода въ рукахъ, прѣпивъ <sup>64</sup> крѣпѣстныхъ ворѣшъ, <sup>65</sup> украшенныхъ <sup>66</sup> изваяніемъ Апѣстола Пѣсра, изъ <sup>67</sup> грѣбаго дѣрева. Именемъ <sup>68</sup> Святѣаго дѣлѣнъ былъ назѣваться гѣродъ, и на <sup>69</sup> жестяной доскѣ, прибѣшой подѣ его изваяніемъ, изображѣлся слѣвный въ <sup>70</sup> лѣшописяхъ мѣра 1703 годѣ. На блѣжнемъ баспѣдѣ <sup>71</sup> разѣвѣлся жѣлтый флагъ съ большѣмъ <sup>72</sup> чѣрнымъ <sup>73</sup> орѣмъ, копѣрый <sup>74</sup> заклѣчалъ въ <sup>75</sup> копѣяхъ сѣоихъ чѣтыре мѣря, <sup>76</sup> подѣлѣшныя Россѣи. Здѣсь <sup>77</sup> толпѣлись вокрѣмъ Монѣрха <sup>78</sup> инострѣнные <sup>79</sup> корабѣльщики, <sup>80</sup> матрѣсы, Худѣжники, Учѣные, <sup>81</sup> Полковѣдцы, Вѣины; межъ нѣми, <sup>82</sup> про-

---

56 institutions. 57 will conquer. 58 arose. 59 pleasure. 60 examining. 61 liturgy. holyday. 63 celebration. 64 of the fortress. 65 ornamented. 66 sculpture. 67 rude. 68 the Saint. 69 tin. 70 annals. 71 floated. 72 black. 73 eagle. 74 held. 75 claws. 76 subject. 77 crowded. 78 foreign. 79 ship-builders. 80 sailors. 81 gennerals 82 common.

стѣй <sup>83</sup> рождѣніемъ , великій умомъ ; <sup>84</sup> любимецъ Царскій Мѣншиковъ , великодѣшный Долгорукій , храбрый и <sup>85</sup> дѣятельный Шеремѣевъ и вся фаланга ирѣевъ , которые <sup>86</sup> создали съ Петромъ <sup>87</sup> величіе Рускаго Царства.

*Batushkoff.*



## LESSON VI.

### THE FIRST ENGLISH IN RUSSIA.

Іоанново <sup>1</sup> царствованіе <sup>2</sup> ознаменовалось <sup>3</sup> тѣснымъ <sup>4</sup> союзомъ Россіи съ одною изъ <sup>5</sup> знаменитѣйшихъ <sup>6</sup> державъ Европейскихъ , которая была <sup>7</sup> внѣ ея политическаго горизонта , <sup>8</sup> едва <sup>9</sup> знала объ ней по <sup>10</sup> слуху. Вдругъ сей <sup>11</sup> предприимчивый народъ <sup>12</sup> нашёлъ <sup>13</sup> доступъ къ самымъ <sup>14</sup> отдалённымъ , всѣхъ менѣе извѣстнымъ странамъ Государства Іоаннова , чтобы съ великою <sup>15</sup> выгодною для себя дать намъ новыя средства <sup>16</sup> обогащенія , новыя <sup>17</sup> способы <sup>18</sup> гражданскаго

---

83 birth. 84 the favourite. 85 active. 86 created. 87 the grandeur.

1 reign. 2 was distinguished. 3 close. 4 alliance 5 the most eminent. 6 power. 7 beyond. 8 scarcely. 9 knew. 10 report. 11 enterprising. 12 found. 13 access. 14 remote. 15 advantage. 16 acquirement of riches. 17 means. 18 civil.

<sup>19</sup> образованія. Еще Англія не была тогда <sup>20</sup> первостепенною <sup>21</sup> морскою державою, но уже <sup>22</sup> стремилась къ сей <sup>23</sup> цѣли, <sup>24</sup> соревнуя Испаніи, Португалліи, Венэціи и Генуѣ; хотѣла <sup>25</sup> проложитъ путь въ Кипай, въ Индію <sup>26</sup> Ледовитымъ моремъ, и весною въ 1553 году, въ царствованіе юнаго Эдуарда VI, послала три корабля въ Океанъ Сѣверный.

<sup>27</sup> Начальниками ихъ были Гугъ Виллоби и Капшанъ Ченселерь. <sup>28</sup> Разлученные <sup>29</sup> бурей, сии корабли уже не могли <sup>30</sup> соединиться; два изъ нихъ <sup>31</sup> погибли у береговъ Россійской Лапландіи; въ <sup>32</sup> пристани Арцинъ, гдѣ Гугъ Виллоби <sup>33</sup> замёрзъ со всѣми людьми своими: зимою, въ 1554 году, <sup>34</sup> рыбаки Лапландскіе <sup>35</sup> нашли его <sup>36</sup> мёртвого, сидящаго въ <sup>37</sup> шалашѣ за своимъ Журналомъ. Но Капшанъ Ченселерь <sup>38</sup> благополучно <sup>39</sup> доплылъ до Бѣлаго моря; 24 Августа, 1553 года, <sup>40</sup> вошелъ въ Двинскій <sup>41</sup> заливъ и присталъ къ берегу, гдѣ былъ тогда <sup>42</sup> монастырь С. Николая, и гдѣ послѣ основанъ городъ Архангельскъ.

Англичане увидѣли людей, <sup>43</sup> изумленныхъ

---

19 refinement. 20 first-rate. 21 maritime. 22 made rapid strides. 23 end. 24 rivalling. 25 to open. 26 frozen. 27 commander. 28 dispersed. 29 a storm. 30 join company. 31 were lost. 32 bay. 33 was frozen. 34 fishermen. 35 found. 36 dead. 37 hut. 38 safely. 39 arrived. 40 entered. 41 gulf. 42 monastery. 43 amazed.

44 явлѣніемъ большаго корабля; 45 свѣдали  
ошъ нихъ, что сей бѣрегъ есть Россійскій;  
сказали, что имѣють ошъ Короля Англійс-  
каго письмó къ Царю и 46 желаютъ 47 завесѣи  
съ нами 48 поргóвлю. Давъ имъ 49 съѣстныя  
припасы, начальники Двинской земли 50 не-  
мѣленно отправили 51 гонца къ Іоáнну, ко-  
порый пошчасъ по́нялъ 52 важность сего  
случая, 53 благопріятнаго для успѣховъ нашей  
поргóвли, 54 велѣлъ Чѣнселеру бытъ въ  
55 Москвѣ и доставилъ ему всѣ 56 возмóжныя  
57 удóбности въ путь.

Чѣнселеръ подалъ слѣдующую 58 гра́моту  
Эдуардову, писанную на 59 разныхъ языкахъ  
ко всѣмъ 60 Сѣвернымъ и 61 Воспóчнымъ  
62 Госудáрямъ :

« Эдуардъ V вамъ, Царь, Князь, 63 влас-  
тители, 64 судьи земли, во всѣхъ странахъ подъ  
солнцемъ, желаетъ 65 мѣра, 66 спокойствія и  
чести, вамъ и странамъ вашимъ! Господь  
67 Всемо́гущій даровалъ человеку сердце 68 дру-  
желюбное, да 69 благошворитъ ближнимъ и

44 appearance. 45 they learned. 46 they wish. 47 to establish.  
48 commerce. 49 provisions. 50 immediately. 51 mes-  
senger. 52 importance. 53 propitious. 54 ordered. 55 Moscow.  
56 possible. 57 facilities. 58 epistle. 59 various. 60 northern.  
61 eastern. 62 sovereigns. 63 governors. 64 judges. 65 peace.  
66 tranquillity 67 Almighty. 68 friendly. 69 to do good.

въ особѣнности 7<sup>о</sup> странникамъ, которые, приѣзжая къ намъ изъ мѣстъ 7<sup>1</sup> отдаленныхъ, ясно 7<sup>2</sup> доказывающъ тѣмъ 7<sup>3</sup> превосходную любовь свою къ 7<sup>4</sup> братскому 7<sup>5</sup> общежитію. Такъ думали ошцы наши, всегда 7<sup>6</sup> гостепріимные, всегда 7<sup>7</sup> ласковые къ 7<sup>8</sup> иноземцамъ, прѣбующимъ 7<sup>9</sup> покровительству.

Всѣ люди имѣють право на гостепріимство, но еще болѣе 8<sup>о</sup> купцы, презирая 8<sup>1</sup> опасности и труды, оставляя за собою моря и 8<sup>2</sup> пустыни, для того, чтобы 8<sup>3</sup> благословенными 8<sup>4</sup> плодами землй своей 8<sup>5</sup> обогатить страны дальнія и 8<sup>6</sup> взаимно обогатиться ихъ 8<sup>7</sup> произведеніями: ибо 8<sup>8</sup> Господь 8<sup>9</sup> вселенныя 9<sup>о</sup> разсѣялъ дары Его 9<sup>1</sup> благасти, чтобы народы имѣли 9<sup>2</sup> нужду другъ въ другъ, и чтобы взаимными 9<sup>3</sup> услугами 9<sup>4</sup> утверждалась 9<sup>5</sup> пріязнь между людьми.

Съ симъ 9<sup>6</sup> намѣреніемъ нѣкоторые изъ нашихъ 9<sup>7</sup> подданныхъ 9<sup>8</sup> предпріяли дальнее 9<sup>9</sup> путешествіе моремъ, и 10<sup>о</sup> прѣбывали отъ насъ

70 strangers. 71 distant. 72 they prove. 73 exceeding. 74 brotherly. 75 community. 76 hospitable. 77 kind. 78 foreigners. 79 protection. 80 merchants. 81 dangers. 82 deserts. 83 blessed. 84 fruits. 85 to enrich. 86 mutually. 87 productions. 88 the Lord. 89 universe. 90 has scattered. 91 bounty. 92 need. 93 services. 94 establish. 95 good-will. 96 intention. 97 subjects. 98 have undertaken. 99 a voyage. 100 solicited.

<sup>101</sup> согласія. Исполняя желаніе ихъ, мы позволили мужу <sup>102</sup> достойному, Гугу Виллоби, и шоварищамъ его, нашимъ вѣрнымъ слугамъ, ѣхать въ страны, <sup>103</sup> донѣнъ <sup>104</sup> неизвѣстныя, и мѣнясь съ ними избыткомъ; брать, чего не имѣемъ, и давать, чѣмъ <sup>105</sup> изобилуемъ, для обоюдной пользы и дружества.

И такъ <sup>106</sup> молимъ васъ, Царь, <sup>107</sup> Князь и власшители, чтобы вы <sup>108</sup> свободно пропустили сихъ людей чрезъ свои земли: ибо онѣ не <sup>109</sup> коснутся ничего безъ вашего дозволенія. Не <sup>110</sup> забудьте <sup>111</sup> человѣчества, <sup>112</sup> великодушно <sup>113</sup> помогите имъ въ нуждѣ, и пріймите опъ нихъ, чѣмъ мѣгутъ <sup>114</sup> вознаградить васъ.

<sup>115</sup> Поступите съ ними, какъ хотите, чтобы мы поступили съ вашими <sup>116</sup> слугами если онѣ когда-нибудь къ намъ заѣдутъ. А мы <sup>117</sup> клянѣмся Богомъ, Господомъ всего <sup>118</sup> сущаго на небесахъ, на землѣ и въ морѣ, клянѣмся жизнию и <sup>119</sup> благомъ нашего <sup>120</sup> Царства, что всякаго изъ вашихъ подданныхъ встрѣтимъ какъ <sup>121</sup> единоплемянника и друга,

---

<sup>101</sup> permission. <sup>102</sup> worthy. <sup>103</sup> hitherto. <sup>104</sup> unknown. <sup>105</sup> we abound. <sup>106</sup> we pray. <sup>107</sup> Princes. <sup>108</sup> freely. <sup>109</sup> will not touch. <sup>110</sup> forget. <sup>111</sup> humanity. <sup>112</sup> magnanimously. <sup>113</sup> assist. <sup>114</sup> recompense. <sup>115</sup> deal. <sup>116</sup> servants. <sup>117</sup> swear. <sup>118</sup> which exists. <sup>119</sup> the welfare. <sup>120</sup> kingdom. <sup>121</sup> fellow-



изъ <sup>122</sup> благодарности за любовь, которую ока-  
жете нашимъ. За симъ молимъ Бога <sup>123</sup> Все-  
держителя, да сподобитъ васъ земнаго <sup>124</sup> дол-  
готѣія и <sup>125</sup> мѣра <sup>126</sup> вѣчнаго. <sup>127</sup> Данó въ Лон-  
донѣ, нашей <sup>128</sup> столицѣ, въ лѣто отъ <sup>129</sup> со-  
творенія міра 5517, <sup>130</sup> Царствованія нашего  
въ 7мое.

---

countryman. 122 gratitude. 123. Almighty. 124 length of  
days. 125 peace. 126 eternal. 127 given. 128 capital. 129 the  
creation. 130 reign.



---

## ИЗБРАННЫЯ СТИХОТВОРЕНІЯ.

### О селѣ и Соловѣй.

#### *Бѣснѣ.*

Оселѣ увидѣлъ соловья ,  
И говорѣтъ ему : « послушай-ко , дружѣще !  
Ты , скáзываюшъ , пѣшь великій мастерѣще :  
Желáлъ бы óчень я  
Самъ посудѣшь , пшвоё послушавъ пѣнье ,  
Велѣко ли въ шебѣ умѣнье . »

Тутъ соловѣй являть своё искѣство сшаль :  
Защóлкалъ , засвисшáлъ ,  
На тѣсячу ладóвъ , шянóль , переливáлся ;  
То нѣжно онъ ослабѣвáлъ ,  
И шóмной въ далекъ свирѣлью опдавáлся ;  
То мѣлкой дрóбью вдругъ по рóщѣ разсыпáлся .  
Внимáло все шогдá  
Любѣмцу и пѣвцу Аврóры ,  
Зашѣхли въшерки , замóкли пшѣчекъ хóры ,  
И прилегли шпадá .  
Чуть — чуть дышá паштѣхъ имъ любовáлся ,  
И шóлько иногдá  
Внимáя соловью , паштѣшкѣ улыбáлся .

---

## READING LESSONS IN VERSE.

### THE ASS AND THE NIGHTINGALE.

#### *A fable.*

An ass a nightingale espied,  
And shouted out, «Holla! holla! good friend,  
«Thou art a first rate singer they pretend:—  
Now let me hear thee, that I may decide;  
I really wish to know—the world is partial ever—  
If thou hast this great gift, and art indeed so clever:»

The nightingale began her heavenly lays;  
Through all the regions of sweet music ranging,  
Varying her song a thousand different ways;  
Rising and falling, lingering ever changing:  
Full of wild rapture now — then sinking oft  
To almost silence—melancholy, soft  
As distant shepherds pipe at evening's close:—  
Filling the wood with lovelier music; — there  
All nature seems to listen and repose:  
No zephyr dares disturb the tranquil air:—  
All other voices of the grove are still,  
And the charmed flocks lay down beside the rill.

The shepherd like a statue stands—afraid.  
His breathing may disturb the melody,

Скончалъ пѣвецъ, и ждалъ себѣ хвалы попомъ.

« Изрядно, говорить осель, сказаешь не ложно,

Тебѣ безъ скуки слушать можно,

А жаль что не знакомъ

Ты съ нашимъ пѣпухомъ!

Ещёбъ ты больше наводстрѣлся,

Когда бы у него немножко поучился.»

Услыша судъ такой, мой бѣдный соловей

Вспорхнулъ—и полетѣлъ за прѣдевящъ полей,

Избави Богъ и насъ ошъ эдакихъ судей!

*Крыловъ.*



His finger pointing to the harmonious tree ,  
Seems to say , «Listen!» to his favourite maid.  
The singer ceased : — and to the critic bow'd ,  
Who cock'd his ears and bray'd aloud : —

« Now that's so so;—thou really hast some merit,  
Curtail thy song and critics then may hear it ,  
Thy voice wants sharpness :— but if chanticleer  
Would give thee a few lessons , doubtless he  
Might raise thy voice and modulate thy ear ;  
And thou in spite of all thy faults may'st be  
A very decent singer. » —

The poor bird

In silent modesty the critic heard ,  
And winged her peaceful flight into the air ,  
O'er many and many a field and forest fair.  
Many such critics you and I have seen.  
Heaven be our screen!

*Translated by Bowring.*



## Богачъ и Бѣднякъ.

## Бѣснѣя.

Сей свѣтъ шакѡвъ, что кто богачъ,  
 Тотъ каждому и другъ, и братъ.  
 Хошъ не имѣй заслугъ, ни чина,  
 Хошъ родомъ будь изъ конюховъ,  
     Дѣтина будешь, какъ дѣтина.  
 А бѣдный, будь хошъ изъ Князей,  
 Хошъ разумъ Ангельскій имѣй,  
 И всѣ достѡинства достѡинѣйшихъ людей,  
     Того почтенья не дождешься,  
 Какое опѡ всѣхъ богачымъ отдается.  
     Бѣднякъ въ какой-то домъ пришель;  
 Онъ знанье, умъ и чинъ съ заслугами имѣлъ;  
 Но бѣдняка никто не шолько что не встрѣпиль,  
     Никто и не примѣпиль,  
 Иль можешь быть, никто примѣпиль не хотѣлъ.  
 Бѣднякъ нашъ шѡ къ шѡму, шѡ къ эшѡму подходитъ,  
 Со всѣми разговоръ и шакъ и сякъ заводиль,  
     Но каждый бѣдняку въ опшѣтъ:  
     Корѡткое иль да, иль нѣтъ.  
 Привѣшества ни въ комъ бѣднякъ нашъ не находитъ.  
     Потѡмъ  
     За бѣднякомъ  
 Богачъ прѣхаль въ шѡтъ же домъ.  
     Хошъ заслугой, ни умѡмъ  
     Ни чиномъ онъ не опличался,

## RICH AND POOR.

*A Fable.*

So goes the world; — if wealthy you may call  
*This* friend, *that* brother; — friends and brothers all :  
 Though you are worthless — witless, never mind it;  
 You may have been a stable-boy — what then ?  
 'Tis wealth, good Sir, makes honourable men.  
 You seek respect, no doubt, and you will find it.

But if your poor, heaven help you! though your sire  
 Had Royal blood within him, and though you  
 Possess the intellect of angels too,  
 'Tis all in vain; — the world will ne'er enquire  
 On such a score: — why should it take the pains?  
 'Tis easier to weigh purses, sure, than brains.

I once saw a poor devil, keen and clever,  
 Witty and wise: — he paid a man a visit,  
 And no one noticed him, and no one ever  
 Gave him a welcome. «Strange,» cried I, «whence  
                   is it?»

He walked on this side, then on that,  
 He tried to introduce a social chat;  
 Now here, now there, — in vain he tried;  
 Some formally and freezingly replied,  
                   And some

Но то́лько въ двѣри показáлся,  
 Сказáть нельзя́ какой пріѣмъ!  
 Всѣ вспáли пѣредъ богачѣмъ,  
 Всякъ богачá съ почтѣніемъ встрѣчае́тъ,  
 Всякъ сту́ль и мѣсто усту́паетъ;  
 И подъ руки́ его беру́тъ;  
 То шу́тъ,  
 То шамъ его сажáютъ;  
 Покло́ны чу́ть ему́ земны́е не кладу́тъ,  
 И мѣры нѣтъ какъ велича́ютъ.  
 Бѣднякъъ, люде́й уви́дя лестъ,  
 Къ богáшому напра́ву чесъъ,  
 Къ себѣ́ напра́вое презрѣ́ніе,  
 Вступи́лъ о томъ съ своимъ сосѣдомъ въ рассу́жде́ніе.  
 — Зачѣ́мъ, онъ говори́тъ ему́;  
 Досто́инствамъ, уму́,  
 Богáштво свѣ́тъ предпочи́шаетъ? —  
 « Легко́ мой другъ поня́шь:  
 « Досто́инства́ нельзя́ заня́тъ,  
 « А де́ньги вса́кой занима́ешь.»

*Хемницеръ.*





Said by their silence — «Better stay at home».

A rich man burst the door,

As Cræsus rich I'm sure,

He could not pride himself upon his wit.

Nor wisdom — for he had not got a bit:

He had what's better — he had wealth.

What a confusion! all stand up erect —

These crowd around to ask him of his health;

These bow in humble duty and respect;

And these arrange a sofa or a chair,

And these conduct him there.

« Allow me, Sir, the honour; » — then a bow

Down to the earth — Is't possible to show

Meet gratitude for such kind condescension?

The poor man hung his head,

And to himself he said,

«This is indeed beyond my comprehension»

Then looking round

One friendly face he found,

And said — «Pray tell me why is wealth preferr'd

To wisdom?» — «That's a silly question, friend?»

Replied the other — «have you never heard,

A man may lend his store

Of gold or silver ore,

But wisdom none can borrow, none can lend?»

*Translated by Bowring.*



К л а д б и щ е.

*Одѣнь голось.*

Спращаю въ могилѣ, хладной и шемной! —  
Вѣшры памь воюшь, гробы шрасушся,,  
Бѣлыя коспи стучають.

*Другой голось.*

Тихо въ могилѣ, мягкой, покойной!  
Вѣшры памь вѣюшь, спящимъ прохладно,  
Травки, цвѣшочки растушь.

*Первой.*

Червь кровоглавый почишь умершихъ,  
Въ черепахъ желтыхъ жабы гнѣздяшся,  
Змѣи въ кропивѣ шипяють.

*Второй.*

Крѣпокъ сонъ мершвыхъ, сладоспень, крошокъ;  
Въ гробѣ нѣшь бѣри; нѣжныя пшйчки  
Пѣснь на могилѣ поюшь.

*Первой.*

Тамъ обитають черныя враны,  
Ачныя пшйцы; хищныя звѣри  
Съ ревомъ копають въ землѣ.

*Второй.*

Маленькой кроликъ въ правкѣ зеленой  
Съ милой подружкой памь отдыхаешъ,  
Голубъ на вѣшочкѣ спитъ.

THE CHURCH-YARD.

*First voice.*

How frightful the grave! how deserted and drear!  
With the howls of the storm-wind the creaks of the bier  
And the white bones all clattering together!

*Second voice.*

How peaceful the grave! its quiet how deep:  
Its zephyrs breathe calmly, and soft is its sleep,  
And flow'rets perfume it with ether.

*First voice.*

There riots the blood-crested worm on the dead,  
And the yellow scull serves the foul toad for a bed,  
And snakes in its nettle-weeds hiss.

*Second voice.*

How lovely, how sweet the repose of the tomb:  
No tempests are there:—but the nightingales come  
And chant their sweet chorus of bliss.

*First voice.*

The ravens of night flap their wings o'er the grave:—  
'Tis the vulture's abode:—tis the wolf's dreary cave  
Where they tear up the dead with their fangs.

*Second voice.*

There the coney at evening disports with his love,  
Or rests on the sod; — while the turtles above,  
Repose on the bough that o'erhangs.

*Первой.*

Сырость со мглою , густо мѣшаясь ,  
Плавають тамо въ воздухъ душномъ ;  
Древо безъ листьевъ стойшь.

*Второй.*

Тамо спруйшя въ воздухъ свѣпломъ  
Паръ благовонный синихъ фіалокъ ,  
Бѣлыхъ ясминовъ , лилей.

*Первой.*

Спранникъ боится мертвой юдоли ;  
Ужась и трепещъ чувствуя въ сердцахъ ,  
Мимо кладбища спышшь.

*Второй.*

Спранникъ усталый видитъ обитель  
Вѣчнаго міра — посохъ бросаешь ,  
Тамъ остаешься навѣкъ.

*Карамзинъ.*



*First voice.*

Foul darkness and dampness with poisonous breath,  
And loathsome decay fill the dwelling of death,  
The trees are all barren and bare!

*Second voice.*

O soft are the breezes that play round the tomb.  
And sweet with the violet's wafted perfume,  
With lilies and jessamine fair.

*First voice.*

The pilgrim who reaches this valley of tears  
Would fain hurry by, and with trembling and fears,  
He is launched on the wreck-covered river!

*Second voice.*

The traveller outworn with life's pilgrimage dreary  
Lays down his rude staff, like one that is weary,  
And sweetly reposes for ever.

*Translated by Bowring.*



## НАРОДНАЯ ПѢСНЯ.

По́верхъ дѣбчика  
 Два голѣбчика  
 Цѣловáлися,  
 Миловáлися,  
 Сизы крыльями  
 Обнимáлися;  
 Вдругъ напáль на нихъ  
 Младъ ясѣнь соколъ,  
 Онъ какъ разъ убилъ  
 Сиза голубя,  
 Сиза голубя,  
 Мохноно́гова,  
 Прóлилъ кровь егó  
 По сырѣ дубѣ,  
 Разметáль перья  
 По чистѣ полю,  
 И развѣяль пухъ  
 По поднебесью.  
     Ахъ распла́калась,  
 Разрыда́лася  
 Туть голѣбушка  
 По голѣбчикѣ —  
 Ты не плачь, не плачь  
 Нѣжна пта́шечка!  
 Младъ ясѣнь соколъ

## A NATIONAL SONG.


On an oak there sate  
 A turtle with his mate —  
 There in amorous meeting  
 One another greeting ,  
 Each with flapping wing  
 All its joy repeating.  
 Swift a vulture sprung ,  
 Eagle - eyed and young ,  
 And he bore away  
 That poor turtle grey —  
 That poor turtle gray ,  
 With his ruby feet ,  
 On the oak-tree wood  
 Spilt the turtle's blood :  
 All the plumage soft  
 O'er the meadow driven ;  
 All his down aloft  
 Borne by winds of heaven.  
 O! how desolate  
 Sat the mourning mate ;  
 How she moan'd and sigh'd  
 While her turtle died.  
 Weep not why complain ,  
 Little turtle, love ?  
 Said the vulture then

Ей възгòвориль :  
 Я изъ-за моря  
 Изъ - за сѣняго  
 Пригоню къ тебѣ  
 Голубѣй стадо ;  
 Выбирай себѣ  
 Лучша гóлубя ,  
 Чѣста , сѣзова ,  
 Мòхнонòгова. —  
 Не лешѣ злодѣй  
 За синѣ море !  
 Говорѣшь ему  
 Бѣдна пшáшечка :  
 Не гонѣ ко мнѣ  
 Голубѣй спадо ;  
 Охъ ! утѣшишь ли  
 Меня гóлубь твоя ,  
 Милымъ дѣпушкамъ  
 Не роднóй ошѣць ?





To the widow'd dove,  
O'er the azure sea,  
I will bring to thee  
Flocks of turtles, where  
Thou shalt choose thy dear,  
Choose thy lover sweet,  
Choose the brightest best,  
With a fair gray breast  
And with ruby feet.»  
«Fly not murderous bird!  
O'er the azure sea  
Thus the dove was heard  
Answering mournfully:  
Bring no flocks to me  
O'er the azure sea;  
Can their presence be  
Comfort to my breast?  
Will they bring to me  
The father of my nest?



## Д О Б Р А Я   н о ч ь .

« Простѣй, простѣй, мой край родной,  
 Ужь скрылся ты въ волнахъ!  
 Косатка вьётся, вѣтръ ночной  
 Играетъ въ парусахъ.  
 Ужь поноушь огненны лучи  
 Въ бездонной синевѣ,  
 Мой край родной, простѣй, простѣй!  
 Ночь добрая тебѣ.

« Проснётся день, его краса  
 Утѣшитъ Божій свѣтъ,  
 Увижу море, небеса;  
 А родины ужъ нѣтъ.  
 Отцовскій домъ покинулъ я,  
 Травой онъ заросётъ,  
 Собака вѣрная моя  
 Выть станетъ у воротъ.

« Ко мнѣ, ко мнѣ, пажъ юный мой!  
 Но ты дрожишь какъ листъ;  
 Иль страшень ревъ волны морской?  
 Иль вѣтра буйный свистъ?  
 Не плачь! корабль мой новъ! плыву  
 Ужь я не въ первый разъ,  
 И быстрый соколъ на лешу  
 Не перегонитъ насъ.»

GOOD NIGHT.

« Adieu, adieu! my native shore  
Fades o'er the waters blue,  
The night-winds sigh, the breakers roar,  
And shrieks the wild seamew.  
Yon sun that sets upon the sea  
We follow in his flight;  
Farewell awhile to him and thee,  
My native land — good night!

« A few short hours and he will rise.  
To give the morrow birth;  
And I shall hail the main and skies,  
But not my mother earth.  
Deserted is my own good hall,  
Its hearth is desolate,  
Wild weeds are gathering on the wall;  
My dog howls at the gate.

« Come hither, hither, my little page!  
Why dost thou weep and wail?  
Or dost thou dread the billow's rage,  
Or tremble at the gale?  
But dash the tear-drop from thine eye;  
Our ship is swift and strong:  
Our fleetest falcon scarce can fly  
More merrily along.»

— Не буйный вѣтръ спрашивать меня,  
 Не шумъ угрюмыхъ волнъ,  
 Но не дивись, Сирь Чейльдъ, что я  
 Тоски сердечной полнъ,  
 Прощаясь грустно было мнѣ  
 Съ родимою, съ отцѣмъ.  
 Теперѣ надежды всѣ въ тебѣ  
 И въ комъ-то не земномъ.

— Не скрылъ отецъ тоски своей  
 Какъ спалъ благословляя,  
 Но доля матери моей  
 День плакать, ночь неспать. —  
 Ты правъ, ты правъ, мой Пажъ молодой,  
 Какъ смѣшь винить тебя?  
 Съ твоей невинной простотой,  
 Ахъ! плакалъ бы и я.

« Но вотъ, и кормщикъ мой сидитъ  
 Весь полонъ черныхъ думъ.  
 Иль буйный вѣтръ тебя спрашивать,  
 Иль моря грозный шумъ? »  
 — Сирь Чейльдъ! не робокъ я душой,  
 Не умереть боюсь:  
 Но я съ дѣтьми, но я съ женой  
 Въ первые разсшаюсь!

— Проснувшись завтра, на зарѣ,  
 И дѣши и жена,

« Let winds be shrill, let waves roll high,  
I fear not wave nor wind  
Yet marvel not, Sir Childe, that I  
Am sorrowful in mind;  
For I have from my father gone,  
A mother whom I love,  
And have no friend, save these alone,  
But thee — and one above.

« My father blessed me fervently,  
Yet did not much complain;  
But sorely will my mother sigh  
Till I come back again. » —

« Enough, enough, my little lad!  
Such tears become thine eye;  
If I thy guileless bosom had  
Mine own would not be dry.

« Come hither, hither my staunch yeoman,  
Why dost thou look so pale?  
Or dost thou dread a French foeman?  
« Or shiver at the gale? » —  
« Deem'st thou I tremble for my life?  
Sir Childe I'm not so weak;  
But thinking on an absent wife  
Will blanch a faithful cheek.

« My spouse and boys dwell near thy hall,  
Along the bordering lake,

Малюшки спрósятъ обо мнѣ  
И всплáчется она!

« Ты правъ, ты правъ! и какъ пеняшь,  
Мой дóбрый удалецъ;  
Тебѣ, другъ, мóжно горевáшь!  
И мужъ ты и ошéцъ!

« Но я! ахъ трóдно вѣрить мнѣ  
Слезáмъ прелéстныхъ глазъ!  
Любóвью нóвою онѣ  
Осушáтся безъ насъ!  
Лишь тѣмъ однѣмъ терзáюсь я,  
Не въ сýлахъ то забыть,  
Что нѣтъ на свѣтѣ у меня,  
О комъ бы потужить! —

« И вошь на тѣмныхъ я волнáхъ  
Одинъ, одинъ съ тóскою,  
И кто же, кто по мнѣ въ слезáхъ  
Теперь въ странѣ роднóй!  
Чтожь рвáться мнѣ, жалѣть когó?  
Я сёрдцемъ опустѣлъ,  
И безъ надéждъ и безъ всего,  
Что пóмнить я хотѣлъ!

« О мой корáбль! съ тобóй я радъ  
Носиться по волнáмъ!  
Лишь не плыви со мною назáдъ  
Къ родимымъ берегáмъ!

And when they on their father call,  
What answer shall she make? —

“ Enough, enough, my yeoman good,  
Thy grief let none gainsay;  
But I, who am of lighter mood,  
Will laugh to flee away.

“ For who would trust the seeming sighs  
Of wife or paramour?

Fresh feres will dry the bright blue eyes  
We late saw streaming o’er.  
For pleasures past I do not grieve,  
Nor perils gathering near;  
My greatest grief is that I leave  
Nothing that claims a tear.

“ And now I’m in the world alone,  
Upon the wide, wide sea :

But why should I for others groan,  
When none will sigh for me?  
Perchance my dog will whine in vain,  
Till fed by stranger hands;  
But long e’er I come back again,  
He’d tear me where he stands.

“ With thee my bark, I’ll swiftly go  
Athwart the foaming brine;  
Nor care what land thou bear’st me to,  
So not again to mine.

★ ★

Далёко на скалахъ , въ степи  
Пріютъ сыщѹ себѣ :  
А ты , о родина , простѣй !  
Ночь дѣлая шебѣ !

Перевель И. Козловъ.



П у с т ы н н и к ъ .

Б а л л а д а .

« Ведѣ меня пустыни жительство !  
Святой Анахорѣтъ !  
Близкая желанная обитель ;  
Привѣтный вижу свѣтъ !

« Успалъ я : шма кругомъ густая ;  
Запалъ въ глуши мой слѣдъ ;  
Безбрежитъ , мнѣтся , степь пустая ,  
Чѣмъ далѣ я въ передъ .

— Мой сынъ ! (въ отвѣтъ пустыни жительство)  
Ты призракомъ прельщенъ ;  
Опасенъ твой путеводитель —  
Надъ бездной свѣшишь онъ !

— Здѣсь чадамъ нищеты бездомнымъ  
Ошверста дверь моя ,  
И скудныхъ благъ удѣломъ скромнымъ  
Дѣлюсь ошъ сердца я .



Welcome, welcome, ye dark-blue waves!

And when you fail my sight,

Welcome ye deserts, and ye caves?

My native land—Good Night! »

*Byron.*



THE HERMIT.

*A ballad.*

« Turn, gentle hermit of the dale,

« And guide my lonely way,

« To where yon taper cheers the vale

« With hospitable ray.

« For here, forlorn and sad I tread,

« With fainting steps and slow;

« Where wilds immeasurably spread,

« Seem lengthening as I go. »

« Forbear, my son, » the hermit cries,

« To tempt the dangerous gloom;

« For yonder faithless phantom flies

« To lure thee to thy doom.

« Here to the houseless child of want,

« My door is open still;

« And tho my portion be but scant,

« I give it with good will.

— Войди въ гостепріимну кѣлю ;  
Мой сынъ , передъ тобою  
И брашно съ жёсскою посшѣлю  
И сладкій мой покой !

— Есть стадо .... но безвинныхъ кровью  
Руки я не багрѣлъ ;  
Меня Творецъ своей любовью  
Щадѣшь ихъ научѣлъ.

— Обѣдъ снимаю непорочный  
Съ пригорковъ и полѣй ;  
Древѣ дають — плоды мнѣ сочны ;  
А пишіе — ручѣй.

— Войдижъ въ мой домъ — забѣшь тамъ чужды !  
Нѣтъ блага въ суетѣ !  
Намъ малыя даны здѣсь нужды ;  
На малый мигъ и шѣ.

Какъ свѣжая роса денницы  
Былъ сладокъ сей привѣтъ ,  
И робкій гость , склоня зѣнницы ,  
Идѣтъ за старцемъ въ слѣдъ.

Въ дичи глухой , непроходимой  
Его тайлся кровъ ,  
Пріютъ для сироты гонимой ,  
Для странника покровъ.

« Then turn to-night, and freely share  
    « Whate'er my cell bestows ;  
« My rushy couch, and frugal fare ,  
    « My blessing and repose.

« No flocks that range the valley free ,  
    « To slaughter I condemn :  
« Taught by that Power that pities me ,  
    « I learn to pity them.

« But from the mountain's grassy side ,  
    « A guiltless feast I bring ;  
« A scrip with herbs and fruits supply'd ,  
    « And water from the spring.

« Then, pilgrim turn , thy cares fore-go ;  
    « All earth-born cares are wrong :  
« Man wants but little here below ,  
    « Nor wants that little long. »

Soft as the dew from heav'n descends,  
    His gentle accents fell ;  
The modest stranger lowly bends,  
    And follows to the cell.

Far in a wilderness obscure  
    The lonely mansion lay ,  
A refuge to the neighbouring poor  
    And strangers led astray.

Непышны въ хйжинѣ уборы :  
 Тамъ бѣдность и покой;  
 И скрыпнули дверей раскворы  
 Предъ мирною чешой.

Ошпельникъ зрѣтъ гостепріимной,  
 Что гость его унёль,  
 И свѣшлый огонёкъ онъ въ дымной  
 Печуркѣ разложилъ.

Плоды и зѣлень предлагаешь  
 Съ приправой добрыхъ словъ;  
 Бесѣдой скуку озлащаешь  
 Медлительныхъ часовъ.

Кружисья рѣзвый копь предъ нѣми,  
 Въ углу кричишь сверчокъ;  
 Трещишь межъ листьями сухими  
 Блещущій огонёкъ.

Но молчаливъ приплёкъ угрюмый;  
 Печаль въ его чертахъ;  
 Душа полна прискóрбной думы;  
 И слёзы на глазахъ.

Емѹ пустынникъ опивчаешь  
 Сердечною тоской:  
 — О юный странникъ, что смущаешь  
 Такъ рано швой покой?

No stores beneath its humble thatch  
Requir'd a master's care;  
The wicket opening, with a latch,  
Receiv'd the harmless pair.

And now, when busy crowds retire  
To take their evening rest,  
The hermit trimm'd his little fire,  
And cheer'd his pensive guest;

And spread his vegetable store,  
And gaily prest, and smil'd,  
And skill'd in legendary lore,  
The lingering hours beguil'd.

Around in sympathetic mirth  
Its tricks the kitten tries;  
The cricket chirrups in the hearth;  
The crackling faggot flies.

But nothing could a charm impart  
To sooth the stranger's woe;  
For grief was heavy at his heart;  
And tears began to flow.

His rising cares the hermit spy'd.  
With answering care opprest:  
" And whence, unhappy youth, " he cry'd,  
" The sorrows of thy breast?"

— Иль бышь убѣгимъ и бездѣльнымъ  
Творецъ тебѣ судилъ?  
Иль преданъ другомъ вѣроломнымъ?  
Или вошщѣ любилъ?

— Увы! спокой себя: презрѣнны  
Утѣхи благъ земныхъ!  
А шопъ, кто плачетъ, ихъ лишѣнный,  
Еще презрѣннѣй ихъ.

Приманчивъ дружбы взоръ лукавой;  
Но ахъ! какъ шѣнь, во слѣдъ  
Она за счастьемъ, за славой,  
И прочь отъ хладныхъ бѣдъ!

— Любовь . . . . любовь прелестъ игрою!  
Ошрава сладкихъ словъ;  
Незрѣма въ мѣръ; лишь порою  
Живѣтъ у голубковъ.

— Но, другъ, ты робостью стыдливой  
Свой нѣжный полъ открылъ!  
И очи странникъ шоропайвой,  
Краснѣя, опустилъ.

Краса сквозь легкій проникаешь  
Стыдливости покрѣвъ;  
Такъ устро тихое сіяешь  
Сквозь завѣсь облаковъ.

« From better habitations spurn'd ,  
    « Reluctant dost thou rove ;  
« Or grieve for friendship unreturn'd ,  
    « Or unregarded love ?  
  
« Alas ! the joys that fortune brings ,  
    « Are trifling and decay ;  
« And those who prize the paltry things ,  
    « More trifling still than they .

« And what is friendship but a name ,  
    « A charm that lulls to sleep ;  
« A shade that follows wealth or fame ,  
    « But leaves the wretch to weep ?

« And love is still an emptier sound ,  
    « The modern fair one's jest :  
« On earth unseen , or only found ,  
    « To warm the turtle's nest .

« For shame , fond youth , thy sorrows hush ,  
    « And spurn the sex , » he said :  
But while he spoke , a rising blush  
    His love-lorn guest betray'd .

Surpriz'd , he sees new beauties rise  
    Swift mantling to the view ,  
Like colours o'er the morning skies ,  
    As bright , as transient too .

Трепещутъ перси : взоръ склонённый;  
Какъ рѳза , цвѣтъ ланитъ....  
И дѣву — прѣлестъ изумлённый  
Ошѣльникъ въ гѳстѣ зритъ.

« Простѣшь ли , старецъ , дерзновѣнье ,  
Что рѳбкою спой  
Вошла въ швое уединѣнье ,  
Гдѣ Богъ одинъ съ тобой !

« Любовь надеждъ моихъ губишь ,  
Мои винѳвникъ бѣдъ ;  
Ищѳ покоя , но мучишь  
Тоска за мною въ слѣдъ.

« Ошѣцъ мой знѣшностю , слѳвой  
И пышностью гремѣль ;  
Я дней его была забѳвой ;  
Онъ все во мнѣ имѣль.

« И рыцари спеклись толпою :  
Мнѣ предлагали въ даръ ,  
Тѣ чѣстый , сѳдный съ ихъ душою ,  
А тѣ пришворный жаръ.

« И каждый лѣстью вѣроломной  
Привлѣчь меня мечталъ....  
Но въ ихъ толпѣ Эвинъ былъ скромной ;  
Эвинъ , любя , молчалъ.



The bashful look, the rising breast,  
Alternate spread alarms;  
The lovely stranger stands confest  
A maid in all her charms.

And « ah! forgive a stranger rude  
« A wretch forlorn, » she cry'd,  
« Whose feet unhallow'd thus intrude  
« Where heaven and you reside.

« But let a maid thy pity share,  
« Whom love has taught to stray;  
« Who seeks for rest, but finds despair  
« Companion of her way.

« My father lived beside the Tyne,  
« A wealthy lord was he;  
« And all his wealth was mark'd as mine,  
« He had but only me.

« To win me from his tender arms,  
« Unnumber'd suitors came;  
« Who praised me for imputed charms,  
« And felt or feign'd a flame.

« Each hour a mercenary crowd  
« With richest proffers strove:  
« Among the rest young Edwin bow'd,  
« But never talked of love.

Емѹ съ смиренной нищешюю  
 Судьба одно дала :  
 Пльнять высокою душою —  
 И та моёй была.

• Роса на розѣ , цвѣтъ душистой  
 Фиалки полевой ,  
 Едва сравниться могушь съ чѣстной  
 Эдвиновой душой.

• Но цвѣтъ , съ небесною росою  
 Живушь единый мигъ :  
 Онъ одаренъ былъ ихъ красотою ,  
 Я лёгкостью ихъ.

• Я гордой , хладною казалась ;  
 Но миль онъ въ шайнѣ былъ ;  
 Увы ! любя , я восхищалась ,  
 Когда онъ слёзы лилъ.

• Несчастный ! онъ не снесъ презрѣнья !  
 Въ пустыню онъ помчалъ ,  
 Свою любовь , свой мученья —  
 И тамъ въ слезахъ увялъ !

• Но я виновна ! мнѣ страданье !  
 Мнѣ увядать въ слезахъ !  
 Мнѣ будь пустыня та изгнанье ,  
 Гдѣ скрытъ Эдвиновъ прахъ ,

- In humblest simplest habit clad,
  - « No wealth nor power had he ;
- Wisdom and worth were all he had,
  - « But these were all to me.
  
- The blossom opening to the day
  - « The dews of heaven refine ,
- Could nought of purity display,
  - « To emulate his mind.
  
- The dew , the blossom on the tree ,
  - « With charms inconstant shine ;
- There charms were his , but woe to me !
  - « Their constancy was mine.
  
- For still I try'd each fickle art ,
  - « Importunate and vain ;
- And, while his passion touched my heart ,
  - « I triumph'd in his pain.
  
- Till quite dejected with my scorn ,
  - « He left me to my pride ;
- And sought a solitude forlorn ,
  - « In secret where he died.
  
- But mine the sorrow, mine the fault,
  - « And well my life shall pay ,
- I'll seek the solitude he sought,
  - « And stretch me where he lay. —

« Надъ тѣхою его могилой  
Конѣцъ свой всырѣчу я!  
И приношенъемъ тѣни милой  
Пусть бѣдетъ жизнь моя! »

— Мальвина! — старецъ восклицаетъ  
И палъ къ ея ногамъ!  
О чудо? ихъ Эдвинъ лобзаетъ;  
Эдвинъ предъ нею самъ!

— Другъ незабвенный! другъ единой!  
Опять на вѣкъ я швой!  
Полна душа моя Мальвиной!  
И здѣсь дышалъ шобой!

— Забѣдь о прошломъ! нѣтъ разлѣки!  
Самъ Богъ вѣщаетъ намъ:  
Все въ жизни, радости и муки  
Опнынъ пополамъ!

— Ахъ! будь и самый часъ кончины  
Для двухъ сердецъ одинъ:  
Да съ милой жизнью Мальвины  
Угаснешъ и Эдвинъ.

Перевелъ Жуковский.







*Durham/Ames  
9 March 1862*

**Dr. E. C. RASK'S**

# **DANISH GRAMMAR**

**EDITED BY**

**THORL. GUDM. REPP.**

---

**SECOND EDITION.**

---

**COPENHAGEN.**

**PUBLISHED BY J. H. SCHULTZ.**

---

**1846.**

---

**PRINTED BY J. H. SCHULTZ,**  
**PRINTER TO THE KING AND TO THE UNIVERSITY.**



TO

HIS MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY

**KING CHRISTIAN THE EIGHTH.**

**SIRE,**

It is to YOUR ROYAL Munificence that the second edition of the work, now laid at YOUR MAJESTY'S feet, owes its appearance. For, the first edition being out of print, and a great demand existing for a second, still the publisher could not adequately remunerate the labors of an editor; so

that the task of editing would not, in all probability, have been undertaken, had not YOUR MAJESTY been graciously pleased to supply the means required for its accomplishment. The Editor therefore most humbly hopes, that YOUR MAJESTY will graciously receive the following most humble statement, in respect to his share in the edition now offered to the public.

The full title of the first edition runs as follows: "A Grammar of the Danish Language for the Use of Englishmen, together with extracts in prose and verse. By Erasmus Rask, Professor and Librarian in the University of Copenhagen, and member of several learned societies. Copenhagen. 1830." In reediting this work, it appeared to me, that two objects must steadily be kept in view viz. that it should be rendered really useful to Englishmen, by exhibiting to them the structure of the Danish language in a plain and intelligible form: and that at the same time, no material part of Professor Rask's system should be sacrificed; but every respect paid to the memory of the great linguist, in the reproduction of his work.

Fourteen Years have now elapsed since his death, and still but a very small part of the improvements proposed and advocated by him — improvements which he professedly adopted from Peter Syv and Højsgaard — has met with general reception. Nevertheless his arguments made a great impression, and that impression is not as yet by any means entirely obliterated. Under these circumstances it appeared, that in point of usefulness it would scarcely be advisable simply to reprint the learned author's work without any modification whatever; and this seemed the more evident since even in the original edition, Professor Rask himself had sacrificed some part of his own system and e. g. reinstated the *aa*, which in his other works he had discarded, adopting instead Højsgaards *å*. I could therefore devise no better plan for the accomplishment of the twofold object stated above, than to preserve indeed Professor Rask's system in all essentials unaltered; but at the same time point out by means of notes inserted partly in, and partly under the text, where he differed from the general usage. In some instances

he had in fact done this himself, so that I felt the more justified in adopting this plan, in a far greater number of places, where he had omitted to notice his deviation. The *æ* I have expunged from the alphabet, for in retaining it there, he appeared scarcely consistent with himself, since he did not make use of it in any other part of the book except in the last extract. The *Q* I reinstated, for although even his adversaries, e. g. Mr. Molbech, agree with him in considering it as superfluous and useless, it still is in general use.

The English I have corrected in many places, though perhaps not in every place where this might have been done. The consideration that Mr. B. Thorpe M. A. of Cambridge had read the proofs of the first edition, made me cautious in rejecting idioms and phrases, which although sometimes appearing to me not quite correct, had been allowed to remain by a Graduate of an English University and a distinguished scholar. I accordingly confined my corrections to passages where either some obscurity in the expression, or a manifest error seemed to render them necessary.

And thus I lay before YOUR MAJESTY that work of Professor Rask which it has been my humble endeavour, without impairing in any part, to render more practically useful.

Some learned men among the Danes have lately expressed a great deal of apprehension lest their language should gradually become extinct. If this fear be well founded, one way — perhaps the chief way — of retarding such a consummation, is in my humble opinion, to propagate the knowledge of it, by means of Grammars and Dictionaries, among the great nations who take the lead in the progress of civilization. As Professor Borring has done much, in the way of disseminating the knowledge of Danish among the French as well as of the French language amongst his countrymen, so I have humbly endeavoured, in various ways, not only to promote the knowledge of English in Denmark, but also the knowledge of Danish in England; and if these very humble efforts meet, in some degree, with YOUR ROYAL MAJESTY'S most August as well as most competent approbation, they will receive indeed, a high and satisfactory reward.

How scanty and unsatisfactory and uncertain is our knowledge of most of the languages spoken in the ancient world, from the Indus westward to the Atlantic, because so few of them were known to the Greeks and the Romans! And why? — If they had through Greek and Latin Grammars and Dictionaries preserved any memorial of themselves, they would not have utterly perished; or left their identity doubtful.

That it may please the Almighty to preserve YOUR MAJESTY, together with YOUR MAJESTY'S AUGUST CONSORT, in the continual enjoyment of Health, Prosperity and Peace, is the fervent prayer of,

**SIRE,**

**YOUR MAJESTY'S**

most devoted,

most obedient

and most humble servant

**THORLEIFR GUDMUNDSON REPP.**

Copenhagen the 3d December 1846.

## THE AUTHORS PREFACE.



Nearly 30 years have now elapsed, since Capt. Fr. Schneider published his *Danish Grammar* for the use of Englishmen, during which time no other attempt has been made in English, to describe the structure of the Danish in a more satisfactory way, or to assist the English learner in acquiring a more accurate knowledge of this language; although it has been very considerably enriched and improved, and its Literature greatly enlarged and cultivated during this period. But even for the time when it was composed, Capt. Schneider's Grammar was a very imperfect one; for besides the general inaccuracy of the rules, the carelessness of the spelling and translation of the Danish words, and the utter tastelessness in the arrangement and appearance of the text, it is totally devoid of system. Still, if the language itself follows a system, as in fact every language may

*be supposed to do, or it could not be spoken by a whole nation, that system should appear in the Grammar, or the Grammar must be acknowledged to be deficient in the most material point, its chief object being to exhibit a view of the system of speech adopted by the nation. This system, however, is seldom so evident in any language, that there may not be formed many different ideas of it, and consequently many different plans may be laid down for a Grammar of one and the same language. That which I have here adopted is, for the greatest part the same as that of the Icelandic, as also of the Frisic and the Anglosaxon Grammars which I have published. The internal structure of all these, and indeed also of the other languages of the Gothic stock, appears to be nearly the same, though less evident in the Danish than in the ancient idioms; and it may afford an assistance to the learned inquirer, to find them all exhibited from the same point of view. But even to those who merely study the language, in order to be able to read a book in it, or to use it in conversation, it will be convenient to find a true and tolerably complete system of inflection and formation of words in the Grammar; for although the study may appear easier, if the Grammar offer merely some loose or detached remarks, together*



*with a variety of examples; yet this is merely concealing the difficulty, making the knowledge thus acquired deficient, and, consequently, the road much longer, as it obliges the learner by dint of long experience and use to deduce the rules himself, for which he vainly seeks in his Grammar.*

*As to the nature of this system, I am happy to find it agree so closely with that of Mr. John Grant in his Grammar of the English language. In order, however, not to write a large and crabbed volume on an easy and elegant tongue, I have carefully omitted reasoning about the system and the terms of Grammar. In the syntax, I fear, I have been rather too short, but this defect may easily be supplied in a new edition, should this first essay in any way be so happy as to meet with the encouragement of the public. Mr. Hansen of Christiania has published a separate treatise on this head of Danish Grammar. Perhaps also an explanation of the old poetical forms may be missed; in the notes however the reader will find the most remarkable difficulties of this description explained. In order to be short in the notes, I have sometimes marked the grammatical property of the words by a fraction, of which the numerator is intended to indicate the declension, or conjugation, and the denominator the class, or sub-*

*division, to which the word belongs; e. g. 'Tjeneste (þ)' signifies that the noun Tjeneste, service, follows the first declension, common class, or is, in every respect, inflected like Dame, lady, p. 18; likewise befaler (þ)' signifies that the verb jeg befaler, I command, belongs to the first conjugation, first class, and is inflected like jeg elsker, I love, p. 40, and so on.*

*With regard to the Literature, this place is much too limited to speak of it to any purpose; we have now translations of many celebrated works of English and American authors, as: Shakespear, Fielding, Sir Walter Scott, Cooper, Washington Irving &c. which may afford an easy and agreeable introduction to the Danish Literature; though translations in general are scarcely to be recommended to learners. Those who wish for a thorough knowledge of the Danish and Norwegian\*)*

---

*\*) Throughout the kingdom of Norway, the Danish language, though pronounced with a peculiar accent, is used to this day, in speaking and writing, in the pulpit and in public affairs of every description. Several natives, however, since the union with Sweden, seem to pride themselves particularly on calling it Norwegian, nor is it to be denied that, even before the celebrated Holberg, the Norwegians had an honorable share in cultivating and improving it; but that its whole present form originated in Denmark is an historical fact beyond dispute. From hence it was propagated to Norway, especially about the time of Luther's Reformation, when Literature*

authors till 1814, may find sufficient information in Nyerup's & Kraft's dansk-norske Literaturlexicon. But a book which presents a view of the best authors, in the elegant branches of Literature, together with copious specimens of their writings, and with which every learner of Danish should be provided, is K. L. Rahbek's danske Læsebog eller Exempelsamling in 2 voll. 8<sup>vo</sup>.

It may be proper still to add the names of the most celebrated authors of Danish Grammars. The Rev. P. Syø wrote several works on this subject with great skill, and considerably improved the orthography, though his opponents strove very hard to defend the *ffu* instead of *v* (e. g. *haffue* for *have*) and the diphthongs, *ia*, *ie*, *ay*, *ey* &c. Højsgård discovered the true system of the ten vowels, and proposed the method of denoting them with single characters now again adopted by those who care to distinguish them. He also wrote a Grammar and a Syntax in separate volumes.

and learning were in a very low state, and almost totally extinct in that country, and the old Norse greatly corrupted and dissolved into rustic dialects or provincialisms. Hence no attempt was ever made to translate the holy Scriptures into Norse, nor any polemical pamphlet either for or against the catholic party published, nor any sermons or works of instruction & education compiled, nor any law promulgated in Norwegian after that time.

*Still more celebrated are Prof. J. Baden's Forelæsninger over det danske Sprog, of which four editions have appeared. This was the first regular and complete Grammar of the Danish Language, and is still perhaps one of the best existing. Capt. Abrahamson wrote a very elaborate Danish Grammar for Germans, also of great merit; and Dickman a treatise on Orthography and a Grammar perhaps in rather too philosophical a style. Prof. S. N. J. Block published a Grammar for schools together with a treatise on Orthography, in which he differs from his predecessors, admitting the diphthongs and many mute vowels and consonants, but the second vol. of his Grammar, intended for the syntax never appeared. Prof. L. Nissen wrote another Grammar for schools, as also Prof. F. H. Guldberg. Besides these there were many smaller works published for schools, amongst which Thonboe's and Benzien's are the most remarkable: the former has been reprinted several times; of the latter a second edition has recently appeared; this being the last, and containing also a syntax, is perhaps the best of the smaller works.*

*Finally, I have to apologize much for my English stile, I ought not, perhaps, to have hazarded writing a book in this language, nor was it*

*my intention to do so, when I began the work. The bookseller, who was the owner of Capt. Schneider's Grammar, merely wished me to prepare a new edition of that work, which I thought might be undertaken without great presumption; but I was soon convinced of the utter faultiness\*) of the Grammar, and consequently of the necessity of almost writing a new one; I went on however cheerfully mending the old work, until the bookseller, when the printing of the new edition was to begin, gave up the idea, thinking my alterations much too many and too hazarded or unnecessary. In order therefore not to lose the time and labor spent in preparing the most difficult part of the manuscript, I found myself obliged to look out for another bookseller, to undertake the publication, as a book of my own, leaving at the same time Capt. Schneider's work entirely out of sight, as far as could be done without rewriting the manuscript. If, after all these changes, the text of*

---

\*) As the reader may demand a proof of this hard censure, I shall merely quote the first line, where the author states that there are 28 letters in the Danish alphabet, though the large table immediately following contains only 27. The pronunciation of the first letter, A, is thus described: "Like the broad A in all, wall." The truth is the very reverse, for the broad English A is a sound never given to this letter in Danish.

*the' book still reads tolerably well, the reader will, in great measure, be indebted for it to the able and learned translator of my Anglosaxon Grammar, Mr. B. Thorpe, who kindly undertook the tedious business of correcting one of the proofsheets throughout the volume.*



## PART I.

# ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. **T**he Danish alphabet consists of twenty seven letters, viz.

| FIGURE                 | NAME                  |        | POWER                                    |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--------|------------------------------------------|
|                        | <i>Danice Anglice</i> |        |                                          |
| A, a, or <i>Œ, æ</i> , | A,                    | Ah,    | a in <i>father, part, far</i> .          |
| B, b, — <i>Ɓ, ɓ</i> ,  | Bé,                   | Bey,*) | b.                                       |
| C, c, — <i>Ĉ, ĉ</i> ,  | Cé,                   | Cey,   | s and k, as in English.                  |
| D, d, — <i>Đ, đ</i> ,  | Dé,                   | Dey,   | d hard; and th flat, as in <i>thus</i> . |
| E, e, — <i>Ê, ê</i> ,  | E,                    | Ey,    | French <i>é fermé &amp; é ouvert</i> .   |
| F, f, — <i>ƒ, ƒ</i> ,  | Eff,                  | Eff,   | f.                                       |
| G, g, — <i>Ĝ, ĝ</i> ,  | Gé,                   | Ghey,  | g in <i>go, give</i> .                   |
| H, h, — <i>Ĥ, ĥ</i> ,  | Haa,                  | Haw,   | h aspirated.                             |
| I, i, — <i>Ĭ, ĭ</i> ,  | I,                    | Ee,    | ee in <i>bee</i> , i in <i>bill</i> .    |
| J, j, — <i>Ĵ, ĵ</i> ,  | Jod,                  | Yoth,  | y consonanth.                            |
| K, k, — <i>Ķ, ķ</i> ,  | Kaa,                  | Kåw,   | k.                                       |
| L, l, — <i>Ľ, ľ</i> ,  | El,                   | El,    | l                                        |
| M, m, — <i>ƹ, ƹ</i> ,  | Em,                   | Em,    | m.                                       |
| N, n, — <i>ƺ, ƻ</i> ,  | En,                   | En,    | n.                                       |

\*) In the names of the letters the Danes pronounce é like the French é (with the acute accent), or like English ey in the word *they*. The former of these two columns gives the names of the letters with the Danish spelling: the latter gives the same names spelled in the English way, so as to lead the English learner to the right Danish pronunciation of these names.

ED.

| FIGURE    | NAME          |                | POWER                                                       |
|-----------|---------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | <i>Danice</i> | <i>Anglice</i> |                                                             |
| O, o, or  | Ō, o, O,      | O,             | o in <i>more</i> , <i>for</i> .                             |
| P, p, —   | Þ, þ, Pé,     | Pey,           | p.                                                          |
| Q, q, —   | Q, q, Ku,     | Koo,           | q.                                                          |
| R, r, —   | R, r, Er,     | Er,            | r.                                                          |
| S, s, —   | S, s, Es,     | Es,            | s hard.                                                     |
| T, t, —   | T, t, Té,     | Tey,           | t.                                                          |
| U, u, —   | U, u, U,      | Oo,            | oo in <i>fool</i> , u in <i>full</i> .                      |
| V, v, —   | V, v, Vé,     | Vey,           | v in <i>vein</i> , w in <i>howl</i> .                       |
| X, x, —   | X, x, Ex,     | Ex,            | x hard.                                                     |
| Y, y, —   | Y, y, Y,      | U,             | <sup>b</sup> in <i>pur</i> , <i>nul</i> .                   |
| Z, z, —   | Z, z, Zet,    | Set,           | z.                                                          |
| Æ, æ, —   | Æ, æ, Å,      | Ai,            | a in <i>sale</i> , ai in <i>said</i> .                      |
| Θ, θ, } — | Θ, θ, } Ø,    | Eu, (French)   | <i>fermé</i> in <i>peu</i> .                                |
| Ö, ö, } — | Ö, ö, } Ö,    | Eu, (French)   | <i>ouvert</i> in <i>veute</i> ,<br>œu in <i>cœur</i> , œuf. |

## 2. Remarks on the alphabet.

Dr. Rask omitted the Q, and declared it to be "not merely superfluous and useless, but even prejudicial to a faithful representation of the language, by obscuring the origin and affinity of words, e. g. *Kvinde*, woman," he said, "is derived from *Kone*, wife; *beqvem*, convenient, from *komme*, to come, (Fr. *venir*); *Kvartér*, a quarter of an hour, is also called *Kortér*; *Kvast*, tuft, is originally the same word as *Kóst*, broom; and *kvæle*, suffocate, the same as the Engl. *kill*." And he added: "The Q is therefore justly rejected by the celebrated Grammarian P. Syv, as also by the learned Prof. S. N. J. Bloch in his *Danske Sproglaere*, Odense 1817. It is however still used by some, but always followed by v, never by u in any Danish book, as: *Qvinde*, *beqvem*, *Quarter*, &c." [Christian Molbech in his Danish dictionary has also declared Q to be "properly speaking a superfluous letter, but retains it nevertheless; and as it is still used by almost every Danish author except Rask it is here introduced again into the alphabet. &c.]

Z, z, (Zet, pron. *sett*) has crept from the German orthography into a few words, which should be written by s, according to the true pronunciation, as: *Zobel*,



sable; *zire*, to adorn, better *Sobel*, *sire*. [Dr. Rask omitted *z* in the alphabet but I have reinstated it, since it is indispensable not only in the words enumerated in Mr. Molbechs dictionary, but also in a great many nouns proper. ED.]

Q, Z, and W are used in names of foreign origin, as are also the German vowels *ä*, *ü* (for *æ*, *y*); hut these characters ought not to be inserted in the alphabet, never occurring in any Danish word.

Dr. Rask inserted *Å* which always has been used by the Swedes, as the twenty fourth letter, in his alphabet and justified the adoption of this character by the following remarks: "*Å* has been, till the beginning of this century, commonly represented by *aa*, according to the old Lowgerman orthography, but *å* is found in ancient Danish and Norwegian manuscripts: it's reintroduction, proposed by the celebrated Danish Grammarian Højsgård 1743, later by Schlegel, Baden, Nyerup, Schreyber, Thonboe &c. has, in the last decennium, been realized in about thirty separate books or pamphlets by Prof. A. Gamborg, Mr. H. J. Hansen, Mr. N. M. Petersen, also by the author of these pages, and several anonymous writers. At all events the sound is simple, and continually interchanging with other simple vowels, (*a*, *æ*, *o*), in the inflection and derivation of words, e. g. *tæller*, to count, in the past tense *talde* or *tålde*, counted; *gå*, to go, *Gang*, gait, *gængse*, current, common: from *Får*, sheep, is derived *Færøerne*, the Far-oe Islands. So also in kindred dialects, as *Vingård*, vineyard; *Tdre*, tear, Germ. *Zähre*; *Måned*, month, Germ. *Monath*; *åben*, open &c. Whereas *aa* is sometimes long *a*, sometimes even to be read in two syllables as: *Haarlem*, *Aaron*, *Kanaan*, *Knud Danaast*, the name of a Danish Prince. As the learner however will find *aa* for *å* in most printed books hitherto published, we think it convenient to preserve that orthography in the succeeding pages".

*Æ*, like *Å*, represents a simple vowel sound, and must never be separated or resolved into *ae*, which make distinct syllables, e. g. *bejæe* (be-ya-e), affirm.

*Ø* and *Ö* are commonly confounded, so that *Ø* is used for both sounds in books printed in the Gothic type *Ö* in those in the Roman character. The distinction pro-

posed by Høisingård, shall be adopted here, as it will greatly assist the student's memory in recollecting the genuine pronunciation. [In the above alphabet Ø and Ö have been counted for one letter. HD.]

### 3. Of Pronunciation.

The double sound of some of the letters may create some difficulty.

The open *e* is exactly like the *æ*, but usually short, as *Herre*, gentleman, like *værre*, worse. The *é fermé*, or close *e*, is very frequent in Danish, but not of frequent occurrence in English; still it is found in such words as: *their*, *vein*, *veil*, which have a different sound from: *there*, *vain*.

In analogy with this, the open *o* sounds exactly like the *aa*, but is generally short as, *Kaag*, boiling, like *Bog*, book. The close *o* is often used, where the English has the open one, as: *Bröder*, brother, &c. [The Danish close *o* is more close than the English and has a sound more nearly approaching to Walker's 2<sup>d</sup> *o*, in *move*. HD.]

E, O, I, U, Y have in general their close sound at the end of syllables, whether long or short, e. g. *tre*, three; *le-ve*, live; *Ko*, cow; *troværdig*, credible; *fri*, free; *Skri-ve-ri*, (continual) writing; *synes*, seems; *yder-mére*, moreover. There are however some few exceptions, as: *Sté-det*, the place; *Bø-gen*, the book; *vi*, we; *gidelig*, religious (book), have the open sound, most of these because the consonant originally belonged to the preceding syllable.

For cases in which the syllable terminates in a consonant, scarcely any certain rule can be given, although the open sound is perhaps the more frequent, e. g. *trende*, three (to each); *Konge*, king; *vinde*, to gain; *Guld*, gold; *gylden*, golden; especially before *ng*, *nd*, *lg*, *ld*. But in *Ord*, a word; *Nörden*, the North, the *ó* is long. *Med*,

with, *for*, *for*, have the open short sound; in *ved*, *by*, the *e* is close, although it be short; and in *stor*, *great*, the *o* is close.

Sometimes *e*, *i*, *u* are doubled when long or close before a consonant in the same syllable; unfortunately this rule applies only to the cases, where the consonant following is *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, or *s*, e. g. *Pil*, arrow, but *hvid* (never *hvuid*) white; and not even regularly to all the cases mentioned, e. g. *Vin*, wine, but *min*, mine, the pronunciation in both cases being exactly alike (viz *veen*, *meen*). As soon as a vowel is added in the inflection of the words, the doubling ceases, as: *Pilen*, the arrow, *Pile*, arrows; *Vinen*, the wine, *Vine* wines. As there is little danger, that the reader should divide these *ee*, *ii*, *uu*, into distinct syllables, we shall preserve this orthography, though very imperfect, as the most common; and in cases necessary, where it is not used, assist the learner, by placing accents over the vowels, (´) for the close or long sound and (˘) for the open or slender, as in French,

There are no diphthongs in Danish, but *aj*, *ej*, *oj*, *uj*, *øj*, even though written by some *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *ui*, *öi*, are pronounced with the open sound of the vowels and a distinct *y* consonant following, never like *ai*, *ei* French *oi*, *ui*, or the like, e. g. *ej*, not, sounds like Engl. *eye* or *I*; *Konvoy*, a convoy, like the verb *to convoy*, &c. Perhaps however the *j* is a little softer after the vowels than at the beginning of words. Even after *g* and *k* it is soft, e. g. *begjære*, desire; *kjédelig*, tedious; like the Engl. *guardian*, *cure*, &c.

In like manner *av*, *ev*, *iv*, *ov*, *æv*, *öv* are pronounced as clear vowels followed sometimes by a distinct *v* consonant, sometimes by a *w*; the *v* also is softer after the vowels than at the beginning, e. g. *tav*, was silent; *Brev*, letter; *stiv*, stiff; *Tøv*, cable; *Ræv*, fox; *døv*, deaf. The sound of *w* is particularly observable, when another consonant follows, e. g. *tavs*, silent; *Ecropa*, Europe;

*stiene*, to stiffen; *hoerne*, to swell; *Hævn*, revenge; *søv-nig*, sleepy, drowsy.

Like *j* & *v* some other consonants have also a softer sound after the vowels than before them, thus *d* sounds like *dh*, Anglosaxon and Icel. *ð*, or Engl. flat *th* in *bathe*, when it concludes the word, or is placed between two vowels, also when doubled, as *lād*, lazy, sluggish; *Fader*, father; *vædde*, lay a wager, &c. After *l*, *n*, *r*, it is scarcely perceptible in the common pronunciation, except as a peculiar emphasis on the vowel preceding, [e. g. Stald, *stable* is pronounced stall; Mand, *man* pron. man; Bord, *table* pron. boor (where oo sounds as in floor). ED]

G in similar cases has also a softer sound, which was formerly written *gh*, e. g. *Sag*, cause, affair, concern; *tage*, take. Sometimes after *e*, *ø* it is pronounced like *j* (or Engl. *y* cons.), e. g. eg in *jeg*, I, sounds quite like *ej*, in *Vej*, way; and *øg* in *Dögn*, a day and night, like *øj* in *höjne*, to heighten.

[H is not aspirated in Danish before *j* (in stead of which Molbech always writes *i*), or *v*, e. g. *Hjelp*, help, aid, pron. *yelp*; *Hvalfisk*, whale, pron. *Valfisk*; *hvid*, white, pron. *veeth*. ED.]

The English sounds of *j*, *ch*, *sh*, *th* sharp are entirely foreign to the Danish language.

#### 4. Of accentuation.

In Danish there are six accents (*Tonehold*) or modes of pronouncing the vowels, three long and three short, four of them are easy to understand and to apply, but examples of the other two are not easily found in other languages :

- |                |                   |                                 |
|----------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| the long are:  | 1) the trailing   | as: <i>oh</i> !                 |
|                | 2) the advancing  | — <i>oral</i> .                 |
|                | 3) the abrupt     | — ( <i>pro-noun</i> ?)          |
| the short are: | 1) the rolling    | — <i>worthy</i> , <i>love</i> . |
|                | 2) the running    | — <i>torrent</i> .              |
|                | 3) the rebounding | —                               |

The rebounding is the abrupt shortened, but it must be learned by oral instruction; they are both very frequent in Danish, and very difficult to foreigners.

The abrupt takes place in almost all long monosyllables as: *Bárn*, child; *Been*, bone; *Bi*, bee; *Blód*, blood; *Ur* (Uhr), watch; *sky*, shun; *Træ*, tree; *dø*, die.

The rebounding in many short monosyllables, terminating in consonants, especially *nd*, *ng*, *ld*, *lg*, *rg*. Ex. *kàn*, can; *Kàm*, comb; *hèn*, away, up to; *slèm*, bad; *Skind*, skin; *ónd*, evil; *ung*, young; *Hyld*, eldertree; *Bælg*, husk, bellows; *Sorg*, sorrow. But many others have the running accent, as: *han*, he; *rank*, slim, tall; *Ven*, friend.

The advancing (or obtuse) is usual in pronouncing long vowels in dissyllables or polysyllables, as: *bårnagtig*, childish; *benig*, bony; *more*, divert; *Fure*, furrow; *lyde*, obey; *taale*, endure; *være*, be; *føre*, carry; *Hjørne*, corner.

The running (or sharp) is usual with short and sharp vowels in dissyllables, especially before double consonants, as: *Klasse*, class; *hellig*, holy; *ikke*, not; *begge*, both; *Odde*, point of land; *Fusker*, bungler; *hyggelig*, comfortable; *tækkelig*, neat; *Børste*, a brush; *Smørrebrød*, bread and butter.

The trailing and the rolling occur but rarely; the former mostly in interjections and contracted monosyllables, as: *a!* ah! *o!* oh! *Fæ'r*, father, *Mo'r*, mother; the latter especially when a short vowel is followed by *rd*, as: *myrde*, to murder; *værdig*, worthy; sometimes *ld* produces the same effect, but never *v* as in English.

As to the position or place of the accent (*Tonefald-et*), the Danish also differs widely from the English. In words of northern origin, the first radical syllable usually bears the emphasis, as: *væsentlich*, essential; *Gjerrighed*, avarice; *týdelig*, evident; *betýdelig*, considerable; *Ubetydelighed*, insignificancy; *Réntekammeret*, the Danish

board of revenue, or the exchequer; but we also find: *agte'rdig*, worthy of esteem; *retfæ'rdig*, just; *København*, Copenhagen; *Børnhølm*, Kristianstad, *Frideriksdal*, Hofmannsgåve, &c.

Words derived from the southern languages have often the stress on the last, as: *Karavån*, caravan, *Bibliothekår*, librarian; *Karakter*, character; *Filosofi*, philosophy; *Religion*, religion; *Sekretær*, secretary; *Direktor*, director; *Natur*, nature; *Matematik*, mathematics, &c. When the french *e* mute is preserved in Danish, it never receives any emphasis, but sounds like short *e* at the end of Danish words, *en Terrasse*, a terrace, not *Terrassé*; *Artikkel*, article &c. But usually it is thrown away entirely, though sometimes written according to a false orthography, serving merely to confound the learner, by disguising the true pronunciation.

### 5. Of the spelling.

There is a great dispute among the Danish orthographers about the manner of spelling foreign words. As the Italians write *tesauro*, the Spaniards *acción*, the French *caractère*, *monarque*, the English *Bachelor*, *author*, *analogy* &c. entirely disregarding the Greek and Roman usage, so it seems but just that the Danes should be at liberty, to spell such words in their own writings according to their own pronunciation. In fact Prof. Bloch in his Dan. Gram. has adopted *f* for *ph*, as *Filosof*, philosopher; and it is pretty common to write, *Monark*, *Mekánikus*, *Maskine* &c. We shall adopt also the *t* for *th*, though less frequent, the *th* being very apt to mislead the English student, e. g. *Matematiker*, Mathematician. It is very common also to write *k* for *c*, whenever it has this sound, and only preserve *c* where, according to it's name, it sounds like *s*, e. g. *Akademi*, *Specier*.

As to the division of words into syllables, the learner must observe, that *j* is always referred to the pre-

ceding vowel, which is in these cases constantly pronounced short and sharp, e. g. *Vej-e*, ways, not *Ve-je*. The other consonants are usually referred to the vowel following, when single; or divided between the preceding and succeeding vowel, when more than one, no care being taken to distinguish the radical parts from the accessories, except in compound words, e. g. *Dage*, days, from *Dag*, day, but *for-ud-si-ge*, foretell from *for-ud*, beforehand, and *sige*, tell, say.

Though the Danish orthography is doubtful in many cases, yet the leading principle is evidently to express the sound as nearly as possible; and, where the sound may be expressed in two different ways, to adopt the spelling, that agrees the most with etymology, e. g. *skærpe*, to sharpen, from *skarp*, sharp, not *shjerpe*, although it would express the same sound; *skjenke*, to pour in, from Icel. *skénkja*, Germ. *schenken*, not *skænke*, because not derived from *Skank*, shank. *Saald* (*Såld*), a sieve, because the verb is *sælde*, to sift, not *Sold*, which is another word, meaning *wages*, or soldiers pay, from whence *Soldat*, a soldier.

Before *a*, *aa*, *o*, *u*, *e*, the consonants *k* and *g* are always hard, as in the English words *cow*, *gown*, and in order to produce the sound in *cure*, *guard*, a *j* must be inserted, as *en Skjald*, a bard; *en Kjole*, a coat; *skjule*, conceal; *gjaldt*, was worth, cost; *Gjéd*, goat; *gjorde*, made, but before *æ*, *ö*, *ø*, *y*, *i*, *k*, and *g* take always the softer sound, and no *j* should be inserted, as: *kær*, dear; (Lat. *carus*), *Køn*, sex, gender, (Lat. *genus*); *København*, Copenhagen; but many people, not being aware of this rule, will insert the *j* even in these cases, and write *kjær*, or *kjer*, *Kjön*, *Kjøbenhavn* &c. It is however acknowledged to be erroneous, to insert the *j*, when the primitive is a Danish word, which has *ka*, *ko*, *ku*, *ga*, *go*, *gu* without *j*; e. g. *at kjempe* or *kjæmpe* for *kæmpe*, to fight, combat, would be a fault, because the primitive is *Kamp*,

combat; in the same manner we write *kæmme*, to comb; from *Kam*, a comb; *skød*, shot, from *at skyde*, to shoot, and *et Skud*, a shot; *gød*, poured, from *gyde*, (Germ. *goss*), not *kjæmme*, *skjød*, *gjød*.

It is a great advantage in Danish orthography, that every noun substantive is written with a capital letter at the beginning, as numbers of words, else perfectly alike, are thereby easily distinguished at the first view. \*) Ex.

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| (en) <i>Tale</i> , a speech,    | (at) <i>tale</i> , to speak,      |
| (en) <i>Bør</i> , a barrow,     | (jeg) <i>bør</i> , I must, ought, |
| (en) <i>Tro</i> , faith,        | <i>tro</i> , faithful,            |
| (en) <i>Fløj</i> , weathercock, | <i>fløj</i> , flew,               |
| (et) <i>Ønske</i> , a wish,     | (at) <i>ønske</i> , to wish,      |
| <i>Vande</i> , waters,          | (at) <i>vande</i> , to water.     |

On the other hand adjectives of national names are usually written with small initials, contrary to the English usage, as: *dansk*, Danish; *norsk*, Norwegian; *svensk*, Swedish; *hollandsk*, Dutch; *engelsk*, English; *angelsaksisk*, Anglosaxon.

Those who wish to see an analysis of the sounds of the Danish and of the principal points of it's ortho-

\*) The advantage of this usage which the Danes and Norwegians have borrowed from the Germans is not felt or acknowledged by the rest of mankind: the English, the French, the Spaniards, the Portuguese, the Italians, the Greeks, the Arabs, the Persians, the Armenians, the Russians, the Polacks, the Bohemians and the other Slavonic nations, the Magyars, the Turks, the Swedes, the Finlanders and the Icelanders spell all words in the same way without distinguishing any by a capital letter excepting nouns proper. At one time it was attempted to introduce the German fashion in England, and in many English books printed in the reign of George I and George II the nouns often have capital initials; but this practice has now become quite obsolete. Thus it is evident that the Germans with their imitators the Danes and Norwegians have in this particular been left in a very small minority. The distinction between verbs and nouns alledged to be affected by this practice is of no great moment, since the context always shews plainly enough whether a given word is a noun or a verb. ED.



graphy, may consult the author's essay: "Forsøg til en videnskabelig dansk Retskrivningslære med Hensyn til Stamsproget og Nabosproget, København 1826", published as the first volume of *Tidsskrift for nordisk Oldkyndighed*.



## PART II.

# INFLECTION.

### 6. ARTICLES.

Properly speaking the articles, (*Kjendeord*) form no peculiar part of speech, being all originally pronouns, but as many nouns are never used without some article, a previous knowledge of them may be desirable. They are moreover sometimes combined with the nouns, and then have a considerable influence on the declension. Fortunately in Danish the articles also distinguish genders and numbers like adjectives; and it would greatly assist the student's memory in recollecting the puzzling distinction of gender, if he would make it a rule, never to pronounce nor even to think of a noun without its proper article.

The Danish admits but of two genders (*Kön*), viz. the neuter (*Intetkönnen*) and the common (*Fælleskönnen*); the latter including the masculine (*Hankönnen*) and the feminine (*Hunkönnen*); but even these two were formerly distinguished, there being three genders (neut. masc. & fem.) in the old mothertongue, the Icelandic, of which many traces are left in the structure of the modern language.

The numbers (*Talformerne*) are the usual two, the singular (*Entallet*) and the plural (*Flertallet*).

There are three articles in Danish, one indefinite (*ubestemt*) and two definite (*bestemte*), the one for nouns substantive, the other for adjectives.

The *indefinite* article has merely two forms, viz. *et* before a noun of the neuter, and *en* before one of the common gender, it has no plural. Being derived from the numeral *æt, een*, one, it is pronounced with *é* close, though short.

| Ex. neutr.                        | com.                     |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| sing. <i>et Land</i> , a country, | <i>en Stol</i> , a chair |
| plur. <i>Lande</i> , countries,   | <i>Stole</i> , chairs.   |

The *definite article of nouns substantive* is *et* in the neuter, *en* in the common gender, and *-ne (ene)* in the plur. of both genders; it is pronounced with open *é* in the sing., and always added as an affix to the nouns, as: sing. *Land-et*, the country, *Stol-en*, the chair, plur. *Lande-ne*, the countries, *Stole-ne*, the chairs. It is derived from the demonstrative pron. *hint* (Icel. *hitt*), *hin*, pl. *hine*, that, yon;

The *def. art. of adjectives* is *dét* in the neut. *dén* in the com. gen. and *dé* in the plur. of both genders; it is always placed before the adj. as a separate word, as: sing. *det skønne (Land)*, the fine (country), plur. *de skønne (Lande)*, the fine (countries), sing. *den gamle (Stol)*, the old (chair), plur. *de gamle (Stole)*, the old (chairs),

This last article is nothing but the demonstrative pronoun; but when used as an article it loses all emphasis.

## 7. NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

### *Of Gender.*

In Danish, as in most other languages, it is impossible to give perfectly satisfactory rules for the gender of nouns: the following observations may however be useful to the learner.

*Neuters* are 1) the names of countries and cities, metals and letters, as: *det frugtbare Danmark*,

fertile Denmark; *det smukke London*, fine London; *det ny Jerusalem*, the new Jerusalem; *Paris &c. Guld*, gold; *Sølv*, silver; *Jærn*, iron; *Bly*, lead; *et stort E*, a capital E; *at skrive En et X for et U*, literally: to write one an X for a U (meaning the Roman number V), or ten for five, i. e. to impose upon one, make him work or pay double.

2) Most monosyllabic nouns of action, formed of verbs, without any additional termination, as: *et Køb* (or *Kjøb*), a bargain, from *købe*, to buy; *et Salg*, a sale; *et Spring*, a leap; *et Tryk*, a thrust; *et Skud*, a shot.

Those in *ang* and *gt* are excepted, as *en Sang*, a song; *en Gang*, a going, a time; *en Agt*, intention; *en Tugt*, discipline, and a few others: *en Strid*, a contest, strife; *en Drik*, a drink; *en Hjælp*, a help, assistance, which are of the common gender.

3) Derivative nouns in *-eri*, as: *Bryderi*, trouble; *Frieri*, courtship; and those in *-skab* signifying a situation or relation, as: *Broderskab-et*, the fraternity; *Adelskab*, nobility, *Venskab*, friendship.

8. To the common gender belong 1) most names of persons and dignities, sciences, animals, trees and plants. Ex.

*en Mand*, a man,  
*en Konge*, a king,  
*en Smed*, a smith,  
*en Theologi*, divinity,  
*en Hest*, a horse,  
*en Torsk*, a cod-fish,  
*en Ko*, a cow,  
*en Slange*, a snake,  
*en Eeg*, an oak,  
*en Törn*, a thorn,  
*en Tulipán*, a tulip,

*en Qvinde*, a woman,  
*en Dronning*, a queen,  
*en Jórdemoder*, a midwife,  
*en Logik*, logic,  
*en Gaas*, a goose,  
*en Myre*, an ant,  
*en Kalv*, a calf,  
*en Firbeen*, a lizard,  
*en Bøg*, a beech,  
*en Rose*, a rose,  
*en Tusendskøn*, amaranth.

There are however some exceptions to this rule, a) especially compound words, of which the last part is a

neuter; e. g. *et Mandfolk*, a man; *et Fruentimmer*, a woman; *et Daadyr*, a doe; *et Rensdyr*, a reindeer; *et Pæretræ*, a peartree.

b) Some Names of living beings which comprize both sexes, as: *et Menneske*; man (homo); *et Folk*, people; *et Barn*, a child; *et Asen*, *et Æsel*, an ass; *et Bæst*, a beast; *et Dyr*, an animal; *et Fæ*, a brute; *et Kvæg*, (a) cattle; *et Faar*, a sheep; *et Lam*, a lamb; *et Kid*, a kid; *et Nød*, a neat; *et Hors*, *et Øg*, a jade; *et Føl*, a colt; *et Sviin*, a swine; *et Egern*, a squirrel.

2) Derivative nouns in: *de*, *døm*, *héd*, *ing*, *ning*, *else*, *sel*, *t*, *st*, *en*, as: *Højde*, height; *Bredde*, breadth; *en Guddom*, a godhead; *Trældom*, slavery; *Hvidhéd*, whiteness; *Hurtighed*, swiftness; *Forandring*, change; *Læsning*, reading; *Slægting*, a relation; *Begyndelse*, beginning; *Forkortelse*, abbreviation; *Indførsel*, importation; *Væxt*, growth; *Hugst*, cutting (of trees); *Skrigen*, a crying; *Løben*, a running, Also those in *-skab*, denoting qualities, as: *en Egenskab*, a quality; *en Ondskab*, malice.

3) Foreign words in *-tør*, *ist*, *án*, *ón*, *isme*, *tét*. *Ex Konduktør*, *Rigorist*, *Lutherán*, *Kujón* (coward), *Kalkón* (turkey), *Revisión*, *Terrorisme*, *Prioritét*, except *et Universitét*.

9. Compounds take the gender of the last part, as: *et Birketæ*, a birchtree; *et Mórbertræ*, a mulberry-tree; *Mesterstykke*, a masterpiece; *en Søltallerken*, a silverplate; *en Hovedpunkt*, a main point. Except *et Bogstav*, a letter; *et Maaltid*, a meal; *et Vidnesbyrd*, a testimony; from *en Stav*, *en Tid*, *en Byrd*.

It is to be observed that the following words change their significations with their genders:

of the neuter gender :

*et Ark*, a sheet (of paper),

*et Bid*, a bite,

of the common gender :

*en Ark*, an ark,

*en Bid*, a morsel,

|                                                   |                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>et Brud</i> , a breach,                        | <i>en Brud</i> , a bride,              |
| <i>et Buk</i> , a bow (inclination of the body),  | <i>en Buk</i> , a He-goat,             |
| <i>et Digt</i> , a poem,                          | <i>en Digt</i> , a fiction, tale,      |
| <i>et Flør</i> , a gauze.                         | <i>en Flør</i> , prosperity,           |
| <i>et Følge</i> , retinue, train,                 | <i>en Følge</i> , consequence*),       |
| <i>et Gran</i> , a grain,                         | <i>en Gran</i> , a pine,               |
| <i>et Leje</i> , a couch, bed,                    | <i>en Leje</i> , hire,                 |
| <i>et Læg</i> , a fold; dogsear (e.g. in a book), | <i>en Læg</i> , calf of the leg,       |
| <i>et Lod</i> , half an ounce,                    | <i>en Lod</i> , a lot, share,          |
| <i>et Mode</i> , an assembly,                     | <i>en Mode</i> , a fashion,            |
| <i>et Nød</i> , a neat,                           | <i>en Nød</i> , need, distress,        |
|                                                   | and <i>en Nød</i> , (sharp), a nut,    |
| <i>et Raad</i> , an advice, council,              | <i>en Raad</i> , a counsellor (title), |
| <i>et Skrift</i> , a book, work,                  | <i>en Skrift</i> , a handwriting,      |
| <i>et Snært</i> , a stroke of a whip,             | <i>en Snært</i> , the lash, cord,      |
| <i>et Spand</i> , a team of horses; a span,       | <i>en Spand</i> , a bucket,            |
| <i>et Søm</i> , an (iron) nail,                   | <i>en Søm</i> , a seam,                |
| <i>et Ting</i> , an assize,                       | <i>en Ting</i> , a thing,              |
| <i>et Tryk</i> , a thrust,                        | <i>en Tryk</i> , print,                |
| <i>et Værge</i> , a weapon,                       | <i>en Værge</i> , a trustee.           |

Several words are of doubtful gender, as: *en Punkt*, or *et Punkt*, a point; *en Trolld*, or *et Trolld*, a giant, goblin.\*\*)

The word *et Bogstav*, a letter, was formerly of the common gender, and is still used thus in some biblical and adverbial phrases, as: *Bogstaven ihjelslaaer, men Aanden gjør levende. At tage noget efter Bogstaven*, to take something literally. *Et Sted*, a place, was likewise

\*) The verb *følge* is not only *to follow*, but also *to attend*, *accompany one*.

\*\*) Mr. Molbech makes *Trolld* of the common gender (*en Trolld*) and this has been adopted on his authority by Ferrall and Repp in their Danish-English Dictionary. In Icelandic, however, *Tröll* is neuter, and such, no doubt the gender ought to be also in Danish, when the word denotes *a giant*, or *ogre*; but when it is used as a term of abuse, of *a clamorous scold*, it probably is right, on the authority of several Danish poets to make it: *en Trolld*.

of the common gender, and this is preserved in many adverbs, as: *isteden*, in the place (of), *andensteds*, elsewhere, *nogensteds*, anywhere, somewhere, *ingensteds*, nowhere. *En Taage*, a mist, is called *et Taag*, by the common people in the isle of Funen, hence in the cultivated language the phrase: *at gaa i Taaget*, literally: *to walk away in the mist*, i. e. to be thoughtless, heedless, absent, not to have ones wits about one.

### 10. *Of the declension of nouns.*

The Danish nouns (*Nævneord*) admit but of few inflections, viz. the two numbers (mentioned p. 11), and two cases (*Forholdsformer*) in each, viz. the nominative (*Nævneformen*) and the genitive (*Ejeformen*) just as in English; but the formation of these inflections is a good deal more varied.

In this respect the nouns are divided into two orders or declensions, the one more simple in it's inflection, the other more complex. The simple order contains all nouns ending in short *e*; the complex comprizes all the rest. The former follows one invariable rule in forming the numbers and cases, adding always *r* in the plural, and *s* in the genitive of each number, without distinction of gender; the latter is subdivided into three classes, originally distinguishing the three genders, the first forming the plur. like the sing.; the second by adding *-e*; the third by adding *-er*. The following table may serve as a synopsis of the whole system:

#### *Simple order.*

#### *Complex order.*

|          | Sing. N. . <i>e</i> | class 1. = | cl. 2. =   | cl. 3. =    |
|----------|---------------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| G.       | <i>-s</i>           | <i>-s</i>  | <i>-s</i>  | <i>-s</i>   |
| Plur. N. | <i>-r</i>           | =          | <i>-e</i>  | <i>-er</i>  |
| G.       | <i>-rs</i>          | <i>-s</i>  | <i>-es</i> | <i>-ers</i> |

But when the definite article is added, the *s* which forms the genitive is removed from its place immediately behind

the noun and affixed to the article; some rules of euphony must also be observed, when a final *e* of the noun would be immediately followed by the *e* of the article. I shall therefore exhibit the paradigms in their compound or definite as well as in their simple or indefinite form, in order to give the reader a complete idea of all the inflections, of which they are susceptible.

### 11. *The simple order.*

Though this order forms only one declension, yet on account of the def. article it may be divided into two classes, the one for the neuter, the other for the common gender.

The nouns: *et Hjærte*\*), a heart; *en Konge*, a king; *en Dame*, a lady, shall be our paradigms:

#### *Indefinitely.*

|          | neuter class       |                   | common class     |
|----------|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Sing. N. | <i>et Hjærte,</i>  | <i>en Konge,</i>  | <i>en Dame,</i>  |
| G.       | <i>et Hjærtes,</i> | <i>en Konges,</i> | <i>en Dames,</i> |
| Plur. N. | <i>Hjærter,</i>    | <i>Konger,</i>    | <i>Damer,</i>    |
| G.       | <i>Hjærters,</i>   | <i>Kongers,</i>   | <i>Damers,</i>   |

#### *Definitely.*

|          |                     |                    |                   |
|----------|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| Sing. N. | <i>Hjærte-t,</i>    | <i>Konge-n,</i>    | <i>Dame-n,</i>    |
| G.       | <i>Hjærte-ts,</i>   | <i>Konge-ns,</i>   | <i>Dame-ns,</i>   |
| Plur. N. | <i>Hjærter-ne,</i>  | <i>Konger-ne,</i>  | <i>Damer-ne,</i>  |
| G.       | <i>Hjærter-nes,</i> | <i>Konger-nes,</i> | <i>Damer-nes.</i> |

In like manner are declined:

|                              |                              |                                  |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>et Rige</i> , a kingdom,  | <i>en Löve</i> , a lion,     | <i>en Lövinde</i> , a lioness,   |
| <i>et Æble</i> , an apple,   | <i>en Abe</i> , an ape,      | <i>en Tudse</i> , a toad,        |
| <i>et Marke</i> , a mark,    | <i>en Hane</i> , a cock,     | <i>en Høne</i> , a hen,          |
| <i>et Løfte</i> , a promise, | <i>en Have</i> , a garden,   | <i>en Pære</i> , a pear,         |
| <i>et Møde</i> , a meeting,  | <i>en Fjende</i> , an enemy, | <i>en Krone</i> , a crown,       |
| <i>et Stykke</i> , a piece,  | <i>en Herre</i> , a master,  | <i>en Stavelse</i> , a syllable. |

---

\*) Molbech following the German analogy writes *Hierte* (from *Herz*).

The final *e* receives the open sound (è), whenever a consonant is added.

The article loses its original *e* (before the *t* and *n*) everywhere in this declension.

*Bónde*, a farmer, peasant, changes the vowel in the plural, *Bönder*, *Bönderne*.

Words denoting dignity or rank, and ending in *-e*, lose this *e*, when prefixed to a name, as *Kong Frederik den sjette*, King Frederic the sixth; *Fyrst Edvard*, Prince Edward; *Grev Bernstorff*, Count Bernstorff; *Herr Möller*, Mr. Möller; *Fru Skibsted*, Mrs. Skibsted. There are however several exceptions to this rule, as the word *Kammerherre*, Chamberlain, and female titles in *-inde*, as *Grevinde*, countess, &c. which are never abbreviated.

The old form of the article in the neuter gen. sing. was *-ens* (not *ets*),\*) hence instead of *Hjærtets* we say *Hjærtens* in some old phrases, as: *min Hjærtens Ven*, the friend of my heart. Thus also of *Menneske*, man, instead of the usual gen. defin. *Menneskets*, we say *Menneskens*, in the biblical expressions *Menneskens Søn*, the son of man; *Menneskens Børn*, mankind. In the def. plur. we often say *Menneskene* instead of *Menneskerne*.

Derivative words in *dømme* likewise often reject the plural *r* before the defin. art.; e. g. *Hertugdømmene*, instead of *Hertugdømmerne*.

---

\*) It can not, surely, be established as a general rule, that the old form was *-ens*, instead of *-ets*: it occurs only in a few words. The old form, i. e. the Icelandic form, was *-ins*, and by contraction *-ns*, when the nominative of the noun terminated in *a*. *Hjærtens* and *Menneskens* may be considered as faint vestiges of the ancient form; but it certainly does not appear that the genitive in *-ens* ever was generally adopted; and this is the less likely to have been the case since the use of the definite article was much less frequent in old Danish e. g. in writings from the 14th and 15th centuries than in modern Danish.



*Tilfælde*, accident, case, and *Sødskende*, brother and sister, do not admit any *-r* in the plural.

*Et Øje*, an eye, forms *Øjne*, (formerly *Øjen*) in the plur., gen. *Øjnes*, defin. *Øjnene*, *Øjnenes*.

*Et Øre*, an ear, forms *Øren*, or *Ører*, gen. *Ørens* or *Ørers*, defin. *Ørerne* (*Ørene*), *Ørernes* (*Ørenes*).

*En Oxe*, an ox, forms in the plur. *Oxer* (*Øxne*, *Øxen*).

Of the common gender there are two exceptions, viz. *en Penge*, a coin, medal, money, and *en Lige*, an equal; which receive no *r* in the plur., so that the indef. plur. of both is like the sing., and the def. form of *Penge*, *Penge-ne-s*; but *Lige* has no definitive plural, perhaps because it might be confounded with: *Lig-ene*, from *Lig*, a corpse.

## 12. The complex order.

This order must be divided into three classes according to the three manners of forming the plural, though not agreeing exactly with the genders in the modern language. As examples let us take *et Dyr*, an animal, deer; *en Dag*, a day; *en Sag*, a thing.

### Indefinitely.

|          | 1st class        | 2d class         | 3d class         |
|----------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Sing. N. | <i>et Dyr</i> ,  | <i>en Dag</i> ,  | <i>en Sag</i> ,  |
| G.       | <i>et Dyrs</i> , | <i>en Dags</i> , | <i>en Sags</i> , |
| Plur. N. | <i>Dyr</i> ,     | <i>Dage</i> ,    | <i>Sager</i> ,   |
| G.       | <i>Dyrs</i> ,    | <i>Dages</i> ,   | <i>Sagers</i> ,  |

### Definitely.

|          |                   |                   |                    |
|----------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Sing. N. | <i>Dyr-et</i> ,   | <i>Dag-en</i> ,   | <i>Sag-en</i> ,    |
| G.       | <i>Dyr-ets</i> ,  | <i>Dag-ens</i> ,  | <i>Sag-ens</i> ,   |
| Plur. N. | <i>Dyr-ene</i> ,  | <i>Dage-ne</i> ,  | <i>Sager-ne</i> ,  |
| G.       | <i>Dyr-enes</i> , | <i>Dage-nes</i> , | <i>Sager-nes</i> . |

In like manner are declined:

|                            |                           |                               |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>et Ark</i> , a sheet,   | <i>en Fisk</i> , a fish,  | <i>en Dyd</i> , a virtue,     |
| <i>et Slag</i> , a blow,   | <i>en Fugl</i> , a bird,  | <i>en Frugt</i> , a fruit,    |
| <i>et Bånd</i> , a ribbon, | <i>en Vej</i> , a way,    | <i>en Dronning</i> , a queen, |
| <i>et Aar</i> , a year,    | <i>en Stav</i> , a staff, | <i>en Aand</i> , a spirit,    |
| <i>et Rør</i> , a rudder,  | <i>en Hest</i> , a horse, | <i>en Aa</i> , a brook,       |
| <i>et Skridt</i> , a pace, | <i>en Hund</i> , a dog,   | <i>en Sandhed</i> , truth.    |

### 13. General remarks.

In each of these classes there are some words, having a short vowel, followed by a single consonant, which double the final consonant, as soon as a termination beginning with a vowel is added. Ex. of the 1st class *et Kar*, a vessel, def. *Karr-et*, pl. *Karr-ene*; *et Lam*, a lamb, *Lamm-et*, &c.; *et Søm*, an iron nail, *Sømm-et*; *et Led*, a joint, *Ledd-et*; *et Lod*, half an ounce, *Lodd-et*; *et Æg*, an egg, *Ægg-et*. Of the 2d class *en Bæk*, a rivulet, plur. *Bække*, def. *Bækk-en*, pl. *Bække-ne*; *en Blok*, a block, pl. *Blokke*, &c.; *en Hat*, a hat, pl. *Hatte*; *en Top*, a top, pl. *Toppe*; *en Straf*, punishment, pl. *Straffe*; *en Rigdom*, riches, pl. *Rigdomme*; *en Træl*, a slave, pl. *Trælle*; *en Væg*, a wall, pl. *Vægge*. Of the 3d class *en Nød*, a nut, pl. *Nødder*; *en Almanak*, a calendar, pl. *Almanakker*; *en Fabrik*, a manufacture pl. *Fabrikker*; *en Ven*, a friend, pl. *Venner*.

When a word of the com. gend. belongs to the first class, it takes of course the com. art. *-en*, &c. instead of the neut. *-et* in the sing. def. & indef. as: *en Fejl*, a fault, *en Fejls*, *Fejl-en*, *Fejlens*, pl. *Fejl-ene*. Thus also *en Sild*, a herring; *en Kræbs*, a crayfish, *en Løg*, an onion; *en Lus*, a louse; *en Mus*, a mouse; *en Sko*, a shoe; *en Aal*, an eel; but *en Alen*, an ell does scarcely admit the affixed definite article at all. Likewise, when a word of the neut. gend. belongs to the 2. or 3. class, which is still more frequently the case, it merely takes the neuter article without any further deviation. Ex. of the 2d cl. *et Land*, a country, *et Lands*, def.

*Land-et*, *Land-ets*, plur. *Lande-ne*; thus also *et Bord*, table, *Bordet*; *et Hus* (*Huus*), a house, *Hus-et*; *et Bjærg* a mountain, *Bjærget*; *et Hav*, a sea, ocean, *Havet*. Of the 3d cl. *et Beviis*, a proof, def. *Bevis-et*, pl. *Beviser-ne*; *et Begreb*, a conception, idea, *Begræbet*; *et Papir*, a paper, *Papiret*; *et Biblioték*, a library, *Biblioteket*; *et Universitét*, a University, *Universitætet*; *et Venskab*, a friendship, *Venskabet*; *et Hoved*, a head, *Hovedet*; *et Hul*, a hole, def. *Hullet*, pl. *Huller-ne*.

For the other remarks that may be required we must consider each of these classes separately.

#### 14. *The first class.*

To this class belong, besides those already mentioned a number of primitive monosyllables of the neuter gender, as :

|                                             |                                         |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>et Been</i> , a bone,                    | <i>et Lav</i> ( <i>Laug</i> ), a guild, |
| <i>et Bind</i> , a cover; volume of a book. | <i>et Lys</i> , a candle,               |
| <i>et Brød</i> , a loaf,                    | <i>et Laag</i> , a lid,                 |
| <i>et Folk</i> , a people,                  | <i>et Løv</i> , a leaf,                 |
| <i>et Frø</i> , a seed,                     | <i>et Ord</i> , a word,                 |
| <i>et Faar</i> , a sheep,                   | <i>et Pund</i> , a pound,               |
| <i>et Fæ</i> , a brute,                     | <i>et Sejl</i> , a sail,                |
| <i>et Gran</i> , a grain,                   | <i>et Skaar</i> , a sherd,              |
| <i>et Grýn</i> , a grain of grits,          | <i>et Sprog</i> , a language,           |
| <i>et Hjul</i> , a wheel,                   | <i>et Straa</i> , a straw,              |
| <i>et Hørn</i> , a horn,                    | <i>et Sværd</i> , a sword,              |
| <i>et Jærn</i> , an iron,                   | <i>et Staab</i> , *) a cup,             |
| <i>et Knæ</i> , a knee,                     | <i>et Saar</i> , a wound,               |
| <i>et Korn</i> , a grain,                   | <i>et Tag</i> , a roof,                 |
| <i>et Krus</i> , a mug,                     | <i>et Taarn</i> , a tower,              |
| <i>et Kræ</i> , a creature,                 | <i>et Aag</i> , a yoke,                 |
| <i>et Kær</i> , a pool,                     | <i>et Ög</i> , a jade.                  |

A considerable number of monosyllabic derivatives of the verbs, cf. p. 15, as : *et Brud*, a breach; *et Bud*, a commandment a message; *et Liv*, a life; *et Hik*, a

\*) Molbech writes *Stob*.

hickup, sob; *et Kys*, a kiss; *et Haab*, a hope; *et Knæk*, a crack; *et Tag*, a gripe; *et Trin*, a step; *et Slag*, a blow; *et Ridt*, a riding; from *bryde*, break; *byde*, command; *léve*, live; &c.

Some of the primitives change the vowel in the plural, as; *en Gaas*, a goose, pl. *Gæs*, pronounced sharp, whence the def. form sing. *Gaas-en*, pl. *Gæssene*; *en Mand*, a man, pl. *Mænd*; an irregular change takes place in *et Barn*, a child, plur. *Börn*.

### 15. The second class.

There are some primitive neuters of this class, as *et Brev*, a letter, pl. *Breve*; *et Blad*, a leaf, *Blade*; *et Skib*, a vessel, *Skibe*; *et Bad*, a bath, *Bade*; *et Vand*, water, *Vande*; *et Skab*, a cupboard, *Skabe*; but by far the greater number are original masculines, as; *en Baad*, a boat, (Icel. *bátr*), plur. *Baade*; *en Krop*, a body (Icel. *kroppr*), *Kroppe*; *en Skik*, a custom, *Skikke*; *en Dreng*, a boy, (Icel. *drengr*), *Drenge*; *en Dal*, a valley, (Icel. *dálr*), *Dale*; *en Bom*, a bar, *Bomme*; *en Steen*, a stone, (Icel. *steinn*), *Stene*, *en Stilk*, a stalk, *Stilke*; and some few original feminines, as *en Lov*, a law, pl. *Love*; *en Sol*, a sun, *Sole*.

Some dissyllables in *el*, *er*, suffer a contraction in the plur. as *et Kammer*, a chamber, closet, pl. *Kamre*, def. *Kammer-et*, pl. *Kamre-ne*; *et Offer*, a sacrifice, pl. *Offere* or *Ofre*; *en Ager*, a field, pl. *Agre*; *en Finger*, a finger, pl. *Fingre*; *en Hammer*, a hammer, pl. *Hamre*; *en Engel*, an angel, pl. *Engle*; *en Himmel*, heaven, sky, pl. *Himle*. The def. art. rarely requires this contraction in the sing. as: *Himlen*, in the acceptation *providence*, otherwise *Himmelen*, *Hammeren* &c.

Masc. derivatives in *-er* do not admit the contraction in the plur., but constantly reject the plural termination *-e*, when the art. is affixed, as *en Græker*, a greek, pl.

*Grækere*, def. sing. *Grækeren*, pl. *Grækerna*, thus also *Skræder*, taylor; *Væver*, weaver, &c.

Some few change the vowel in the pl.

*en Fader*, pl. *Fædre*;

*en Moder*, pl. *Mødre*;

*en Brøder*, pl. *Brødre*;

*en Datter* (*Dotter*), pl. *Døttre*.

## 16. The third class.

contains some few primitive neuters, as *et Træ*, a tree, pl. *Træer*; *et Tøj*, a stuff, pl. *Tøjer*; *et Sted*, a place, pl. *Stæder*; and all derivatives in *-i*, *eri*, as *et Parti*, a faction, party, pl. *Partier*; *et Bryggeri*, a brewhouse, pl. *Bryggerier*; *et Bogtrykkeri*, a printing-office, pl. *Bogtrykkerier*. Also some original masculines, as *Gud*, god, pl. *Guder*; *en Ret*, a court of justice; a dish, pl. *Retter*; *en Le*, \*) a scythe, pl. *Leer*; *en Sti*, a path, pl. *Stier*; *en By*, a town, a village, pl. *Byer*; *en Bekjendt*, an acquaintance, pl. *Bekjendter*.

But especially a great number of original feminines, as: *en Saga*, an old Icelandic history, pl. *Sagaer*; *en Bro*, a bridge, pl. *Broer*; *en Frø*, a frog, pl. *Frøer*; *en Ø*, \*\*) an island, pl. *Øer*; *en Sky*, a cloud, pl. *Skyer*; *en Gjed*, a goat, pl. *Gjeder*; *en Bøn*, a petition, pl. *Bønner*; *en Plads*, a place, pl. *Pladser*; *en Art*, a kind, pl. *Arter*; *en Ært*; a pea, pl. *Ærter*; *en Mast*, a mast, pl. *Master*. Likewise all derivative nouns in *hed*, as: *en Godhed*, a favor, pl. *Godheder*.

In like manner most foreign words of the three genders, terminating in consonants, as: *et Patent*, a letter patent, pl. *Patenter*; (*en*) *Student*, pl. *Studenter*; (*en*)

\*) Professor Rask spells *Le* pl. *Leer* which makes the word regular; still the anomalous spelling *Lee* (in the singular number) is most frequently used; but although it would be consistent with this practice to add a third *e* for the affixed def. article, and also for the plural, still this is never done. ED.

\*\*) *Ö* is also frequently spelt *Öe*. ED.

*Præst*, \*) a priest, pl. *Prester*; (*en*) *Kaptejn*, pl. *Kaptejner*, a captain (more frequently spelt *Capitain* pl. *Capitain-ner*); *Patron*, pl. *Patron-er*; *Religiön*, pl. *Religiön-er*; *Bastiön-er*; (*en*) *Admiräl*, pl. *Admiräl-er*; *Linial-er*, ruler-s; *Veterän-er*; *Husár-er*, hussar-s; *Guvernør-er* (*Gouverneur-er*), Governor-s; *Sekretærer*, Secretary; *Kollekter-er*, Collector; *Invalid-er*, Invalid; *Uniform-er*, Uniform-s.

Those in *or* from the Latin remove the tone; as *en Assessor*, judge in a court of justice, pl. *Assessorer*; *Revisor*, revisor, pl. *Revisorer*; those with a sharp vowel in the last syllable, double the consonant following, as: (*en*) *Brig*, a brig, pl. *Brig-ger*; (*et*) *Skaberak-ker*, saddle cloth, caparison-s; (*en*) *Supplik*, a petition, pl. *Supplik-ker*; (*en*) *Republik*, republic, pl. *Republik-ker*; (*en*) *Fregat*, a frigate, pl. *Fregat-ter*; (*en*) *Kadèt*, a young man of a military academy, pl. *Kadèt-ter* (also *Cadet*, *Cadet-ter*); (*en*) *Rekrút*, a recruit, pl. *Rekrút-ter*; (*et*) *Lexikon*, a dictionary, pl. *Lexikon-ner*.

Dissyllables in *el*, *en*, are contracted in the plural. Ex. *en Kjedel*, a kettle, pl. *Kjedler*; *en Nøgel*, a key, pl. *Nøgler*; *en Hassel*, a hazle, pl. *Hasler*; *en Artikkel*, an article, pl. *Artikler*; *en Titel*, a title, pl. *Titler*; *et Æsel*, an ass, pl. *Æsler*; *et Asen.*, an ass, pl. *Asner*; *et Væsen*, a being, pl. *Væsner*, or *Væsener*; *en Aften*, an evening, pl. *Aftner*, or *Aftener*. Even sometimes in the def. sing. as *Kjedlen*, *Nøglen*, *Asnet*, *Aftnen*. Those in *en* remain sometimes uncontracted, as: *Asener*, *Væsener*.

A number of words of this class change their vowel in the plural, as:

*en And*, a duck, pl. *Ænder*,    *en Ko*, a cow, pl. *Køer*,  
*en Tand*, a tooth, *Tænder*;    *en So*, a sow, *Søer*;  
*en Stand*, an estate, *Stænder*; *en Nat*, a night, *Nætter*;  
*en Stang*, a perch, *Stænger*;    *en Fod*, a foot, *Fødder*;

---

\*) Molbech and others spell *Præst* and follow in this instance no analogy whatever. ED.

*en Tang*, tongs, *Tænger* ;  
*en Stad*, a city, *Stæder* ;  
*en Bød*, a fine, *Bøder* ;  
*en Bog*, a book, *Bøger* ;  
*en Klo*, a claw, *Kløer* ;

*en Rod*, a root, *Rødder* ;  
*en Taa*, a toe, *Tæer* ;  
*en Raa*, a yard, *Ræer* ;  
*en Haand*, a hand, *Hænder* ;  
*en Vaand*, a wand, *Vænder*.

### 17. General remarks.

Some nouns, though possessing a plural in proper form, are used in the sing. collectively or nearly as plurals, e. g. *Mand*: speaking of soldiers, we say "*femten Tusind Mand*," not *Mænd*, fifteen thousand men; even *Fod*, feet, as a measure; *Fisk*; fish; *Lax*, salmon; *Steen*, stones; *Mursteen*, bricks, considered as materials.

Some nouns have no plural; such are the names of metals, earths, herbs, vegetables, virtues, vices, qualities, and several sorts of provision, as:

*Kobber-et*, copper;  
*Bly-et*, lead;  
*Tin-net*, pewter;  
*Leer*, *Leret*, clay;  
*Sand-et*, sand;  
*Støv-et*, dust;  
*Hved-en*, wheat;  
*Rug-en*, rye;  
*Havre-n*, oats;

*Hø-et*, hay;  
*Meel*, *Melet*, flower;  
*Honning-en*, honey;  
*Vox-et*, wax;  
*Klogskab-en*, prudence;  
*List-en*, cunning;  
*Ære-n*, honor;  
*Skam-men*; shame;  
*Forfald-et*, hindrance, impediment, accident.

But in other significations some of them receive a plural, as: *Kobbere*, copper-plates; &c.

Some have no singular number, as: *Briller* or *Glar-øjne*, spectacles; *Buxer*, breeches; *Pantalonger*, Pantaloons.

When the noun that is governed in the genitive, is expressed by more than one word, the *-s* is only added to the last of them, as: *Kongen af Danmarks Lande*, the king of Denmark's countries (possessions).

Nouns signifying inanimate substances generally form their gen. like the English by *af*, of, as: *Taget af Huset*, the roof of the house; *Masten af Skibet*, the mast of the ship.

Though there be no terminations for more cases than the nomin. and genit. in the declension of Danish nouns, yet not only the accusative, but even the dative is usually expressed without any preposition; these two cases being distinguished from the nominative by the position in which they are placed to the verb. The nominative usually precedes, the dative or respective case\*) follows next to the verb, and the accusative, expressing the object, takes the last place, as: *Forfatteren har til-egnet Dronningen sit Verk*, the author has dedicated his work to the queen. Here *Forfatteren* is the nomin. *Dronningen* the dat. and *Verk* the accusative, (according to the Latin terminology), though not distinguished by any particular termination or particle.

There are also in Danish some remains of old terminations of cases, especially of the dative, governed by some preposition, and used in certain adverbial phrases. Ex. *i Lave*, in order; *af Lave*, out of order, out of (ones) wits; from *Lav*, settled state, right order; *i Tide*, in due time, from *Tid*, time; *at have i Hænde*, to have in (ones) hands, i. e. in actual possession, from *Haand*, (the Icel. dat is *hendi*); &c. In such cases the prep. *til*, to, usually governs the genitive, as: *til Bords*, at table; *til Lands*, by land; *til Huse hos*, lodged with, (*húsa* is the Icel. gen. plur.)

## ADJECTIVES.

### 18. Of their declension.

The declension of the Danish adjectives (*Tillægsord*) is very simple. Like the nouns they have both a definite and an indefinite form: the former always terminates in *e*, and neither distinguishes genders nor numbers; the

---

\*) *Respective case* is Rask's technical term for the *Dative*: in Danish he calls it *Hensynsform*.



latter appears to be the original one, it distinguishes the two numbers and, in the singular, the two genders, neuter and common, in the plural it forms both genders alike, and always terminates in *e*; consequently it is here like the def. form, and thus all the terminations of a regular adjective amount but to three. As a paradigm let us take *hvid*, white, together with the nouns *Papir*, paper, and *Farve*, color:

### *Indefinite form*

|            |                      |                     |
|------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| Sing. Nom. | <i>hvidt Papir,</i>  | <i>hvid Farve,</i>  |
| Gen.       | <i>hvidt Papirs,</i> | <i>hvid Farves,</i> |

|            |                        |                 |
|------------|------------------------|-----------------|
| Plur. Nom. | <i>hvide Papirer,</i>  | <i>Farver,</i>  |
| Gen.       | <i>hvide Papirers,</i> | <i>Farvers.</i> |

### *Definite form*

|            |                          |                          |
|------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Sing. Nom. | <i>det hvide Papir,</i>  | <i>den hvide Farve,</i>  |
| Gen.       | <i>det hvide Papirs,</i> | <i>den hvide Farves,</i> |

|            |                           |                 |
|------------|---------------------------|-----------------|
| Plur. Nom. | <i>de hvide Papirer,</i>  | <i>Farver,</i>  |
| Gen.       | <i>de hvide Papirers,</i> | <i>Farvers.</i> |

The indefinite article has no influence on the inflection of the adjective as:

*et godt Barn*, a good child,  
*et godt Barns*, of a good child,  
*en god Mand*, an honest man;  
*en god Mands*, of an honest man;  
 pl. *gode Børn*, good children &c.

In like manner are declined:

|                                  |                                     |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>sygt, syg-e</i> , sick;       | <i>gält, gäl-e</i> , foolish;       |
| <i>ærligt, ærlig-e</i> , honest; | <i>heelt, heel, hele</i> , whole;   |
| <i>sandt, sand-e</i> , true;     | <i>seent, seen, sene</i> , slow;    |
| <i>drøjt, drøj-e</i> , lasting;  | <i>trygt, tryg-ge</i> , sure, safe; |
| <i>fuldt, fuld-e</i> , full;     | <i>smukt, smuk-ke</i> , fine;       |
| <i>ungt, ung-e</i> , young;      | <i>grønt, grøn-ne</i> , green.      |

Adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, *er* form their plur. and definite form in *-le*, *-ne*, *-re*, with elision of the preceding *e*, as:

*ædelt, ædel, ædle*, noble; *gammelt, gammel, gamle*, old;  
*nøgent, nøgen, nøgne*, naked; *sikkert, sikker, sikre*, safe;

Participles in *-en*, reject the *-n* before the neuter *t*, as:

*fundet, funden, fundne*, found; *revet, reven, revne*; torn;

Some adjectives do not distinguish the plur. from the com. gend. sing. as:

*blaat, blaa, blaa*, blue; *frit, fri, fri, (frie)*, free;  
*graat, graa, graa*, grey; *nyt, ny, ny, (nye)*, new;\* )

Some others terminating in a radical *t* or *sk* do not distinguish the genders, as:

*kort, kort-e*, short; *engelsk, engelsk-e*, English;  
*dobbelt, dobbelt-e*, double; *bekjendt, bekjendt-e*, known;  
*dansk, dansk-e*, Danish; *glad, glad-e*, glad;

Dissyllabic participles in *et* of the 1st conjugation, change this termination to *ede* in the plural and def. form, as: *elsket, elsket, elskede*, beloved.

Several adj. terminating in vowels do not admit of any inflection as:

*ringe, ringe, ringe*, insignificant, mean; *ædru, ædru, ædru*, sober;  
*tro, tro, tro*, faithful; *bly, bly, bly*, bashful;

Adjectives when used absolutely, that is without or instead of nouns, receive the usual termination *-s* in the gen. especially in the definite form, as: *et hvidts, en hvids*, of a white (one, man &c.), pl. *hvides*, of white (ones); def: *det hvides, den hvides, de hvides* (of the white). Also *det ringes, den ringes, de ringes*.

Wholly irregular is: *lidet, liden* (or in both genders *lille*,) little, plur. *smaa*, def. *det, den lille*, pl. *de smaa*. *Meget, megen*, much, has neither a plur. nor a definite form.

\*) It is however still a very common practice to give these a mute *e* in the plural. Mr. Molbech e. g. has in his dictionary *graa* pl. *graae*; *frie* and *nye* which Prof. Rask has put only in a parenthesis is, I think, always written in the plural of these adjectives.

19. *Of the degrees of comparison.*

The qualities denoted by the adjectives may be of different degrees, and these degrees are sometimes expressed by terminations.

The positive degree (*den første Grad*) is the adjective itself, of which we have treated already. The comparative (*den højere Grad*) is expressed in Danish by adding *ere*; the superlative (*den højeste Grad*) by adding *-est*, as: *hvidere, hvidest, kortere, kortest*.

The comparative does not admit of any further inflection, being indeclinable, like the positives in *e* (as *ringe*, e. g. *et lærd-ere Fruentimmer*, a more learned woman, *en lærdere Mand, Dame &c.* a more learned man, lady &c., *lærdere Personer*, more learned persons; in like manner def. *det lærdere, den lærdere, de lærdere*. When absolute, it may however (like *ringe*) receive the *s* in the genit. case, as: *en lærdere, pl. lærderes*, def. *den lærderes, de lærderes*.

The superlative distinguishes the def. form from the indef. by adding *e*, but is otherwise indeclinable. The indef. form is rarely used except as an absolute predicate after the verb, as: *Sneen, er hvidest*, the snow is (the) whitest; *hvem var højest*, who was (the) tallest; it never occurs in the plural. The def. form is like the def. positive, as: *det hvideste Papir, den hvideste Farve, de hvideste Vægge; det lærdeste Fruentimmer, den lærdeste Mand, de lærdeste Personer*; gen. absol. *det, den, de hvidestes*.

In like manner are regularly formed:

*syg-t, syg-ere, syg-est;*  
*sand-t, sandere, sandest;*  
*drøj-t, drøjere, drøjest;*  
*fuld-t, fuldere, fuldest;*  
*kort, kortere, kortest;*  
*glad, glädere, glädest;*

*gäl-t, galere, galest;*  
*seen-t, senere, senest;*  
*tryg t, tryggere, tryggest;*  
*smuk-t, smukkere, smukkest;*  
*fri-t, friere, friest;*  
*ny-t, nyere, nyest.*

Those contracted in the positive degree are also contracted in the other degrees, as far as they admit these forms. Ex.

*ædel-t, ædlere, ædlest; sikker-t, sikrere, sikrest;*  
*beskjeden-t,\*) beskjednere, beskjednest, modest; &c.*

Derivative adjectives in *ig* and *lig*, admit only *-st* (not *est*) in the superlative, as:

*ærlig-t, ærligere, ærligst, honest; værdig-t, værdigere, værdigst, worthy; &c.*

The following are irregular in their degrees:

|                                           |                                          |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>lang-t, længere, længst, long;</i>     | <i>mange plur., flere, fleest, many;</i> |
| <i>ung-t, yngre, yngst, young;</i>        | <i>god-t, bedre, bedst, good;</i>        |
| <i>stør-t, større, størst; great;</i>     | <i>ond-t } værre, værst, evil, bad;</i>  |
| <i>lidet, -en, mindre, mindst, small;</i> | <i>slem-t }</i>                          |
| <i>små, (plur.), smærre, (smærrest);</i>  | <i>gammel-t, ældre, ældst, old;</i>      |
| <i>faa, (plur.), færre, færrest, few;</i> | <i>(nær-t,) nærmere, nærmest, near;</i>  |
| <i>meget, en, mere, meest, much;</i>      |                                          |

National adjectives and several others are used only in the positive degree, as: *spansk* Spanish; *islandsk*, Icelandic; thus also:

*heel, whole; enkelt, simple;*  
*østre, eastern; sydre (søndre), southern;*  
*vestre, western; nordre, nørre, northern.*

Some adjectives are defective in the positive degree, and some even in the compar. being originally adverbs or prepositions, as:

|                                     |                                      |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>(ned, down), nedre, nederst;</i> | <i>(for, fore) — forrest;</i>        |
| <i>(over, over), øvre, øverst;</i>  | <i>(bag, behind) — bagerst;</i>      |
| <i>(ud, out), ydre, yderst;</i>     | <i>(før, before) — først;</i>        |
| <i>(ind, in), indre, inderst;</i>   | <i>(siden, afterwards) — sidst;</i>  |
| <i>ene, alone — det eneste;</i>     | <i>(mellem, between) — mellemst;</i> |

Participles very rarely admit the inflection of degree, but in order to express the same ideas, they take before them *meer* (*mere*) more, in the comparative, and *meest*, most, in the superlative as:

\*) Molbech and others write *beskeden*.

*godgjørende*, charitable, *meer*, *meest godgjørende*;

*elsket*, beloved, *meer*, *meest elsket*;

*drukken*, drunk, *meer*, *meest drukken*;

*skjeløjet*, squinting, *meer*, *meest skjeløjet*;

A diminution of degree, having no appropriate termination, is always expressed by prefixing the adverbs *mindre*, less, and *mindst*, least, as :

*mindre*, *mindst hvid-t*, less, least white;

*mindre*, *mindst syg-t*, less, least sick;

*mindre*, *mindst elske-t*, less, least beloved;

*mindre*, *mindst drukken*, less, least drunk, &c.

## PRONOUNS.

20. The personal pronouns, (*personlige Stedord*), in Danish as in English, have also an objective case (accusative and dative), but are sometimes defective in the genitive, as :

|         | 1st person.          | 2d person.                 | 3d person.                     |                      |
|---------|----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------------|
|         |                      |                            | recipr. masc.                  | fem.                 |
| S. Nom. | <i>jeg</i> , I,      | <i>du</i> , thou,          | = <i>han</i> , he,             | <i>hun</i> she;      |
| Object. | <i>mig</i> , me,     | <i>dig</i> , thee,         | <i>sig</i> , <i>ham</i> , him, | <i>hende</i> , her,  |
| Gen.    | =                    | =                          | = <i>hans</i> , his,           | <i>hendes</i> , her, |
| P. Nom. | <i>vi</i> , we,      | <i>I</i> , you,            | =                              | =                    |
| Object. | <i>os</i> , us,      | <i>eder (jer)</i> , you,   | <i>sig</i> , =                 | =                    |
| Gen.    | <i>vores</i> , ours, | <i>eders (jer)</i> .yours, | =                              | =                    |

The plur. of *han*, *hun*, is supplied for both genders by *de*, *dem*, *deres*, being the plur. of the demonstr.

*Selv*, self, is used as in English to make the two 1st pers. reciprocal, as : *mig selv*, *os selv*, &c. it is also frequently added to the nominatives of all three personal pronouns and to the recip. in order to make them more expressive, as : *jeg selv*, I myself; *vi selv*, we ourselves; *sig selv*, himself, themselves. *Han selv* means also the master of the house, *hun selv*, the lady of the house, pl. *de selv*, master and mistress. But *selv* is never added to the genit.

21. The Genit. sing. of the two first persons and of the recipr. form of the third is supplied by the possessive pronouns (*Ejestedord*), which are declined like indef. adjectives, thus:

|                  | neut.        | com.         | plur.                            |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| of the 1st pers. | <i>mit</i> , | <i>min</i> , | <i>mine</i> , my, mine;          |
| — 2d pers.       | <i>dit</i> , | <i>din</i> , | <i>dine</i> , thy, thine;        |
| — recipr.        | <i>sit</i> , | <i>sin</i> , | <i>sine</i> , its, his, her own. |

Even from the plurals possessives are formed thus:

|                  |                  |              |                                  |
|------------------|------------------|--------------|----------------------------------|
| of the 1st pers. | <i>vort</i> ,    | <i>vor</i> , | <i>vore</i> , our, ours;         |
| — 2d pers.       | ( <i>jért</i> ), | <i>jer</i> , | <i>jere</i> , your, yours;       |
| — recipr.        | <i>sit</i> ,     | <i>sin</i> , | <i>sine</i> , their own, theirs. |

The last however is much disputed, the Grammarians commonly limiting the use of *sit*, *sin* to those cases, where the nominative is singular; but being derived from *sig*, which is allowed to be used also of a plural, it appears to have just claims to the same right, and thus it is used in Icelandic and Swedish, and even oftentimes in Danish authors, especially the elder. Nay, the Latin use of the corresponding word *suum*, *suus*, *sua*, seems to justify the extension we have given it.

The Gen. *vores* is used absolutely, like the Engl. *ours*, but the possessive *vort*, *vor*, in connection with nouns substantive like *our*: but *eders* is commonly used in both cases by authors, so that *jért*, *jer*, rarely occurs but in common conversation.

*Eget*, *egen*, *égne*, own, is used as a sort of reciprocal possessive, corresponding to the personal recipr. *selv*, e. g. *mit eget*, my own, *vort eget*, our own, *hans egen*, his own, *hendes egne*, her own.

22. The neuter gender of the third person, as also its plural in all genders, are supplied by the demonstrative pronoun (*bestemmende Stedord*) *det*, *den*, which is thus declined.

|            | neut.         | com.         |
|------------|---------------|--------------|
| Sing. Nom. | <i>det,</i>   | <i>den,</i>  |
| Obj.       | <i>det,</i>   | <i>den,</i>  |
| Gen.       | <i>dets,</i>  | <i>dens,</i> |
|            | }             |              |
| Plur. Nom. | <i>de,</i>    |              |
| Obj.       | <i>dem,</i>   |              |
| Gen.       | <i>deres.</i> |              |

The plur. of this word is used in common conversation to a single person, or to several, like the English *you*, and in this case it is always written with a capital letter for the sake of distinction \*): *De, Dem, Deres.*

But in connection with a substantive it is declined like the def. art. of the adjectives, from which it is distinguished merely by a peculiar stress or emphasis, when used demonstratively thus:

|            |                   |                   |
|------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Sing. Nom. | <i>dèt Bòrd,</i>  | <i>dèn Stòl,</i>  |
| Gen.       | <i>dèt Bòrds,</i> | <i>dèn Stòls,</i> |
| Plur. Nom. | <i>dé Bòrde,</i>  | <i>dé Stòle,</i>  |
| Gen.       | <i>dé Bòrdes,</i> | <i>dé Stòles,</i> |

The remaining demonstratives have no more than these three inflections, viz.

|                 |                |                    |       |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------------|-------|
| <i>dette,</i>   | <i>denne,</i>  | pl. <i>disse,</i>  | this; |
| <i>hint,</i>    | <i>hin,</i>    | — <i>hine,</i>     | that; |
| <i>saadant,</i> | <i>suadan,</i> | — <i>saadanne,</i> | such; |
| <i>sligt,</i>   | <i>slig,</i>   | — <i>slige,</i>    | such; |

*samme,* same, is indeclinable, being properly the def. form of and old demonstr. *sam-t*, though often used without the article. Only, like the other demonstrs., it receives the genit. termination *-s*, when standing absolute, as *dettes, hins, saadannes, sammes* &c.

\*) The capital letter is considered as a mark of respect, and it would be held to be an insult to write this pronoun, when used in addressing another person, with a small letter. This fashion is originally German, for the Germans also write "*Sie*" and "*Ihnen*" with a capital.

23. Relative pronouns (*henvisende Stedord*) are:

*der*, who, that, used only in the nominative without distinction of gender and number;

*som*, who, whom, that, used both as nominative and object, but likewise without distinction of gender and number.

Both interrogative (*spørgende*) and relative, are:

*hvad*, what, used of things, and *hvem*, (formerly in the nom. *hvo*), who, whom, of persons, the latter even sometimes as a plural;

*hvilket*, *hvilken*, pl. *hvilke*, which.

To all these relatives and interrogatives the only absolute genitive is *hvis* for both numbers;

*hvordant*, *hvordan*, *hvordanne*, how (Lat. *quale*, *is*) is scarcely ever used in the objective or genitive.

24. Indefinite pronouns (*ubestemte Stedord*) are:

*der*, it, or there, which expresses a perfectly indefinite subject\*), especially with passive verbs, as: *der siges at han kommer hertil*, it is said, or they say that he is coming hither; *der er næppe nogen som troer det*, there is scarcely anybody who believes it.

*man*, one, a person, (the French *on*), as: *man maa sige sig deri*, one must put up with it; *man taler meget*

\*) Professor Rask often uses the term "Subject" in the sense which it frequently has with the German grammarians; but which is little known in England. What Rask calls "Subject", the English Grammarians always call "nominative". A Dane asks: "Hvad er Subjectet i denne Sætning?" In English he must express the same question thus: "What is the nominative in this proposition?" English scholars are so little accustomed to the continental school term "*subjectum grammaticale*", that they would, I think, better understand the Greek term, *ὑποκείμενον*, than "subject", as expressive of that notion which they use to call "nominative." ED.



*derom*, they speak much about it. This word is merely used as nominat. or subject; in the objective case we sometimes say *En*, one, instead of it, and in the gen. *Ens*, speaking of ourselves.

*noget, nogen*, pl. *nogle* or *nogen*, some; any;

(*somt*) \* pl. *somme*, some people;

*intet, ingen*, pl. *ingen*, nothing, nobody, none;

*alt, al*, pl. *alle*, all, every;

*hvert, hver*, (without a pl.) every; also *ethvert, enhver*;

*ingenting* (*ingen Ting*), nothing; *alting*, every thing;

*et andet, en anden*, pl. *andre*; another, somebody else;

this last word is also used definitely without changing its form, as: *det andet Bord*, the other table, &c.

*Hinanden*, each other, speaking of two;

*hverandre*, one another, speaking of a greater number.

25. The numeral pronouns (*Talordene*) are of two sorts, viz.

a) cardinals (*Mængdetal*);

1. *een, one*,

2. *to, two*,

3. *tre, three*,

4. *fire, four*,

5. *fem, five*,

6. *sex, six*,

7. *sju, seven*,

8. *aatte (otte), \*) eight*,

9. *ni, nine*,

10. *ti, ten*,

11. *elleve, eleven*,

12. *tolv, twelve*,

13. *tretten, thirteen*,

14. *fjorten, fourteen*,

15. *femten, fifteen*,

b) ordinals (*Ordenstal*).

*det, den første*,

*det andet, den anden*,

*det, den tredje*,

— *fjerde*,

— *femte*,

— *sjette*,

— *syvende*,

— *attende, [ottende]*,

— *niende*,

— *tiende*,

— *ellefte*,

— *tolvte*,

— *trettende*,

— *fjortende*,

— *femtende*,

---

\*) The usual spelling certainly is "otte" and Molbech has no other. Prof. Rasks spelling however is supported both by pronunciation and etymology, the Icelandic word being "átta". ED

|                                                   |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 16. <i>sejsten</i> [commonly <i>sexten</i> ],     | <i>den, det sejstende</i> [commonly <i>sex-</i> |
| <i>sixteen,</i>                                   | <i>tende</i> ],                                 |
| 17. <i>syttten</i> , seventeen,                   | — <i>syttende</i> ,                             |
| 18. <i>atten</i> , eighteen,                      | — <i>attende</i> ,                              |
| 19. <i>nitten</i> , nineteen,                     | — <i>nittende</i> ,                             |
| 20. <i>tyve</i> , twenty,                         | — <i>tyvende</i> ,                              |
| 21. <i>een og tyve</i> , twenty one &c.           | — <i>een-og-tyvende</i> ,                       |
|                                                   | twenty first,                                   |
| 30. <i>trédive</i> , thirty,                      | — <i>trédifte</i> [commonly <i>tredio-</i>      |
|                                                   | <i>te</i> ], thirtieth,                         |
| 40. <i>fyrretyve</i> , forty,                     | — <i>fyrgetyvende</i> , fortieth,               |
| 50. <i>halvtres</i> , <i>halvtresinds-</i>        | — <i>halvtresindstyvende</i> [com-              |
| <i>tyve</i> [commonly <i>halb-</i>                | monly <i>halvtredsindstyven-</i>                |
| <i>tredsindstyve</i> ], } fifty,                  | <i>de</i> ], fiftieth,                          |
| 60. <i>tres</i> , <i>tresindstyve</i> , [commonly | — <i>tresindstyvende</i> , sixtieth,            |
| <i>tredsindstyve</i> and <i>tredsinds-</i>        |                                                 |
| <i>tyvende</i> ,] sixty,                          |                                                 |
| 70. <i>halvfjers</i> , } <i>seventy</i> ,         | — <i>halvfjersindstyvende</i> ,                 |
| <i>halvfjersindstyve</i> , }                      | <i>seventieth</i> ,                             |
| 80. <i>firs</i> , } <i>eighty</i> ,               | — <i>firsindstyvende</i> , eightieth,           |
| <i>firsindstyve</i> }                             |                                                 |
| 90. <i>halvfems</i> } <i>ninety</i> ,             | — <i>halvfemsindstyvende</i> , nine-            |
| <i>halvfemsindstyve</i> }                         | <i>tieth</i> ,                                  |
| 100. <i>hundrede</i> , hundred,                   | — <i>hundrede</i> , hundredth,                  |
| 101. <i>hundrede og eet</i> , een,                | — <i>hundrede-og-første</i> , &c.               |
| 200. <i>to hundrede</i> , two hundred,            | — <i>to hundrede</i> , two hundred,             |
| 1000. <i>tusinde</i> , thousand,                  | — <i>tusinde</i> , thousandth.                  |

The abbreviated forms, *halvtres*, *tres*, *halvfjers*, *firs*, *halvfems*, are used when the numeral stands absolute, or without a noun, consequently applied in counting; the longer forms, *halvtresindstyve* &c., in connection with nouns.

The words *hundrede*, *tusinde*, being originally nouns substantive, are sometimes written with a capital letter, and the indef. art. as: *et Hundrede*, *et Tusinde*, or abbreviated, *et Hundred*, *et Tusind*.

*En Millión*, a million, *Billión*, *Trillión*, &c. are also nouns substantive, and constantly used as such.

There are also some other numeral nouns, as:

|                                            |                               |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>et Par</i> , a couple, a pair, a brace; |                               |
| <i>et Deger</i> , a dicher;                | <i>et Dosin</i> , a dozen;    |
| <i>en Snees</i> , a score;                 | <i>en Skok</i> , three score. |
|                                            | <i>en Ol</i> , four score.    |

Some numeral adjectives are stiled multiplicative by the Latin Grammarians, viz.

|                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>enkelt</i> , single, simple; | <i>dobbelt</i> , double;           |
| <i>tre dobbelt</i> , triple;    | <i>firdobbelt</i> , quadruple, &c. |

But there are no numeral adverbs in Danish like *once*, *twice*, *thrice*, instead of them we constantly use the noun *Gang*, time, with a cardinal or ordinal prefixed, as:

|                            |                                          |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>een Gang</i> , once,    | <i>förste Gang</i> , the first time;     |
| <i>to Gange</i> , twice,   | <i>anden Gang</i> , the second time;     |
| <i>tre Gange</i> , thrice. | <i>tredie Gang</i> , the third time, &c. |

We even say: *een ad Gangen*, one at a time; *to ad Gangen*, two at a time, &c.

The fractions are thus expressed:-

*halvt, halv, halve*, half, is a regular adj. indef. & def.

but  $\frac{1}{2}$  is read *en halv*,

|                |   |                                                                              |
|----------------|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $1\frac{1}{2}$ | — | <i>halvtandet, halvanden,</i><br>or <i>eet og et halvt, een og en halv</i> ; |
| $2\frac{1}{2}$ | — | <i>halvtredie, or to og en halv</i> ;                                        |
| $3\frac{1}{2}$ | — | <i>halvfjerde, or tre og en halv</i> ; &c.                                   |
| $\frac{1}{3}$  | — | <i>en Trediedeel,</i>                                                        |
| $1\frac{1}{3}$ | — | <i>een og en Trediedeel,</i>                                                 |
| $\frac{2}{3}$  | — | <i>to Trediedeel,</i>                                                        |
| $\frac{1}{4}$  | — | <i>en Fjerdedeel,</i>                                                        |
| $\frac{2}{4}$  | — | <i>to Fjerdedeel,</i>                                                        |
| $\frac{3}{4}$  | — | <i>tre Fjerdedeel, &amp;c.</i>                                               |

## VERBS.

### 26. *Introductory observations.*

The inflection of the Danish verbs (*Gjerningsord*) is very simple, and like that of the English; we distinguish however an active and a passive voice (*Hand-*

*leformen* & *Lideformen*), but the latter is always formed by merely adding the termination *s* or *es*.

The verb itself has, properly speaking, three modes viz. the indicative (*den fremsættende Maade*); the optative (*den ønskende*) and the imperative (*den bydende*); besides the derived forms: the infinitive (*Nævneformen*), and the participles (*Tillægsformerne*), being two as in English, and of the same denominations. The indicative has two tenses (*Tidsformer*), viz. the present (*Nutiden*) and the past (*Datiden*), the other modes and forms have only one tense each. The present and past of the indicative and the passive partic. are the most important parts of the verbs.

With respect to the formation of these inflections, the verbs are divided into two great orders (*Hovedarter*), the one more simple and regular, the other more complex and irregular; each of them however is subdivided into different classes according to the formation of the past tense of the indic. active. The simple order forms only one conjugation, it always terminates the past in *de* or *te*, and has consequently more than one syllable; it has three sub-classes: the 1st trisyllabic in the past, & terminating in *-ede*; the 2d dissyllabic, and terminating in *te* (or *de*); the 3d also dissyllabic, and terminating in *de* (or *te*) but changing, besides, the vowel in the radical syllable. In the complex order the past tense is always monosyllabic having no termination, or affix, but ending in the last radical letter, and usually changing the vowel. It may be divided into two conjugations, the one usually preserving the original vowel of the present in the participle passive; the other changing the vowel not only in the past tense, but also in the participle. Each of these conjugations has also three sub-classes according to the vowels adopted in the past. The following synopsis may give the reader a view of the whole system:

*The simple order or 1st conjugation:*

|        | pres.               | past.            | part. pass.                |
|--------|---------------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| cl. 1. | <i>jeg klager,</i>  | <i>klagede,</i>  | <i>klaget</i> , complain ; |
| cl. 2. | <i>jeg brænder,</i> | <i>brændte,</i>  | <i>brændt</i> , burn ;     |
| cl. 3. | <i>jeg følger,</i>  | <i>fulgde,*)</i> | <i>fulgt</i> , accompany ; |

*The complex order, 2d conjugation.*

|        |                                              |             |                             |
|--------|----------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|
| cl. 1. | <i>jeg beder,</i>                            | <i>bad,</i> | <i>bedet (béd)</i> , pray ; |
| cl. 2. | <i>jeg faar,</i><br>[commonly <i>faaer</i> ] | <i>fik,</i> | <i>faaet</i> , get ;        |
| cl. 3. | <i>jeg lader,</i>                            | <i>lod,</i> | <i>ladet</i> , let ;        |

*The 3d conjugation.*

|        |                     |                                   |                                |
|--------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| cl. 1. | <i>jeg slipper,</i> | <i>slap</i> (pl. <i>sluppe</i> ), | <i>sluppet, -en</i> , escape ; |
| cl. 2. | <i>jeg river,</i>   | <i>rev</i> (— <i>reve</i> ),      | <i>revet, -en</i> , tear ;     |
| cl. 3. | <i>jeg byder,</i>   | <i>bød</i> (— <i>bude</i> ),      | <i>budet, -en</i> , invite.    |

The persons are only distinguished by the pronouns or other words added, never by peculiar terminations ; even the two numbers are often formed alike, or confounded in common conversation, even when distinguished in the written language.

The imperative has no more than the second person in either number.

The passive voice admits of no distinction of numbers or persons, but merely of tenses and modes.

*27. The first conjugation.*

As paradigms of this order let us take, *jeg elsker*, I love ; *jeg hører*, I hear ; *jeg lægger*, I lay, which are thus inflected.

\*) Rask and some other authors write "fulgde" which, no doubt, is etymologically correct, for the Icelandic has "*fylgdi*" Molbech however writes "*fulgte*" and such certainly is the usual spelling. Modern Danish looks much more to German analogies than to Icelandic etymology: the German has "*folgte*" in the past. hence Danish "*fulgte*".

## The active voice.

*Indicative mode.*

|             | 1st class       | 2d class      | 3d class       |
|-------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| Pres. Sing. | <i>elsker,</i>  | <i>hører,</i> | <i>lægger,</i> |
| Plur.       | <i>elske,</i>   | <i>høre,</i>  | <i>lægge,</i>  |
| Past. Sing. | <i>elskede,</i> | <i>hørte,</i> | <i>lagde,</i>  |
| Plur.       | <i>elskede,</i> | <i>hørte,</i> | <i>lagde,</i>  |

*Optative mode.*

|             |                |               |                |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| Pres. Sing. | <i>elske !</i> | <i>høre !</i> | <i>lægge !</i> |
| Plur.       | <i>elske !</i> | <i>høre !</i> | <i>lægge !</i> |

*Imperative mode.*

|                |                   |               |               |
|----------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Pres. Sing. 2. | <i>elsk (du)</i>  | <i>hør,</i>   | <i>læg,</i>   |
| Plur. 2.       | <i>elsker (I)</i> | <i>hører,</i> | <i>lægge,</i> |

*Derived forms.*

|         |                    |                   |                    |
|---------|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Infim.  | <i>(at) elske,</i> | <i>(at) høre,</i> | <i>(at) lægge,</i> |
| Partic. | <i>elskende,</i>   | <i>hørende,</i>   | <i>læggende,</i>   |

## The passive voice.

*Indicative mode.*

|       |                  |                |                |
|-------|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Pres. | <i>elskes,</i>   | <i>høres,</i>  | <i>lægges,</i> |
| Past. | <i>elskedes,</i> | <i>hørtes,</i> | <i>lagdes,</i> |

*Optative or Imperative mode.*

|       |                |               |                |
|-------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| Pres. | <i>elskes,</i> | <i>høres,</i> | <i>lægges,</i> |
|-------|----------------|---------------|----------------|

*Derived forms.*

|             |                     |                    |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| Infim.      | <i>(at) elskes,</i> | <i>(at) høres,</i> | <i>(at) lægges,</i> |
| Part. Sing. | <i>elsket,</i>      | <i>hørt,</i>       | <i>lagt,</i>        |
| Plur.       | <i>elskede ;</i>    | <i>hørte ;</i>     | <i>lagte.</i>       |

## 28. Of the 1st class are :

|                   |                   |                  |                      |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| <i>vander,</i>    | <i>vandede,</i>   | <i>vandet,</i>   | <i>water ;</i>       |
| <i>strander,</i>  | <i>strandede,</i> | <i>strandet,</i> | <i>strand ;</i>      |
| <i>vænter, *)</i> | <i>væntede,</i>   | <i>væntet,</i>   | <i>expect ;</i>      |
| <i>kenter,</i>    | <i>hentede,</i>   | <i>hentet,</i>   | <i>fetch ;</i>       |
| <i>agter,</i>     | <i>agtede,</i>    | <i>agtet,</i>    | <i>intend ;</i>      |
| <i>arbejder,</i>  | <i>arbejdede,</i> | <i>arbejdet,</i> | <i>work, &amp;c.</i> |

\*) There is no doubt whatever that Rask is right in writing *vænte* according to the Icelandic etymology *vænta*. The common spelling *vente* is barbarous.

Some verbs of this class having three consonants after the first vowel, preserve the final *e* in the sing. of the imperative, as: *handle som du vil behandles*, do as you will be done by; *forandre kun det*, you had better alter that, (not *handl*, *forandr*).

Verbs that have no consonant after the first vowel are of three sorts, viz. 1) those in *ier*, *uer* are wholly regular; 2) those in *y'er*, throw away the *e* in the pl. of the pres. and in the infin. 3) the rest are monosyllabic in the pres. tense throughout, and in the infinit. thus:

|                |                 |                  |                 |          |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|----------|
| <i>bier</i> ,  | <i>bie</i> ,    | <i>biede</i> ,   | <i>biet</i> ,   | wait;    |
| <i>suer</i> ,  | <i>sue</i> ,    | <i>suede</i> ,   | <i>suet</i> ,   | suck;    |
| <i>flyer</i> , | <i>fly</i> , *) | <i>flyede</i> ,  | <i>flyet</i> ,  | flee;    |
| <i>skyer</i> , | <i>sky</i> ,    | <i>skyede</i> ,  | <i>skyet</i> ,  | shun;    |
| <i>snér</i> ,  | <i>sne</i> ,    | <i>sneede</i> ,  | <i>sneet</i> ,  | snows;   |
| <i>tér</i> ,   | <i>te</i> ,     | <i>teede</i> ,   | <i>teet</i> ,   | show;    |
| <i>bór</i> ,   | <i>bo</i> ,     | <i>boede</i> ,   | <i>boet</i> ,   | dwel;    |
| <i>trór</i> ,  | <i>tro</i> ,    | <i>troede</i> ,  | <i>troet</i> ,  | believe; |
| <i>naar</i> ,  | <i>naa</i> ,    | <i>naaede</i> ,  | <i>naaet</i> ,  | reach;   |
| <i>saaer</i> , | <i>saa</i> ,    | <i>saaede</i> ,  | <i>saaet</i> ,  | sow;     |
| <i>strór</i> , | <i>strü</i> ,   | <i>ströede</i> , | <i>ströet</i> , | strew.   |

## 29. Of the 2d class are:

|                  |                  |                 |               |
|------------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>tænker</i> ,  | <i>tænkte</i> ,  | <i>tænkt</i> ,  | think;        |
| <i>taber</i> ,   | <i>tabte</i> ,   | <i>tabt</i> ,   | lose;         |
| <i>kjender</i> , | <i>kjendte</i> , | <i>kjendt</i> , | know;         |
| <i>vender</i> ,  | <i>vendte</i> ,  | <i>vendt</i> ,  | turn;         |
| <i>lærer</i> ,   | <i>lærte</i> ,   | <i>lært</i> ,   | learn, teach; |
| <i>volder</i> ,  | <i>voldte</i> ,  | <i>voldt</i> ,  | occasion;     |

Several verbs are inflected either according to this, or the 1st class; in such cases the contracted or shorter form of the past is the most usual, as: *jeg kalder*, I call, *kaldede*, or *kaldte*, called; *hælder*, incline, or pour in, *hældede* or *hældte*; *taler*, speak, *taledede*, or *talte*.

---

\*) Molbech writes *flye*, *skye*, *snee*, *tee*, *boe*, *troe*, *naae*, *saae*, *ströe*; but in all these the final *e* is mute. RD.

Some authors give this class *-de* in the past, as: *hörde, fælde, felt, tænkte, tabde, &c.*, but this appears to be against the common pronunciation and the best usage.

Some irregular verbs have really *-de* in the past, viz. *har*, pl. *have*, *havde*, *haft*, have; *vil*, pl. *ville*, *vilde*, *villet*, will, *har*, being contracted for *haver*, forms in the passive *haves*; but *vil*, being a neuter verb, has no passive voice.

|                        |                |               |                |
|------------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| <i>døe, dö,</i>        | <i>døde,</i>   | <i>døet,</i>  | <i>die,</i>    |
| <i>skjer, skje, *)</i> | <i>skjede,</i> | <i>skjet,</i> | <i>happen.</i> |

30. According to the rules for the 3d class are inflected:

|                  |                 |                |            |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------|------------|
| <i>kvæler,</i>   | <i>kvalde,</i>  | <i>kvælt,</i>  | suffocate; |
| <i>tæller,</i>   | <i>talde,</i>   | <i>talt,</i>   | count;     |
| <i>vælger,</i>   | <i>valgde,</i>  | <i>valgt,</i>  | choose;    |
| <i>vænnere,</i>  | <i>vande,</i>   | <i>vant,</i>   | accustom;  |
| <i>siger,</i>    | <i>sagde,</i>   | <i>sagt,</i>   | say;       |
| <i>bringer,</i>  | <i>bragde,</i>  | <i>bragt,</i>  | bring;     |
| <i>sælger,</i>   | <i>saalgde,</i> | <i>saalgt,</i> | sell;      |
| <i>træder,</i>   | <i>traadte,</i> | <i>traadt,</i> | tread;     |
| <i>smører,</i>   | <i>smurde,</i>  | <i>smurt,</i>  | smear;     |
| <i>spørger,</i>  | <i>spurgde,</i> | <i>spurgt,</i> | ask;       |
| <i>følger,</i>   | <i>fulgde,</i>  | <i>fulgt,</i>  | attend;    |
| <i>dølger,</i>   | <i>dulgte,</i>  | <i>dulgt,</i>  | conceal;   |
| <i>flækker,</i>  | <i>flakte,</i>  | <i>flakt,</i>  | cleave;    |
| <i>rækker,</i>   | <i>rakte,</i>   | <i>rakt,</i>   | reach;     |
| <i>strækker,</i> | <i>strakte,</i> | <i>strakt,</i> | stretch;   |
| <i>tækker,</i>   | <i>takte,</i>   | <i>takt,</i>   | thatch;    |
| <i>vækker,</i>   | <i>vakte,</i>   | <i>vakt,</i>   | awake;     |
| <i>sætter,</i>   | <i>satte,</i>   | <i>sat,</i>    | set.       |

[Molbech and the great majority of Danish authors certainly write

|                 |                 |               |
|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <i>quæler,</i>  | <i>quælte,</i>  |               |
| <i>vænnere,</i> | <i>vante,</i>   |               |
| <i>bringer,</i> | <i>bragte,</i>  |               |
| <i>sælger,</i>  | <i>solgte,</i>  | <i>solgt,</i> |
| <i>spørger,</i> | <i>spurgte,</i> |               |
| <i>følger,</i>  | <i>fulgte,</i>  |               |

\*) Commonly *skeer, shee*. ED.



*dölger,*  
*tøller,*

*dulgte,*  
*talte;*

but Rask, who endeavoured to establish a system of orthography founded on etymology, has Icelandic analogies always in remembrance: the Icelanders say *ven, vandi; sel, seldi; spyr, spurdi; fylgi, fylgdi; tel, taldi* &c. which no doubt led Rask to adopt *d* in preference to *t* in the past tenses of these verbs. ED.]

Some writers, not considering this as a regular class, prefer saying in the past: *kvælede, tællede, vænnede, rækkede, strækkede, tækkede, vækkede*; but as this trailing formation cannot be extended to all cases, nobody saying *vælgede, sigede, spörgede, sættede*, nor to the participles, so as to say *kvælet, tællet, &c.* it appears rather to destroy the real regularity, than to introduce any.

Instead of *talde, talt*, we say also *taalde, taalt*, and this formation ought perhaps to be recommended, being analogous to *sælger, saalgde*, and distinguishing the word more clearly from *taler, talte, talt*; with the verb, *taaler, taalte, taalt*, endure, there is little fear of a confusion, these two words being used in totally different combinations.

There are however some real irregulars of this class, viz.

| Sing.        | Plur.         | Past.          | Part.           | Infinit.         |           |
|--------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------|
| <i>gjör,</i> | <i>gjöre,</i> | <i>gjörde,</i> | <i>gjört-e,</i> | <i>at gjöre,</i> | make, do; |
| <i>tör,</i>  | <i>tör,</i>   | <i>törde,</i>  | <i>tördet,</i>  | — <i>torde,</i>  | dare;     |
| <i>tör,</i>  | <i>tör,</i>   | <i>türde,</i>  | <i>türdet,</i>  | — <i>turde,</i>  | need;*)   |
| <i>bör,</i>  | <i>bör,</i>   | <i>bürde,</i>  | <i>bürdet,</i>  | — <i>burde,</i>  | ought;    |

---

\*) This distinction between *tör, torde*, to dare, and *tör, turde*, to need, is not generally observed. Molbech in his dictionary has, no doubt, the various senses, but only one form of the verb: *tör, türde, türdet*. Of course, Rask derives his *tör, torde*, from the Icelandic *þori, þordi*; but *tör, turde*, from the German *dürfen*.

| Sing.        | Plur.          | Past.          | Part.           | Infinit.          |         |
|--------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------|
| <i>maa,</i>  | <i>maa,</i>    | <i>maatte,</i> | <i>maattet,</i> | <i>at maatte,</i> | must ;  |
| <i>kan,</i>  | <i>kunne,</i>  | <i>kunde,</i>  | <i>kunnet,</i>  | — <i>kunne,</i>   | can ;   |
| <i>skal,</i> | <i>skulle,</i> | <i>skulde,</i> | <i>skullet,</i> | — <i>skulle,</i>  | shall ; |
| <i>veed,</i> | <i>vide,</i>   | <i>vidste,</i> | <i>vidst,</i>   | — <i>vide,</i>    | know.   |

The partic. *tordet*, *turdet*, *burdet*, are often, in common conversation, contracted to *tórdt*, *túrdt*, *búrdt*.

### 31. The second conjugation.

As paradigms may serve *giver*, *give*; *faar*, \*) *get*; *drager*, *draw*, *pull*; which are thus inflected.

#### The active voice.

##### Indicative mode.

|             |               |                      |                |
|-------------|---------------|----------------------|----------------|
| Pres. Sing. | <i>giver,</i> | <i>faar,</i>         | <i>drager,</i> |
| Plur.       | <i>give,</i>  | <i>faa,</i>          | <i>drage,</i>  |
| Past. Sing. | <i>gav,</i>   | <i>fik,</i>          | <i>drog,</i>   |
| Plur.       | <i>gave,</i>  | <i>fik, (finge),</i> | <i>droge,</i>  |

##### Optative mode.

|       |              |             |               |
|-------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| Pres. | <i>give.</i> | <i>faa,</i> | <i>drage,</i> |
|-------|--------------|-------------|---------------|

##### Imperative mode.

|                |                   |              |                |
|----------------|-------------------|--------------|----------------|
| Pres. Sing. 2. | <i>giv, (du),</i> | <i>faa,</i>  | <i>drag,</i>   |
| Plur. 2.       | <i>giver (I),</i> | <i>faar,</i> | <i>drager,</i> |

##### Derived forms.

|          |                   |                  |                    |
|----------|-------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| Infinit. | <i>(at) give,</i> | <i>(at) faa,</i> | <i>(at) drage,</i> |
| Part.    | <i>givende,</i>   | <i>(faaende)</i> | <i>dragende,</i>   |

#### The passive voice.

##### Indicative mode.

|       |               |                  |                |
|-------|---------------|------------------|----------------|
| Pres. | <i>gives,</i> | <i>faas</i>      | <i>drages,</i> |
| Past. | <i>gaves,</i> | <i>(fikkes),</i> | <i>droges,</i> |

##### Optative or Imperative mode.

|       |               |              |                |
|-------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| Pres. | <i>gives,</i> | <i>faas,</i> | <i>drages,</i> |
|-------|---------------|--------------|----------------|

\*) This verb has with Molbech and other authors a mute *e* both in the active and the passive voice, viz. *faær*, *faaes* &c.

*Derived forms.*

|             |                     |                    |                      |
|-------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| Infin.      | (at) <i>gives</i> , | (at) <i>faas</i> , | (at) <i>drages</i> . |
| Part. Sing. | <i>givet</i> , -en, | <i>faaet</i> ,     | <i>draget</i> , -en, |
| Plur.       | <i>giene</i> ;      | <i>faaede</i> ;    | <i>dragne</i> .      |

The participle passive creates some difficulty, being sometimes formed in *et* in the neut., *en* in the com., *-ne*, in the plur.; sometimes merely used as a supine (*Bi-form*) in the neuter sing. in *et*, sometimes the plur. is formed as in 1st conjug., in *-ede*, or *-te*.

32. To the first class belong the verbs enumerated in the following list, where also the plur. of the past, whenever it differs from the sing., shall be marked, as also the com. gend. and plur. of the partic. pass., whenever these forms occur.

|                   |                   |                                 |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>kvæder</i> ,   | <i>kvad-e</i> ,   | <i>kvædet</i> ,                 | sing ;            |
| <i>beder</i> ,    | <i>bad-e</i> ,    | <i>bedet</i> , <i>bedt-e</i> ,  | beg ;             |
| <i>gider</i> ,    | <i>gad-e</i> ,    | <i>gidet</i> , ( <i>gidt</i> ), | like ;            |
| <i>sidder</i> ,   | <i>sad-e</i> ,    | <i>siddet</i> ,                 | sit ;             |
| <i>stinker</i> ,  | <i>stank</i> ,    | <i>stinket</i> ,                | stink ;           |
| <i>klinger</i> ,  | <i>klang</i> ,    | <i>klinget</i> ,                | sound ;           |
| <i>hænger</i> ,   | <i>hang</i> ,     | <i>hængt-e</i> ,                | hang ;            |
| <i>gjælder</i> ,  | <i>gjaldt</i> ,   | <i>gjældt</i> ,                 | is valid ;        |
| <i>skjælver</i> , | <i>skjalt</i> ,   | <i>skjælvet</i> ,               | tremble ;         |
| <i>falder</i> ,   | <i>faldt</i> ,    | <i>faldet</i> , -en, -ne,       | fall ;            |
| <i>tier</i> ,     | <i>tav</i> ,      | <i>tiet</i> ,                   | am silent ;       |
| <i>smækker</i> ,  | <i>smak</i> ,     | <i>smækket</i> , -de,           | clap ;            |
| <i>ligger</i> ,   | <i>laa</i> ,      | <i>ligget</i> , -de,            | lie ;             |
| <i>æder</i> ,     | <i>aad</i> ,      | <i>ædt-e</i> ,                  | eat (of beasts) ; |
| <i>sér</i> ,      | <i>saae</i> ,     | <i>sét-e</i> ,                  | see ;             |
| <i>stjæler</i> ,  | <i>stjal</i> (e), | <i>stjælet</i> , -en, -ne,      | steal ;           |
| <i>skærer</i> ,   | <i>skar-e</i> ,   | <i>skaaet</i> , -en, -ne,       | cut ;             |
| <i>bærer</i> ,    | <i>bar-e</i> ,    | <i>baaret</i> , -en, -ne,       | bear.             |

For *klang* some authors write *klingede* ; for *gjaldt*, *gjældte* ; for *skjælv*, *skjælvede* ; for *tav*, *taug* or *tiede*, partic. *taugt*.\* ) In *saae* the *e* final is mute both in the

---

\*) The great majority of authors certainly write *taug* in the past, *tiet* in part. pass. *Taug* is undoubtedly right, for the past as it is

sing. and plur., and merely used in order to distinguish this tense from the conjunction *saa*, so, then.

The auxiliary *jeg er*, I am, is entirely irregular, and thus inflected:

|             | Indicative    | Optative       | Infia.                      |
|-------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| Pres. Sing. | <i>er</i> ,   | <i>være!</i>   | ( <i>at</i> ) <i>være</i> , |
| Plur.       | <i>ere</i> ,  |                |                             |
|             |               | Imperat.       | Partic.                     |
| Past. Sing. | <i>var</i> ,  | <i>vær</i> ,   | <i>værende</i> ,            |
| Plur.       | <i>vare</i> , | <i>værer</i> , | <i>været</i> ,              |

33. The second class contains merely three verbs besides the paradigm. viz.

|                 |                                |                |                                          |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>gaar</i> ,*) | <i>gik</i> , ( <i>ginge</i> ), | <i>gaaet</i> , | go ;                                     |
| <i>hedder</i> , | <i>hed</i> ,                   | <i>hedt</i> ,  | am called, [I am<br>hight, or I hight] ; |
| <i>græder</i> , | <i>græd</i> ,                  | <i>grædt</i> , | weep,                                    |

*Gaar*, *hedder* and *græder* have no passive at all, but the compound verb *begræder*, deplore, is regular, in the pass. *begrædes* &c. Of *gaaer* there is also a regular pass. compound, defective in the active voice, viz *omgaaes*, converse, am familiar with, *omgikkes*, sup. *omgaaedes*. The past is sometimes erroneously made *omgikkes*.

Some writers instead of *gaaet*, have begun to use *gaaen*, in the com. gend. and *gaane*, in the pl., but this innovation is entirely foreign to the cultivated language, and only sometimes used by the lowest classes of Copenhagen, with whom it has crept in from the Lowgerm. or Dutch *gegaan*. It must be observed however, that, in the Dutch *gegaan*, the *n* is no mark of the com. gend., but the formative letter of the whole partic. in all genders and numbers like the Engl. *gone*.

*Pagdi* in Icel., *schwiege* in Germ., *zwieg* in Dutch, *csigatni* to be silent in Magyar. The *g* is not a servile letter that may be cast off at pleasure but a radical letter, as clearly appears from *Pegja* *schweigen*, *σιγάω*, *taceo* (*tacui*) &c. ED.

\*) The common spelling is *gaaer*, *omgaaes* &c. ED.

## 34. To the third class belong:

|                 |                             |                           |                |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
| <i>graver,</i>  | <i>grov-e, (gravede),</i>   | <i>gravet, -de,</i>       | dig ;          |
| <i>væver,</i>   | <i>vov-e, (vævede),</i>     | <i>vævet, -de,</i>        | weave ;        |
| <i>lader,</i>   | <i>lod-e,</i>               | <i>ladet, ladt-e,</i>     | let, cause ;   |
| <i>galer,</i>   | <i>gøl, (galede),</i>       | <i>galet,</i>             | crow ;         |
| <i>farer,</i>   | <i>foer, fore,</i>          | <i>faret, -en -ne,</i>    | go ;           |
| <i>erfarer,</i> | <i>erfoer-e (erfarede),</i> | <i>erfaret, -en, -ne,</i> | experience ;   |
| <i>jager,</i>   | <i>jog-e,</i>               | <i>jaget, -de,</i>        | drive, chase ; |
| <i>tager,</i>   | <i>tog-e,</i>               | <i>taget, -en -ne,</i>    | take ;         |
| <i>lér,</i>     | <i>lo,</i>                  | <i>leet,</i>              | laugh ;        |
| <i>slaar,</i>   | <i>slog-e,</i>              | <i>slaaet, -de,</i>       | beat ;         |
| <i>staar,*)</i> | <i>stod-e,</i>              | <i>staaet,</i>            | stand ;        |
| <i>sværger,</i> | <i>svor-e,</i>              | <i>svoret -en, -ne,</i>   | swear ;        |
| <i>sover,</i>   | <i>sov,</i>                 | <i>sovet,</i>             | sleep ;        |
| <i>kommer,</i>  | <i>kóm</i>                  | <i>kommet, -en -ne,</i>   | come ;         |
| <i>holder,</i>  | <i>holdt,</i>               | <i>holdt-e,</i>           | keep ;         |
| <i>hugger,</i>  | <i>kug,</i>                 | <i>hugget, -de,</i>       | hew, cut ;     |

But *begraver*, bury, *begrov*, makes the part. pass. *begravet*, *begraven*, *begravne*; from *slaar* there is an old partic. *slaget*, *slagen*, *slagne*; *forstaar*, understand, has in the part. pass. *forstaaet*, pl. *forstaaede*. The forms *slaaen*, *forstaaen* are false, and derived from the Dutch *geslaan*, *gestaan*, contrary to the genius of the Danish. From *holder*, there is an old partic. *holdet*, *holdén*, *holdne*, used as an adj., and from *hugget*, is also sometimes formed *huggen*, pl. *hugne*.

## 35. The third conjugation.

As paradigms may serve: *finder*, find; *driver*, drive; *stryger*, rub, stroke.

## The active voice.

## Indicative mode.

|             |                        |                |                 |
|-------------|------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Pres. Sing. | <i>finder,</i>         | <i>driver,</i> | <i>stryger,</i> |
| Plur.       | <i>finde,</i>          | <i>drive,</i>  | <i>stryge,</i>  |
| Past. Sing. | <i>fandt,</i>          | <i>drev,</i>   | <i>strøg,</i>   |
| Plur.       | <i>fandt, (funde),</i> | <i>dreve,</i>  | <i>strøge,</i>  |

\*) Commonly *staaer*; also *forstaaer* vid inf. ED.

*Optative mode.*

|       |               |               |                |
|-------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| Pres. | <i>finde,</i> | <i>drive,</i> | <i>stryge,</i> |
|-------|---------------|---------------|----------------|

*Imperative mode.*

|                |                |                |                 |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Pres. Sing. 2. | <i>find,</i>   | <i>drive,</i>  | <i>stryg,</i>   |
| Plur. 2.       | <i>finder,</i> | <i>driver,</i> | <i>stryger,</i> |

*Derived forms.*

|        |                    |                    |                     |
|--------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| Infin. | <i>(at) finde,</i> | <i>(at) drive,</i> | <i>(at) stryge,</i> |
| Part.  | <i>findende,</i>   | <i>drivende,</i>   | <i>strygende.</i>   |

## The passive voice.

*Indicative mode.*

|       |                 |                |                 |
|-------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Pres. | <i>findes,</i>  | <i>drives,</i> | <i>stryges,</i> |
| Past. | <i>findtes,</i> | <i>dreves,</i> | <i>ströges,</i> |

*Imperative or Optative mode.*

|       |                |                |                 |
|-------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Pres. | <i>findes,</i> | <i>drives,</i> | <i>stryges,</i> |
|-------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|

*Derived forms.*

|             |                     |                     |                      |
|-------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| Infin.      | <i>(at) findes,</i> | <i>(at) drives,</i> | <i>(at) stryges,</i> |
| Part. Sing. | <i>fundet, -en,</i> | <i>drevet, -en,</i> | <i>ströget, -en,</i> |
| Plur.       | <i>fundne ;</i>     | <i>drevne ;</i>     | <i>strøgne ;</i>     |

As this conjugation also has many irregularities or varieties, it will be convenient to the learner to enumerate the most remarkable of the verbs of each class.

## 36. To the first class belong :

|                  |                           |                            |                 |
|------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>drikker,</i>  | <i>drak, (drukke),</i>    | <i>drukket, -en, -ne,</i>  | <i>drink ;</i>  |
| <i>stikker,</i>  | <i>stak, (stunge),</i>    | <i>stukket, -en -ne,</i>   | <i>sting ;</i>  |
| <i>springer,</i> | <i>sprang, (sprunge),</i> | <i>sprunget, -en, -ne,</i> | <i>leap ;</i>   |
| <i>tvinger,</i>  | <i>tvang, (tvunge),</i>   | <i>tvunget, -en, -ne,</i>  | <i>compel ;</i> |
| <i>synger,</i>   | <i>sang, (sunge),</i>     | <i>sunget, -en, -ne,</i>   | <i>sing ;</i>   |
| <i>synker,</i>   | <i>sank, (sunke),</i>     | <i>sunket, -en, -ne,</i>   | <i>sink ;</i>   |
| <i>binder,</i>   | <i>bandt, (bunde),</i>    | <i>bundet, -en, -ne,</i>   | <i>bind ;</i>   |
| <i>svinder,</i>  | <i>svandt, (svunde),</i>  | <i>svundet, -en, -ne,</i>  | <i>pine ; *</i> |
| <i>spinder,</i>  | <i>spandt, (spunde),</i>  | <i>spundet, -en, -ne,</i>  | <i>spin ;</i>   |
| <i>slipper,</i>  | <i>slap (sluppe),</i>     | <i>sluppet, -en, -ne,</i>  | <i>escape ;</i> |
| <i>vinder,</i>   | <i>vandt, (vunde),</i>    | <i>vundet, -en, -ne,</i>   | <i>win ;</i>    |

---

\*) Am reduced, vanish. ED.

|                   |                          |                            |           |
|-------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|-----------|
| <i>rinder,</i>    | <i>randt, (runde),</i>   | <i>rundet, -en, -ne,</i>   | flow;     |
| <i>brister,</i>   | <i>brast, (brüste),</i>  | <i>brustet, -en, -ne,</i>  | burst;    |
| <i>fornemmer,</i> | <i>fornam, (-numme),</i> | <i>fornummet, -en,</i>     | perceive; |
| <i>hjelper,</i>   | <i>hjalp, (hjulpe),</i>  | <i>hjulpet, -en, -ne,</i>  | help;     |
| <i>træffer,</i>   | <i>traf, (truffe),</i>   | <i>truffet, -en, -ne,</i>  | hit;      |
| <i>trækker,</i>   | <i>trak, (trukke),</i>   | <i>trukket, -en, -ne,</i>  | pull;     |
| <i>sprækker,</i>  | <i>sprak, (sprukke),</i> | <i>sprukket, -en, -ne,</i> | burst;    |
| <i>brækker,</i>   | <i>brak,</i>             | <i>brukket, -en, -ne,</i>  | break.    |

For *brak, brukket* we usually say *brækkede, brækket*, according to the 1st conj. 1st class. Perhaps *brak* should be used as a neuter verb, *brækkede* as an active one.

The difference between this class and the first of the 2d conj. is properly that this, in the past, has a short or sharp *a*, which, in the plur., is changed again to *u*, and this *u* is preserved in the partic. pass., whereas the 1st cl. of the 2d conj. has a long *a*, which is preserved in the plur. but in the partic. pass. is replaced by the original vowel of the verb in the present tense. This new change of vowel however being sometimes neglected in the plur. of the past, and in the part. pass., several verbs are transferred from this class to the other, in which consequently several words are found with a short vowel. Of this and the like changes, which the modern Danish has undergone, in the 13-15. centuries, the curious reader may find ample information in Mr. N. M. Petersen's *det danske, norske og svenske Sprogs Historie under deres Udvikling af Stamsproget. 1ste Del, det danske Sprog. Kh. 1829. 8.*

### 37. To the second class belong:

|                 |                 |                                  |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------------------------|----------------|
| <i>sliber,</i>  | <i>sleb-e,</i>  | <i>slebet, -en, -ne,</i>         | grind;         |
| <i>griber,</i>  | <i>greb-e,</i>  | <i>grebet, -en, -ne,</i>         | seize;         |
| <i>kniber,</i>  | <i>kneb-e,</i>  | <i>knebet, -en, -ne,</i>         | pinch;         |
| <i>piber,</i>   | <i>peb-e,</i>   | <i>pebet, -en, -ne,</i>          | pipe, whistle; |
| <i>bliver,</i>  | <i>blev-e,</i>  | <i>blevet, -en, -ne,</i>         | become;        |
| <i>river,</i>   | <i>rev-e,</i>   | <i>revet, -en, -ne,</i>          | tear;          |
| <i>skriver,</i> | <i>skrev-e,</i> | <i>skrevet, -en, -ne,</i>        | write;         |
| <i>skriger,</i> | <i>skreg-e,</i> | <i>skreget, -en, -ne,</i>        | cry;           |
| <i>stiger,</i>  | <i>steg-e,</i>  | <i>steget, -en, -ne,</i>         | ascend;        |
| <i>sniger,</i>  | <i>sneg-e,</i>  | <i>sneget, -en, -ne,</i>         | sneak;         |
| <i>sviger,</i>  | <i>sveg-e,</i>  | <i>sveget, -en, -ne,</i>         | betray;        |
| <i>glider,</i>  | <i>gled-e,</i>  | <i>gledet, -en, -ne, (glidt)</i> | slide, glide;  |
| <i>viger,</i>   | <i>veg-e,</i>   | <i>veget, -en, -ne,</i>          | yield, cede;   |
| <i>gnider,</i>  | <i>gned-e,</i>  | <i>gnedet, -en, -ne,</i>         | rub;           |

|                 |                   |                                    |                      |
|-----------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>svider,</i>  | <i>sved-e,</i>    | <i>svedet, -en, -ne,</i>           | singe ;              |
| <i>rider,</i>   | <i>red-e,</i>     | <i>(ridt) redet, -en, -ne,</i>     | ride ;               |
| <i>strider,</i> | <i>stred-e,</i>   | <i>(stridt), stredet,</i>          | fight, contend ;     |
| <i>skrider,</i> | <i>skred-e,</i>   | <i>(skridt) skredet, -en, -ne,</i> | proceed ;            |
| <i>vrider,</i>  | <i>vred-e,</i>    | <i>vredet, -en, -ne,</i>           | wring ;              |
| <i>bider,</i>   | <i>bed-e,</i>     | <i>bidt-e,</i>                     | bite ;               |
| <i>lider,</i>   | <i>led-e,</i>     | <i>lidt-e,</i>                     | suffer ;             |
| <i>slider,</i>  | <i>sled-e,</i>    | <i>slidt-e,</i>                    | tear ;               |
| <i>smider,</i>  | <i>smed-e,</i>    | <i>smidt-e,</i>                    | throw, cast, fling ; |
| <i>triner,</i>  | <i>treen,</i>     | <i>trint-e,</i>                    | step ;               |
| <i>hviner,</i>  | <i>hveen *)</i> , | <i>hvint,</i>                      | whine, howl.         |

38. The third class comprizes the following:

|                   |                   |                               |                          |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>kryber,</i>    | <i>krøb-e,</i>    | <i>krøbet, -en, -ne,</i>      | creep ;                  |
| <i>løber,</i>     | <i>løb (-e),</i>  | <i>løbet, -en, -ne,</i>       | run ;                    |
| <i>ryger,</i>     | <i>røg (-e),</i>  | <i>røget, -ede,</i>           | smoke ;                  |
| <i>lyver,</i>     | <i>løj,</i>       | <i>løjte,</i>                 | lie ( <i>mentior</i> ) ; |
| <i>flyver,</i>    | <i>fløj,</i>      | <i>fløjte, -en, -ne,</i>      | fly ;                    |
| <i>byder,</i>     | <i>bød-e,</i>     | <i>budet, -en, -ne, budt,</i> | invite, bid ;            |
| <i>bryder,</i>    | <i>brød-e,</i>    | <i>brudt-e,</i>               | break ;                  |
| <i>fortryder,</i> | <i>fortrød-e,</i> | <i>fortrudt,</i>              | repent ;                 |
| <i>skyder,</i>    | <i>skød-e,</i>    | <i>skudt-e,</i>               | shoot ;                  |
| <i>skryder,</i>   | <i>skrød-e,</i>   | <i>skrydt,</i>                | bray ;                   |
| <i>gyder,</i>     | <i>gød-e,</i>     | <i>gydt-e,</i>                | pour ;                   |
| <i>lyder,</i>     | <i>lød-e,</i>     | <i>lydt-e,</i>                | obey ;                   |
| <i>flyder,</i>    | <i>flød (-e),</i> | <i>flydt-e,</i>               | flow ;                   |
| <i>nyder,</i>     | <i>nød-e,</i>     | <i>nydt-e,</i>                | enjoy ;                  |
| <i>snyder,</i>    | <i>snød-e,</i>    | <i>snydt-e,</i>               | cheat ;                  |
| <i>fryser,</i>    | <i>frøs (-e),</i> | <i>frusset, -en, -ne,</i>     | freeze ;                 |
| <i>fnyser,</i>    | <i>fnøs (-e),</i> | <i>fnyst,</i>                 | fret ;                   |
| <i>gyser,</i>     | <i>gøs,</i>       | <i>gyst,</i>                  | shudder ;                |
| <i>kyser,</i>     | <i>køs,</i>       | <i>kýst,</i>                  | frighten ;               |
| <i>nyser,</i>     | <i>nøs,</i>       | <i>nyst,</i>                  | sneeze.                  |

The four last are also in the past formed according to the 1st conjugation 2d class, for we say: *fnýste, gýste,*

---

\*) The two last words furnish a strong proof of the faultiness of the rules for doubling the vowels in Danish, making the perfectly regular words appear irregular. There are also some such verbs in the 2d conj. e. g. *foer* (fór), *saa* (sá').



*kýste, nýste*. There are also several variations of the partic. pass. as *brudet*, *-en*, *-ne*, instead of *brudt*; even in vulgar speech *fludt* for *flydt*, *snudt* for *snydt*, *frosset* for *frusset*, *kosset-en* for *kýst*.

### 39. Auxiliary verbs.

The verbs possessing but few inflections, in proportion to the many distinctions of tense and mode, which it is often necessary to indicate in speaking of actions with precision, auxiliary verbs (*Hjælpeord*) are applied nearly as in English, to form a number of additional tenses and modes by way of periphrasis.

The most remarkable auxiliary verbs in Danish are : *skal*, *vil*, *har*, *er*, *faar*,\*) *bliver*; having spoken of their inflection already under their respective classes, we have merely here to observe, to what part of the principal verb they are joined, and what modifications in its sense they are intended to express.

*Skal* and *vil* in the pres. tense denote futurity or intention, though not exactly as in English. *Skal* implies a duty and necessity on the part of the person; *vil* a mere futurity, without any personal volition a sort of prediction of what will happen, e. g. *jeg skal skrive*, I shall write, *jeg vil drukne*, I shall drown, (if...). In the past (*skulde*, *vilde*), they denote a futurity relative to some other time; they are prefixed to the infinitive, as: *jeg skal komme i Morgen tidlig*, I shall come (call) to-morrow morning. *Han sagde jeg skulde komme*, he said (that) I should come : told me to come, where I may add *i Gaar*, yesterday, the action "to come" being future merely with respect to "his orders," not with respect to my relation to time. The past of these auxiliaries also expresses the conditional future in French; e. g. *jeg skulde*

---

\*) Commonly *faaer*. BD.

*nok skrive, hvis jeg havde noget at skrive om*, I would write (to him) indeed, if I had any thing to write about.

*Har* and *er* serve in the present to express the preterperfect, and in the past (*havde, var*), the pluperfect, when connected with the participle passivé of the principal verb, as: *jeg har hørt*, I have heard; *jeg havde læst*, I had read; *du (De) er kommen for silde*, you are come too late; *han var ikke kommen*, he was not come (arrived). The difference is, that *har* is used with active verbs, *er* with some of the neuters,\*) and with all the passives, e. g., *er fundet*, has been found; *var fundet*, had been found; it never, as in English, expresses the pres. of the indicative pass., so that *is found* must be rendered in Danish by *findes, was found* by *fandtes*.

*Faar*, get, united to the partic. pass. expresses the Engl. *shall have*, as: *naar jeg faaer skrevet*, when I shall have written, *naar han fik Bogen læst*, when he should have read (perused) the book; but *da han fik Bogen læst*, when he had got through the book.

*Har* and *faar* are sometimes combined with the infin., in order to express a duty or obligation in the person; as: *jeg har at sige Dem*, I have to say (must say) to you; *du faaer at sige mig*, you must say to (tell) me. *Er* is never used in this way, so that the Engl. I am to... must be translated, *jeg har at*, or *jeg skal, jeg maa*.

*Bliver*, am, is often used in a periphrasis of the passive, as: *bliver fundet*, is found, *blev fundet*, was found.

40. Two auxiliaries are often connected with one principal verb, as:

*har (skullet), villet sige*, has had (intended) to say;

*havde (skullet) villet sige*, had had (intended) to say;

---

\*) But these are always to be considered as neutro passive verbs.

*skal, vil have sagt, shall, will have said* \*);  
*skulde, vilde have sagt, should, would have said*;  
*har haft skrevet, have had (it) written (once)*;  
*havde haft skrevet, had had (it) written*;  
*skal, vil være skrevet, shall, will be written*;  
*skulde, vilde være skrevet, should, would be written*;  
*har været skrevet, has been written*;  
*havde været skrevet, had been written*;  
*skal, vil faa skrevet, shall get (it) written*;  
*skulde, vilde faa skrevet, should get (it) written*;  
*har faaet skrevet, has got written*;  
*havde faaet skrevet, had got written*;  
*skal, vil blive skrevet, shall, will be written*;  
*skulde, vilde blive skrevet, should, would be written*;  
*er blevet skrevet, has been written*;  
*var blevet skrevet, had been written*;  
*havde blevet skrevet, would have been written*:

Sometimes even three auxiliaries are added to one principal verb, as:

*det skal have været besluttet, it is said to have been resolved*;  
*det skulde have været gjort, it should have been done*;  
*det vilde have været gjort, it would have been done*;  
*det skal være blevet omtalt, it is reported that it was spoken of*;  
*det skulde have (være) blevet omtalt, it should have been spoken of*;  
*det vilde være blevet omtalt, it would have been spoken of*;  
*det skal have blevet gjort, it shall have been done*;  
*det skulde have\*\*) blevet gjort, it should have been done*.

The reader will observe, that there is a good deal more variety in the Danish than in the English circumlocutions; and that variety serves admirably to modify the sense, in a manner difficult to express in other languages; e. g. *det skulde have været gjort* signifies: it

\* ) The meaning of this phrase *jeg skal have sagt* usually is: *I am said or reported to have said*; but *han vil have sagt*, he shall have said (it, before you may warn him).

\*\* ) I allow this *have*, in the two last phrases, to remain because Rask seems to have put it deliberately; but *være* ought undoubtedly to be put instead of "*have*." ED.

should have been previously done, and consequently then finished or completed; but *det skulde have blevet gjort* means: it should have been done after that time, implying moreover that the person would have done it, or caused it to be done. Thus also: *det skal være skrevet* means: it shall be (ready) written, or I shall have it written at a certain future time, but *det skal blive skrevet* expresses an assurance that it shall be written, or that I will write it; and *det skal skrives* expresses a command: it shall, must be written, or you have to write it. So that a master will say: *det skal gjøres i Dag*, it must be done to-day: and the servant will answer: *det skal blive gjort*, it shall be done (viz. to-day); or *det skal være gjort inden Klokken sex*, it shall be done (finished) before six o'clock.

There are several other verbs used as auxiliaries, e. g. *maa*, may, must; *kan*, can, may; *tør*, dare, need; *lader*, let, cause to, &c. Besides the English student should observe, that these, as well as the auxiliaries proper, are more complete or less defective in Danish than in English, being used even in the infinitive, in the same capacity.

This great variety being modified still more by the conjunctions, *naar*, when, *da*, as, &c. it is a strange fault in some old Grammars to mistake these circumlocutions for real tenses or modes of the verbal inflection, and to admit them as such in the paradigms of the regular conjugation.

Several of the English modes of applying the auxiliaries are not used in Danish, e. g.

*I am writing*, jeg er i Færd med at skrive;

*I was writing*, jeg var ved at skrive;

*I am going to write*, jeg skal til at skrive;

*I was going to write*, jeg skulde, vilde til at skrive;

*I do not write*, jeg skriver ikke;

*I did not write*, jeg skrev ikke, (har ikke skrevet);

*do write*, skriv dog (endelig);

*do not write*, skriv ikke, skriv dog ikke;

*I have done writing*, jeg er færdig med at skrive;

*I had done writing*, jeg var færdig med at skrive.

41. *Different kinds of verbs.*

In Danish, as in other languages which have a passive voice there is a peculiar sort of verbs with passive terminations but active signification. They are commonly called verbs deponent (*lideformede Gjærningsord*), and are regularly inflected as other passive verbs of the conj. and class, to which they belong; only the Supine, requiring also the addition of the passive *s*, creates some difficulty. Those of the first conj. 1st class form the sup. in *edes*, or *ets*, those of the 2d class in *tes*. Ex.

*fattes, fattedes (har fattedes)*, want;

*lykkes, lykkedes, har lykkedes* or *lykkets*, succeed, prosper;\*)

*længes, længtes, har længtes*, long;

*synes, syntes, har syntes*, seem;

*slaaes, sloges, har slaaedes* or *slaaets*, fight;

*bides, bedes, (har bidts)*, bite one another.

Some are entirely defective in the sup. as: *mindes, mindedes*, recollect.

Neuter verbs (*gjenstandsløse Gjo.*) on the contrary have no passive voice at all, as: *jeg staaer*, I stand; *jeg kommer*, I come; never *jeg staaes, jeg kommes*.

Reflective verbs (*tilbagevirkende Gjo.*) are followed by the objective cases of the pronouns, as:

*jeg smigrer mig*, I flatter myself,

*du røber dig*, thou betrayest thyself,

*han bader sig*, he bathes (himself,)

*vi smigre os*, we flatter ourselves,

*I røbe eder*, you betray yourselves,

*de bade sig*, they bathe (themselves.)

In the 3. p. care must be taken, to distinguish the reflective pronoun *sig* from the personal (*ham, hende, pl.*

---

\*) When *Lykkes* is used as an impersonal verb *er* is used as its auxiliary and not *har*. A Dane certainly says: "*det er sjælden lykkedes mig at faae saa god en Afstøbning*. I have rarely succeeded in getting so good a cast. The Icelanders say: "*þat hefr luckast*."

*dem*), which after such verbs would indicate a fourth person, e. g. *han bader ham*, he bathes him, *de bade dem*, they bathe them, implies somebody beside the agent. From the reflective *sig*, must also be distinguished the reciprocal pronouns *hinanden*, each other, when speaking of two, and *hverandre*, one another, speaking of more persons, e. g.

*de elske hinanden*, they love each other;

*de elske hverandre*, they love one another.

Several verbs have a reciprocal sense in the passive voice, and do not, in that case, admit any reciprocal pronoun e. g. *vi ses hver Dag*, we see each other every day. The reflective and reciprocal verbs quoted as examples hitherto may all be used as transitives, e. g. *jeg smigrer ingen*, I do not flatter anybody &c.; but some reflective verbs require in this case another expression in English, e. g. *jeg betænker mig*, I hesitate, but *jeg betænker*, I consider. \*)

Several verbs are only used as reflectives, e. g.

*jeg understaar mig*, I presume;

*jeg skynder mig*, I hasten;

\*) This is not very clear, still I do not like to alter it. The meaning certainly is: that there are some reflective verbs in Danish which are not usually rendered by corresponding reflective verbs in English, but rather by some other absolute and intransitive verb, different from that by which the general sense of the Danish verb, when it is used absolutely, is commonly expressed, and of this Rask gives as an instance *jeg betænker mig*, which thus used as a verb reflective, must be translated "I hesitate"; although *jeg betænker*, used absolutely, must be Englished "I consider". But the example is not felicitously chosen, for the corresponding verb reflective, although perhaps rather obsolete certainly exists in this case, and is unquestionably English, since Shylock says in the Merchant of Venice: "I will bethink me": and on the other hand "I consider" or "I will consider" is also sometimes used to express the sense of the Danish *jeg betænker mig*. ED.

several others, require a preposition beside the objective pronoun, to combine them with another object, e. g.

*jeg forstaar mig paa*, I am skilled in ;

*jeg bestræber mig for*, I endeavour ;

*jeg forbinder mig til*, I engage ;

*jeg bryder mig ikke om*, I do not care about.

There are also, in Danish, as in English, many impersonal verbs (*upersonlige Gjo.*), thus called because merely used with an indefinite nominative in the 3d pers. sing. of the different tenses, though else formed regularly. Ex. *det regner*, *regnede*, (*har*) *regnet*, it rains; *det sneer*,\*) *sneede*, (*har*) *sneet*, it snows; *det lyner*, it lightens; *det tordner*, it thunders; *det tør*, *tøede*, *tøet*, it thaws. Many personal verbs can also be used impersonally, as: *jeg fryser*, it is cold to me, I shiver, but *det fryser*, it freezes; even so we say impersonally: *det blæser*, it blows; *det stormer*, it storms; *det gjør ondt*, it smarts: though *jeg blæser*, *jeg stormer*, are also used. — Likewise *man troer*, one believes: they believe; *man siger*, they say. — Sometimes *der*, there, is prefixed as a sort of indefinite nominative, but then the real nominative is usually added afterwards, as: *der kommer en Tid*, a time will come; *der løber (gaaer) et Rygte*, there is a report; and the verb is even put in the plural, if the nominative be plur. as: *der ere de som mene*, there are (there be) those (people) who think. — Several impersonal verbs are, at the same time, deponent, though else active, when used personally. Ex. *der siges*, it is said, they say; *der skrives*, they write; *det dages*, it dawns; *det mørknes*, it grows dark.\*\*)

---

\*) The common spelling is: *det sneer*, *det tøer*, which also is supported by etymology since the Icelandic has *snjóar*, *þýðir* (*þeyir*). ED.

\*\*) These are, indeed, not verbs deponent, but grammatically speaking, verbs passive or middle, just as *dicitur* and *scribitur* in

active verbs have no passive voice, except as impersonals. Ex. *der soves for meget*, they sleep too much; *der løbes idelig*, they run (up and down) continually.

It must still be remarked, before we leave the verbs, that the active participle in *-ende* is also sometimes used in a passive signification; f. i. *blæsende Instrumenter*, instruments to be blown, i. e. wind-instruments; *mit iboende Hus*, my house lived in, e. g. the house I live in; especially as a future part. pass. e. g. *den afholdende Auktion*, (Auction), the auction to be held; *den udgivende Bog*, the book about to be published; though several Grammarians of later times, not knowing the old Icelandic, nor the Swedish, have rejected these forms as spurious.

## 42. PARTICLES.

Under this denomination are generally comprehended; adverbs (*Biord*), prepositions (*Forholdsord*), conjunctions (*Bindeord*) and interjections (*Udraabsord*). Of all these parts of speech merely some of the adverbs admit a sort of inflection, viz. a comparative and a superlative degree, which are however usually similar to those of the corresponding adjectives; e. g. *smukt*, *smukkere*, *smukkest*, fine, pretty; *højt*, *højere*, *højest*, high; the latter is contracted in the superlative, when prefixed to other adv. or adj. e. g. *højst dannet* (*Aand*), highly cultivated (mind). For the positive degree of adverbs vid. p. 67.

---

Latin, and they do not change that character by being used impersonally. When the slave says to Pseudolus "*Quid agitur?*" and he replies: "*statur*" there is no doubt that these must be considered as verbs passive: on that their comicalness partly depends. *Det "mørkner"* and *det "mørknes"* are two Danish impersonal verbs which convey indeed only one meaning viz. "it grows dark" or "it is getting dark"; still the former is an active and the latter a passive verb.

ED.



Several are irregular as:

|                      |                |                |                        |
|----------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------------|
| <i>ilde (slemt),</i> | <i>værre,</i>  | <i>værst,</i>  | ill, badly ;           |
| <i>vel (godt),</i>   | <i>bedre,</i>  | <i>bedst,</i>  | well ;                 |
| <i>tit (tidt),</i>   | <i>tiere,</i>  | <i>tiest,</i>  | frequently ;           |
| <i>længe,</i>        | <i>længer,</i> | <i>længst,</i> | long, ( <i>diu</i> ) ; |
| <i>meget,</i>        | <i>mér, *)</i> | <i>mést,</i>   | much ;                 |
| <i>gjerne,</i>       | <i>heller,</i> | <i>helst,</i>  | fain ;                 |
| <i>(for),</i>        | <i>för,</i>    | <i>först,</i>  | prior.                 |

---

### PART III.

## FORMATION.

---

#### 43. *Introductory remarks.*

All words are either simple (*enkelte*), as: *et Hoved*, a head, or compound (*sammensatte*), as *en Hovedpine*, a headach; the simple words are moreover either primitive (*Stamord*) as: *rødt*, red, or derivative (*Afledsord*), as: *en Rødme*, a blush, *hun rødmer*, she blushes.

The simple primitives are but few in every language, and their augmentation by the introduction of foreign words, which is the common resource of all mixed idioms, is a mere burthen to the memory, not affecting the understanding, and therefore prejudicial to the instruction of the common people; whereas it is the great excellency of original or less mixed tongues, that they have the means of enlarging the fundamental stock of expressions by derivation and composition, in such a manner, that the new word must create the idea in the mind, as soon as the sound reaches the ear. It will also be a considerable assistance to the student's memory in recollecting the immense

---

\*) Commonly *meer*. ED.

number of words, of which a cultivated language consists, if he pay some attention to the manner, in which this whole mass is formed from the few original primitives. In this view we shall here briefly consider the Danish derivation and composition. Those who wish more ample information may consult: *Dansk Orddannelseslære af N. Petersen.* Odense 1826.

## DERIVATION.

### 44. Subdivision.

When a general Idea, e. g. of negation, deterioration &c. is to be expressed, some prefixed are added to the words; but whenever a word is to be transferred from one part of speech to another, it is effected by terminations or change of vowel, sometimes even by transferring the words without any change, this last is however of much less frequent occurrence in Danish than in English, the grammatical qualities being in general more strongly marked on the words in the former, than in the latter of these languages.

### 45. Prefixes.

Of a negative or privative signification are:

*U-* Engl. un- [or in-] Ex. *Udyd*, vicious habit; *uvist*, uncertain; *uovervindelig*, invincible; *udsigelig-t*, unspeakable; *ugjort*, not done [undone]; *ugjerne*, unwillingly; *umager*, or *ulejliger*, trouble (one);

*Van-* *Vanskabning*, monster, from *Skabning*, a creature; *vanartig*, depraved; *vansirer*, disfigure;

*Mis-* *Misundelse*, envy; *misundelig-t*, envious; *at misunde*, to envy; *mistrøster*, dishearten. Sometimes composed again with the negative *u*, as: *umiskjendelig*, evident; [not to be mistaken].

**For-** *fordømmer*, condemn; *forgiver*, poison; *for-skærer*, spoil in cutting (e. g. a gown or coat); *for-smaaer*, slight; *en Forséelse*, an oversight; *Foragt*, contempt, *for-legen-t*, embarrassed, puzzled, at a loss. Sometimes it merely serves to form verbs of an active signification, as *forgylde*, gild; *fordansker*, do into Danish; or nouns of such verbs, as: *Forgylding*, gilding; *Fordanskning*, translation into Danish; *Forandring*, change; *Forstyrrelse*, devastation. This prefix appears to be different from the preposition *for*, which is also frequently used in composition; in general they may be distinguished by observing, that the prepos. has the emphasis of the word, the prefix not as: *Førklæder*, aprons; *forklæder*, disguise; there are however some exceptions to this rule, as; *et Fortrin*, a preference, preeminence; but *fortrínlig-t*, preeminent.

**Und-** *Undskyldning*, excuse; *undskýldelig*, excusable; *at undskylde*, to excuse. Also composed with the negative *u-*, as; *uundskyldelig*, inexcusable;

**Veder-** *Vederlag*, compensation; *vedersfares*, happen to; *vederstygge*, abominable.

#### 46. Of a positive signification are:

**Be-** *Begreb*, notion, conception; *betænkelig-t*, doubtful; *betænksom*, considerate, *beklager*, bewail: from *klager*, complain, *betænker*, consider, [some of these also receive the negative *u* as *ubetænksom* inconsiderate *ubeviist*, unproved.]

**Bi-** *Bistand*, assistance; *Bihensigt*, secondary design; *biløbig*, [Germ. *beiläufig*] by the way, obiter; *bidrager*, contribute.

**Sam-** *Samtykke*, consent; *Såmklang*, harmony; *såmtidig*, contemporary, coeval; *at samtykke*, to consent; *usamdrægtig*, disagreeing, discordant.

**Er-** *Erholder*, get, receive; *erkjender*, acknowledge; *Erindring*, remembrance; *uerstatteligt*, irretrievable;

*An-* \*) *Ansig*t, face; *et Angreb*, an attack; *at angribe*, to attack; *uauvendelig-t*, inapplicable.

47. Pronominal & adverbial prefixes are:

*h-* (demonstrative with respect to the 1st pers.), as; *hér*, here; *hid*, hither; the Lat. *hoc*, this, seems to be formed in this manner.

*d-* (demonstrative with respect to the 3d pers.), as; *det*, *den*, that; *der*, there; *did*, thither; *da*, then;

*hv-* (relative and interrogative) *hvad*, *hvem*, *hvilket*, *hvor*, where;

*i-* (placed before the *hv*, gives those words an indeterminate or general signification), as: *ihvad*, whatsoever; *ihvem*, whosoever; *ihvilket*, whichsoever; *ihvor*, wheresoever.

## AFFIXES.

48. Formation of nouns, a) Affixes denoting the agent;

*-er*: *Dommer*, judge; *Læser*, reader; *Englænder*, Englishman; *Viser*, a hand of a watch; *Stégvender*, turnspit.

*-ner*: *Kunstner*, artist; *Falskner*, forger.

*-mager*: *Skomager*, shoemaker; *Urmager*, watchmaker; *Mager*, is never used separately in Danish, but merely adopted from the Germ. *macher*, in compound words.

*-ling*: *Lærling*, disciple; *Yndling*, favorite; *Yngling*, a youth; *Gæsling*, gosling.

*-inde*: *Hertuginde*, dutchess; *Grevinde*, countess; *Sangerinde*, songstress; *Veninde*, (female) friend; *Ulvinde*, a shewolf.

---

\*) Though *Bi-* and *An-* are no Danish words, yet they occur separately in several phrases adopted from the Teutonic tongues, as: *lægge bi*, lay by; *staa bi*, stand by; *det gaar an*, that will do, Germ. *Es geht an*; *at gribe sig an*, to exert one's self.

*ske*: *Væverske*, female weaver; *Forførerske*, seductress; *Giftblanderske*, (fem.) poisoner.

49. b) the action, as;

Monosyllabic nouns, formed of verbs, are mentioned p. 13, but there are many more of this sort Ex. *et Skrig*, a cry; *et Synk*, a draught; *et Sting*, a stitch; *et Stik*, a stab; *et Suk*, a sigh.

-*en*: *en Prædiken*, *Præken*, a sermon; *vor Gjøren og Laden*, our doing and omission i. e. our whole conduct.

-*ende*: (*mit*) *Vidende*, (my) knowledge; *Sigende*, saying; *Foretagende*, undertaking.

-*ing*: *Handling*, action; *Forandring*, change, alteration; *Landing*, landing; *Munding*, mouth (of a river); *Tinding*, temple (of the head); even of persons, as; *Arving*, heir; *Hövding*, chieftain, from *Hoved*;

-*ning*: *Skrivning*, writing; *Læsning*, reading; *en Gjerning*, an act (action); *en Strækning*, a tract of land; *en Grønning*, a green, a lawn; *en Slægtning*, a relation; *en Flygtning*, a fugitive; *en Dronning*, a queen, from *Drot*, a lord. [In Icelandic *Drotning*].

*else*: *Stýrelse*, moderation; *Beskrivelse*, description; *Udførelse*, execution; *Frøbringelse*, production; *For-nøjelse*, pleasure; *Skrivelse*, letter; *Stiftelse*, establishment; *Hændelse*, accident; — *et Værelse*, a room.

-*sel*: *Fødsel*, birth; *Kjörsel*, driving; *Udførsel*, exportation; *Trusel*, threat; *Hængsel*, hinge; *Fængsel*, prison.

-*t, d*: *en Drift*, an instinct (from *driver*); *Dragt*, dress; *Indtægt*, revenue; *Blæst*, blowing, wind; *en Sæd*, a seed, (from *at saa*); *en Færd*, a journey, tour, (*fare*); *en Skyld*, debt, crime, (*skulle*); *Byrd*, extraction, descent, (*bære*); — *et Vidnesbyrd*, a testimony.

*st*: *Kunst*, art (from *kunne*); *Fangst*, a catch, a take, *Yndest*, *Gunst*, favor; *Ankomst*, arrival; *Tjeneste*, service, but *tjenst-ågtig*, officious.

-*erí*: *Fiskerí*, fishery; *Pralerí*, ostentation; *Tyverí*, theft.

50. c) *Qualities, &c. denote:*

-e: *en Hede*, a heat; *Kulde*, cold; *Vrede*, anger; *Glæde*, joy; *Fylde*, fulness; *Styrke*, strenght; *Længe*, row (of houses); *Mitte (Midte)*, middle.

-de: *Dybde*, depth; *Længde*, lenght; *Vidde*, width; *Mængde*, multitude; *Tyngde*, gravity.

-hed: *Højhed*, highness, greatness; *Skævhed*, wryness; *Fríhed*, freedom; *Kærlighed*, love; *Retlighed*, right, privilege.

-dom: *Viisdom*, wisdom; *Ungdom*, youth; *Alderdом*, old age; *Lægedom*, medicine;

-dømme (a province or district): *Hertugdømme*, dutchy; *Fyrstendømme*, principality; *Herredømme*, dominion.

-skab: *et Grevskab*, a count's estate, also a county; *Fjendskab*, enmity; *Venskab*, friendship; *Broderskab*, fraternity, brotherhood; *Svøgerskab*, affinity; — and of the com. gend. *Kløgskab-en*, prudence; *Mórskab-en*, diversion; *Kundskab*, knowledge; *Videnskab*, science; &c. cf. p. 13 & 14.

-me: *Fedme*, fatness; *Sødme*, sweetness; *Rødme*, blush; *Kvalme*, qualm.

51. d) *concrete things.*

-e, (the definite neuter of the adj.), *et Onde*, an evil; *et Hele*, a whole; *et Mørke*, the dark; *et Ríge*, dominion, kingdom, (reign, power), from the adj. *rig*, rich, formerly powerful.

-t, (the indef. neut. of the adj.): *Rødt*, red colour; *Grønt*, (*Grønsel*), vegetables; *Blyhvidt*, (*Bleghvidt*), white-lead; *Spansgrønt*, verdegriis; *Berlinerblaat*, the Prussian Blue. (It is a germanism to say *Spansgrön*; *Berliner-blaa*).

-(the indef. com gend. of the adj.); *en Ret*, a court, a noun of very ancient formation; especially of persons, as: *en Sört*, a negro; *en Vild*, a savage; *en Gal*, a

madman; *en Lovkyndig*, a lawyer; *en Lærd*, a scholar, a learned man, and more frequently in the def. plur. *de Sorte, de Vilde*, &c.

*-el, l*, (denotes an implement); *en Nögel*, a key; *en Sadel*, a saddle; *en Skovl*, a shovel.

There are many remnants of old forms of derivation, which existing only in some few words may be considered as irregular, as: *en Maan-ed*, a month; *et Lev-net*, life, conduct; *en Hav-n*, a haven; *et Sog-n*, a parish (from *søge*, seek); *en Tör-ke*, drought; *en Væd-ske*, a liquor; *et Løf-te*, a promise.

## 52. Formation of adjectives.

*-ig-t: módig-t*, courageous; *sörnig-t*, sleepy; *flit-tig-t*, industrious; *lydig-t*, obedient.

*-agtig-t: bondeagtig-t*, rustic; *kvindeagtig-t*, effeminate; *skarnagtig-t*, vile, mean, malicious; *nøjagtig-t*, accurate; *blaaagtig-t*, bluish; *langagtig-t*, longish.

*-lig-t: venlig-t*, friendly; *daglig-t*, daily; *lykkelig-t*, happy; *beviislig-t*, demonstrable; *mulig-t*, possible; *umulig-t*, impossible; *syrlig-t*, sourish. Sometimes *t* is inserted between this termination and the root, e. g. *mündt-lig-t*, oral; *öffentlig-t*, public; *égentlig-t*, proper; (from *Mund*, mouth; Germ. *offen*, Dan. *aaben*, open; *égen*, own). Still more frequently an *e* precedes, especially in those formed from verbs, and denoting a passive possibility. Ex. *kostelig-t*, costly; *dødelig-t*, mortal; *tænkelig-t*, apt to be thought, i. e. imaginable, conceivable; *ubegribelig-t*, incomprehensible.

*-som-t: vøldsom-t*, violent; *nøjsom-t*, content; *een-som-t*, lonely; *langsom-t*, slow; *arbeidsom-t*, assiduous.

*-sommelig-t: fredsømmelig-t*, peaceable; *møjsomme-lig-t*, laborious; *frugtsommelig-t*, pregnant; *kjedsomme-lig-t*, tedious.

*bar-t: frugtbar-t*, fertile; *ærbær-t*, modest, composed; *seilbar-t*, navigable; *ufeilbar-t*, infallible.

*-barlig-t*: *skinbárlig-t*, manifest; *ufejlbárligt*, that cannot fail.

*-sk*: *spodsk*, scornful, disdainful; *løbsk*, restive, starting (horse); *træsk*, cunning; *lumsk*, insidious. Many national or patronymic adj. get this termination, as: *tysk*, (tydsk), German; *pólsk*, Polish; *ungersk*, Hungarian; *græsk*, Greek, Grecian; *fransk*, French. Sometimes *i* precedes, as: *barbárisk*, barbarous; *politisk*, political; *filosófisk*, philosophical; *tyrkisk*, Turkish; *russisk*, Russian; *hebraisk*, Hebrew; *kaldaisk*, Chaldean.

When such epitheta-gentilia are used as nouns, and consequently written with capitals, they denote the languages, as: *taler De Dansk?* do you speak Danish? *Har de studeret Kinesisk?* have you studied Chinese? *Han kan slet intet Portugisisk*, he knows nothing of Portuguese. These nouns are usually of the com. gend. as: *brød Dansk*, broad Danish; *Tysken er vanskelig*, the German is difficult.

*-et*: *hórnet*, horned; *búget*, bellied; *fúret*, furrowed; *trekantet*, triangular; *fírkantet*, *aattekantet* [ottekantet] &c.; *stribet*, striped; *smálstribet*, narrowstriped; *blaaaaret*, blueveined; *blaaöjet*, blueeyed; *hullet*, full of holes; *béhjærtet*, courageous; *haaret*, hairy.

*-laden-t*: *mörkladen-t*, *sortladen-t*, of a dark complexion, darkfaced; *rundladen-t*, round-faced; *vred-laden-t*, hot-headed.

*-vorren-t*, (*vorn-t*): *fjantevorren-t*, *tossevorren-t*, lsily; *kvaklevorren-t*, fickle.\*)

*-s*: *gængs* (*gængse*), current; *taus*, silent; *eens* uniform, alike; *fælles*, sommon (not *fælleds*, being derived from *Fælle*, not from *Fælled*).

There are remnants of many more adjectival terminations, as: *vammel*, qualmish; *gylden*, golden; *sölvern*,

---

\*) *Kvaklevorren*: the ordinary spelling would be *qvaklevorren*. I do not recollect ever having seen this word; possibly it is a misprint for *vaklevorren*, fickle: but even this word is little used.



silvern; *fædrene*, paternal; but these occur only in a few instances.

### 53. Formation of adverbs and prepositions.

-e (Icel. -i), indicates rest in a place, as: *ude*, without; *oppe*, up; *hjemme*, at home; *borte*, away; (from *ud*, out; *op*, up; *hjem*, home; *bort*, away).

-e (Icel. *a*, forms some old adv. from adj.) *vide*, widely; *dyre*, dearly; *stille*, calmly; *næppe*, scarcely (from *knap*, scanty).

-er (motion to, or rest in a place): *øster* (*ud*), east, *vester* (*paa*), west; *atter*, again (back); *agter*, aft, abaft; *efter*, under, &c.

-en (Icel. *an*, originally motion from a place, now its signification is not easily defined): *østen for*, to the east of; *vesten fra*, from the west; *uden til*, on the outside; *inden* (*en Time*), within (an hour); *oven paa*, on the top of; *næsten*, almost; *sjælden*, rarely.

-igen, *ligen* (from adj. in *ig*, *lig*): *kraftigen*, strongly; *modigen*, courageously; *føleligen*, sensibly. But the adjectives are frequently used as adverbs, without the -en, as: *han blev ikke understøttet kraftigt nok*, he was not supported sufficiently (or strongly) enough; *han blev følelig stråffet*, he was severely punished. Several modern authors would add the neuter *t* in these cases, but this is a Swedish form, contrary to the Danish usage; we constantly say: *de slog dygtig fra sig*, they defended themselves bravely; *hjærtelig gjerne*, with all my heart. The justness of this rule appears evident from the next adverbial termination.

-lig, *elig* (Engl. *ly*, *ely*), as: *nemlig*, *navnlig*, to wit, namely; *lydelig*, audibly; *snarlig*, soon; *visselig*, certainly; *fuldelig*, fully, (never *nemligt*, *fuldeligt*).

-t (The neuter form of the adj. of other terminations is often applied adverbially) as: *godt*, well; *vidt og bredt*, widely; *højt og dyrt*, with terrible oaths; but there

are many exceptions, as: *knap nok*, hardly enough; *heel vel*, very well; *fuldkommen fornøjet*, perfectly satisfied. — Those that have no *t* added in the neuter, never receive it in the adverbial form, as: *skjelmsk*, roguish, & roguishly.

—*s* —*es*: (originally the genitive *-s*): *allesteds*, everywhere; *et Steds*, somewhere; *altskens*, of all sorts; *skraas over for*, on the other side, askance, nearly opposite; *paa tværs*, across; *langs med*, along; *udvortes*, externally; *indvortes*, internally; the two last are also used as adjectives.

#### 54. Formation of verbs.

—*er*, is sometimes merely added to nouns or adjectives, in order to make verbs of them, as: *Agt*, intention, *agter*, intend; *synd-er*, sin; *hed-er*, heat; *aabenbar-er*, reveal; *stiv-er*, starch. — Sometimes the radical vowel is changed, as: *virker*, act, work, from *Verk*; *ýder*, pay (taxes) from *úd*, out; *glæder*, gladden, from *glad*; *bøder*, pay (as a fine or damage) from *Bód*, *hændes*, happens, comes to hand, from *Haand*.

Neuter verbs of the complex order are made transitive, and transferred to the simple order, by changing the vowel, and sometimes hardening the characteristic consonant of the past, thus:

|                   |                 |                     |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| <i>springer</i> , | <i>sprang</i> , | — <i>sprænger</i> , | burst a thing;  |
| <i>synker</i> ,   | <i>sank</i> ,   | — <i>sænker</i> ,   | sink something; |
| <i>sidder</i> ,   | <i>sad</i> ,    | — <i>sætter</i> ,   | set, put;       |
| <i>ligger</i> ,   | <i>laa</i> ,    | — <i>lægger</i> ,   | lay;            |
| <i>farer</i> ,    | <i>fór</i> ,    | — <i>fører</i> ,    | carry;          |
| <i>ryger</i> ,    | <i>røg</i> ,    | — <i>røger</i> ,    | smoke;          |
| <i>bider</i> ,    | <i>béd</i> ,    | — <i>béder</i> ,    | bait, stop;     |

viz. let the hounds or the horses bate. Some few are formed from the present tense, as: *vaager*, watch, *vækker*, awaken; *knager* — *knækker*, crack; *nejjer*, courtesey, bow; *nikker*, nod.

*-ter*: *gifter*, marry away, from *giøve*; *svigter*, fail, from *sviger*; *vænter*, expect (from Icel. *ván*, hope;\*) *sigter*, aim at, from *see*; *sigter*, sift, from *si*; *nægter*, deny, from *nej*, no.

*-ner*: *ligner*, am like; *blegner*, turn pale; *stivner*, grow stiff; *vidner*, bear witness.

*-ker*, *-ger*: *dyrker*, worship (hold dear); *ynker*, pity, from *øm*, tender; *forsinker*, delay, from *seen*; *vrikker*, jog, from *vrider*; *skulker*, sculk, from *skjuler*; *spørger*, ask, from *Spór*; *hærger*, ravage, from *Hær*. Sometimes *i* is inserted before *ger*, as: *beskjæftiger*, keep busy, occupy; *fortrediger*, provoke; *afskjediger*, [with Molbech *afskediger*] discharge; *bemægtiger mig*, seize upon.

*-ser*: *standser*, stop; *renser*, cleanse; *hidser*, heat (the blood); *hilser*, salute.

*-sker*: *hersker*, sway; *hùsker*, remember; *formindsker*, lessen; *smasker*, smack with the lips.

*-rer*: *bævrer*, tremble; *kvidrer*, chirp; *ytrer*, [commonly *yttre*,] utter; *smulrer*, crumble; *valtrer*, waddle; *kantrer*, overturn, or upset (the boat).

*-ler*: *smugler*, smuggle; *bejler*, court, woo, (from *beder*); *besudler*, soil; *funkler*, sparkle.

These derivatives in *-ter*, *ner*, *ker*, *ger*, *ser*, *sker*, *rer*, *ler*, belong to the 1st conj. 1st class, and are all regularly inflected. But though all the examples quoted are in frequent use, and the derivation in most of them clear and indisputable, yet the language rarely admits of new formations through these means; but rather through the prefixes: *for*, *be* &c.

*-éerer*, forms verbs from roots of the southern languages, as: *regulerer*, regulate; *reformerer*, reform; *diktérer*, dictate; *konstituerer*, constitute; *pulveriserer*, pulverize; and many more. They should properly belong

---

\*) But the erroneous spelling *vænter* is most frequently used.

to the 1st conj. 1st class, but are often contracted and referred to the 2d class, e. g. *Luther reformerte meget*, L. reformed much (many things). *Han er reformert*, he belongs to the reformed church.

## 55. COMPOSITION.

The composition of words is very free, and the chief source of the copiousness of the modern Danish; yet it is by no means illimited or irregular, and ought not therefore to be passed by without notice in any good grammar of this tongue.

In general, the last part of the compound expresses the chief idea, which is described or defined by the preceding part, e. g. *en Bog*, a book, *en Skolebog*, a school-book, *en Lærebog*, a compendium; *Læsebog*, selections, extracts; *en Ordbog*, a dictionary; *en Flaske*, a bottle, *en Blækflaske*, an ink-bottle, *en Ølflaske*, a bottle for beer, or in which is, or has been beer; but *en Flaske Blæk*, means a bottle of ink; *en Flaske Øl*, a bottle of beer, *en Punsebolle*, is a bowl for punch, but *en Bolle Puns*, a bowl of punch; *en Sølvskje*, a silver spoon; *en Mørskje*,\*) a tröwel; *Træsko*, wooden shoes. Thus even adjectives, e. g. *frivillig*, voluntary; *långvarig*, of long duration; *højsant*, familiar; *landsforvist*, exiled, banished; likewise some verbs, as: *føder*, nourish, support, *brødføder*, afford, yield sufficient provision of corn for bread (to a family); *hugger*, cut; *halslugger*, behead; *iagtager*, observe; *istandsætter*, repair; *løslader*, set free; *fritager*, exempt.

Sometimes the last part is a derivative, formed from a separate word, but not used separately itself. Ex. *Husholder*, economist, housekeeper; *Værtshusholder*, innkeeper; *Husholderske*, a female housekeeper; *husholdersk*,

---

\*) Commonly written *Sølskee*, *Mønnskee*. ED.

economical, thrifty; from *holder*, keep; though *Holder*, *Holderske*, *holdersk*, are no words in the Language.

The first part is often a verb in the infinitive, as: *en Slibesteen*, a grindstone; *en Hvæssesteen*, a whetstone; *en Spisesal*, a diningroom; *en Liggehøne*, a brood-hen; *et Kjendebogstav*, a characteristic letter; *en Byggeplads*, a ground to build upon; *en Bærebør*, a handbarrow; *Talekunst*, rhetoric; *Talestol*, pulpit; *Trykhefrie*, the liberty of the press.

Even substantives are often compounded without any change, as: *Kongestad*, royal city; *Husmand*, peasant, cottager; *Raadstue*, townhall; likewise: *Storherre-n*, the grand-signior; *Alverden*, the universe; *Blaabær*, bilberries; *Lediggang*, idleness; *Hankøn*, masculine gender; *Fæmfingerurt*, cinquefoil; *hundredaarig*, centennial.

Sometimes the first part is slightly changed e. g. by throwing away a final *e*, as: *en Firskilling*, a penny; *Kvindfolk*, [commonly *Quindfolk*] woman; *Bettel-ståven*, the beggar's staff i. e. beggary, from *bette*; or by inserting an *e*, as: *en Lysesax*, a pair of snuffers; *en Æggeblomme*, the yolk of an egg; *en Gülerod*, a carrut; *en Sýgestue*, an infirmary; *et Foredrag*, elocution; *forebygge*, prevent. In many instances this *e* is a relick of the Icel. gen. plur in *a* ;\*)

---

\*) And such was the case with the examples given above: *Lysesax*, *Æggeblomme*, Iceland. *ljósaðx*, *eggjablóm*. Rask perhaps thought: "the Iceland word must here be derived from the Danish, since the thing probably was imported into the country by the Danes?" But no matter; the pure Icelandic elements of the word, viz. the Gen. pl. *ljósa*, and the pl. *sðx*, existed in the Icelandic language long before the Danes saw the first (Dutch or English) pair of snuffers. In all likelihood snuffers were also first introduced into Iceland from England or Holland. *Sygestue*, evidently belongs to that class of compounds which is mentioned in the preceding paragraph (from *Syge* disease, or *Syge* patients) and *Forein Foredrag* is purely English as in "foretell", "forehead", "fore-speech" &c. &c. and thus it may be doubted that the insertion

e. g. *Landmærke*, frontiers; *Sædelære*, ethics; *Gjedeflad*, honeysuckle, Icel. *landa-mæri*, *siða-lærdóm*, &c. sometimes of an old gen. sing. in *-a*, *ar*, *ur*, e. g. *Pennekniv*, penknife; *Stengestolpe*, bedpost, Icel. *pennaknífr*, *sængurstólpi*. Still more frequently an *s* is inserted, or the first part is only the gen. sing. as: *en Handelsmand*, a tradesman, merchant; *en Landsmand*, a fellow countryman; but *en Landmand*, is a husbandman; *en Baadshage*, a boat-hook; *en Vinduesrude*, a pane or square of a window; *et Tidsrum*, a period. — In a few instances *-n*, is inserted, in words adopted from the German, as: *Fruentimmer*, woman, *Grækenland*, (better *Grækeland*), Greece, *Ærenpris*, speedwell, a plant, Germ. *Frauenzimmer*, *Griechenland*, *Ehrenpreis*. Thus even *Hekkenfelt*, a euphemism for Hell, is a Germ. depravation of Icel. *Hekluþfall*, mount Hekla in Iceland.

A few compound words require both parts to be put in the plural, as: *Bodegaard*, a farm, farmer's house, plur. *Bøndergaarde*; *Barnebarn*, grandchild, plur. *Børnebørn*, grandchildren.

Prepositions and adverbs very frequently take the first place in compounds, as: *bortødsle*, squander away; *afhugge*, cut off; *udtale*, pronounce, *Udtale*, pronunciation; *Udtryk*, expression; *Indtryk*, impression; *indelukke*, shut up, lock up; *nedrive*, pull down; *opbrænde*, burn down.

Many of these compound verbs may also be resolved, and the particle placed separately behind, e. g. *ødsle bort*, *hugge af*; but this transposition oftentimes makes a great difference in the signification; the compounds being used figuratively or metaphorically, the resolved verbs literally or properly. Ex.

*indrykker*, insert,

*afstaar*, cede,

*oversætte*, translate,

*rykker ind*, march into;

*staar af*, dismount, alight;

*sætter over*, cross, (as a ferry);

of an *e* is at all required to explain any phenomenon that occurs in Danish compounds.

ED.

*overgaar*, excel,  
*udtrykker*, express,  
*igjenløser*, redeem,

*gaaer over*, pass (over);  
*trykker ud*, squeeze out;  
*løser igjen*, untie again.

Prepositions and adverbs composed with the prep. *i* (in) generally lose this *i* in composition with nouns or verbs. Ex. *igjennem*, through, *gjennemborer*, pierce, *gjennemtrænger*, penetrate; *imod*, against, *Modstand*, resistance, *modvirker*, counteract; *imellem*, between, *Mellemgulv*, diaphragm; *igjen*, again, *gjentager*, repeat; *isteden*, instead, *Stedord*, pronoun, *Stedfader*, stepfather &c.



## PART IV.

## SYNTAX.

56. The Danish manner of constructing sentences, being pretty similar to the English, it is needless here to attempt any complete essay on the syntax. I shall therefore merely offer some remarks on the peculiarities of the Danish in this respect, following the order of the parts of speech, observed in the preceding pages.

### 57. *The articles.*

The definite art. of the adj. may sometimes be left out, the definite form of the adj. or pronoun showing sufficiently that it is to be understood, e. g. *første Gang*, the first time; *samme Aften*, the same evening; *gamle Danmark*, old Denmark; especially in names as: *Ny-Holland*, *Lange-Bro*, *Runde-Taarn*, and in apostrophes, as: *Store Gud*, great God! *kære Ven*, dear friend; *Højstærende Herre*, Respected Sir, &c. In a few instances the def. art. of nouns is added, as: *hele Sagen*, the whole business; *for største Delen*, for the greatest part.

The def. art. is used with nouns expressing general notions, or things ideal, where the English has no article at all, e. g. *Natur-en*, nature; *Skæbne-n*, fate; *Død-en*, death; *Liv-et*, life; *Menneske-t*, man; *Forsyn-et*, providence; *Himlen*, heaven.

The noun which governs a genitive is usually without any article, e. g. *Verdens Alder*, the age of the world; *Aarets Længde*, the length of the year; *et Legems Tyngde*, the gravity of a body.

The genitives of nouns, as also the possessive and demonstr. pronouns, like the article, require the definite form of the adj. following, as: *min bedste Ven*, my best friend; *dit gamle Losi*,\*) your old lodging; *hendes lange Haar*, her long hair; *denne evige Snak*, this endless twaddle.

### 57. *The nouns.*

Of the general position of nouns we have spoken already (p. 26), and stated the rule that the nominative usually is placed before the verb. In consequent propositions, however, the verb is followed by the agent. Ex. *hvis De ikke vil tro mig, saa kan jeg ikke gjøre ved det*, if you won't believe me, I cannot help it. *Da Freden var sluttet, rejste han udenlands*, when the peace was concluded, he went abroad. Also in conditional propositions, as: *Skulde jeg endelig gjøre det*, should I absolutely do it; *maatte jeg være saa lykkelig*, if I might be so happy. Likewise in questions, as: *sér De Skibet, som seiler der*, do you see the vessel, that sails there? *Taler De med ham i Morgen?* do you speak with him (see him) to-morrow? *Sés vi saa i Aften?* shall we then meet to-night, or shall I have the pleasure of seeing you to-night. — There are several adverbs or particles of time

---

\*) Commonly spelt *Logis*. ED.



which produce the same effect, when placed at the head of the proposition, e. g. *derefter rejste han*, after this he departed; *aldrig troer jeg det*, never shall I believe this.

The genit., when expressed by termination is always placed before the word governing it. e. g. *for Guds Skyld*, for God's sake, also: in the name of God. *Hans Metode*, his method. *Rigets Forvaltning*, the administration of the kingdom. *Mange Vandes Lyd*, the sound of many waters. Likewise possessive pronouns, as: *gaa din Vej*, get you gone; *hun glemte sin Paraply*, she forgot (left) her umbrella.

But the gen. is also frequently expressed by means of prepositions, not only *af*, of, but also *til*, to. &c. Ex. *det er Biskoppens Søn*, or *en Søn af Biskoppen*, it (he) is a son of the bishop; *en Brøder til Biskoppen*, a brother of the bishop; *Døren paa Huset*, the door of the house. *Versebygningen i Kædmons Parafrás*, the versification of Cædmon's paraphrase.

The preposition is entirely omitted after nouns of measure and the like, as: *en Mængde Mennesker*, a crowd of people; *et Stykke Træ*, a piece of wood; *en Lap Papir*, a scrap of paper; *en Pægl (Pæ'l) Øl*, half a pint of beer; *en Tønde Sild*, a cade of herrings; likewise *en Tønde stærkt Øl*, a cask of strong beer; *en Skæppe ny Hvede*, a bushel of new wheat. But when the name of the thing measured is definite, the prep. *af* must be expressed, as: *en Skæppe af den ny Hvede*, a bushel of the new wheat.

### 58. The adjectives.

In Danish the adjective is always placed before the noun, to which it belongs, e. g. *et gammelt Ord (Ord-sprog)*, an old saying; *den ny Mode*, the new fashion; *fra umindelige Tider*, from times immemorial. Except

when applied as surnames, as: *George den fjerde*, George the fourth; *Knud den Store*, Canute the great. \*)

Many adjectives and participles may, without any intervenient prep., govern the nouns sometimes as indirect sometimes as direct objects, (or, in the Latin phraseology sometimes in the dat., sometimes in the acc.), e. g. *det er ikke Umagen værd*, it is not worth the pains (or worth while); *er det Mennesket gavnligt?* is it useful to man? *Han er mig intet skyldig*, he owes me nothing. Sometimes they take the noun together with a prep. after them, as: *er det gavnligt for Mennesket?*

### 59. Pronouns.

The two genders of the pronoun for the third person (*han*, *hun*), when speaking of men, are usually applied according to the natural sex, not to the grammatical gender e. g. *Fruentimret viste meget Mod, da hun* (not *det*) *forsvarede sig imod saa mange Fjender*, the woman showed great courage, in defending herself against so many enemies. To *Mennesket* corresponds *han*, when it means a certain man, but *det*, when it means mankind, as: *Mennesket mærkede ikke, hvoreledes han* (not *det*) *var stædt*, the man did not perceive how he was situated; *Mennesket og dets Medskabninger*, Man and his fellow creatures. In speaking of animals we use *det*, *den*, never *han*, or *hun*, except in poetical personifications and sometimes in vulgar speech.

The pronoun *De*, when applied to a single person (p. 33), is always construed with the sing. number of the verb, as: *Kommer De saa?* shall I expect you then? (not *Komme De*). *Gaar De paa Komédie?* do you go to the play?

---

\*) Except also in verse, as: *Christian Bygmester stor*, Ghristian the great architect. *Oehlenschlaeger*. ED.

The numeral pronouns are placed before the nouns, as: *tó Huse*, two houses; *det første Menneske*, the first man. When a numeral and an adjective are added, that which has the closest connection with the noun must be placed nearest to it, e. g. *tí hele Brød*, ten entire loaves, but *hele ti Brød*, means whole (not less than) ten loaves.

When speaking of the date of the year, we never apply the word *Tusind*, but merely count the *Hundrede*, e. g. 1829, *atten Hundrede og ni-og-tyve*, not, *ét Tusind aatte Hundrede og ni-og-tyve*.

## 60. Verbs.

In common conversation the plural form of the tenses is scarcely ever made use of, as: *vi rejser* (instead of *rejse*) *i Morgen*, we depart to morrow; *det er tidligt de Kongelige kommer* (for *komme*) *i Aften*, the royal family comes early to night; *de spiller det Skuespil godt*, they perform that play well.

The active participles in *-ende*, are never used as gerunds, and rarely as parts of verbs, but more frequently as a sort of adjectives, as: 'fading graces', *falmende Yndigheder*; 'falling leaves', *faldende Løv*; 'calling to one another, and endeavouring in vain to extricate themselves', *raabende til hverandre og stræbende forgjæves at udrede sig*; but: 'on entering this first enclosure', must be rendered: *i det jeg traadte ind i dette første Aflukke*, not *i or paa indtrædende*, &c. 'I was wandering', *jeg vandrede*, not *jeg var vandrende*, (see p. 54). 'The king being a hunting', *da Kongen (just) var paa Jagt*. 'The soldiers being afraid of the enemy', *Soldaterne som vare bange for Fjenderne*. 'In promising them some', *ved at love dem nogle*.

The English participles [or gerunds] in *-ing* must often be rendered in Danish by the infinitives, as: it is scarcely worth seeing, *det er næppe værd at se*.

## 61. *Particles.*

Of prepositions it is worth while to observe, how they are used to determine time; *i* with the genitive denotes a past time, as: *i Søndags*, last Sunday; the nouns ending in *en*, lose their *n* before the genitive *s*, in this sort of regimen, as: *i Gaar Aftes* last night, yesterday evening (from *Aften*, otherwise the usual genitive is *Aftens*); *i Morges*, this morning; *i Formiddags*, this forenoon; *i Forgaars*, the day before yesterday; *i Mandags Eftermiddags*, last Monday afternoon. — With the nominative it denotes the current time as: *i Aar*, this year; *i Dag*, to-day; or the time next following, as *i Aften*, this evening, which may be said both in the forenoon of the same day, and in the evening itself; *i Morgen*, to-morrow. But the word *Nat* not admitting the genitive *-s*, in the case just mentioned, when I say *i Nat*, it is entirely undecided, whether I mean the night preceding, or that succeeding this day; accordingly the real meaning of the phrase in each particular case can only be inferred from the context; e. g. *Regnede det i Nat*, did it rain last night? *faa vi Regn i Nat*, shall we have rain this night? The following days of the week are indicated by *paa*, on, as: *paa Søndag*, next Sunday; *paa Mandag Formiddag*, on Monday forenoon. For some few cases we have other prepositions or adverbial expressions, as: *ifjor* (*i Fjor*), last year; *ad Aare*, next year. *Om* with the noun in the definite form corresponds to the English *a*, *in*, as: *Tjeneren faar 10 Rbd. (Rigsbankdaler) om Maaneden*. The servant (footman) has 10 dollars a month.

Also *om Aaret*, a year; *om Dagen*, a day; '*om Morgen*, in the morning, &c.

Of the conjunctions there is scarcely any thing remarkable to be said in the syntax, there being absolutely no subjunctive mode in the verbs. It may be observed however, that in combined sentences several conjunctions correspond to each other, so that when the one precedes the other may be expected to follow, such are:

|                                                          |                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>baade</i> — <i>og</i> ,                               | both — and;                |
| <i>saavel</i> — <i>som</i> ,                             | as well — as;              |
| <i>saa</i> ( <i>stor</i> ) — <i>som</i> ,                | as (great) — as;           |
| <i>ikke alene</i> — <i>men ogsaa</i> ,                   | not only — but also;       |
| <i>jo</i> ( <i>meer</i> ) — <i>des</i> ( <i>bedre</i> ), | the (more) — the (better); |
| <i>saa meget des</i> — <i>som</i> ,                      | so much the — as;          |
| <i>om</i> — <i>eller</i> ,                               | whether — or;              |
| <i>enten</i> — <i>eller</i> ,                            | either — or;               |
| <i>hverken</i> — <i>eller</i> , }                        |                            |
| <i>ej heller</i> , }                                     | neither — nor;             |
| <i>vel</i> — <i>men ikke</i> , }                         | indeed — but not;          |
| <i>men alligevel</i> , }                                 | — but nevertheless;        |
| <i>vel ikke</i> — <i>men dog</i> , }                     | not indeed — but still;    |
| — <i>men vel</i> , }                                     | — but for all that;        |
| <i>deels</i> — <i>deels</i> ,                            | partly — partly;           |
| <i>da</i> — <i>saa</i> ( <i>kan De</i> ),                | as — (you may);            |
| <i>ihvorvel</i> — ( <i>saa</i> ) <i>dog</i> ,            | although — yet;            |
| <i>skönt</i> — ( <i>saa</i> ) <i>dog ikke</i> ,          | though — still not.        |

## 62. Appendix.

Though the Roman character is daily gaining ground, being introduced into the Transactions of the Royal Academy of Copenhagen and of most other learned Societies in Denmark and Norway, as also used in many excellent works of private authors on Antiquity, History &c. yet the monkish or Gothic form of the letters is still preferred by many, and must be learned also.

[Here Professor Rask inserted the ordinary German alphabet, to which he always had great aversion, and which he in vain attempted to persuade his countrymen entirely to discard. I have placed it at the beginning of the book since it still is in much more general use than the Roman alphabet. As long as the Germans preserve "the monkish or Gothic form" of the letters there is but small chance of the Danes abandoning it; but as soon as the Germans adopt the character now used by all the civilized nations of Europe (except the Russians and the Greeks) there is no doubt that the Danes will follow their example. ED.]

### 63. *Remarks on the German letters.*

In this character the capital *J* is also commonly used for the *ſ* e. g. in *Jſrael* and *Jefuſ*; though different figures have been invented by P. Syv, R. Nyerup & Mr. J. Jetsmark, in order to distinguish them; in writing however they are usually distinguished the *ſ* being prolonged beneath the line. Of the figures used in print that of Mr. Jetsmark, which I have here made use of, appears to have the preference.

The long *f* is constantly applied in the beginning of syllables, even in the combinations: *ff*, *fl*, *ſp*, *ſt*. Ex. *ſlig*, *ſtal*, *ſtrider*, *ſparer*.

For *å*, has also been proposed another figure, viz. *α*, which has been adopted by the celebrated Capt. Abrahamson in his first edition of Lange's *Dänische Gramm. für Deutsche*, as also by the author of these pages, in the first edition of his Icelandic Grammar; that he has afterwards preferred the *å*, is not only from patriotic motives; this figure being found in old Danish MSS. down to 1555, but also because it is introduced into several other languages, as Swedish and Laplandic, and has even been used in the upper German dialects, e. g. in Büschings und von der Hagen's *Sammlung deutscher Volkslieder*, Berlin 1807 and in J. F. Castelli's *Gedichte in nieder-*

*österreichischer Mundart*, Wien 1828, 8vo. Also in the Bornholm dialect by Mr. Skougaard, in the Faroic by the revd. Mr. Lyngbye, and in the Acra (on the coast of Guinea) by Capt. Schönning, whereas *ai* is used nowhere else in the world.

The *ü* and *ä* are German forms of the vowels *y* and *æ*, usually preserved in writing German names, although the Germans never use the Danish *æ* or *ø*, in writing Danish names, nor even in quoting titles or passages of books. Some writers also apply the *ü* for French *u*, e. g. *Rüance*, *Büreaa*, pronounce *Nyanse*, *Byraa*.

The *ß* is entirely a German combination, not used even by the Germans themselves in the Roman character, and pronounced like the Danish *s*.







**DIALOGUES**  
**AND**  
**EXTRACTS.**



## FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

---

### Förste Samtale.

### Dialogue 1.

**G**od Morgen!

**G**ood morning, sir <sup>1)</sup>.

Hvorlédes befinder De Dem<sup>2)</sup>? *How do you do?*

Hvorledes staar det til? *How are you?*

Jeg takker, meget vel; ret *Very well, pretty well, I thank  
bra'.* *you.*

Saa saa; ikke med det bedste. *So so; not very well.*

Meget vel, til Tjeneste. *Very well, at your service.*

Til Deres Tjeneste. *At your service.*

Behåg at sidde ned. *Please to sit down.*

Vær saa årtig, og tag en *Be so kind as to take a seat,  
Stol.* *a chair.*

Sid ned et Øjeblik. *Sit down a moment.*

Jeg har et lille Besøg at gjøre *I must go to pay a visit in  
i Nabolauget.* *the neighbourhood.*

Hvad er Klokken? *What is it o'clock?*

Hvad mener De? *What do you think it is?*

Den er vel ikke aatte endnu. *Scarce eight, I believe, yet.*

---

<sup>1)</sup> The Danish expression for *sir*, *Herre* or *min Herre*, is rarely used in conversation, except by servants.

<sup>2)</sup> The reciprocal forms, *sig*, *sit*, *sin*, *sine*, must be avoided, when the civil pronoun *De*, *you*, is the nominative; but if it were the usual plur. of the 3d person, it should be: *hvorledes befinde de sig?* how do they find themselves?

Hvad? aatte! den er slaaet *How? eight! it has struck*  
ti. *ten.*

Er det muligt? er den saa *Is it possible? is it so late!*  
mange! saa maa jeg ogsaa *then I must go out also.*  
ud.

Hvor skal De hen? *Whither are you going?*

Jeg skal hen at spise Fró- *I am going to breakfast with*  
kost hos Hr. N. N. *Mr. N. N.*

Og jeg skal hen at se til *And I am going to call on*  
Fru N. N. *Mrs. N. N.*

A! det er nok saa godt, at *Ah, that is much better indeed,*  
besøge Damerne! *to visit the ladies!*

Men naar sees vi nu igjen? *But when shall we see each*  
*other again!*

Er De hjemme paa Tirsdag? *Shall you be at home on*  
*Tuesday?*

Ja hvad Tid Dágs? *At what hour?*

Aa, saadan Klokken sex eller *Why, about six or seven*  
syv. *o'clock.*

Ja, om Aftenen er jeg hjem- *Yes, sir! in the evening I*  
me, men kom saa ikke for *shall be at home, but don't*  
silde, saa vil vi drikke Te *come too late then, so that*  
nede i Haven. *we may drink tea in the*  
*garden.*

Godt! som De befaler. *Well, as you please.*

Farvell! (Adjö!) *Good bye! (Adieu).*

Farvell! Farvell! *Good bye!*

## Anden Samtale.

## Dialogue 2.

God Aften Hr. N. N. *Good evening Mr. N. N.*

Velkommen. Det fornöjer *Welcome, sir! I am very happy*  
mig meget at se Dem. *to see you.*

Hvorledes har De levet, siden *How have you been, since I*  
sidst, jeg havde den For- *had the pleasure of seeing*  
nöjelse at se Dem. *you last?*

Jeg er dem meget forbunden. *I am much obliged to you,*  
 Naar jeg undtager en lille *sir. Excepting a little cold,*  
 Forkølelse, som har holdt *that confined me to my room*  
 mig inde et par Dage, *for a couple of days, I*  
 har jeg været meget vel. *have been very well. But*  
 Men De er fremmed; hvor *you are a foreigner, how*  
 ledes finder De vort Kli- *do you find our climate*  
 ma passer sig for Dem? *agree with you?*

Det er lidt køldt og fugtigt, *It is somewhat cold and damp,*  
 i det mindste er Luften *at least the air is much*  
 langt varmere og tørrere *warmer and dryer in my*  
 i mit Fædreneland. *native country.*

Det kan jeg tænke. *I dare say.*

Men man maa indrette sin *But one must adapt one's*  
 Klædedragt og Levemaade *clothing and diet to the cli-*  
 efter den Himmelegn, man *mate one lives in, and then*  
 lever under, og saa ikke *not care too much about the*  
 bryde sig ret meget om *weather, especially at my*  
 Vejret, især i min Alder. *age.*

Det har De Ret i; det var *You are very right; it was*  
 ogsaa min Grundsætning, *also my principle, when I*  
 da jeg var paa Rejser. — *was travelling. But come*  
 Men lad os nu gaa ned i *now let us go down into the*  
 Haven, og se om min Kone *garden, to see whether Mrs.*  
 har noget Te til os. *N. <sup>1</sup>) has got some tea for*  
*us.*

Det vil ikke være af Vejen. *Well, it won't be amiss.*

---

\*) A husband never calls his wife by his own surname as in English, but always says: *min Kone*, my wife, or *Fruen*, *Madammen*, *Moder*, according to her rank. *Frue*, lady, is used of noble-  
 men's as also of most civil and military officer's wives, and *Fröken*  
 of their daughters; *Madamme* of merchants' and tradesmen's wives,  
 as also of the country clergymen's and clerks', *Jomfru* of their  
 daughters; *Moder* (*Mo'r*) of a farmer's or common soldier's wife.

## Tredie Samtale.

## Dialogue 3.

Nu, hvad synes De om vort Sprøg, kan De forstaa noget af det? *Well, what do you think of our language? do you understand any thing of it?*

Det klinger ganske bra', at høre paa, men jeg maa tilstaa jeg forstaar næsten slet intet af det. *It sounds pretty well to the ear, but I must confess, I understand almost nothing of it at all.*

Men agter De ikke at lægge Dem efter det? *But don't you intend to study it?*

Jo, jeg har i Sinde at benytte mig af den korte Tid, jeg kan opholde mig her, til at lære at kjende Sproget og Folket, og se hvad mærkværdigt her er. *Yes, sir! I intend to take advantage of the short time, I can stay here, to learn the language, to know the people, and to see every thing remarkable.*

Nu, det fornöjer mig at høre, og jeg er vis paa, De vil ikke finde Spröget vanskeligt, og naar De har lært det, vil Literaturen rigelig belönne Deres Umage. *I am very glad to hear it, and I am sure you won't find the language difficult, and when you have learned it, the literature will amply repay your trouble.*

I denne Henséende stoler jeg ganske paa Deres gode Hjælp, og haaber De har Venskab nok for mig, til at bæere mig med Deres Raad og Vøjledning. Men först maa jeg både Dem at óversætte mig følgende Ord, som jeg vil behöve hvert Öjeblik. *In this I entirely rely upon your kind assistance, and I hope you have friendship enough for me, to give me the benefit of your advice and instruction. But previously I must beg you to translate for me the following words, which I shall require to use every moment.*

Méget vél, Hr. B! vil De give mig Pen og Blæk, *Very well, Mr. B. will you give me pen and ink, I will*

|                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| skal jeg oversætte dem for Dem i et Øjeblik. Jeg kan vel skrive det paa det samme Papir.                                                             | <i>translate them for you in a moment. I suppose I may write on the same paper.</i>                                                                                                                 |
| Ja, jeg ønskede just at have de danske Udtryk lige over for de engelske, og helst förän, saa at Öjet kan træffe dem först, naar jeg seer paa Bladet. | <i>Yes, sir! I just wanted to have the Danish words right over against the English, and rather in front, in order that the eye may meet with them in the first place, when I look at the paper.</i> |
| En trékantet Hat, rúnd Hat.                                                                                                                          | <i>A cocked hat, round hat.</i>                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Pudder, Pomåde, Tandpulver.                                                                                                                          | <i>Powder, pomatum, toothpowder.</i>                                                                                                                                                                |
| Kam, Börste, Tandbörste.                                                                                                                             | <i>Comb, brush, toothbrush.</i>                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Nåtsjorte, Manskjêtsjorte. <sup>1)</sup>                                                                                                             | <i>Nightshirt, frilled shirt.</i>                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Nåttroje, Hålsklæde, Séler.                                                                                                                          | <i>Underwaistcoat, neckcloth, braces. <sup>2)</sup></i>                                                                                                                                             |
| Vest, Kjóle, Frakke.                                                                                                                                 | <i>Waistcoat, coat, great coat.</i>                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Beenklæder, Buxer.                                                                                                                                   | <i>Pantaloons, breeches.</i>                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Uld-, Traad-Silke-strømper.                                                                                                                          | <i>Woollen, thread-silk stockings,</i>                                                                                                                                                              |
| Støvler, Sko, Spænder.                                                                                                                               | <i>Boots, shoes, buckles.</i>                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Töfler, Nathue, Slaaprok.                                                                                                                            | <i>Slippers, nightcap, nightgown.</i>                                                                                                                                                               |
| Handsker, Lommetörklæde, Stok.                                                                                                                       | <i>Gloves, pocket-handkerchief, stick.</i>                                                                                                                                                          |
| Tobáksdaase, Ring, Ur.                                                                                                                               | <i>Snuffbox, ring, watch.</i>                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Tåndstikker, Kikkert, Öjegas.                                                                                                                        | <i>Toothpick, pocket-glass, eyeglass.</i>                                                                                                                                                           |
| Tégnebog, Pung, Blyánt.                                                                                                                              | <i>Pocketbook, purse, pencil.</i>                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Bånkosédler, Vexler, Smaå-penge.                                                                                                                     | <i>Bank-notes, bills of exchange, change, or small coin.</i>                                                                                                                                        |
| Visitkaart, Sæng, Sængeklæder.                                                                                                                       | <i>Calling cards, bed, bedclothes.</i>                                                                                                                                                              |

<sup>1)</sup> Commonly Natskjorte, Mansketskjorte.

ED.

<sup>2)</sup> The first Edition has *gallowses*, which certainly is never heard, either in shops, or in common conversation; still it is found in such dictionaries as abound in slang terms: it surely is rather vulgar. I have put the usual expression.

ED.

|                                                                                    |                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lågener, Púder, Sófa.                                                              | <i>Sheets, pillows, sofa.</i> <sup>1)</sup>                                                                        |
| Skriverpult, Spillebórd, Spi-<br>sebórd.                                           | <i>Writing-desk, card table, di-<br/>ning-table.</i>                                                               |
| Spejle, Stúeur, Lampe.                                                             | <i>Looking-glasses, chamber-clock,<br/>lamp.</i>                                                                   |
| Lýsekrone, Gardiner, Over-<br>kopper.                                              | <i>Lustre, curtains, cups.</i>                                                                                     |
| Underkopper, Ske-er, Kniv-e<br>og Gafler, Dúge, Serviet-<br>ter.                   | <i>Saucers, spoons, knives and<br/>forks, table-clothes, napkins.</i>                                              |
| Haandklæder, Flasker, Glas.                                                        | <i>Towels, bottles, glasses.</i>                                                                                   |
| Tallérkenes, Lys, Lýsesax.                                                         | <i>Plates, candles, snuffers.</i>                                                                                  |
| Lýsestager, Snústobak.                                                             | <i>Candlesticks, snuff.</i>                                                                                        |
| Læk, Signét, Obláter.                                                              | <i>Sealing-wax, seal, wafers.</i>                                                                                  |
| Skrivpapir, Pøstpapir, Maku-<br>latúr.                                             | <i>Writing-, post-, wastepaper.</i>                                                                                |
| Ridehest, Vognheste, Vogn.                                                         | <i>Saddlehorse, [or riding horse]<br/>coach horses, carriage.</i>                                                  |
| Karét, Kusk, Tjèner.                                                               | <i>Coach, coachman, servant, or<br/>footman.</i>                                                                   |
| Vært, Skræder, Skómager.                                                           | <i>Landlord, tailor, shoemaker.</i>                                                                                |
| Barbér, Haarskærer, Bøg-<br>handler.                                               | <i>Barber, hairdresser, bookseller.</i>                                                                            |
| Urmager, Hattemager, Hand-<br>skemager.                                            | <i>Watchmaker, hatter, glover.</i>                                                                                 |
| Se, her har De de forlangte<br>Ord paa Dansk, men kan<br>De nu ogsaa læse dem?     | <i>Well, sir! here you have the<br/>words required in Danish;<br/>but now, shall you be able<br/>to read them?</i> |
| Tilvisse, De har jo skrevet<br>dem med latinske Bøgsta-<br>ver, de andre falde mig | <i>Surely, I see you have writ-<br/>ten them in the English cha-<br/>racter, the other indeed I</i>                |

<sup>1)</sup> The first edition has *couch* which is a different piece of furniture like that which is called *chaise longue*, or *Canapee* on the continent.



rigtig nok meget vandske- *And it very difficult to*  
lige at finde ud af. *make out.*

Men de ere dog uundgaaelig *As yet, however, it is indis-*  
nødvendige at kjende end- *pensably necessary to know*  
nu. *them.*

Ja, naar jeg først bliver lidt *Oh, when only I get a little*  
bekjendt med Sprøget, haa- *acquainted with the 'language,*  
ber jeg de gamle Bogsta- *I hope the old letters*  
ver vil blive mindre vån- *will be less difficult to me.*  
skelige for mig. Mener *Don't you think so too?*  
De ikke ogsaa det?

Upaatvivlelig. *No doubt of it.*

## Fjerde Samtale.

## Dialogue 4.

Nu hvorledes gaar det med *Well, how do you get on with*  
Deres Dansk? Har De *your Danish? Have you made*  
gjørt betýdelig Frémgang *considerable progress.*  
i den allerede?

Langt frá, jeg forstaar næsten *Far from it, I know nothing*  
intet. *almost.*

Man siger dog, De taler ret *It is said however, you speak*  
bra'. *it very well.*

Gid det var sandt! Men dé, *Would it were true! but those*  
der sige det, tage meget *who say so, are much mis-*  
fejl. *taken.*

Jeg forsikrer (Dem), det har *I assure you, I was told so.*  
været mig sagt (ell. jeg  
har hørt det).

Jeg kán nogle faa (énkelte) *I can say a few words, which*  
Ord, som jeg har lært *I have got by heart. And*  
údenad. Og hvad der er *as much as is necessary to*  
nødvéndigt for at begynde *begin to speak.*  
at tale.

Vel begyndt er halv fuldendt *Well begun is half finished,*  
siger man; men Begyndel- *we say; however, the be-*

sen er ikke nok alligevel; *ginning is not all, you must*  
 De maa ogsaa se til at *also try to make an end.*  
 naa Enden.

Har De ingen gode dansk- *Are there no good Danish and*  
 engelske Samtaler at anbe- *English Dialogues, which you*  
 fale mig. *can recommend me.*

Jo vi har en ganske brugbar *Yes, sir! we have a pretty*  
 Bearbejdelse af J. Marstons *good edition of J. M. Dia-*  
 Samtaler, paa Engelsk og *logues in English and Da-*  
 Dansk ved afgangne Kapt. *nish, edited by the late*  
 Schneider, som er údkom- *Cap. S., and printed in Co-*  
 men i Köbenhavn 1812. *penhagen 1812.*

Er det en stór Bóg? *Is it a large volume?*

Den údgjør omtrent 15 Ark *It makes about 15 sheets in*  
 i Oktáv. *octavo.*

Og hvor faaes den (faaer *And where is it to be had?*  
 man den)?

Hos Bøghandler Brummer, *At Mr. Brummer's, the book-*  
 Nr. (Nummer) 52 paa *seller No. 52 Eaststreet.*  
 Østergade. Der er ogsaa *There is also another, cal-*  
 en anden kaldet *Lommebog* *led Taschenbuch für die*  
*for Samtalen i Fransk,* *Conversation in fremden*  
*Tydske og Engelske 1822,* *Sprachen, &c. which you*  
 som De kan faa paa samme *may get in the same shop.*  
 Sted.

Hvilken af dem er den bedste? *Which is the best of them?*

Den sidstnævnte er den rigeste, og temmelig nøiagtig *The last mentioned is the ri-*  
 i Dansken, blot paa Ret- *chest, and pretty accurate*  
 skrivningen nær; men saa *in the Danish, except the*  
 er der baade fransk og *orthography; but then there*  
 tysk Oversættelse, som De *is a French and a German*  
 vel ikke bryder Dem om. — *translation, which I suppose*  
*you don't care about. —*

Men De maa beständig tale *But you must always be speaking the language, whether well or ill.*  
 Sprøget, enten vel eller ilde.

Jeg er bange for at begaa *I am afraid to commit blunders.*  
 Sprøgefejl.

Frygt aldrig for det; Dàn- *Never fear; the Danish is not*  
 sken er ikke vanskelig, *hard, but rather more nearly*  
 men tværtimod nærmere *related to the English, than*  
 ved Engelsk end Hølland- *Dutch or any other living*  
 sken eller noget andet læ- *tongue.*  
 vende Sprøg,

Méner De det? *Do you think so, sir!*

Jeg vil vise Dem nogle Ord, *Why, I will show you some*  
 som gödtgjøre det. *words to prove it.*

Öje — *eye*; Arm — *arm*; Finger — *finger*; Negl — *nail*; Side — *side*; Taa — *toe*; jeg — *I*; de — *they*; dem — *them*; deres — *theirs*; vi ere — *we are*; have — *have*; give — *give*; tage — *take*; saae — *sow*; Plov — *plough*; see — *see*; först — *first*; af — *of*; ad — *at* &c.

---

## ANEKDÓTER.

af A. Fr. Høstes Miniatürbiblioték for  
 Mørskabslæsning.

**E**n <sup>1)</sup> havde været paa Komédie. Man spürgde ham, hvad Stykke <sup>2)</sup> de havde haft? — "Skam faa den, der veed det," <sup>3)</sup> sagde han, „det regnede ösende Vande," <sup>4)</sup> den Gång <sup>5)</sup> jeg gik derhén, og saa fik jeg ikke læst Plakáten." <sup>6)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> One, a person. <sup>2)</sup> piece, play. <sup>3)</sup> A vulgar phrase, to which they sometimes add, om det er mig, literally: shame (confusion) to him who knows it (if I be it). <sup>4)</sup> pouring (down) waters. <sup>5)</sup> the time, when. <sup>6)</sup> the placard.

---

En Mænd fortalte i et Selskab, at hans Fader en Gang, <sup>1)</sup> i en Alder <sup>2)</sup> af ti Aar, var faldet <sup>3)</sup> ud igjennem et Vindue i trédie Etásje <sup>4)</sup> néd paa Sténbróen. „Fra trédie Etásje!“ áfbrød <sup>5)</sup> en ung Herre <sup>6)</sup> ham, „naa, <sup>7)</sup> han slap vist ikke <sup>8)</sup> derfra <sup>9)</sup> med Livet.”

<sup>1)</sup> one time, a certain time. <sup>2)</sup> age. <sup>3)</sup> Should properly be falden but in the 2d conj. we often disregard the com. gend. of the partic. pass. e. g. hvor er den udgivet? where it is printed? <sup>4)</sup> story, also written in the French way, Etage; the Danish expression is Stokverk. <sup>5)</sup> interrupted, from áfbryder (p. 50). <sup>6)</sup> Gentleman. <sup>7)</sup> dear me; <sup>8)</sup> literally: he escaped certainly not, o: he surely did not escape. <sup>9)</sup> from it.

### Stjærneskytten.<sup>1)</sup>

En österrigsk <sup>2)</sup> Rekrút stód om Nátten Skildvagt <sup>3)</sup> ved et astronómisk Observatórium, og saae <sup>4)</sup> tánkelös op til Taarnet <sup>5)</sup> og den skýfri <sup>6)</sup> Himmel. <sup>7)</sup> Då kóm der nógen <sup>8)</sup> oppe paa <sup>9)</sup> Taarnet, efter <sup>10)</sup> Rekrúttens Méning, <sup>11)</sup> med en lang Flint, <sup>12)</sup> og sigtede <sup>13)</sup> dermed ópad <sup>14)</sup> i Mörket. ”Men nú gad jeg dóg vidst,” <sup>15)</sup> sagde Rekrúttén forúndret <sup>16)</sup> til sig sélv, hvad dén Kárl <sup>17)</sup> vil skýde nú om Nátten,” og dérhos <sup>18)</sup> fulgde han med Öjet den Rétning, <sup>19)</sup> som Observatórens Kikkert <sup>20)</sup> betegnede. <sup>21)</sup> Plúdselig <sup>22)</sup> skjéde <sup>23)</sup> der et Stjærneskud, <sup>24)</sup> og af Forúndring tábte Rekrúttén Geværet, <sup>25)</sup> i dét han

<sup>1)</sup> The star-shooter. <sup>2)</sup> Austrian. <sup>3)</sup> centry. <sup>4)</sup> looked. <sup>5)</sup> the tower. <sup>6)</sup> cloudless, clear. <sup>7)</sup> sky. <sup>8)</sup> somebody. <sup>9)</sup> on the top of. <sup>10)</sup> according to. <sup>11)</sup> idea, according to his idea o: as he fancied, thought. <sup>12)</sup> musket. <sup>13)</sup> aimed. <sup>14)</sup> upwards. <sup>15)</sup> But now I should like to know. <sup>16)</sup> wondering. <sup>17)</sup> that fellow. <sup>18)</sup> at the same time. <sup>19)</sup> the direction. <sup>20)</sup> the telescope. <sup>21)</sup> pointed out. <sup>22)</sup> suddenly. <sup>23)</sup> there happened (to fall). <sup>24)</sup> a shooting star. <sup>25)</sup> his firelock.

raabte: <sup>26)</sup> „Naa! <sup>27)</sup> nú har jeg sét det med! <sup>28)</sup> Han har rigtig trüffet den!” <sup>29)</sup>

<sup>26)</sup> crying out. <sup>27)</sup> dear me. <sup>28)</sup> well, I have seen that too! (i. e. Who did ever see the like o' that)? <sup>29)</sup> hit it, or hit his mark.

En Købmand módtog <sup>1)</sup> en Fém-shillings-Mynt, <sup>2)</sup> der ikke syntes ham at være ægte, <sup>3)</sup> og spúrgde dérfor en Sáförer, <sup>4)</sup> som gik forbi <sup>5)</sup> hans Butik, <sup>6)</sup> hvad han meente <sup>7)</sup> om den. Denne besaae <sup>8)</sup> den opmærksomt; <sup>9)</sup> forsikrede <sup>10)</sup> den var gód, púttede den til sig, <sup>11)</sup> og forlángte <sup>12)</sup> endnu <sup>13)</sup> 1 Shilling 8 Pence, da de engelske Love have fástsat <sup>14)</sup> en Taxt af 6 Shilling 8 Pence for et hos en Sáförer indhentet Raad. <sup>15)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> got, received. <sup>2)</sup> five-shilling-piece. <sup>3)</sup> literally: which not seemed (to) him to be genuine (or good). <sup>4)</sup> attorney, or solicitor. <sup>5)</sup> passed by. <sup>6)</sup> shop, they write also *Boutik*, or even *Boutique*. <sup>7)</sup> meant, thought. <sup>8)</sup> viewed. <sup>9)</sup> attentively. <sup>10)</sup> assured (him, that). <sup>11)</sup> literally: to himself, i. e. in his pocket. <sup>12)</sup> demanded. <sup>13)</sup> still, besides. <sup>14)</sup> as the E. L. have fixed: the E. L. having fixed. <sup>15)</sup> literally: for an, at (of) a solicitor received, advice.

## SMAAFORTÆLLINGER.<sup>1)</sup>

Af samme Bog.

### *Det fárlige Hérberge.<sup>2)</sup>*

En simpelt <sup>3)</sup> klædt Mand, der rejste til Fóds, <sup>4)</sup> tog en Aften, paa Vejen fra Condé til Lunze, et Öjeblik <sup>5)</sup> ind i <sup>6)</sup> et lille énsomt liggende <sup>7)</sup> Hús i Egnen <sup>8)</sup> af Peruwetz,

<sup>1)</sup> tales, stories. <sup>2)</sup> lodging. <sup>3)</sup> simply, poorly. <sup>4)</sup> on foot (p. 26). <sup>5)</sup> moment. <sup>6)</sup> *tog ind i*, entered into, stopt at. <sup>7)</sup> onely situated. <sup>8)</sup> neighbourhood, environs.

hvor kun en Hùsmand <sup>9)</sup> og hans Kóne bóede. Médens <sup>10)</sup> han údhvilede sig, <sup>11)</sup> fortálte han, <sup>12)</sup> hvorhén han gik, <sup>13)</sup> og strågs <sup>14)</sup> fattede <sup>15)</sup> Værten <sup>16)</sup> den Beslútning, <sup>17)</sup> at anfalde <sup>18)</sup> ham paa Vejen.

Næppe var den Røjsende <sup>19)</sup> gaaet en Fjerdingsvej <sup>20)</sup> videre, för en maskéret Mand, trúende <sup>21)</sup> at myrde ham, áffordrede ham <sup>22)</sup> hans Penge. Den Frémmede <sup>23)</sup> býder <sup>24)</sup> ham tolv Dukáter med den Forsikring, <sup>25)</sup> at han ikke hár flére hos sig, <sup>26)</sup> og faar derved Lov, <sup>27)</sup> til at drage videre; <sup>28)</sup> men strags falder det ham ind, <sup>29)</sup> at han, ved at fortsætte <sup>30)</sup> sin Rejse i en saa úsikker Egn, let <sup>31)</sup> kunde stóde paa <sup>32)</sup> andre ikke saa léttroende <sup>33)</sup> Røvere, og han beslutter <sup>34)</sup> derfor, at vende tilbåge <sup>35)</sup> til det Hús, han nýlig <sup>36)</sup> har forládt, <sup>37)</sup> og blive dér Natten óver. Han finder kun <sup>38)</sup> Kónen hjémme, <sup>39)</sup> fortæller hende, hvad der er módt ham, og til-lige <sup>40)</sup> at han har tolvtusende Dukáter hos sig. Værtin-den <sup>41)</sup> ánviser ham, <sup>42)</sup> paa hans Forlángende, <sup>43)</sup> da hun ikke har anden Plads, et Leje <sup>44)</sup> paa et lidet Loft.

Næppe er han gaaet op, förend Værten, som havde gjórt en Omvej, <sup>45)</sup> kommer hjem, og gíver Kónen de

---

<sup>9)</sup> cottager. <sup>10)</sup> while. <sup>11)</sup> rested himself. <sup>12)</sup> told he 3: he told (p. 74). <sup>13)</sup> went, i. e. was going. <sup>14)</sup> immediately, Some authors write *strax*, but contrary to the common rule for *x*, the adverb being derived from the adj. *strag*, and written in Germ, *stracks*, in Dutch *straks*. <sup>15)</sup> conceived, formed. <sup>16)</sup> the land-lord. <sup>17)</sup> resolution. <sup>18)</sup> attack. <sup>19)</sup> traveller. <sup>20)</sup> a quarter of a Danish mile, about one Engl. mile. <sup>21)</sup> threatening. <sup>22)</sup> demanded of him (p. 72). <sup>23)</sup> stranger, foreigner, traveller. <sup>24)</sup> offers. <sup>25)</sup> with the assurance 3: assuring him. <sup>26)</sup> about him. <sup>27)</sup> gets thereby permission. <sup>28)</sup> literally: draw farther, i. e. travel on. <sup>29)</sup> it strikes him. <sup>30)</sup> by continuing. <sup>31)</sup> easily. <sup>32)</sup> fall in with. <sup>33)</sup> credulous. <sup>34)</sup> resolves. <sup>35)</sup> turn back. <sup>36)</sup> even, just. <sup>37)</sup> left. <sup>38)</sup> only. <sup>39)</sup> at home (p. 67). <sup>40)</sup> also, even. <sup>41)</sup> the landlady (p. 62). <sup>42)</sup> assigns to him, shows him. <sup>43)</sup> request (p. 63). <sup>44)</sup> couch, 'bed. <sup>45)</sup> round-about way.

nýlig rövede tólv Dukáter. „Dúmrian!<sup>46)</sup> (siger hun) du veed ikke, at Manden har tólv tusende Dukáter; — dér er han.”<sup>47)</sup> Hvorhós hun peger<sup>48)</sup> óp til Tágkammeret,<sup>49)</sup> hvor han, efter hendes Forméning,<sup>50)</sup> ligger og sover.<sup>51)</sup>

Imidlertid<sup>52)</sup> laa den Fremmede paa Luur<sup>53)</sup> med Öret, og hørte tydelig<sup>54)</sup> følgende Anslag<sup>55)</sup>: Manden skulde först gaa op paa Løftet, give ham et Slág i Hóvedet, og kaste<sup>56)</sup> ham úd af Vinduet. Hun selv skulde staa berédet nédenför,<sup>57)</sup> og med et Hüg<sup>58)</sup> give ham sin Rést.<sup>59)</sup> Da den Frémmede hörer dette, søger<sup>60)</sup> han först overált<sup>61)</sup> en Udvej,<sup>62)</sup> for at undkomme;<sup>63)</sup> men Flúgt var umúlig.<sup>64)</sup> Han léder nú rundt omkring, for i det mindste<sup>65)</sup> at finde et Instrumént til Försvar,<sup>66)</sup> og lykkeligvis faar han fat paa<sup>67)</sup> et stórt Stykke Tré, der kan tjéne<sup>68)</sup> til Kólle.<sup>69)</sup> Bevábnet dèrméd vænter han sin Fjénde, og ligesom<sup>70)</sup> denne tráder ind,<sup>71)</sup> giver han ham et Slág i Hóvedet, der bedöver<sup>72)</sup> ham, og kaster derpaa Légemet<sup>73)</sup> úd igjennem Løftslúgen<sup>74)</sup>. Kónen, der staar tilréde nédenför i Mörke, tvivler íntet Öjeblik,<sup>75)</sup> at det er den Frémmede, der er nédkastet, styrter<sup>76)</sup> over Legemet, og hügger, med en skarp Öxe, sin Mands<sup>77)</sup> Hóved áf i eet Hüg.

Kónen blév hæftet,<sup>78)</sup> og fik sin fortjénte Lön.<sup>79)</sup>

---

<sup>46)</sup> blockhead! <sup>47)</sup> — there he is. <sup>48)</sup> points. <sup>49)</sup> the garret.  
<sup>50)</sup> in her opinion. <sup>51)</sup> sleeps (p. 47). <sup>52)</sup> in the mean time.  
<sup>53)</sup> laa paa Luur, lay in wait, lurked, listened. <sup>54)</sup> distinctly. <sup>55)</sup> project, plan. <sup>56)</sup> throw ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>57)</sup> beneath. <sup>58)</sup> stroke, blow. <sup>59)</sup> his rest, what was farther required (to kill him). <sup>60)</sup> seeks ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ).  
<sup>61)</sup> every where. <sup>62)</sup> a passage. <sup>63)</sup> escape (p. 61). <sup>64)</sup> impossible, impracticable, from the old verb *mue*, i. e. *maatte* (p. 44).  
<sup>65)</sup> at least, must not be confounded with *i mindste Maade*, in the least. <sup>66)</sup> defence. <sup>67)</sup> he gets hold of. <sup>68)</sup> serve. <sup>69)</sup> club.  
<sup>70)</sup> just as, the moment. <sup>71)</sup> enters. <sup>72)</sup> stuns. <sup>73)</sup> the body.  
<sup>74)</sup> aperture. <sup>75)</sup> literally: doubts no moment, i. e. has not the slightest doubt. <sup>76)</sup> rushes or falls over. <sup>77)</sup> her husband's  
<sup>78)</sup> put into jail, <sup>79)</sup> her deserts.

*Størmbrüden og Pàradisæblet.*

Hvó der <sup>1)</sup> den 17de April 1823 har staaet båg ved den ný Vøjrmølle <sup>2)</sup> ved Lagjewnike i det brømborgske Distrikt, vil, hvis <sup>3)</sup> han er kommen derfrå <sup>4)</sup> med Livet, kunne <sup>5)</sup> fortælle os følgende Sämtale.

Lise, en fattig forældreløs <sup>6)</sup> Pige <sup>7)</sup> og Prestens <sup>8)</sup> sējstenaarige Bårnepige, <sup>9)</sup> omhýggeligen ópdraget <sup>10)</sup> i hans Hús, og med et ræt nýdeligt <sup>11)</sup> Ansigt, vilde i Dág som hver Dág, siden <sup>12)</sup> Fòraaret <sup>13)</sup> begyndte, vandre paa den venlige Fódsti <sup>14)</sup> forbi <sup>15)</sup> Möllen til sin Husbondes <sup>16)</sup> Jórdlod, <sup>17)</sup> da Möllersvenden <sup>18)</sup> Lúdvig, den rige Möllers muntre <sup>19)</sup> Søn, stak Hóvedet úd <sup>20)</sup> igjennem Möllehullet, <sup>21)</sup> og raabte spógende; <sup>22)</sup> Ah, Lise, skón Lise! <sup>23)</sup> — Halv uvillig <sup>24)</sup> og halv venlig blév hun rødmende staaende <sup>25)</sup> og spurgde: nú, hvad ér der da igjén? <sup>26)</sup>

Lúdvig. Som <sup>27)</sup> jeg sagde dig i Gaar, skón Lise! hár du ikke Lyst <sup>28)</sup> til at gifte dig? <sup>29)</sup>

Lise. Skón Lúdvig! naar han <sup>30)</sup> kún vil ærgre <sup>31)</sup> mig, saa lad mig hëller gaa min Vej i Ró! <sup>32)</sup>

---

1) He who. 2) behind the new windmill. 3) if. 4) has escaped. 5) vil kunne, may. 6) orphan. 7) girl. 8) the parson's. 9) nursery maid 16 years old. [The common spelling is: *sex-tenaarig*. ED.] 10) carefully educated; it should be *opdragen* (p. 45), but in the 2d conjugation we usually prefer the termination *-et* for *en* in the few participles, that may still admit the *-en* in the com. gend. 11) right, or very pretty. 12) to-day as every day, since. 13) the spring. 14) footpath. 15) by, passing by. 16) her master's. 17) field, piece of ground. 18) the young miller. 19) sprightly. 20) put out, forth his head. 21) the hole in the mill. 22) cried jestingly. 23) fair Elisa! 24) angry. 25) *blev staaende*, stood still. 26) what is the matter now again? 27) as, the same as. 28) a mind. 29) marry. 30) you, *han hun* are often used as terms of civility among the common people, or to persons of that class by those of higher rank; sometimes they express a slight displeasure: *du* is used much more in Danish than *thou* in English, but expresses a greater familiarity or superiority than *han, hun*. 31) annoy. 32) rest, peace.



Disse Ord sagde hun gânske mût,<sup>33)</sup> i dèt hun vendte sig bört.<sup>34)</sup>

*Lùdvig.* Men hùlde<sup>35)</sup> Lise, du skal jo ikke<sup>36)</sup> gifte dig med mig! Jeg veed vel, en Möller er for lidt<sup>37)</sup> for dig.

*Lise.* Som Kommissionær\*) vil jeg slèt ikke<sup>38)</sup> have mēd ham at bestille.<sup>39)</sup> Adjö!

*Lùdvig.* Altsaa dog hēller<sup>40)</sup> som Frier?<sup>41)</sup> O Lise, Møllehullet er desværre<sup>42)</sup> for lidet, men kunde jeg komme igjennem, saa styrtede jeg strags i dine Årme. Hör en Gang<sup>43)</sup> — hùsker du vel endnu,<sup>44)</sup> for fire, fem Aar siden?<sup>45)</sup> — Du vilde dēn Gång endnu ikke<sup>46)</sup> gjælde for<sup>47)</sup> en vòxen Jòmfru<sup>48)</sup> — da gav du mig vel endøg<sup>49)</sup> et Kys, naar jeg om Søndagen<sup>50)</sup> tog dig paa Skødet,<sup>51)</sup> og gav dig en Pēberkage.<sup>52)</sup> Nù har visselig Herr Pàstoren<sup>53)</sup> forbúdet<sup>54)</sup> dig det; ikke sândt,<sup>55)</sup> han præker dâglig för dig?

*Lise.* Ikke sândt, han havde nu Rēt,<sup>56)</sup> til at præke: "Lise! begiv dig til dit Arbeide,<sup>57)</sup> og lad ikke Mölleren have dig til bēdste?"<sup>59)</sup>

Lise var nù virkelig i Begrēb med at gaa,<sup>59)</sup> hvor gjērne hun end<sup>60)</sup> gad<sup>61)</sup> høre den øvermodige,<sup>62)</sup> men

<sup>33)</sup> in a pout. <sup>34)</sup> turning herself away. <sup>35)</sup> charming. <sup>36)</sup> *jo*, is a particle very difficult to translate, the purport of the whole context is: who says that you shall, or: nobody says that you shall. <sup>37)</sup> *lidt*, contracted of *lidet* (p. 28), is only used as adverb or noun. \*) agent. <sup>38)</sup> not at all. <sup>39)</sup> have to do with. <sup>40)</sup> consequently rather. <sup>41)</sup> suitor. <sup>42)</sup> indeed, or I am sorry to say. <sup>43)</sup> hark a moment. <sup>44)</sup> do you still recollect. <sup>45)</sup> ago. <sup>46)</sup> then still you would not. <sup>47)</sup> pass for. <sup>48)</sup> fullgrown young lady (see the note p. 87). <sup>49)</sup> you would even give me. <sup>50)</sup> p. 79. <sup>51)</sup> on my lap, knees. <sup>52)</sup> gingerbread-cake. <sup>53)</sup> the parson. <sup>54)</sup> prohibited; as to the order of *dig det* see p. 26. <sup>55)</sup> is not it true that, or *does not he*, placed after the next proposition. <sup>56)</sup> a right, occasion to. <sup>57)</sup> go to your (thy) work. <sup>58)</sup> make a fool of you, take you in. <sup>59)</sup> was really about going away. <sup>60)</sup> *hvor* ... *end*, however. <sup>61)</sup> would, liked. <sup>62)</sup> presumptuous.

ellers<sup>63</sup>) bråve Ynglings<sup>64</sup>) Spög,<sup>65</sup>) da denne endnu en Gång<sup>66</sup>) raabte: Lise, skön Lise! — Og sé!<sup>67</sup>) Lise vendte sig rigtig nok<sup>68</sup>) endnu en Gång om<sup>69</sup>) og lö.

Hold Forklædet op, lille Hex!<sup>70</sup>) raabte Mölleren, där här du<sup>71</sup>) et splinternyt<sup>72</sup>) Æble fra Påradis. Förend hun havde fåttet en Beslütning, om<sup>73</sup>) hun skulde holde Forklædet frém<sup>74</sup>) eller ikke, rullede Appelsinen<sup>75</sup>) hén<sup>76</sup>) for hendes Födder, en Frügt, som hun aldrig<sup>77</sup>) havde seet för. Spis,<sup>79</sup>) min Eva! raabte Kärlden léende, spis det skönne Påradisæble!

Den léttroende Pige fölgde Raadet, og trak Münden ganske skæv<sup>79</sup>) ved den bitre Smág<sup>90</sup>) af Skallen;<sup>81</sup>) men vél bemærkende, at en söd Säft<sup>82</sup>) flöd úd<sup>83</sup>) af Hullet, löb hun hurtigt<sup>84</sup>) bort med Appelsinen, imédens Lúdvig spöttende<sup>85</sup>) raabte efter hende: Lise, skön Lise; hvordan smáger Påradisæblet?

Pigen stód nu paa Préstens Mårk,<sup>86</sup>) og brúgte Spáden paa det flittigste<sup>87</sup>) for at indhente<sup>89</sup>) det forsömte.<sup>89</sup>) For hendes Tanker svævede<sup>90</sup>) úden Ophör<sup>91</sup>) den mún-tre<sup>92</sup>) Lúdvig. Saaledes gör han med alle Piger, sågde hun til sig selv, alle gör han Löjer<sup>93</sup>) med, og tænker ikke — — — o! og dög<sup>94</sup>) er han en gód, bráv Dréng,<sup>95</sup>) flittig, órdentlig, og hvor smúkt klæder<sup>96</sup>) ikke hans ný blaa Klæder<sup>97</sup>) ham! — Er det da ikke ógsaa skikke-ligt<sup>98</sup>) af ham, at han, om ogsaa<sup>99</sup>) af Óvergivenesshed,<sup>100</sup>)

<sup>63</sup>) otherwise. <sup>64</sup>) p. 62. <sup>65</sup>) jest. <sup>66</sup>) still another time. <sup>67</sup>) look!  
<sup>68</sup>) verily. <sup>69</sup>) om, about. <sup>70</sup>) witch. enchantress. <sup>71</sup>) there you have: there is for you. <sup>72</sup>) a spick-span-new. <sup>73</sup>) om — eller, see p. 79. <sup>74</sup>) forth, up. <sup>75</sup>) the orange. <sup>76</sup>) up to. <sup>77</sup>) never.  
<sup>78</sup>) eat ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>79</sup>) literally: drew the mouth entirely awry. <sup>80</sup>) taste.  
<sup>81</sup>) shell, peel. <sup>82</sup>) sweet juice. <sup>83</sup>) ran out, came out (p. 44.)  
<sup>84</sup>) speedily. <sup>85</sup>) with raillery. <sup>86</sup>) field. <sup>87</sup>) very diligently.  
<sup>88</sup>) retrieve, make good. <sup>89</sup>) neglected. <sup>90</sup>) hovered, presented himself. <sup>91</sup>) incessantly. <sup>92</sup>) playful. <sup>93</sup>) fun. <sup>94</sup>) however.  
<sup>95</sup>) boy ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ). <sup>96</sup>) klæder ham smukt, becomes him well. <sup>97</sup>) clothes.  
<sup>98</sup>) kind or kindly done. <sup>99</sup>) although perhaps. <sup>100</sup>) frolick, wantonness.

gav mig den skønne Frugt? han méner det døg vel <sup>1)</sup> ikke saa méget slémt méd mig.

Médens hun tænkte dette, nærmede en huul Lårmen <sup>2)</sup> sig meer og meer fra Låndsbyen. En sêlsom, <sup>3)</sup> kraftig <sup>4)</sup> Lûftströmning, <sup>5)</sup> kun indtagende <sup>6)</sup> en Brédde af omtrent <sup>7)</sup> 200 Skridt, <sup>8)</sup> styrtede sig i dette Öjeblik hid fra Krüschwitz, og förte först Tåge <sup>9)</sup> og Rûder, siden <sup>10)</sup> Sküre og Stålde <sup>11)</sup> bort méd sig. Luften, der stêdse blêv mörkere, röbede <sup>12)</sup> den eensomme Pige en sig nærmende Orkån; hun ilede <sup>13)</sup> hên bag et lévende Gærde, <sup>14)</sup> der rigtig nök <sup>15)</sup> endnú var uden Löw; <sup>16)</sup> men dog tæt <sup>17)</sup> nök til någonlunde <sup>18)</sup> at brýde Vindens Mågt. Nú flöj allerede Straaet fra hendes Hjems Tåge tættere og tættere hên <sup>19)</sup> över hende; en stór Låde <sup>20)</sup> flågrede <sup>21)</sup> lig en Fjéder höjt oppe i Luften, derpaa <sup>22)</sup> igjen skinende Linned, der var fört bort fra Blégen. <sup>23)</sup> Men nú — frygtelig bråger og brúser <sup>24)</sup> og hviner det. Lise seer bævende <sup>25)</sup> ivéjret: ved Gud, det er den ný Vêjrmölle, der uimodstaelig grében <sup>26)</sup> af Lûftsströmningen, lig en Papirsdrage, <sup>27)</sup> súser hên <sup>28)</sup> över hendes Hóved. Ved dette skrækkelige Sýn táber <sup>29)</sup> hun Bevidstheden. <sup>30)</sup> Dog snárt vækker en forfærdelig Knågen <sup>31)</sup> hende. Stör-

---

<sup>1)</sup> *vel*, is a particle difficult to translate, it expresses a probability, where there might still be some doubt; like: I should think, possibly. <sup>2)</sup> a hollow noise. <sup>3)</sup> strange. <sup>4)</sup> powerful. <sup>5)</sup> current of air. <sup>6)</sup> that only filled. <sup>7)</sup> about. <sup>8)</sup> paces ( $\frac{2}{3}$  p. 19). <sup>9)</sup> roofs. <sup>10)</sup> afterwards. <sup>11)</sup> sheds & stables. <sup>12)</sup> betrayed, *röber* is betray, indicate, but *forraader* is betray perfidiously, like a traitor. <sup>13)</sup> hastened. <sup>14)</sup> a quickset hedge. <sup>15)</sup> indeed. <sup>16)</sup> leaves ( $\frac{2}{3}$  p. 21). <sup>17)</sup> tight, thick. <sup>18)</sup> in some degree. <sup>19)</sup> away. <sup>20)</sup> barn. <sup>21)</sup> fluttered. <sup>22)</sup> after that. <sup>23)</sup> bleaching-ground. <sup>24)</sup> roars. <sup>25)</sup> trembling. <sup>26)</sup> irresistibly seized. <sup>27)</sup> a kite. <sup>28)</sup> whistles away. <sup>29)</sup> loses, *tåbe* is to lose for a time, or something that may be found again, but *miste* is to lose entirely, or something most difficult to recover. <sup>30)</sup> consciousness. <sup>31)</sup> creaking noise.

men havde lådet sit Bytte <sup>32)</sup> fare, <sup>33)</sup> og kun faa <sup>34)</sup> Skridt fra hende laa Möllen nédstyrtet. <sup>35)</sup>

Efter dëtte tórdnende Fåld var det paa een Gang <sup>36)</sup> igjen blévet stille <sup>37)</sup>; men med unævnelig <sup>38)</sup> Forfærdelse <sup>39)</sup> begréb <sup>40)</sup> Lise at Lúdvig maatte være begravet mэд <sup>41)</sup> under Möllens Ruiner. Véklagende <sup>42)</sup> irrede <sup>43)</sup> hun omkring den lette Bygning, og den sandeste Smertes <sup>44)</sup> Taa-  
rer strömmede néd ad hendes Ansigt. O, var Húset dog kun <sup>45)</sup> styrtet néd paa mig, raabte hun jamrende; <sup>46)</sup> ti <sup>47)</sup> hvorledes skal jeg óverleve <sup>48)</sup> hans Död? Aldrig har han ánet, <sup>49)</sup> hvorméget mit Hjærte tilhórt <sup>50)</sup> ham, hvor kært ethvært Blik, <sup>51)</sup> ethvært Órd áf ham vár mig: aldrig, det vidste jeg vél, kunde jeg blive háns, men dóg havde jeg ham kær, <sup>52)</sup> og var lykkelig ved kun at sé <sup>53)</sup> ham. Nu er han borte, den vénlige Yngling; knúst <sup>54)</sup> ligger han únder sönderbrudte <sup>55)</sup> Bjælker! <sup>56)</sup>

Imédens den skyldfri <sup>57)</sup> Jómfrus héle Hjærte údgód sig <sup>58)</sup> i saadanne Kláger, löd <sup>59)</sup> pludselig Ludvigs vélbe-

<sup>32)</sup> booty. <sup>33)</sup> go, (fall.) <sup>34)</sup> few. In order to distinguish this word from the verb *at faa*, to get, some authors write in the latter case *faae*, to make it analogous with the other verbs in -e, but this is in direct opposition to etymology, the pronoun being a dissyllable in the old tongues, Anglosaxon *feawa*, Icel. *fáir*, Lat. *pauci*, the verb on the contrary a monosyllable, Anglos. *fón*, Icel. *fá*, Swed. *fd*. <sup>35)</sup> hurled down, thrown down. <sup>36)</sup> all at once, suddenly. <sup>37)</sup> calm. <sup>38)</sup> unspeakable. <sup>39)</sup> horror. <sup>40)</sup> understood, thought. <sup>41)</sup> with (the other things). <sup>42)</sup> lamenting. <sup>43)</sup> strayed. <sup>44)</sup> pain, grief. <sup>45)</sup> were but only! <sup>46)</sup> lamenting. <sup>47)</sup> for, also written *thi*, but improperly, it seems, the old *th* being in all cases changed to *t* or *d* in the modern Danish, even in this same word in the composition *fordi*, because, not *fordhi*. <sup>48)</sup> survive, live after. <sup>49)</sup> imagined, also written *ahnet*, according to the Germ. orthography. <sup>50)</sup> belonged to, was devoted to. <sup>51)</sup> look. <sup>52)</sup> I had him dear, i. e. he was dear to me. <sup>53)</sup> by merely seeing (p. 77). <sup>54)</sup> crushed. <sup>55)</sup> broken to pieces. <sup>56)</sup> beams. <sup>57)</sup> guiltless, harmless. <sup>58)</sup> poured forth itself, streamed forth (the heart i. e. feeling). <sup>59)</sup> sounded, was heard.

kjendte Stømme: <sup>60)</sup> Lise, húlde Lise!" — En Skjælven<sup>61)</sup> löb óver hende; módlös <sup>62)</sup> saae hun sig óm, og see! Lúdvigs Hóved stak muntert úd af Møllehullet, der nú vendte op ad mod <sup>63)</sup> Himlen. Ogsaa i hans Ójne stóde Taarer. "Bedste Lise," sagde han forvirret, <sup>64)</sup> hjærtelig elsker "jeg dig: — hjælp mig kún úd af dén fordømte Klémme; <sup>65)</sup> ti Døren ligger néd mod Jórden; — góde Bárn, "skal vi saaledes erfære <sup>66)</sup> at vi ére bestømte <sup>67)</sup> for hinanden? Bryd kún dette Brædt <sup>68)</sup> hér löst, Vinden hør "alleréde <sup>69)</sup> lösnet Sömmene <sup>70)</sup> en Smúle. <sup>71)</sup> — Gúd, "hvilken Helvedfart! <sup>72)</sup> — men, Lise, hár du mig dá saa "kár? — Nu, Herren skje Tak, <sup>73)</sup> jeg er úde og i dine "Arme!" Hér trykte han <sup>74)</sup> den glödende, af óvervældende <sup>75)</sup> Glædesfölelse sitrende <sup>76)</sup> Pige til sit Bryst. "Guds Stórm selv har bragt mig til dig, — Stórmbrúden er bléven en Jómfrubrúd — kóm, kóm til min Fáder, lad os sige ham det, og hente <sup>77)</sup> hans Tilládelse! <sup>78)</sup>

Arm i Arm, betrågtende <sup>79)</sup> hinånden med sálige <sup>80)</sup> Blikke, vandrede de Elskende til Låndsbyen. <sup>81)</sup> Paa dén Plåds, hvor den ný Mølle havde staaet, fandt de Lúdvigs Húsfæller <sup>82)</sup> samlede med lýdelige <sup>83)</sup> Véklager. Som en

---

<sup>60)</sup> well known voice. <sup>61)</sup> shivering. <sup>62)</sup> downcast. <sup>63)</sup> towards. <sup>64)</sup> perplexed. <sup>65)</sup> strait. <sup>66)</sup> learn. <sup>67)</sup> destined. <sup>68)</sup> board, also written *Bret*. <sup>69)</sup> already, in Danish it must be written with *ll*, being composed of *alle-rede*, Icel. *alla-reðu*, whereas neither *ale* nor *erede* afford any meaning whatever. But *alene*, should be written with one *l*, being compounded of *al-ene*, wholly-one, i. e. al-one, Icel. *aleinn*. <sup>70)</sup> the nails. <sup>71)</sup> a crum, bit. a little. <sup>72)</sup> hell-flight. <sup>73)</sup> literally: to the lord be praise (that). <sup>74)</sup> he pressed: *presser* is also a Danish verb, but used of squeezing violent compression, compulsion &c. <sup>75)</sup> overwhelming. <sup>76)</sup> trembling, sometimes, though erroneously, written *sitrer*, or in the Germ. way *sitrer*, but the Icel. *titra*, has but one *t* in the middle. <sup>77)</sup> fetch, get. <sup>78)</sup> permission. <sup>79)</sup> gazing upon. <sup>80)</sup> blissful. <sup>81)</sup> the village. <sup>82)</sup> house-fellows, inmates. <sup>83)</sup> loud.

Aand viste han sig midt iblandt dem. Den gamle Faders Hénrykkelse<sup>84)</sup> ved at gjénsee ham, óvergik<sup>85)</sup> ál Beskrivelse, og da Sónnen förestillede<sup>86)</sup> ham den undséeelige<sup>87)</sup> Lise, som sin Brúd, saa blév den förste héftige Glæde<sup>88)</sup> en blid Forénings Stifter.<sup>89)</sup> Snárt var den förældrelöse<sup>90)</sup> og fattige Pige ómskabt<sup>91)</sup> til en Madam Möllermesterinde, og hun plejede<sup>92)</sup> siden ofte, i Fölelsen af sin Lykke, at sige: "Eva mistede Páradiset, da hun spiste Frúgten, for mig har Páradisæblet betýdet<sup>93)</sup> Paradis selv."

Dén som iövrigt,<sup>94)</sup> ikke vil tró<sup>95)</sup> denne sandfærdige<sup>96)</sup> Histórie, der rigtig nok, formédelst Vejrmöllen, der süsede igjennem Luften med Mölleren, smáger stærkt<sup>97)</sup> af et Æventyr, han efterlæse<sup>98)</sup> den paa graat<sup>99)</sup> Maku-  
latúr<sup>100)</sup> trykte 1) Haude- og Spenerske Tidende 2) Nr. 57 for 13de Maj 1823, under blandede Bekjéndtgjörøelser, 3) hvor han vil óvertyde sig 4) óm, at Historien om denne Vindmölle 5) ikke er Vind.

---

<sup>84)</sup> rapture. <sup>85)</sup> passed. <sup>86)</sup> introduced, presented. <sup>87)</sup> bashful. <sup>88)</sup> excessive joy. <sup>89)</sup> founder. <sup>90)</sup> orphan. <sup>91)</sup> transformed. <sup>92)</sup> used. <sup>93)</sup> signified. <sup>94)</sup> as for the rest. <sup>95)</sup> believe. (p. 41). <sup>96)</sup> true. <sup>97)</sup> much. <sup>98)</sup> consult. <sup>99)</sup> grey. <sup>100)</sup> waste-paper. 1) printed. 2) Gazette. 3) miscellaneous advertisements. 4) convince himself. 5) a Germanism for *Vejrmölle*, preserved here. to make a quibble with the following word *Vind*.

---

*Fédor og Evelina.*

en Fortælling, <sup>1)</sup> (af F. C. Hillerups *Italica*, 1. B. S. 85).

*Förste Capitel.*

Mig öpgaar nú min Mörgeröde, <sup>2)</sup>  
 jeg Sölen sküer <sup>3)</sup> i sin Glands; <sup>4)</sup>  
 hvor tusind sväge Hjærter blöde,  
 jeg vundet här min Sjöerskrands. <sup>5)</sup>

Jeg glemmer <sup>6)</sup> éder, svundne <sup>7)</sup> Dage!  
 I skal ej någe <sup>8)</sup> meer mit Bryst.  
 I kan ej komme meer tilbäge;  
 Natürens Skönhed <sup>9)</sup> er min Tröst.

Omtrent tre danske Mile fra Röm hæver sig <sup>10)</sup> Albánerbjergenes isolerede Gruppe. De ere ligesaa mærkværdige <sup>11)</sup> for Besküeren <sup>12)</sup> med Hénsyn til den hénrivende <sup>13)</sup> Natürskönhed <sup>14)</sup>, der prýder <sup>15)</sup> dem, som til de ærværdige <sup>16)</sup> Minder <sup>17)</sup> fra den klassiske Oldtid, <sup>18)</sup> der overålt frémbyde sig for Vándrerens Blik. Hvó har vel <sup>19)</sup> nógen-sinde <sup>20)</sup> tilbragt <sup>21)</sup> skönne Öjeblikke <sup>22)</sup> i de vènlige Smaastæder <sup>23)</sup> Fraskáti, Marino, Kastel Gandolfo, Albáno, Nèmi, og mindes ikke <sup>24)</sup> med vémodblandet <sup>25)</sup> Glæde sit behágelige <sup>26)</sup> Ophold <sup>27)</sup> i Sködet <sup>28)</sup> af en fortryllende <sup>29)</sup> Natúr? Hvo vandrede vel <sup>30)</sup> ved Albánersöens <sup>31)</sup> og

---

<sup>1)</sup> tale, novel. <sup>2)</sup> aurora, dawn. <sup>3)</sup> behold ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>4)</sup> splendor. <sup>5)</sup> trophy, wreath of victory. <sup>6)</sup> forget ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>7)</sup> gone, past (p. 48). <sup>8)</sup> not gnaw, torment, trouble. <sup>9)</sup> beauty. <sup>10)</sup> rises to the view. <sup>11)</sup> remarkable. <sup>12)</sup> spectator. <sup>13)</sup> ravishing. <sup>14)</sup> beauty of nature, beautiful nature. <sup>15)</sup> adorns ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>16)</sup> venerable. <sup>17)</sup> remembrances, monuments. <sup>18)</sup> antiquity. <sup>19)</sup> *vel* of this particle see p. 101 note 1; here it seems to answer to the Engl 'who shall have.' <sup>20)</sup> ever. <sup>21)</sup> spent. <sup>22)</sup> moments. <sup>23)</sup> small towns. <sup>24)</sup> does not call to mind. <sup>25)</sup> mixed with sadness. <sup>26)</sup> agreeable. <sup>27)</sup> sojourn, stay. <sup>28)</sup> bosom. <sup>29)</sup> charming. <sup>30)</sup> shall have wandered, cf. note 19. <sup>31)</sup> of the lake of Albano.

Némisöens romantiske Brædder,<sup>33)</sup> og ønsker ikke ofte med et Længselssuk,<sup>33)</sup> at gjense disse uforglemmelige<sup>34)</sup> Egne?

I længst<sup>35)</sup> hensvundne Tider, förend Histórien endnu lader sin Röst<sup>36)</sup> höre om Menneskenes Færd<sup>37)</sup> i disse Bjerger, har en frygtelig<sup>38)</sup> Vulkán raset<sup>39)</sup> hér, og efterladt gigantiske Spór<sup>40)</sup> af sin Tilværelse<sup>41)</sup> ved<sup>42)</sup> tre stóre, i den fjærneste Oldtid údbrændte,<sup>43)</sup> Krátère, som nu ere forvandlede til en yppig<sup>44)</sup> blomstrende Dál, og tó måleriske,<sup>45)</sup> Indsöer,<sup>46)</sup> som de med höje tilbágetrædende<sup>47)</sup> Skraaninger,<sup>48)</sup> der ómgive<sup>49)</sup> dem, danne<sup>50)</sup> tre trágtformige<sup>51)</sup> Fordýbninger.<sup>52)</sup> Det störste af disse fördums<sup>53)</sup> Krátère er Albániersöen, der förer Návñ efter Stáden Albáno, og här en æggeformig Skikkelse.<sup>54)</sup> Dybt néde, umiddelbart ved<sup>55)</sup> dens Brædder, slynger sig<sup>56)</sup> en Fódsti gennem blomstrende Frúgháver og smaa Viinplantninger,<sup>57)</sup> der ómgive det klære Vandspejl<sup>58)</sup> lig en yndig Krands,<sup>59)</sup> fra hvilken Jórdsmønnet<sup>60)</sup> hæver sig flére<sup>61)</sup> Hundrede Fód<sup>62)</sup> i en temmelig stejl<sup>63)</sup> Skraaning, som bestandig<sup>64)</sup> træder meer tilbáge, jo meer den fjærner sig fra Dýbet, og éndelig áfbrydes af den övre<sup>65)</sup> Bræd, som med den yppigste Vegetation danner Randen<sup>66)</sup>

---

<sup>33)</sup> shore, some authors write *Bredder*, but *Brædder* seems to be preferable: 1) on account of the pronunciation: 2) in order to distinguish it from *Bredde*, breadth, latitude, which is pronounced with, *é*; 3) to show its derivation from Icel. *barð*, and its analogy to Swed. *brädd*. <sup>34)</sup> sigh of longing. <sup>35)</sup> not to be forgotten. <sup>36)</sup> long ago. <sup>37)</sup> her voice. <sup>38)</sup> doing. <sup>39)</sup> terrible. <sup>40)</sup> ragged. <sup>41)</sup> traces. <sup>42)</sup> existence. <sup>43)</sup> by or in, i. e. left as traces of its existence three great &c. <sup>44)</sup> burnt out. <sup>45)</sup> rich. <sup>46)</sup> picturesque. <sup>47)</sup> lakes. <sup>48)</sup> retreating. <sup>49)</sup> declivities. <sup>50)</sup> surround, encompass. <sup>51)</sup> form ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>52)</sup> funnel-like. <sup>53)</sup> cavities. <sup>54)</sup> old. <sup>55)</sup> form, appearance. <sup>56)</sup> close to. <sup>57)</sup> winds itself i. e. runs a winding (foot-path). <sup>58)</sup> vine-plantations. <sup>59)</sup> expanse of water. <sup>60)</sup> graceful wreath. <sup>61)</sup> the ground. <sup>62)</sup> more (than one) i. e. several. <sup>63)</sup> feet (p. 24). <sup>64)</sup> steep. <sup>65)</sup> always, continually. <sup>66)</sup> upper. <sup>67)</sup> the brim.



af den Tragt eller det Bæger,<sup>67)</sup> hvis Bûnd<sup>68)</sup> Söens Overflade<sup>69)</sup> er. En for det meste<sup>70)</sup> smæl<sup>71)</sup> Vej løber langs om denne høje Kyst<sup>72)</sup> og frembyder paa en skøn Dag højst måleriske Udsigter<sup>73)</sup> óver den melankolske dýbe Sö og dens idylliske Omgivelser,<sup>74)</sup> hvor disse Bjerges højeste Spidse,<sup>75)</sup> *Monte cava* kaldet, næsten allevegne<sup>76)</sup> afgiver<sup>77)</sup> en behågelig Hvilepunkt<sup>78)</sup> for Öjet. Fra Ståden Albano selv kan man ikke öjne<sup>79)</sup> Söen, men maa, for at see den, gaa et Par Hundrede Skridt udaf Byen, og bestandig öpad. Da ståndser<sup>80)</sup> man tilsidst<sup>81)</sup> paa en høj Brink, hvorfra man sküer den dunkle<sup>82)</sup> mystiske Våndflade<sup>83)</sup> dybt under sine Födder. Til vênstre förer<sup>84)</sup> en Allee af gamle ærværdige Ege<sup>85)</sup> og andre Træer til den lille By Kastel Gandolfo, som med sin Kuppel og sit påvelige<sup>86)</sup> Sömmerslot<sup>87)</sup> hæver sig paa de ujævne<sup>88)</sup> Højder. I Båggrunden taarne sig<sup>89)</sup> de fjærne Appenniner, blandt hvilke det taggede<sup>90)</sup> Sorakte nú tildags<sup>91)</sup> *San Oreste*, tróner<sup>92)</sup> i stille<sup>93)</sup> Majestæt. Til højre<sup>94)</sup> seer man Klósteret Pallazuola, som bebóes<sup>95)</sup> af smúdsige<sup>96)</sup> Munke, der prale<sup>97)</sup> af at en portugisisk Prinds engang har lévet og dóet som en ráget<sup>98)</sup> Bróder<sup>99)</sup> i deres Midte.<sup>100)</sup> Denne fromme Fyrste<sup>1)</sup> hedder endnú bestandig i dette Klóster *il Portoghesino*, og hans

67) cup. 68) bottom. 69) surface. 70) mostly. 71) narrow. 72) coast. 73) views. 74) environs. 75) point, top, peak. 76) every where. 77) affords. 78) point of rest. 79) see, reach with the eye. 80) stops. 81) at last. 82) dark. 83) sheet of water. 84) on the left hand leads. 85) oaks. 86) papal. 87) summer-seat. 88) uneven, unequal. 89) tower. 90) jaggy. [Rask spells *det taggede*; the common spelling is *takkede* ED.] 91) now-a-days. 92) sits on the throne, stands. 93) calm, unshaken. 94) on the right hand. 95) is inhabited (p. 41). 96) filthy. 97) boast. 98) shaved. 99) brother, friar. 100) In their middle, among them. 1) pious prince, *Fyrste* is generally said of a reigning prince, *Prins* of a young person of blood royal. It should be written without a *d*, as also: *Provins*, *Krans*, *Dans*, *Glans*, there being no *d* in these roots, but the orthography with *nds* (from the German *ns*) is still more common.

Billede, som hænger paa en Væg i disse mørke Haller, er Gjenstand <sup>2)</sup> for Munkenes Beundring. <sup>3)</sup> Mere mærkværdigt for den fördomsfri <sup>4)</sup> Rejsende er en rømsk <sup>5)</sup> Kónsuls Gråvmæle, <sup>6)</sup> som findes i Kløsterhaven <sup>7)</sup>. Någet fra <sup>8)</sup> dette Mysticismens og Sværmeriets <sup>9)</sup> eensomme Sæde hæver sig paa Bjergets Skraaning den usle <sup>10)</sup> men højst romántiske Låndsby, *Rocca di Papa*, der, paa den vildeste og selsomste <sup>11)</sup> Maade, ligesom <sup>12)</sup> hænger néd ad Klipperne, <sup>13)</sup> og i det fjærne <sup>14)</sup> ikke er ulig en Svålerede. <sup>15)</sup> Naar Vandreren er kommen igjennem <sup>16)</sup> denne lille Bý, træder han úd <sup>17)</sup> paa en anséelig Slétte, <sup>18)</sup> der förer Navn af *Campo di Anibale*, énten fordi Hånnibal dér har haft sin Lèjr mod Rømerne, eller, som andre vel <sup>20)</sup> med mere Grund <sup>21)</sup> ántage, <sup>22)</sup> fordi Rømerhæren <sup>23)</sup> dér havde sin Lèjr, for at iágttage den kartaginénsiske Féltherre. <sup>24)</sup> Naar man nú har vandret et Stykke frém paa denne Slette, staar man ved Fóden af den Bjérgtop, <sup>25)</sup> som förer Navn af *Monte cavo*, og hæver sig omtrént trétúsinde Fód óver Middelhavets <sup>26)</sup> Overflade. Denne Spidse, som har Skikkelse af en áfkortet <sup>27)</sup> Kegle, <sup>28)</sup> bestiger <sup>29)</sup> man med Mågelighed <sup>30)</sup> og Sikkerhed ved Hjælp af en antik brólagt <sup>31)</sup> Vej, der i Oldtiden förte op til et Júpiter's-Tempel, som dannede Bjergets højeste Punkt. Til dette ærværdige Stéd, som nu har maattet <sup>32)</sup> vige <sup>33)</sup> for et Múnkekloster, dróge <sup>34)</sup> i de hédenfarne <sup>35)</sup>

---

<sup>2)</sup> object. <sup>3)</sup> admiration. <sup>4)</sup> unprejudiced. <sup>5)</sup> Roman, pronounce *rommersk*. <sup>6)</sup> tomb. <sup>7)</sup> convent garden. <sup>8)</sup> A short way from. <sup>9)</sup> fanaticism. <sup>10)</sup> miserable. <sup>11)</sup> most strange. <sup>12)</sup> as it were. <sup>13)</sup> from the rocks. <sup>14)</sup> at a distáncce. <sup>15)</sup> swallow's nest. <sup>16)</sup> is come through, has passed through. <sup>17)</sup> comes out. <sup>18)</sup> considerable plain. <sup>19)</sup> camp. <sup>20)</sup> may here be rendered *perhaps*. <sup>21)</sup> reason. <sup>22)</sup> believe. <sup>23)</sup> the Roman army. <sup>24)</sup> General. <sup>25)</sup> summit. <sup>26)</sup> of the Mediterranean. <sup>27)</sup> shortened. <sup>28)</sup> cone. <sup>29)</sup> ascends. <sup>30)</sup> ease. <sup>31)</sup> paved. <sup>32)</sup> has been obliged to. <sup>33)</sup> give way. <sup>34)</sup> drew i. e. went, cf. p. 96 note 27, it p. 44. <sup>35)</sup> deceased, gone past.

klæssiske Dage de sejrende<sup>36</sup> Féltherrer, för at bringe Gúdernes Fader Tåk og Prís, for den forúndte<sup>37</sup> Lykke i tiléndebragte Krige.<sup>38</sup>) Naar nu omsider<sup>39</sup> den Rejsende staar paa denne ophøjede<sup>40</sup> Púunkt, da lønnes<sup>41</sup>) den Møje, som Opgangen<sup>42</sup>) kan have foraarságet ham, fúldkommen ved en vid og fortryllende Udsigt over de històriske Egne, som en Gang i hénsvundne Dage spillede<sup>43</sup>) en saa forbávsende<sup>44</sup>) Rølle<sup>45</sup>) paa Jórdkloden.<sup>46</sup>) Mòd Vèsten svæver Blikket úd<sup>47</sup>) óver den úhyre Slette, i hvis Midte Vèrdens<sup>48</sup>) gámle Hóvedstad<sup>49</sup>) tróner med sin Péterskuppel, og úd over denne Slette táber Òjet sig i Middelhavets umaalelige<sup>50</sup>) Sólvlade, som i den ýderste<sup>51</sup>) Horisónt sýnes at smelte sammen<sup>52</sup>) med Luften. Mod Nórd og Òst begrændses<sup>53</sup>) Sýnskredsen af Apeninernes høje Bjèrgmasser,<sup>54</sup>) blandt hvilke<sup>55</sup>) Sorákte hæver<sup>56</sup>) sit trúende Hóved; mod Sýden ópdager<sup>57</sup>) man Òer og Fòrbjerge<sup>58</sup>) i Kòngeriget<sup>59</sup>) Neápel. Vil man nu betrágte<sup>60</sup>) de nærmere Gjénstande, da óverskuer<sup>61</sup>) man Albánerbjergenes héle Masse med alle dérés yndige Skove<sup>62</sup>) og mange Smaastæder, og dybt néden under sig<sup>63</sup>) seer man de ómtalte<sup>64</sup>) Indsøer, der danne en Figúr ej úlig et Par Briller,<sup>65</sup>) som dog rigtig nok blive<sup>66</sup>) lidt urégelrette, da Albánersøen er méget stòrre end Nemisøen.

Herúd til dette Páradis drage utállige Mennesker om Sommeren,<sup>67</sup> for at ómbytte<sup>68</sup>) Hóvedstadens kvælende<sup>69</sup>)

---

<sup>36</sup>) victorious. <sup>37</sup>) allotted. <sup>38</sup>) wars ( $\frac{2}{2}$ ). <sup>39</sup>) finally. <sup>40</sup>) elevated. <sup>41</sup>) will be repaid. <sup>42</sup>) ascent. <sup>43</sup>) played. <sup>44</sup>) astonishing. <sup>45</sup>) part. <sup>46</sup>) the globe. <sup>47</sup>) literally: the look hovers out, i. e. the view extends. <sup>48</sup>) of the world. <sup>49</sup>) capital. <sup>50</sup>) immeasurable. <sup>51</sup>) farthest. <sup>52</sup>) mingle with. <sup>53</sup>) is bordered. <sup>54</sup>) mountain-masses. <sup>55</sup>) amongst which. <sup>56</sup>) raises ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>57</sup>) discovers, espies. <sup>58</sup>) promontories. <sup>59</sup>) the kingdom. <sup>60</sup>) view. <sup>61</sup>) overlooks. <sup>62</sup>) woods. <sup>63</sup>) far beneath oneself. <sup>64</sup>) mentioned. <sup>65</sup>) spectacles. <sup>66</sup>) are. <sup>67</sup>) see p. 78. <sup>68</sup>) exchange. <sup>69</sup>) suffocating.

Atmosfære med Bjergenes rene, forfriskende<sup>70)</sup> Luft. Især<sup>71)</sup> besøges disse Egne flittigen af de mange Rejsende, som gæste<sup>72)</sup> det skønne Italien, og fræmfor ålt<sup>74)</sup> af de fremmede Kunstnere<sup>75)</sup> der opholde sig i Røm for sine Stúdiers Skyld.<sup>76)</sup> Staden Albáno, hvis Navn man údleder<sup>77)</sup> af det gamle *Alba longa*, som har ligget<sup>78)</sup> der i Nærheden, er hverken smuk eller stør. Dens Folke-mængde<sup>79)</sup> overstiger<sup>80)</sup> næppe halvtrédie Túsinde Indvaanere, og blandt dens Bygninger kunne vistnok<sup>81)</sup> kun faa gjöre Kráv paa<sup>82)</sup> arkitektónisk Skönhed. Nogle Ruiner fra Oldtiden, blandt hvilke det saakaldte Horátiernes og Curiátiernes Gráv-mæle,<sup>83)</sup> som vel næppe nógensinde har været et Gráv-mæle, ere det éneeste, som hér kan vække Opmærksomhed hos Kunstens og Históriens Venner. Men er Albáno selv ikke i Stand<sup>84)</sup> til at fængsle<sup>85)</sup> den Rejsende, da formaar<sup>86)</sup> vel det smilende Låndskab hvori den ligger, at fylde Vandrersens Bryst med Glæde og Beúndring over Hespèriens hêrlige<sup>87)</sup> Natúrskönhed.

I denne lille Stád opholdt sig<sup>88)</sup> en Gang i de várme Sómmermaaneder en ung Rússer,<sup>89)</sup> som vi ville kalde Fédor. Som Søn af en fórmuende<sup>90)</sup> Købmand<sup>90)</sup> i St. Pétersborg, vár han af sin Fáder bléven nødsaget<sup>92)</sup> til at lægge sig efter<sup>93)</sup> Handelen,<sup>94)</sup> men Merkúr var alt for tør<sup>95)</sup> en Guddom for den fantasírige<sup>96)</sup> Yngling, der med sin hêle Sjæl tilbad<sup>97)</sup> Skönhedens évige Poesi. En Rejse, som den unge Hándelsmand en Gang i Forrétnin-

---

<sup>70)</sup> pure, refreshing. <sup>71)</sup> especially. <sup>72)</sup> are visited ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>73)</sup> go to see. <sup>74)</sup> most of all. <sup>75)</sup> artists (p. 62). <sup>76)</sup> on account of, because of. <sup>77)</sup> derives. <sup>78)</sup> been situated. <sup>79)</sup> amount, number of inhabitants. <sup>80)</sup> exceeds. <sup>81)</sup> certainly. <sup>82)</sup> make pretensions to. <sup>83)</sup> sepulchral monument. <sup>84)</sup> incapable, not able. <sup>85)</sup> captivate. <sup>86)</sup> can, has power. <sup>87)</sup> excellent, eminent. <sup>88)</sup> lived. <sup>89)</sup> Russian <sup>90)</sup> wealthy. <sup>91)</sup> merchant. <sup>92)</sup> obliged <sup>93)</sup> to apply himself to. <sup>94)</sup> commerce. <sup>95)</sup> dry. <sup>96)</sup> of a lively imagination. <sup>97)</sup> adored.

ger<sup>98)</sup> maatte gjöre til Fränkfurt am Mayn, òpflammede<sup>99)</sup> hans Kærlighed til Låndskabsmaleriet, <sup>100)</sup> hvilket han alt <sup>1)</sup> længe havde yndet og dyrket <sup>2)</sup> i sine Fritimer, <sup>3)</sup> til den højeste Gråd, og nedsænkte <sup>4)</sup> ham i Fortvivelse <sup>5)</sup> for nogen Tid. En ulykkelig Lidenskab <sup>6)</sup> for et Früentimmer, der var hans Hjærte uværdig, og spillede Gjek med <sup>7)</sup> hans Rólighed <sup>8)</sup> forøgede <sup>9)</sup> hans dýbe <sup>10)</sup> Misfornøjelse<sup>11)</sup> med sin Stilling,<sup>12)</sup> og gjorde ham Opholdet<sup>13)</sup> i Fædrelandet forhådt.<sup>14)</sup> Omsider indsaæ<sup>15)</sup> Fåderen, at hans Søn ikke var bestemt<sup>16)</sup> af Natúren, til at blive en stór Købmand, og indvilligede<sup>17)</sup> i, at Fédor ganske òpofrede<sup>18)</sup> sig til Kúnsten. Den gamle, som aldrig gjorde noget halvt, tilstod<sup>19)</sup> end mere<sup>20)</sup> den henrykte Yngling en betydelig Understøttelse, hvorved denne saa sig i Stånd til at úddanne<sup>21)</sup> sig i Kúnsten i fremmede Lande. Efterat have òpholdt sig et Par Aar i Tyskland og Svejts,<sup>22)</sup> dróg den unge Låndskabsmaler óver Alperne néd i Kúnsternes forjættede Land,<sup>23)</sup> det af Natúren saa begunstigede<sup>24)</sup> og ved Histórien saa ærværdige Hespérien. Med Hénrykkelse hilste<sup>25)</sup> Fédor Ráfaels og Michelángelos Fædreland, da han fra Bjergene förste Gang ójnede Lombardiets yppige Sletter. Det herlige Miláno, Bologna med sine Arkáder og Medicáernes Stád, som med Rette<sup>26)</sup> förer Navn af den skónne, tildroge sig<sup>27)</sup> i høj Gråd hans Opmærksomhed og Beúndring; men alting maatte vige for det Indtryk, som den évige Tiberstad gjorde

---

<sup>98)</sup> in (commercial) business. <sup>99)</sup> inflamed. <sup>100)</sup> landscape-painting. <sup>1)</sup> already. <sup>2)</sup> favored and cultivated. <sup>3)</sup> plur. leisure, also called *Fritid*. <sup>4)</sup> plunged. <sup>5)</sup> despair. <sup>6)</sup> passion. <sup>7)</sup> sported, mocked. <sup>8)</sup> peace of mind. <sup>9)</sup> increased. <sup>10)</sup> deep, i. e. high, great. <sup>11)</sup> discontent, disgust. <sup>12)</sup> situation. <sup>13)</sup> his stay. <sup>14)</sup> odious. <sup>15)</sup> perceived, saw. <sup>16)</sup> destined. <sup>17)</sup> consented. <sup>18)</sup> devoted. <sup>19)</sup> granted. <sup>20)</sup> moreover. <sup>21)</sup> perfect. <sup>22)</sup> Germany and Switzerland. <sup>23)</sup> the promised (i. e. holy) land, Canaan. <sup>24)</sup> favored. <sup>25)</sup> saluted. <sup>26)</sup> justly. <sup>27)</sup> attracted.

paa hans dybt bevægede<sup>28)</sup> Sjæl. Her svælgede<sup>29)</sup> han i Nýdelsen<sup>30)</sup> af Kunstens og Natúrens Skatte,<sup>31)</sup> og drömte sig ved Beskúelsen af Oldtidens Mindesmærker tilbåge i de Tider, da<sup>32)</sup> Róm var dét, som det endnu<sup>33)</sup> kunde og burde være. Her forglømte den unge Måler<sup>34)</sup> en uheldig<sup>34)</sup> Kærligheds bittre Kvæler,<sup>35)</sup> og lévede éne for sin skønne Kunst. For sit Fødeland havde han paa Grund af det ómtalte forstyrrede Fórhold en vis Rædsel,<sup>36)</sup> og ónskede at kunne forblive<sup>37)</sup> saa længe som muligt i det Land, hvor Skönheden og Històrien med Tryllekraft<sup>38)</sup> fængsle det fólende Gemyt.<sup>39)</sup> Han kunde saa meget mere frit<sup>40)</sup> nære dette Ónske, som han havde tvénde<sup>41)</sup> Brødre hjemme, der vare Faderen behjælpelige<sup>42)</sup> i hans Håndelsforretninger, og tillige ánsète<sup>43)</sup> for at være kyn-dige<sup>44)</sup> i deres Fåg.<sup>45)</sup>

Det var en Lóverdag Mórgen og netop<sup>46)</sup> den første Septémber, da den unge Rússer meget tidlig<sup>47)</sup> rejste sig<sup>48)</sup> fra sit Leje, i den Hénsigt at gaa úd, for at óp-tage<sup>49)</sup> et Par Skidser<sup>50)</sup> af Albánersóens meest román-tiske Partier. Den klære Himmel óplivede hans Sjæl, og snárt stód han færdig<sup>51)</sup> til sin Vandring. I en Óver-kjole<sup>52)</sup> af grónt Bómuldstøj,<sup>53)</sup> med Vest og Pantalónger af graat Lærred,<sup>54)</sup> Skó af úfarvet<sup>55)</sup> Læder, og paa Hóvedet en lýsegúl<sup>56)</sup> Straahat, som var ómvunden med et rósenródt Baand,<sup>57)</sup> traadte Kunstneren ud af sit Væ-relse. Om Skulderen hang en Taske,<sup>58)</sup> hvori hans

---

28) moved, touched. 29) revelled, rioted. 30) enjoyment. 31) treasures ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ) p. 20. 32) when. 33) painter. 34) unlucky. 35) afflictions ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ) 36) terror. 37) and wished to be able to stay, or that he might stay, i. e. to stay. 38) magic power, charm. 39) mind. 40) freely. 41) two. 42) *vare behjælpelige*, aided, assisted. 43) (*vare*) *ansete*, were thought, passed for. 44) skilled. 45) pro-fession. 46) just. 47) early. 48) rose ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). 49) make. 50) sket-ches. 51) ready. 52) great-coat. 53) cotton-stuff. 54) linen. 55) uncoloured. 56) light-yellow. 57) rose-coloured riband. 58) bag, scrip.

Skidsebåger og Tegneredskaber<sup>59)</sup> laa. I Lommen<sup>60)</sup> havde han en lille Kûrveflaske<sup>61)</sup> med Viin og noget Brød; i Haanden bår han en sammenrullet<sup>62)</sup> Solskjerm<sup>63)</sup> paa en Stang,<sup>64)</sup> der i Enden var forsynet med en Jærnspræge<sup>65)</sup> og hertil var endnu fæstbunden<sup>65)</sup> en lille Feltstol<sup>66)</sup>. af det Slægs, som Kunstnerne betjène sig af<sup>67)</sup> paa deres Vandringer. Da han havde drukket sin Kaffe i Pøsthuset, befålede han sin Støvlepudser<sup>68)</sup> Raimondo, at komme med et Æsel til Kastel Gandolfo Klokken ni, hvor Kunstneren selv vilde indtræffe til samme Tid. Derpaa gik Fédor igjennem Gaderne, hvor han af Almuen<sup>69)</sup> blévt betragtet<sup>70)</sup> med den gódmódige<sup>71)</sup> Nysgjerrighed,<sup>72)</sup> der er Sydboerne<sup>73)</sup> saa ejendommelig.<sup>74)</sup> Saa méget mére var dette Tilfældet<sup>75)</sup> hér, som den unge Månds Udvortes<sup>76)</sup> i høj Grád var i Stånd til at gjöre et behágeligt Indtryk paa enhver, som første Gang saae ham. Fédors høje ranke<sup>77)</sup> Væxt,<sup>78)</sup> hans livfulde Bevægelser og ráske Gang faldt paa en behagelig Maade i Øjet.<sup>79)</sup> Hans Ansigtssfarve<sup>80)</sup> var saa mørk og kráftig,<sup>81)</sup> at man gjérne<sup>82)</sup> kunde have ántaget ham for en Spánjer eller Neapolitáner. De tykke Lokker vare glindsende<sup>83)</sup> sorte, og hans Öjne vare, som Ariosto udtrykker sig, to lysende Sole; ti sjældnen have to sorte Öjne funklet<sup>84)</sup> med et saa betýdningsfuld<sup>85)</sup> Liv og flammende Fölelse som hans. Naar han betragtede nogen i Alvaar<sup>86)</sup> eller Vrède, da syntes hans Blikke, lig usynlige<sup>87)</sup> Dölke,<sup>88)</sup> at ville gjennembore<sup>89)</sup> Menneskets Inderste,<sup>90)</sup> men naar hans Sjæl var stémt<sup>91)</sup> til Mildhed

<sup>59)</sup> drawing instruments. <sup>60)</sup> the pocket. <sup>61)</sup> basket-flask. <sup>62)</sup> rolled up. <sup>63)</sup> umbrella. <sup>64)</sup> staff. <sup>65)</sup> tied. <sup>66)</sup> field-chair. <sup>67)</sup> make use of. <sup>68)</sup> boot-cleanser. <sup>69)</sup> the vulgar, common people. <sup>70)</sup> gazed on. <sup>71)</sup> good natured. <sup>72)</sup> curiosity. <sup>73)</sup> the inhabitants of the southern countries of Europe. <sup>74)</sup> peculiar. <sup>75)</sup> the case. <sup>76)</sup> exterior. <sup>77)</sup> slender, by a germanism they say also *slank*. <sup>78)</sup> growth. <sup>79)</sup> *faldt i Øjet*, struck the eye. <sup>80)</sup> complexion. <sup>81)</sup> energetic. <sup>82)</sup> easily. <sup>83)</sup> glittering. <sup>84)</sup> sparkled. <sup>85)</sup> significant. <sup>86)</sup> earnest. <sup>87)</sup> invisible. <sup>88)</sup> daggers ( $\frac{3}{4}$ ). <sup>89)</sup> pierce through. <sup>90)</sup> the inmost, the very soul. <sup>91)</sup> disposed.

og Munterhed, da maatte den blide brændende Lue, som udstrømmede af hans Öje, fast<sup>92)</sup> være i Stånd til at kunne smelte det haardeste Hjærte, at trylle<sup>93)</sup> en Fjende til en Ven, og opvække Kærlighedens almægtige Flamme i det koldeste Pige-hjærte.<sup>94)</sup> Hans Næse var fin og veldannet, Munden liden og udtryksfuld,<sup>95)</sup> og de skönt formede Tænder af en blændende<sup>96)</sup> Hvidhed, som end mere forøgedes ved den dunkle Farve, der var udbredt<sup>97)</sup> over Ansigtets<sup>98)</sup> skønne Oval. I Örerne bår han smaa gyldne Ringe, som stak smukt af<sup>99)</sup> mod det ravn sorte<sup>100)</sup> Haar og dunkle Skæg.<sup>1)</sup> Paa den højre Haands Mellemfinger<sup>2)</sup> sad en Ring, hvori der paa mørkeblaa Grund funkede Ordet *Amitié* i straalende<sup>3)</sup> Diamanter. Ved Afskjed<sup>4)</sup> fra Hjemmet gáv hans Fæder ham den med disse Ord: "Min Søn! Kærlighed forbitrede din Ungdom: maatte<sup>5)</sup> et trofast<sup>6)</sup> Venskab, ægte som disse Diamanter, for-søde<sup>7)</sup> dig din Månddom!" Den Gang trøede Fédor, at en Kunstner var øphøjet over Amors Paafund,<sup>8)</sup> og forlód sit Fædreneland med det begejstrede Førsæt,<sup>9)</sup> at leve gánske aléne for sin Kunst med Opofrelse af<sup>10)</sup> jórdiske Tilbøjeligheder.<sup>11)</sup> Hvorvidt det stod i hans Mågt, at udføre dette Førsæt eller ej, vil det Følgende<sup>12)</sup> vise.<sup>13)</sup>

Da den unge Måler var kommen údaf Stáden Albá-nos snævre Gáder, og havde naaet Söens höje Kyst, drejede han om<sup>14)</sup> til venstre gennem den herlige

<sup>92)</sup> almost. <sup>93)</sup> charm ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>94)</sup> maiden's heart. <sup>95)</sup> expressive. <sup>96)</sup> dazzling. <sup>97)</sup> spread. <sup>98)</sup> of the (his) face. <sup>99)</sup> set off well, made a fine contrast to. <sup>100)</sup> raven black. <sup>1)</sup> beard. <sup>2)</sup> middle-finger. <sup>3)</sup> radiant, sparkling. <sup>4)</sup> at the (his) leave, i. e. when he took leave. <sup>5)</sup> may, or would to God that. <sup>6)</sup> faithful. <sup>7)</sup> sweeten. <sup>8)</sup> devices, tricks. <sup>9)</sup> enthusiastic purpose. <sup>10)</sup> with sacrifice of, i. e. sacrificing. <sup>11)</sup> earthly propensities. <sup>12)</sup> the following, i. e. the succeeding pages. <sup>13)</sup> show ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>14)</sup> he turned about.



Allé,<sup>15)</sup> som förer til Kastel Gandolfo. Omtrent midt imellem disse to Smaastæder ligger der ved Vejen et Munkeløster, udenfor hvilket der findes en halvrund<sup>16)</sup> auben Plads, omgivet af Træer med mange fritstaaende Akere, hvor de Tróende forrétte<sup>17)</sup> deres Andagt.<sup>18)</sup> Nærmest ved Söen, næsten lige<sup>19)</sup> ved den nédgaaende<sup>20)</sup> Skraaning, staaer der et ældgammelt<sup>21)</sup> stórt Træ, som med sine tætte vitudstrakte skyggefulde Gréne, yder Vandreren et kóligt Hvilested. Paa en Bænk<sup>22)</sup> under dette Træ satte Fédor sig, og tabte sig i Beskúelsen af det herlige Maleri, som laa údbredt for hans Öje. Den klære Mórghensol óplyste Söens skovrige<sup>23)</sup> Brædder, og *Monte Cavos* Top spejlede sig<sup>24)</sup> i den blanke,<sup>25)</sup> sølvblaa Vándflade.

Kunstneren tog en Tegnebog<sup>26)</sup> frem, og begyndte at skidsére,<sup>27)</sup> men under Arbejdet<sup>28)</sup> hénsank han ofte i saa dybe Tanker, at hans Haand blev liggende<sup>29)</sup> uvirk-som<sup>30)</sup> paa Papiret. Han gjennemløb i Tanken flére Begivenheder<sup>31)</sup> i sit Liv, og hans sjélfulde Ansigtstræk<sup>32)</sup> gjengáve,<sup>33)</sup> som et tró Spejl, ált hvad der fóregik<sup>34)</sup> i hans Indre.

„O! tænkte han, i det han med glædesdrukne<sup>35)</sup> Blikke skúede omkring sig, hvor herligt er ikke Itálien? Med Rette skildre<sup>36)</sup> Rejsende og Digtere os dette Land saa skónt, og vistnok bör enhvér, som er saa lykkelig at betráde<sup>37)</sup> dets hellige Jórdbund, takke Fórsynet for en saadan Gáve, hvorefter saa mange Túsinde forgáves<sup>38)</sup> stræbe med brændende<sup>39)</sup> Længsel; <sup>40)</sup> úden<sup>41)</sup> nógen-

---

15) walk. 16) semicircular. 17) perform (†). 18) devotion.  
 19) directly, close. 20) sloping. 21) very old. 22) bench, form.  
 23) woody. 24) was reflected. 25) bright. 26) pocket-book,  
 drawing-book. 27) sketch. 28) during the work. 29) remained lying,  
 lay a long while. 30) inactive, idle. 31) accidents. 32) features.  
 33) reflected. 34) passed. 35) joy-drunken. 36) paint, describe.  
 37) set foot upon. 38) in vain. 39) ardent. 40) longing, desire.  
 41) without.

sinde at òpnaa<sup>42)</sup> deres Òjemed.<sup>43)</sup> Himmelske Fæder! jeg takker dig, fordi du lød det falde i min Lød, at be-  
træde Històriens og Skønhedens Land, og gav mig Hjærte  
til at føle Natúrens évige Herlighed, og Villie til at elske  
det gøde hos Itáliens Indvaanere. — Ak, desværre, alt-  
for ofte blive de grúsomt miskjendte,<sup>44)</sup> især af Persóner,  
som aldrig have været údenfor deres Móders Kókkendör.  
Hvor faa Rejsende gives der dog i Grunden,<sup>45)</sup> som nýde  
det der tilbydes dem? Vel forsynede med politiske og  
religiöse Fórdomme, see de alting fra en falsk Sýnspunkt,  
miskjende Òjeblikkets Herlighed, og forbitre sig enhver  
Glæde ved útidige Sámmenligninger med Hjemmet. Men  
hvor ofte angre de<sup>46)</sup> deres daarlige Adfærd,<sup>47)</sup> naar den  
svundne<sup>48)</sup> Frýd<sup>49)</sup> for évig<sup>50)</sup> er tabt. Jeg veed mig  
selv, tróds<sup>51)</sup> alle mine andre Svágheder, dóg fri for  
denne Fejl. Mit kære Fædreneland; Gud veed, at du er  
mit Hjærte kær, men dérfor<sup>52)</sup> er jeg ikke saa blind for  
andre Landes Förtin,<sup>53)</sup> at jeg éne og aléne skulde søge  
det fortræffelige<sup>54)</sup> i dit Sköd.<sup>55)</sup> Tilgiv<sup>56)</sup> mig, at Albá-  
nersöens yppige, smilende Brædder förekomme<sup>57)</sup> mig  
skönnere end Ilmensöens taagefulde<sup>58)</sup> Kyster. Sælsomme  
Forvildelse<sup>59)</sup> af den skábende<sup>60)</sup> Natúr! Hvorfor<sup>61)</sup> skulde  
jég, i hvis Aarer<sup>62)</sup> Sýdens héde Blód flammer i sin héle  
Lúe,<sup>63)</sup> just födes<sup>64)</sup> ved Névas iskolde Vande under den  
trésindstyvende Bréddegrad?<sup>65)</sup> Herre Gúd! Du kunde jo  
ligesaa gódt have ladet mig see Dagens Lýs ved det viin-  
rige Astrachan eller paa det blomstrende<sup>66)</sup> Krimm. Der  
have vi jo ogsaa Viindruer,<sup>67)</sup> évig glödende Róser og  
duftende<sup>68)</sup> Melóner ligesom hér. Jeg havde da paa een

42) reaching. 43) aim, end. 44) misjudged. 45) in fact ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ).

46) do they repent. 47) foolish behaviour. 48) gone past. 49) joy.

50) eternally. 51) in spite of, notwithstanding. 52) for all that.

53) superiority ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ). 54) the excellent, i. e. excellency. 55) lap,

bosom. 56) forgive! 57) appear. 58) foggy. 59) mistake. 60) crea-

ting. 61) why? 62) veins, also oars ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). 63) flame. 64) be born.

65) degree of latitude. 66) florid. 67) grapes. 68) fragrant.

Gang været baade en Sydbo og en Russer, jeg havde da ikke frusset mellem Isklumper og Snedynger<sup>69)</sup> ved den finske Bugt.<sup>70)</sup> Dog hvortil dette? Landskabsmaleren kan vel elske det pittoréske, det hénrykkende i fremmede Landes Natúrskónheder, og mindes det med vemódig Længsel, naar han ej mere har det for Öje, men Ménne-sket maa finde sig i<sup>71)</sup> Skæbnens Tilskikkelser<sup>72)</sup> med Taalmódighed, og virke<sup>73)</sup> i den Kréds,<sup>74)</sup> hvor Himlen har hénset<sup>75)</sup> ham. Unyttigt<sup>76)</sup> er det at spille Tiden med tomme Kláger;<sup>77)</sup> dérfor vil jeg ikke pláge<sup>78)</sup> mig med Bekymringer<sup>79)</sup> óver de svundne Dáge, ej heller grúble óver<sup>80)</sup> min Frémtds Skábne, men nýde Öjeblik-kets élskelige Lyst med Taknémmedighed.<sup>81)</sup> Ja, dejlige<sup>82)</sup> Itálien, du ér en Bálsom<sup>83)</sup> for mit saarede<sup>84)</sup> Hjærte, du stiller<sup>85)</sup> de Kváler, hvorméd den falske Natálias Tró-löshed<sup>86)</sup> sönderrev<sup>87)</sup> min Sjæl. Smértelige<sup>88)</sup> Minde<sup>89)</sup> om en fordærvelig<sup>90)</sup> Lidenskab, víg for Natúrens tröste-rige<sup>91)</sup> Skónhed. Ha! yndige, falske Slange,<sup>92)</sup> hvorlédes kunde du saa letsindig<sup>93)</sup> forglemme min Kærlighed, og lönne min varme Tróskab med Meené<sup>94)</sup> I lange Aar tilbád jeg dig, lindrede<sup>95)</sup> din Fáders sörgelige Stilling, og forskáfede<sup>96)</sup> dig ved hans Död et vénligt Lý<sup>97)</sup> un-der mine kære Forældres<sup>98)</sup> gæstfri<sup>99)</sup> Tág. Og saale-des gjéngjælder du mig! — O, Taknémmedighed! var du da aldrig Kærligheds Móder? — Ak, nej! Kærlighed er Himlens Datter, og födes ej af jórdiske Drifter.<sup>100)</sup> Den

---

<sup>69)</sup> lumps, masses of ice & heaps of snow. <sup>70)</sup> the gulf of Finland. <sup>71)</sup> put up with, bear. <sup>72)</sup> decrees of fate. <sup>73)</sup> act ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>74)</sup> circle, cycle, sphere. <sup>75)</sup> placed. <sup>76)</sup> useless. <sup>77)</sup> empty complaints. <sup>78)</sup> torment. <sup>79)</sup> griefs, (plur.  $\frac{2}{3}$ ). <sup>80)</sup> muse upon. <sup>81)</sup> gratitude. <sup>82)</sup> fair. <sup>83)</sup> balm. <sup>84)</sup> wounded. <sup>85)</sup> soothest. <sup>86)</sup> faithlessness. <sup>87)</sup> tore to pieces, broke. <sup>88)</sup> sore, doleful. <sup>89)</sup> remembrance. <sup>90)</sup> pernicious. <sup>91)</sup> rich in comfort. <sup>92)</sup> snake, viper. <sup>93)</sup> fickle, inconsiderately. <sup>94)</sup> perjury. <sup>95)</sup> alleviated. <sup>96)</sup> furnished, afforded ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>97)</sup> shelter. <sup>98)</sup> parents. <sup>99)</sup> hospitable. <sup>100)</sup> instincts.

er fri som Luften paa Bjergene, og flygter for Lænker <sup>1)</sup> og Tvang. <sup>2)</sup> Ja! jeg föler det. Natália svór mig Tróskab af Taknæmmelighed, og derfor hævnede den fornærmede <sup>3)</sup> Natúr sig paa hende, da Ivan smeltede den falskes Bryst. Dog hvorfor hykle <sup>4)</sup> Fölelser, hun ikke nårede! Min grændselöse <sup>5)</sup> Hengivenhed, min prøvede <sup>6)</sup> Tróskab blév til Latter, <sup>7)</sup> da hun i Ivans Árme drév Gjøk med <sup>8)</sup> Tró og Love. <sup>9)</sup> O, Natália, vildt kastede du dig i hans Favnl <sup>10)</sup> er du da lykkelig ved hans Side? Er du det virkelig? Elsker han dig da? —

En Taare stód i Fédors Öje, da han mindedes sin Ungdoms Kærlighed, men snart fattede han sig, <sup>11)</sup> gréb <sup>12)</sup> sin Crayon, og tegnede atter. <sup>13)</sup> "Ak! tænkte han, hvi ånkler <sup>14)</sup> jeg da hende? Kan en Mårmorstötte <sup>15)</sup> besjæles af Lidenskab, en Ístap <sup>16)</sup> glöde af brændende Fölelse? — Nej, nej! jo mére <sup>17)</sup> jeg óvertænker dette usálige <sup>18)</sup> Fórhold, jo mere indseer jeg, at det ikke var Kærlighed, ihvorvél <sup>19)</sup> det har forbitret mig min Ungdoms skønneste Dáge. Men bört <sup>20)</sup> med dette! Jeg ópgiver <sup>21)</sup> for évig enhvér Fórdring <sup>22)</sup> paa den Lykke at elske og elskes igjén, og glemmer mine Forvildelser. <sup>23)</sup> Kun <sup>24)</sup> i dit Tempel, Natúr! vil jeg knæle, og paa dit Alter, o heilige <sup>25)</sup> Kunst, ofrer jeg fríwillig <sup>26)</sup> mit Hjærtets Fölelser. Jeg er nu fem og týve Aar gammel, det er nú paa Tíden <sup>27)</sup> at blive klög. <sup>28)</sup>

Saaledes filosoferede Kunstneren en rúm Tid, <sup>29)</sup> og arbejdede derhos flittigen. Men da han var lidt údmat-

<sup>1)</sup> chains ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>2)</sup> constraint. <sup>3)</sup> injured, offended. <sup>4)</sup> feign. <sup>5)</sup> unbounded. <sup>6)</sup> tried. <sup>7)</sup> was turned to ridicule. <sup>8)</sup> sported with. <sup>9)</sup> faith and promise, *Love*, is derived from the Germ. *Glaube*, belief, trust. <sup>10)</sup> fathom, embrace. <sup>11)</sup> recovered himself. <sup>12)</sup> took up. <sup>13)</sup> sketched on (again). <sup>14)</sup> complain of. <sup>15)</sup> marblestatue. <sup>16)</sup> icicle. <sup>17)</sup> the more. <sup>18)</sup> unhappy. <sup>19)</sup> although. <sup>20)</sup> away. <sup>21)</sup> renounce. <sup>22)</sup> claim. <sup>23)</sup> errors. <sup>24)</sup> only. <sup>25)</sup> sacred. <sup>26)</sup> voluntarily. <sup>27)</sup> high time. <sup>28)</sup> wise. <sup>29)</sup> a long while, they say also, but it is a Germanism, *en Tid lang*.

tet<sup>30)</sup> af den forrige<sup>31)</sup> Dags Arbejde, og nu desuden saa tidlig havde forlådt sit Leje, saa begyndte han at blive søvnig. Han satte sig derfor mere mågelig<sup>32)</sup> paa Bænken, lænede Ryggen<sup>33)</sup> mod Træets tykke Stamme, og lagde sin Tægnebog paa Skødet. Det varedes<sup>34)</sup> ikke længe, førend han begyndte at nikke<sup>35)</sup> med Hovedet, og snart faldt han i en dyb vederkvægende Slummer, hvorved hans Tægnebog gléd ned paa Jorden, og blév liggende øpslagen<sup>36)</sup> med en Skidse af den hålvrunde Plads, paa hvilken han sad. I Førstningen<sup>37)</sup> slumrede han rolig;<sup>38)</sup> men efterhaanden<sup>39)</sup> begyndte hans Fantasi at tumle sig<sup>40)</sup> i mængehaande sølsomme<sup>41)</sup> Førestillinger og Billeder, der omsider ordnede sig<sup>42)</sup> til en mærkelig Drøm, som vi hermed ville meddele<sup>43)</sup> vore Læsere.

Det forekom ham, som om<sup>44)</sup> uforudsete Omstændigheder nødte ham til pludselig, at maatte forlade Italien, og vende tilbage til sit Hjem. Med Ranselen<sup>45)</sup> paa Ryggen og en Vandringsstav i Haanden, stød han med eet<sup>46)</sup> foran en meget lang Bro,<sup>47)</sup> paa hvilken der bevægede sig mange Túsende Mennesker i det daglige Lívs Sysler.<sup>48)</sup> Under den var det grændseløse<sup>49)</sup> Hav yderst<sup>50)</sup> klárt og gjennemsigtigt,<sup>51)</sup> paa hvis Bund det ligeledes vrimlede af<sup>52)</sup> utallige Mennesker, der vøgtede<sup>53)</sup> deres Forrætninger, ligesaa frit og uhindret som Vandrerne paa Bróen. Op af Bølgernes Overflade hævede sig et blændende hvidt Skelét med glimrende Vinger og en gylden Lé.<sup>54)</sup> I dets Aasyn,<sup>55)</sup> skönt kun en Knókkelbygning,<sup>56)</sup> laa Mildhed og Fréd.<sup>57)</sup> Fédor stúdsede<sup>58)</sup> ved

---

30) wearied. 31) preceding. 32) commodiously. 33) back.  
 34) lasted, was. 35) nod. 36) open. 37) the beginning.  
 38) quietly, softly. 39) by little and little. 40) ramble, rove.  
 41) wonderful. 42) arranged themselves. 43) communicate to.  
 44) as if. 45) wallet. 46) at once. 47) bridge. 48) occupations.  
 49) boundless. 50) exceedingly. 51) transparent. 52) swarmed with.  
 53) attended to. 54) scythe. 55) countenance. 56) structure of bones.  
 57) peace. 58) started at.

disse Sýner,<sup>59)</sup> og tænkte: „Dette er ikke den lille Vindebro, som fører til min Faders Landsted,<sup>60)</sup> og døg syntes mig för, at jeg saae Húset selv og Háven, som ömgiver det. I det han ánstillede disse Betragtninger tilhviskede et ubekjendt Væsen ham:<sup>61)</sup> „Dette er Værendebroen, som fører til Fuldkommenhedens Börg.<sup>62)</sup> Du er Livets Génus og Skeløttet med den gyldne Lé er Dödens Génus.

Ved Lýden af disse Ord forekom det Fédor, at han forändredes<sup>63)</sup> i sit héle Væsen. Hans sædvánlige jórdiske Drágt<sup>64)</sup> sank néd, og han indhylledes<sup>65)</sup> i et straalende hvidt Kládebon.<sup>66)</sup> Der voxte hvide Vinger frém<sup>67)</sup> af hans Skúldre, og hans héle Légeme lütredes<sup>68)</sup> af ætérisk Ild. Han gjennemskuede med Klárhed héle Jórdlivets Færd, og fölte sig i en uendelig<sup>69)</sup> Grád óphøjet över det ménneskelige Kön. Han saae sig omkring med ædel óphøjet Anstand,<sup>71)</sup> og Vandrerne paa Bróen betrægtede ham med Ærbödighed<sup>71)</sup> og Frygt. Skelettet saae smilende op til ham, og sagde: „Vær<sup>72)</sup> mig vélkommen min Bróder, og únddrag mig ikke<sup>73)</sup> mine Offere.”<sup>74)</sup> „Nei, svárede Fédor, Livets Fyrste kjender ingen Uretfærdighed.<sup>75)</sup> De sváge Dödelige elske mig og háde dig, og dóg<sup>76)</sup> léve de hos dig som hos mig.” Med disse Ord vinkede<sup>77)</sup> han ad en Mand, som gik ham forbi. Denne nærmede sig skjælvende, men Fédor gréb ham med overnatúrlig Kraft, og slyngede ham úd i Bölgerne. Gaa! sagde han, du er móden<sup>78)</sup> til Döden. Forsvind af Livet, og gjör Plads for andre! Den ulyksálige sank med

<sup>59)</sup> visions ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ), but *Syne* without plur. is appearance, show.

<sup>60)</sup> country-seat. <sup>61)</sup> *tilhv. ham*, whispered to him (p. 72).

<sup>62)</sup> the castle of perfection. <sup>63)</sup> was changed, transformed.

<sup>64)</sup> clothing. <sup>65)</sup> was covered. <sup>66)</sup> garment. <sup>67)</sup> *voxte frem*, grew forth, shot forth. <sup>68)</sup> was purified. <sup>69)</sup> infinite. <sup>70)</sup> dignity.

<sup>71)</sup> veneration. <sup>72)</sup> be! (p. 40). <sup>73)</sup> do not withdraw.

<sup>74)</sup> victims. <sup>75)</sup> injustice. <sup>76)</sup> nevertheless. <sup>77)</sup> beckoned.

<sup>78)</sup> ripe.

et Skrig néd i de klare Vande, men da Döden berörte ham sagte <sup>79)</sup> med sin Lé, bevågede han sig med fornyet Munterhed og Kraft paa Håvets Bund. Skelettet takkede Fédor med et venligt Nik, og sank derpaa néd i Bølgerne. Livets Génus skred videre frem<sup>80)</sup> paa Bróen, og bragde sin Bróder Döden mangt et Offer. Omsider da Fédor var nær ved den módsatte Kyst, nærmede sig en dejlig Pige, som lignede hans fördums elskede Natália, og hviskede til ham: „Her er Fuldkommenhedens Børg paa denne Klippetinde.<sup>81)</sup> Jeg fører<sup>82)</sup> dig derhen.” Fédor betragtede hende stüdsende <sup>83)</sup> og sagde: „Du ér dög Natália, og stóler paa<sup>84)</sup> min jórdiske Svåghed. Men jeg siger dig for første og sidste Gang; misbrug åldrig mit Venskab, ti ellers bliver<sup>85)</sup> du straffet.<sup>86)</sup> Foran dem laa Borgen paa et trúende Fjeld,<sup>87)</sup> og Vejen derhen gik imellem Tórne og Kråt ved Siden af umaalelige Afgrunde.<sup>88)</sup> Da gréb<sup>89)</sup> Natália en mödende Vandrer, og kastede ham fra Klippetinden néd i Bjergets dýbeste Klöfter.<sup>90)</sup> Gýsende<sup>91)</sup> bemærkede<sup>92)</sup> Fédor dette, og údbrød<sup>93)</sup> i dýb Bevågelse: „Det er forbi. Dit jórdiske Liv er endt! Nú kommer Dödens Génus op af denne Brönd,<sup>94)</sup> og fører dig bort.” I det han frémførte<sup>95)</sup> disse Ord, stóde de begge i en mörk Hvælving<sup>96)</sup> i Borgen ved Siden af en úhyre<sup>97)</sup> dýb Brönd. Op af dens Svælg stég Döden, og lóg Natália ved Haanden, for at léde hende derhén; men den fortvivlede<sup>98)</sup> Pige ómslyngede<sup>99)</sup> Fédor med Hæftighed, og bad om Skaansel.<sup>100)</sup> Da svårede denne med Taarer: „Jeg kan ikke redde <sup>1)</sup> dig! jeg maa selv en Gang nédstige <sup>2)</sup> i Brönden, naar Himlens Herre <sup>3)</sup>

<sup>79)</sup> softly, gently. <sup>80)</sup> advanced farther. <sup>81)</sup> summit of the rock.

<sup>82)</sup> I will bring, lead. <sup>83)</sup> amazed. <sup>84)</sup> trust to. <sup>85)</sup> shall be.

<sup>86)</sup> punished. <sup>87)</sup> mountain. <sup>88)</sup> abysses. <sup>89)</sup> seized. <sup>90)</sup> clefts.

<sup>91)</sup> shuddering. <sup>92)</sup> perceived. <sup>93)</sup> broke forth, cried out.

<sup>94)</sup> well. <sup>95)</sup> spoke. <sup>96)</sup> vault. <sup>97)</sup> excessively, terribly.

<sup>98)</sup> desperate. <sup>99)</sup> wound herself about, cleaved to. <sup>100)</sup> indul-

gence, mercy. <sup>1)</sup> save. <sup>2)</sup> descend. <sup>3)</sup> the lord of heaven.

ømvælter <sup>4)</sup> denne Tingenes Orden." Med disse Ord slap <sup>5)</sup> Fédor den trøstesløse <sup>6)</sup> Mø, <sup>7)</sup> og Döden styrtede <sup>8)</sup> hende ned i Brönden. Jämmertóner <sup>9)</sup> löde fra det rædsomme <sup>10)</sup> Dyb. Nú vendte Fédor sig til Döden, og sagde: Min Bróder! ógsaa jég maa en Gang <sup>11)</sup> nédstige i dit Rige. Módtag mig da vénligen. Mit Hjærte trænger til <sup>12)</sup> Kærlighed. Da saae Döden med et himmelsk <sup>13)</sup> Smil paa ham, og trykte hans Haand med uændelig Værme mód <sup>14)</sup> sit Bryst. „Döden er Livet", sagde han, „I mit Rige bevæger Stövet <sup>15)</sup> sig som i dit; dit er en evig Omvexling <sup>16)</sup> af Tingene, og alt dette er kun Förberedelse. <sup>17)</sup> Vi tó vide intet. Over <sup>18)</sup> os ére der uændelige Gráder af fuldkomne Aander. Men vi ére Venner." Ved disse Ord forándrede Skelettets héle Údvortes sig; dets Aasyn straaledet <sup>19)</sup> i en uforkrænkelig <sup>20)</sup> Glórie, <sup>21)</sup> og dets héle Skábning <sup>22)</sup> ántog <sup>23)</sup> saa skónne og ædle Former, som det dödelige Öje aldrig skúer. Det hérligste meest fuldendte <sup>24)</sup> Vásen, med Salighedens <sup>25)</sup> réneste Údtryk i sine Miner, <sup>26)</sup> stód for Fédor, som fölte sig betáget <sup>27)</sup> af unævnelig héllig Frýd. Den skónne forædlede Géníus sank til sin Bróders Hjærte, og en Ánelse <sup>28)</sup> af den himmelske Reenhed <sup>29)</sup> faldt i Fédors Sjæl. Han vilde tále, men Láeben nægtede <sup>30)</sup> ham sin Tiéneste. Hans Hjærte mægtede ikke <sup>31)</sup> at bære denne óverjordiske Sálighed, og han — — — vaagnede. <sup>32)</sup>

---

<sup>4)</sup> destroys. <sup>5)</sup> let loose, let go. <sup>6)</sup> inconsolable. <sup>7)</sup> maid. <sup>8)</sup> precipitated, hurled. <sup>9)</sup> tones of lamentation. <sup>10)</sup> dreadful. <sup>11)</sup> one day, at last. <sup>12)</sup> stands in need of. <sup>13)</sup> celestial, heavenly. <sup>14)</sup> to. <sup>15)</sup> the dust, mankind. <sup>16)</sup> transmutation. <sup>17)</sup> preparation. <sup>18)</sup> above. <sup>19)</sup> beamed. <sup>20)</sup> incorruptible, imperishable. <sup>21)</sup> radiance. <sup>22)</sup> shape, person. <sup>23)</sup> assumed. <sup>24)</sup> finished, perfect. <sup>25)</sup> beatitude. <sup>26)</sup> countenance. <sup>27)</sup> seized, stunned. <sup>28)</sup> perception, idea. <sup>29)</sup> purity. <sup>30)</sup> denied. <sup>31)</sup> was unable. <sup>32)</sup> awoke.



## KONG VALDEMARS DATTER OG ALKORS SÖN.

Et Æventyr af Nyerups *Idunna* for 1812.

**D**er var en Konning <sup>1)</sup> ved Öster-Strand, <sup>2)</sup>  
 Kong Voldemar hédte <sup>3)</sup> den bölde, <sup>4)</sup>  
 han raadte <sup>5)</sup> ej over Riger og Land,  
 og ej over grønne Völde; <sup>6)</sup>  
 han aate <sup>7)</sup> en Borg saa brat <sup>8)</sup> og fast,  
 og dertil vel tusinde Snækker <sup>9)</sup>  
 med Silkesejl og forgylden Mast:  
 saa vide hans Vælde <sup>10)</sup> sig strækker. <sup>11)</sup>

Om Vinteren sad han paa bratten Borg  
 alt <sup>12)</sup> med sine Kæmper <sup>13)</sup> tilsammen; <sup>14)</sup>  
 da drukke de Mjöden föruden Sorg,  
 og Vinen den kläre med Gammen.  
 Naar Sölen skinned' i grönnen Vang <sup>16)</sup>  
 og Gjögen <sup>17)</sup> mon gale <sup>18)</sup> i Lunde, <sup>19)</sup>  
 da hejsed <sup>20)</sup> han Sejl med Spil <sup>21)</sup> og med Sang,  
 at gæste <sup>22)</sup> de bretlandske <sup>23)</sup> Sunde. <sup>24)</sup>  
 Om Hösten, <sup>25)</sup> naar Voven ej mere var huld, <sup>26)</sup>  
 og Stormen begyndte at bjælde, <sup>27)</sup>

---

<sup>1)</sup> poet. for *Konge*, king. <sup>2)</sup> for *Östersö-en*, the Baltic. <sup>3)</sup> for *hed*, p. 46. <sup>4)</sup> the brave, gallant (bold). <sup>5)</sup> reigned. <sup>6)</sup> poet. or Norwegian for *Mark*, field. Swed. *vall*, Icel. *völdr*. <sup>7)</sup> an old poet. form for *ejede* possessed. [It is the past tense *átti* of the Icelandic verb *eiga*, to possess. ED]. <sup>8)</sup> steep [it means lofty, beetling. ED.]. <sup>9)</sup> vessels. <sup>10)</sup> power. <sup>11)</sup> extends. <sup>12)</sup> all, a poet. expletive. <sup>13)</sup> champions. <sup>14)</sup> together, an old Germanism. <sup>15)</sup> mirth, joy. <sup>16)</sup> field. <sup>17)</sup> the cuckoo. <sup>18)</sup> did crow, sing. <sup>19)</sup> groves, woods. <sup>20)</sup> hoisted. <sup>21)</sup> play, music. <sup>22)</sup> visit. <sup>23)</sup> British. <sup>24)</sup> sounds, strath. <sup>25)</sup> harvest, autumn. <sup>26)</sup> favorable. <sup>27)</sup> howl.

da dróg han tilbáge med Sölv og med Guld,  
 med køstelig Vin og med Trælle.  
 Han var saa saare<sup>28)</sup> rig paa Guld,  
 paa Tærner<sup>29)</sup> og favre Svende,<sup>30)</sup>  
 men al sin Klenód<sup>31)</sup> han agted som Múld  
 mod Hilda hans Datter hin vænne.<sup>32)</sup>  
 Hende gilled<sup>33)</sup> saa mangan Ridder skön,  
 de dróge saa vide Vêje,  
 men hun havde kaaret<sup>34)</sup> Prins Rerik i Lön,<sup>35)</sup>  
 ham maatte hun ikke éje.  
 Hans Fader var Alkor, den Stólkonge<sup>36)</sup> gram;  
 af Hjærtet Kong Valdemar hadede ham.  
 De våre Fostbrödre<sup>37)</sup> i Ungdommens Vaar;<sup>38)</sup>  
 de bléve saa fjendske<sup>39)</sup> i Manddommens Aar.

Naar Valdemar drog paa Leding<sup>40)</sup> úd,  
 blev hundrede Kæmper tilbage,  
 som skulde forsvare den Mö<sup>41)</sup> saa prúd,<sup>42)</sup>  
 og tage paa hende vel Vare.<sup>43)</sup>  
 Da tórde<sup>44)</sup> hun aldrig af Buret<sup>45)</sup> gaa,  
 dog blev hende Tiden ej lang:  
 hun dansed med sine Tærner smaa,  
 hun slog Guldharpen og sang;  
 saa sömmede<sup>46)</sup> hun med röden Guld,  
 og naar hendes Finger var vund,<sup>47)</sup>  
 saa légte<sup>48)</sup> hnn med sin liden Hund,  
 smaa Issegrim var baade væn og huld.  
 Naar Solen gik ned bag Skovens Top,  
 da trén hun saa tit i Höjenloft op,

---

<sup>28)</sup> so very. <sup>29)</sup> hand-maids, girls. <sup>30)</sup> fine lads. <sup>31)</sup> treasure, a Germanism for *Klenodie*. <sup>32)</sup> fair. <sup>33)</sup> approved, courted. <sup>34)</sup> chosen. <sup>35)</sup> privately, secretly. <sup>36)</sup> literally: *throne-king* i. e. great king. <sup>37)</sup> sworn friends. <sup>38)</sup> spring. <sup>39)</sup> hostile. <sup>40)</sup> naval expedition. <sup>41)</sup> maid. <sup>42)</sup> fine, elegant, excellent. <sup>43)</sup> *tage Vare paa*, attend, take care of. <sup>44)</sup> durst (p. 43). <sup>45)</sup> cage; small, separate dwellinghouse; a lady's bower. <sup>46)</sup> sowed, stitched. <sup>47)</sup> wounded (by the needle). <sup>48)</sup> played.

og saae hen ud over hviden Strand,<sup>49)</sup>  
 hvor Havfruen<sup>50)</sup> légte i klåren Vand.  
 Da saae hun og tit til de gamle Linde,<sup>51)</sup>  
 hvorunder hun légte med Rerik saa fró,  
 alt förend de Fædre blev fjendske i Sinde,  
 alt förend Prins Rerik i Leding uddróg.  
 Da kvad hun: „Prins Rerik! hvor est<sup>52)</sup> du min Ven?  
 hvor svæver du nu paa Bölgen blaa?  
 Sju<sup>53)</sup> lange Vintre er rundne hen,  
 siden dig mit Öje saae.

Ak! har du forgæt<sup>54)</sup> din Barndoms<sup>55)</sup> Mö,  
 da<sup>56)</sup> Hilda af Kummer og Sorrig maa dö.”

En Kvæld<sup>57)</sup> som i Höjenloft hun sad,  
 og saae, hvor de Havfruer légte saa glad,  
 og hørte hvor Aftenens Vinde  
 mon suse igjennem de Linde.

Fra Lindenes mørke Kroner<sup>58)</sup> klang<sup>59)</sup>  
 saa yndelig<sup>60)</sup> saadan en Harpesang:  
 „Jeg réd saa vide om Bjerg og Sö,  
 gjennem mørken Skov og dybe Dale,  
 men ingensteds fandt jeg den vænne Mö,  
 der kunde mit Hjærte husvale.<sup>61)</sup>

Ak! Elskov klemmer<sup>62)</sup> saa saare;  
 Naar Snækken gled over Bölgen blaa,  
 klang Vovernes Pladsken som Hildas Sange;  
 naar Gangeren traved<sup>63)</sup> over Heden graa,  
 löd Gangerens Fódslag som Harpens Streng,  
 som Hilda slóg under Linden.

<sup>49)</sup> sea or seashore. <sup>50)</sup> the mermaid. <sup>51)</sup> limetrees. <sup>52)</sup> art, poet. for *er*. <sup>53)</sup> seven, poet. for *syr*. <sup>54)</sup> forgot, an archaism for *forgættet*, poet. for *forglemt*. <sup>55)</sup> of thy childhood. <sup>56)</sup> then. <sup>57)</sup> night, late evening. <sup>58)</sup> crowns, tops. <sup>59)</sup> sounded. <sup>60)</sup> graceful, charming. <sup>61)</sup> comfort. <sup>62)</sup> presses, wrings. <sup>63)</sup> trotted, for *travede* (†) thus in the following *e* is frequently omitted in similar cases.

Jeg Hildas Billed' i Skyen saae,  
 naar Øjet til Himlen jeg hæved,  
 og stirred jeg dybt ned i Havets Blaa,  
 hendes Billed imøde mig svæved,  
     ti Elskov klemmer saa saare!  
 Hvor est du, Hilda! o lyt<sup>64)</sup> til min Sang,  
 og il til mit bankende Hjærte!  
 i Bárndommens Vaar ved Harpens Klang  
 du selv jo at elske mig lærte,<sup>65)</sup>  
 naar Harpen du slóg under Linden,  
     Ak! Elskov klemmer saa saare!"  
 Nu tav den tonende Harpe brat,<sup>66)</sup>  
 Og Hilda lyttede længe;  
 men ingen Tóne i mørke Nat  
 klang mere fra Harpens Streng.  
 Kun Vinden sused i Lindens Grene,  
 og Bølgen pladsked mod Strandens Stene.  
 Da gréb hun Harpen og sagte rørte  
 de gyldne Streng, og Vinden førte  
 igjennem Mörket de sváge Tóner  
 hen til de gamle Lindekroner:  
 „I énsomt Búr, en Dúe<sup>67)</sup> lig,  
 maa Hilda kvæde sørgelig;<sup>68)</sup>  
 knap<sup>69)</sup> tör hun Harpens Streng röre,  
 at ej de Tárner deres Klang skal höre;  
 knap tör hun nynne saa sagtelig:  
 min Hjærtens Ven! jeg elsker dig.  
     Ak! Elskov klemmer saa saare."  
 Nu sidder Hilda hver Kvæld saa glad,  
 mens Rerik kvæder i Lunden;  
 skönt tykke Mure dem skiller ad,  
 de have dog Sorgen forvunden.<sup>70)</sup>

<sup>64)</sup> the imperative from *jeg lytter*, I hearken, listen. <sup>65)</sup> taughtst.

<sup>66)</sup> suddenly. <sup>67)</sup> dove, pigeon. <sup>68)</sup> melancholy. <sup>69)</sup> scarcely, otherwise *næppe*. <sup>70)</sup> repaired, forgot.

Men hör mig, skön Jomfru, og mærk derpaa <sup>71)</sup>  
Til Gammen <sup>72)</sup> til Sorg sig mon <sup>73)</sup> vende,  
naar Sölen som klårest <sup>74)</sup> paa Himlen mon staa,  
da kommer Uvejret <sup>75)</sup> behænde. <sup>76)</sup>

Det lakked nu alt ad <sup>77)</sup> Höstens Tid,  
og Vinden fra Vesten mon stande, <sup>78)</sup>  
de Vikinger <sup>79)</sup> ile fra Bretland hid  
alt over de skummende <sup>80)</sup> Vande,  
paa Voven danse de Snekker blaa,  
i Skoven hvirvle de Blade smaa.

Det stormer saa hardt over Vesterhav, <sup>81)</sup>  
de Bølger styrte som Bjerger mod Stranden.  
„Ak! fandt du, kær Fader, i Bølgen din Grav,  
da dör din Hilda, jeg siger for Sanden,  
mit Hjærte da brister <sup>82)</sup> af Sorgen.”

Det tördner <sup>83)</sup> i Vesten, det lýner <sup>84)</sup> saa brat <sup>85)</sup>  
den Taarnevægter <sup>86)</sup> blæser <sup>87)</sup> om mörken Nat,  
det runger <sup>88)</sup> saa höjt udi Borgen;  
fra Stranden höres som Vaabengny, <sup>89)</sup>  
de Kæmper raabe i vilden Sky;  
da kiger <sup>90)</sup> Maanen saa listelig <sup>91)</sup>  
bag Skyen frém over hviden Bølge.  
Det ér Kong Våldemar gæv <sup>92)</sup> og rig,  
fra Brétlands Tög <sup>93)</sup> med ålt sit Følge; <sup>94)</sup>  
det er Kong Valdemar stölt og prud  
alt med sine tusinde Snækker.

---

<sup>71)</sup> attend to it, think on. <sup>72)</sup> joy, mirth. <sup>73)</sup> will, may. <sup>74)</sup> at the clearest, brightest. <sup>75)</sup> bad weather, storm. <sup>76)</sup> nimbly, hastily. <sup>77)</sup> literally: it now already approached to. <sup>78)</sup> poet. for *staa*, stand. <sup>79)</sup> sea-champions, sea-heroes. <sup>80)</sup> foaming. <sup>81)</sup> the North-sea, or German ocean. <sup>82)</sup> will burst (§ p. 49). <sup>83)</sup> thunders, <sup>84)</sup> lightens. <sup>85)</sup> frequently. <sup>86)</sup> tower-watchman. <sup>87)</sup> blows (his horn). <sup>88)</sup> resounds. <sup>89)</sup> noise of arms. <sup>90)</sup> peeps. <sup>91)</sup> roguishly, slyly. <sup>92)</sup> excellent. <sup>93)</sup> from (his) expedition to Britain. <sup>94)</sup> retinue.

Skön Hilda seer fra Höjenloft ud;  
 de Silkeselj Stranden bedækker:<sup>95)</sup>  
 "Nu Krist være lovet i Himmerig!  
 kær Fader! jeg snart kan favne dig."

De Kæmper sidde ved bredden Bord,  
 de drikke baade Öl og Mjöd;  
 de vexle<sup>96)</sup> saa mangt et skjemtstomt<sup>97)</sup> Ord,  
 ti Vinen den småger saa söd.

I Höjsædet<sup>98)</sup> sidder den Konning god,  
 ved Siden skön Hilda det Rosenblod.<sup>99)</sup>

I Hallen triner en Ridder ind,<sup>100)</sup>  
 var klædt i Maar<sup>1)</sup> og Skarlagenskind.<sup>2)</sup>

Först hilser<sup>3)</sup> han den Konning god,  
 saa hilser han Hilda det Rosenblod.

„Hil<sup>4)</sup>-være eder, Kong Valdemar bold!

Kong Alkor la'r<sup>5)</sup> eder hilse;

I<sup>6)</sup> stréde<sup>7)</sup> saa ofte med Avindsskjold<sup>8)</sup>  
 eder begge til liden Frelse;<sup>9)</sup>

nu er til Forlig<sup>10)</sup> han og Vénskab beréd,

han býder eder saa tryg<sup>11)</sup> en Fred,

om I ham vil vide<sup>12)</sup> en Bön.

I haver en Datter, saa vän<sup>13)</sup> en Mö

der findes vel næppe paa Verdens Ö,

hende fæste<sup>14)</sup> I Rerik, Kong Alkors Sön."

„Nej!" skreg Kong Valdemar, var saa gram,<sup>15)</sup>

„ret aldrig min Datter skal fæste ham!

<sup>95)</sup> cover. <sup>96)</sup> interchange. <sup>97)</sup> sportful. <sup>98)</sup> on the throne.  
<sup>99)</sup> *Blod*, blood, stands poetically for *creature*, maiden. <sup>100)</sup> *triner ind*, enters, ( $\frac{2}{3}$  p. 50). <sup>1)</sup> marten (-skin). <sup>2)</sup> *Skind*, skin, is here put poetically for cloak furred with skin. <sup>3)</sup> greets, salutes. <sup>4)</sup> hail. <sup>5)</sup> for *lader*, lets (you greet, i. e. sends you greeting). <sup>6)</sup> you (both). <sup>7)</sup> fought ( $\frac{2}{3}$  p. 50). <sup>8)</sup> shield or arms of envy, i. e. rancour. <sup>9)</sup> salvation, benefit, gain. <sup>10)</sup> reconciliation. <sup>11)</sup> safe, secure (p. 27). <sup>12)</sup> grant, a poet. expression Icel. *veir*. <sup>13)</sup> so fine, equally fine. <sup>14)</sup> betroth, optative ( $\frac{1}{4}$ ). <sup>15)</sup> (he) was so (very) angry or hateful.

ret aldrig min Datter en Nidding <sup>16)</sup> skal faa.  
 En Nidding er Alkor, hans Søn deslige: <sup>17)</sup>  
 för skal hun som Mö udi Kloster gaa  
 og fæste sig Brúdgom i Himmerige."

Den Ridder ham svarer sömmelig: <sup>18)</sup>  
 „Herre Konning! du ikke forivre Dig!" <sup>19)</sup>  
 han vidste at föje <sup>20)</sup> sin Tale saa godt,  
 „Kong Alkor er Rysalands mægtige Drot, <sup>21)</sup>  
 Prins Rerik en Ridder med Ære:  
 hvad han faar ej med Gode, han tager med Magt.  
 Ej Niddinger monne de være."

„Spar <sup>22)</sup> du dine Ord, Ridder Uselig, <sup>23)</sup>  
 hvis mit Sværd ej Munden skal stoppe <sup>24)</sup> dig."

Ud ganger <sup>25)</sup> den Ridder saa skyndelig, <sup>26)</sup>  
 det var ej ret sikkert at dvæle;  
 men Hilda sidder saa blég som et Lig,  
 for Sorrig hun kunde ei mæle <sup>27)</sup>.

Nu lider det <sup>28)</sup> Maaneder fire og fem,  
 de Húskarle drikke og kvæde;  
 men Hilda saa saare mon græde. <sup>29)</sup>  
 Nu lider det alt til Vaaren frem:  
 höjt Solen skinner paa klaren Vove,  
 og Gjögen galer i grønne Skove;  
 de Huskarle stunde til <sup>30)</sup> Ledingsfærd,  
 skön Hilda sig önsker i sorten Jord.  
 Men Valdemar pönser <sup>31)</sup> saa mangelund, <sup>32)</sup>  
 han frygter for Alkors lumske Fund, <sup>33)</sup>

<sup>16)</sup> a scoundrel. [Nidding. Icel. *níðingr* is not a plain scoundrel but a mean recreant, a vile traitor. Where the Icelandic *sagas* say "*hvers manns níðingr*", the Italian poets use the expression *falsissimo traditore*, false traitor. ED.] <sup>17)</sup> also. <sup>18)</sup> decently. courteously. <sup>19)</sup> do not get into passion, optat ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>20)</sup> manage, dispose ( $\frac{1}{2}$ ). <sup>21)</sup> lord, poet. <sup>22)</sup> spare, forbear. <sup>23)</sup> Sir Pitiful. <sup>24)</sup> stop, (bung the mouth, i. e. silence). <sup>25)</sup> goes, poet for *gaar*. <sup>26)</sup> hastily. <sup>27)</sup> speak. <sup>28)</sup> it goes i. e. there pass. <sup>29)</sup> did weep. <sup>30)</sup> think on, prepare. <sup>31)</sup> muses, meditates. <sup>32)</sup> many ways, poet. <sup>33)</sup> cunning devices.

han kalder nu for sig de Húskarle sju,  
 de bedste i Gaarden <sup>34)</sup> mon være.  
 „I sværge en Ed, I sværge mig <sup>35)</sup> nu  
 ved Krist og hans Móder kære;  
 I være mig tro, I tie kvær, <sup>35)</sup>  
 I sige ej frá, hvad jeg býder jer.  
 I følge mig nu med Öxe hver <sup>36)</sup>  
 og hver med sin bréde Hakke <sup>37)</sup>  
 til Mörkvæds Skov; naar vi komme dér,  
 saa ville vi videre snakke.”  
 Og dér de kóm til Mörkvæds Skov,  
 begyndte de flúgs <sup>38)</sup> at grave; <sup>39)</sup>  
 en Hule <sup>40)</sup> saa dyb i Jorden de grov,  
 en Stúe <sup>41)</sup> saa <sup>42)</sup> vilde de lave: <sup>43)</sup>  
 foroven bedækket med Stén <sup>44)</sup> og Muld,  
 forinden behængt med Sölv og med Guld,  
 Did bragde Kong Valdemar alt sit Klenód,  
 baade Guld og kóstbare Vare,  
 og dertil alsköns <sup>45)</sup> Fetalje <sup>46)</sup> god,  
 baade Mjöd og Vinen klare.  
 Saa ledte <sup>47)</sup> han did kær Datter sín  
 med hendes Tærner trende.  
 „Jeg haver berédt en Stúe fín  
 med Sölv og med Guld behænde, <sup>48)</sup>  
 den er saa köl <sup>49)</sup> mod Solens Brand:  
 der vælde <sup>50)</sup> en Kilde <sup>51)</sup> af hviden Sand,  
 som Perlen rén er dens klare Vand.

---

<sup>34)</sup> the house. <sup>35)</sup> tie, be silent, optat. ( $\frac{2}{3}$  p. 45), *kvær*, poet. adverb, still, silently, i. e. preserve the secret religiously. <sup>36)</sup> each. <sup>37)</sup> mattock. <sup>38)</sup> immediately. <sup>39)</sup> dig ( $\frac{2}{3}$  p. 47). <sup>40)</sup> cavern. <sup>41)</sup> room. <sup>42)</sup> an expletive particle. <sup>43)</sup> prepare, make. <sup>44)</sup> stones (p. 25). <sup>45)</sup> of every kind, i. e. divers. <sup>46)</sup> victuals [a low German corruption of the Latin word *victualia*. ED.] <sup>47)</sup> lead, conducted. <sup>48)</sup> dexterously, artificially. <sup>49)</sup> cool, a Germanism for *kölög*. <sup>50)</sup> springs forth. <sup>51)</sup> fountain.



I dvæle nu hér vel Maaneder fem,  
mens jeg paa Bølgen maa svæve,<sup>52)</sup>  
til Høsten <sup>53)</sup> komme vi glade hjem  
i Lyst og Gammen at leve.”

„Dernéde den sórté Grav jeg seer,  
kær Fader! jeg siger for Sanden:  
kommer jeg dernéd, ret<sup>54)</sup> aldrig mér  
vi glade skúe hinanden.

„Stig ned, stig ned, min Datter kær!  
det er saa lystigt at léve dér.

Trindtóm i Bögens<sup>55)</sup> Sále<sup>56)</sup>  
saa liflig<sup>57)</sup> synge de Nattergåle.<sup>58)</sup>  
Stig néd, stig néd, min Datter kær!  
der er saa hêrligt at léve.

For Hulder<sup>59)</sup> og Højbo<sup>60)</sup> du frygte ej<sup>61)</sup> dér,  
vi Kors<sup>62)</sup> i Dørstølperne<sup>63)</sup> skréve.

Du bède en Bøn<sup>64)</sup> hver Morgenstund,  
hver Aften du ganger til Hvile,  
saa vogte<sup>65)</sup> Smaaèngle om din Blund,<sup>66)</sup>  
og bær' dig paa Ármene sine.”

„Farvel da, kær Fader! du seer mig ej mér!  
det Løfte du maa mig dog give,  
at sende mit Hjærte, naar død jeg ér,  
til Rerik; hans var jeg i Live,”

„Hold Mund,<sup>67)</sup> hold Mund, du lede Kvind,<sup>68)</sup>  
og pak dig<sup>69)</sup> nu strags i Hulen ind.”

Nu dækked de Hulen med Kvist<sup>70)</sup> og med Grén,<sup>71)</sup>  
saa klagelig<sup>72)</sup> Hilda sig vinder;<sup>73)</sup>

<sup>52)</sup> must ramble. <sup>53)</sup> at, in the harvest. <sup>54)</sup> surely, certainly.  
<sup>55)</sup> of the beech. <sup>56)</sup> saloons, halls. <sup>57)</sup> sweetly. <sup>58)</sup> nightingales.  
<sup>59)</sup> elfs. <sup>60)</sup> spectres, ghosts. liter. the inhabitant of the barrow.  
[confer Repp on "Hogmanaye" in the Archæologia Scotica. ED.]  
<sup>61)</sup> fear not, optat (†). <sup>62)</sup> crosses (‡). <sup>63)</sup> the posts of the door.  
<sup>64)</sup> beg (say) a prayer. optat. <sup>65)</sup> guard. <sup>66)</sup> slumber.  
<sup>67)</sup> mouth, your tongue. <sup>68)</sup> you ugly (lewd) woman! <sup>69)</sup> get you gone. <sup>70)</sup> twig, i. e. twigs. <sup>71)</sup> branch, bough.  
<sup>72)</sup> mournfully. <sup>73)</sup> winds, wrings herself.

men Faderens Hjærte er haardt som Stén,  
fast <sup>74)</sup> Kæmperne græde som Kvinder.

Hvi gjalder, <sup>75)</sup> saa højt i vilden Sky  
den Ludurblæst <sup>76)</sup> og Vaabengny?

Hvi bæve de Grane <sup>77)</sup> i Lunden?

Ak, hjælpe dig Gud, du Konning bold!  
dit Guld og dit Sölv er i Fjendens Vold, <sup>78)</sup>  
Din Borg Konning Alkor har vunden; <sup>79)</sup>  
Dine Kæmper er saar, <sup>80)</sup> Dine Svende <sup>81)</sup> er död':  
han <sup>82)</sup> sparer ej Barnet i Moderens Sköd,  
for Du ham for Nidding udskældte. <sup>83)</sup>  
Prinds Rerik i Höjenloft selv mon gaæ,  
han søger skön Hilda i hver en Vraa, <sup>84)</sup>  
han vader i Blod til sit Bælte.

Da mælte Kong Valdemar gram i Hú:  
„ej Rerik har vundet sit Spil endnú;  
skön Hilda han aldrig skal finde.”  
Han axler <sup>85)</sup> saa brat sit Purpurskind, <sup>86)</sup>  
behænde sin Brynje <sup>87)</sup> mon binde;  
han rider sin Ganger <sup>88)</sup> ad Borgeled <sup>89)</sup> ind:  
„hil være dig Alkor, Fostbroderen min!  
vel var det, jeg hér dig kan finde,  
nu ville vi slikke <sup>90)</sup> hinandens Blod.” <sup>91)</sup>  
Da hüg <sup>92)</sup> han med baade <sup>93)</sup> Hænder;  
men Sværdet brast i Stykker to;

<sup>74)</sup> although, a Sved. idiom for *skönt*. <sup>75)</sup> sounds. <sup>76)</sup> the trumpet-sound *Ludur*, or *Lu'r* or even *Lu*, is the name of a sort of antique horn or trumpet used in war. <sup>77)</sup> the pines. <sup>78)</sup> power. <sup>79)</sup> a Germanism or archaism for *vundet*, won (p. 48). <sup>80)</sup> wounded, an old adj. usually expressed by the partic. *saaret*. <sup>81)</sup> young men. <sup>82)</sup> he, the enemy, viz. King Alkor. <sup>83)</sup> calledst, abusedst. <sup>84)</sup> corner. <sup>85)</sup> throws on his shoulder. <sup>86)</sup> purplecloak. <sup>87)</sup> cuirass. <sup>88)</sup> charger. <sup>89)</sup> the gate, poet. for *Pört*. <sup>90)</sup> lick. <sup>91)</sup> alludes to the ancient custom in swearing one another intimate friendship (*Fostbrödreleg*). <sup>92)</sup> struck ( $\frac{2}{3}$  p. 47), <sup>93)</sup> both, poet. for *begge*.

ham Alkor fra Sadelen render.<sup>94)</sup>

„Nu ligger du alt paa din Bag  
paa blöden<sup>95)</sup> Jord behænde,<sup>96)</sup>  
nu var det for mig en föje<sup>97)</sup> Sag,  
dit uselig Liv at ende.

Men aldrig jeg dræber<sup>98)</sup> Fostbroder min,  
fast du mig en Njdding mon kalde;  
min Sön du fæste skön Datter din,  
saa frier<sup>99)</sup> jeg dig Borgen med alle.<sup>100)</sup>

Men Valdemar drog sin hvasse Kniv:  
„da agter jeg ikke at spare dit Liv.”  
Han havde <sup>1)</sup> da vejjet <sup>2)</sup> Kong Alkor brat,  
jeg vil det sige for Sande;  
men Tagstenen <sup>3)</sup> ned fra Taarnet drat, <sup>4)</sup>  
og Valdemar slog <sup>5)</sup> paa hans Pande. <sup>6)</sup>  
Da flygted <sup>7)</sup> Kong Valdemars Svende fús, <sup>8)</sup>  
men ingen af dem saae Dagens Ljus, <sup>9)</sup>  
som vidste, hvor Hilda mon blive.<sup>10)</sup>

„Hvor est du, Prins Rerik! hvor est du, min Sön?  
haver du skön Hilda funden?

Kong Valdemar haver alt fangen<sup>11)</sup> sin Lön;  
og vi have Sejerens vunden.”

„Gud hjælpe mig arme uselig Svend!  
Jeg haver forlóret<sup>12)</sup> min Hjærtens Ven.  
Jeg søgte med Lampe, jeg søgte med Blús, <sup>13)</sup>  
det var saa öde<sup>14)</sup> i Valdemars Hús,  
jeg ingensteds min Fæstemö<sup>15)</sup> saae  
og ingensteds hendes Tærner smaa.  
Gud hjælpe mig arme uselig Svend!  
jeg haver forloret min Hjærtens Ven.

<sup>94)</sup> runs, throws. <sup>95)</sup> the soft, a poet. form for *blöd* or *den blöde*.

<sup>96)</sup> finely. <sup>97)</sup> small. <sup>98)</sup> shall kill. <sup>99)</sup> deliver. <sup>100)</sup> altogether.

<sup>1)</sup> would, should have. <sup>2)</sup> killed, poet. <sup>3)</sup> the tile, a tile.

<sup>4)</sup> dropt. <sup>5)</sup> hit. <sup>6)</sup> forehead. <sup>7)</sup> fled. <sup>8)</sup> readily, precipitately.

<sup>9)</sup> light, poet. for *Lýs*. <sup>10)</sup> did stay. <sup>11)</sup> poet. for *faaet*, got.

<sup>12)</sup> lost. <sup>13)</sup> flambeau, torch. <sup>14)</sup> waste, emdty. <sup>15)</sup> betrothed maid.

„Du sörge ej saa, kær Sönnen min!  
Din Mö jeg dig bringer til Hænde;  
jeg lader nedbryde hver Stok og Stén,  
jeg lader det Tavlegulv<sup>16)</sup> vende.”

Dé sögte i Dage, de sögte i fem,  
men Hilda de fandt ej i alle dem.  
Da kasted de Svende Fakler og Blús  
i Höjenloft med stór Gammen.

De gyldne Flöje<sup>17)</sup> sank néd i Grús,  
i vilden Sky brasked<sup>18)</sup> Flammen.  
Saa brændte de Valdemars stolte Borg;  
men Rerik havde stor Hjærtesorg.

„Hvad have I gjort? Ak, hjælp mig Krist!  
den Lue saa sörgelig brager;  
min Fæstemö have I brændt forvist.<sup>19)</sup>  
hör, hör, hvor det ynkelig<sup>20)</sup> klager!”<sup>21)</sup>

Da blev Kong Rerik saa vild i Hú;  
i Ilden da vilde han springe.  
Det var stor Jammer, det var stor Gru<sup>22)</sup>  
at see, hvor ham Sorgen mon tvinge.

Hans Svende ham bandt med Silkesnór,<sup>23)</sup>  
de bandt ham de Hænder hvide.  
Sex Dage og Nætter han mælte ej Ord,  
hans Fader til megen Kvíde.<sup>24)</sup>

Den syvende Morgen, da Sól opstód,  
gik Rerik ind for sin Fader gód  
han var saa vee<sup>25)</sup> tilmode:

„I give mig Kaabe, I give mig Stav!  
saa ganger jeg til den hellige Grav,  
alt for mine Synder at böde.”<sup>26)</sup>

Den gamle Konning da blev saa mód,<sup>27)</sup>  
han græd saa bitter en Taare:

---

<sup>16)</sup> checkered floor. [or tessellated pavement. ED.] <sup>17)</sup> weather-cocks. <sup>18)</sup> bragged, showed itself, arose. <sup>19)</sup> surely. <sup>20)</sup> woefully. <sup>21)</sup> laments. <sup>22)</sup> horror. <sup>23)</sup> silkcord. <sup>24)</sup> anguish, sorrow. <sup>25)</sup> woeful. <sup>26)</sup> repent. <sup>27)</sup> weary, sorry.

„Du altid varst<sup>28)</sup> mig en Søn saa god,  
nu lægger du mig paa Baare.<sup>29)</sup>

Hvad hjælper mig Sölv og röde Guld?  
hvad hjælper mig Lande og Borge?  
en bárnlös Fader i sórtén Muld  
jeg ganger med bitre Sorge.  
Bliv hér, min Søn! udi Rysaland,  
her trives saa favre Kvinder;  
selv rider jeg ud, jeg siger for Sand,  
den vænneste Mō jeg dig vinder.”

„Ak Fader! her er ingen Gammén mér,  
paa Jorden er mörkt kun og öde,  
I Himmélens Rige, hvor Hilda hun ér,  
der finder jeg Ró for min Kvidé.”

Da tog Prins Rerik den Stav i Haand,  
han gik saa brat for Sorgen.  
Da sukked Kong Alkor og opgav sin Aand,  
der var stor Jammer paa Borgen.

Tre Aar han vanked<sup>31)</sup> vide om Land,  
og fandt hverken Ró eller Lise;<sup>32)</sup>  
da saae han i Drömme en gammel Mand,  
han ligned Kong Alkor tilvisse.

„Vend òm, vend òm, du Ridder böld!  
hvi spilder<sup>33)</sup> du Tiden saa ilde?  
dit Rige er i dine Svendes Völd,  
de raade,<sup>34)</sup> alt som de ville.

Din Fader er lagt i sortén Muld;  
men Hilda hun er dig tro og hùld.  
Vend om, yend om saa skyndelig,  
men mærk<sup>35)</sup> det Ord, jeg siger dig:

<sup>28)</sup> poet. for *var*. <sup>29)</sup> the bier. <sup>30)</sup> thrive, grow up. <sup>31)</sup> strayed, rambled. <sup>32)</sup> relief, comfort. <sup>33)</sup> losest. <sup>34)</sup> rule, act. <sup>35)</sup> attend to.

den Jomfru, du möder paa Höjenlofts Bro,<sup>36)</sup>  
hende skal du kaare<sup>37)</sup> og give din Tro,  
men Hilda skal komme fra Graven brat,  
og sove saa sødt i din Arm hver Nat."

„Saa Hilda er død!" raabte Rerik brat,  
Då vaagnede han i den mørke Nat.

Grév Hildebrand sidder paa Alkors Borg,  
der er stór Frýd og Gammen:

„Prins Rerik er død af Hjærtens Sorg,

„nu ville vi glædes tilsammen.

„I Dág, stolt Målfred! vort Bryllup<sup>38)</sup> skal staa

„nu Mjöden hin klare ej spares maa."

Ved Borgeled<sup>39)</sup> hviler en Pillegrim sig,  
vel indsvöbt<sup>40)</sup> udi sin Hætte;<sup>41)</sup>

han er baade gammel og uselig,  
knap Foden fra Jórden kan lette.

„Kom ind, kom ind du Pillegrimsmand!

„nu skalt<sup>42)</sup> du den Mjöd med os drikke!

„Grev Hildebrand fæster sin Liljevand,<sup>43)</sup>

„paa Gammen her skórter det ikke."<sup>44)</sup>

Men Målfred ham möder paa Höjelofts Bro,  
hun er saa blég om Kinde;

da Gubbens<sup>45)</sup> Ord sig til Minde han drog;<sup>46)</sup>  
han her sin Brud skulde finde.

I Höjensal træder den Pillegrim ind,  
han blev saa vee tilmode,<sup>47)</sup>

her stande Kong Alkors gæve Mænd,

her stande de Staldrödre gode;

<sup>36)</sup> an old and obscure expression, liter. *the bridge of the high loft*, or *upper story*, perhaps *the stairs* are meant. <sup>37)</sup> choose. <sup>38)</sup> wedding. <sup>39)</sup> an old expression for *Pörten*, the gate. <sup>40)</sup> wrapt up. <sup>41)</sup> cowl. <sup>42)</sup> poet. for *skal*, shalt, by a coarse Germanism they write sometimes *skalt*. <sup>43)</sup> composed of *lily & vand*, otherwise *Vaand* (p. 25), an old circumlocution for a maiden. <sup>44)</sup> there is no lack. <sup>45)</sup> the old man's. <sup>46)</sup> he recollected. <sup>47)</sup> woeful in his mind.

i Höjsædet <sup>48)</sup> sidder Grev Hildebrand prud,  
 hvor Alkor för plejed at hvile;  
 ved Siden sidder hans unge Brüd,  
 saa sørgelig monne hun smile.

Den Pillegrim ydmyg til Gruen <sup>49)</sup> mon gaa,  
 i Krøgen <sup>50)</sup> ved Asken han monne staa.

Det Hórn <sup>51)</sup> gik rundt med Öl og med Mjød,  
 de Kæmper det drabelig <sup>52)</sup> tømte; <sup>53)</sup>  
 da tog den Greve Guld kronen rød,  
 alt som sig en Konning det sømte: <sup>54)</sup>

I fylde mig Hórnet til överste Rand,  
 det er til Prins Reriks Minde.  
 Det er tre Aar, <sup>55)</sup> han dróg ud af Land,  
 den hellige Grav at finde,

da sagde han: „Hildebrand, Frænde kær!  
 „hvis inden den tredie Sommer  
 „I finde mig ej i Höjeloft her,  
 „der aldrig tilbage jeg kommer,  
 „da ligger jeg blég i sórtén Muld:  
 „men I skal Guld kronen bære.  
 „I raade da for mit Sölv og mit Guld  
 „og for mine Kæmper kære.

„Ti sværger mig nu, I Alkors Mænd!  
 „medens Mjödehornet jeg drikker” — —  
 Da faldt Guldkrónen paa Jórden hen,  
 den brast vel i túsinde Stykker.

Fra Gruen rejste den Pillegrim sig,  
 de Krykker <sup>56)</sup> han kasted <sup>57)</sup> saa skyndelig,  
 han kasted den Kaabe og Hætte graa:  
 da stod han saa faver i Brynje blaa.  
 „Her seer du Prins Rerik, som du siger död!”  
 Men Hildebrand blev baade bleg og rød;

<sup>48)</sup> the throne. <sup>49)</sup> the hearth. <sup>50)</sup> the corner. <sup>51)</sup> drinking-horn. <sup>52)</sup> bravely. <sup>53)</sup> emptied. <sup>54)</sup> became. <sup>55)</sup> viz. since. <sup>56)</sup> crutches. <sup>57)</sup> threw, viz. away.

han greb saa brat til sit brede Sværd,  
 han vontes <sup>58)</sup> en sørgelig Brudefærd.  
 Men Rerik ham Sværdet af Haanden slóg,  
 og dybt sit Glavind <sup>59)</sup> i Hjærtet ham jóg. <sup>60)</sup>

Prins Rerik nu op i Højeloft trén:  
 „hvo sværger af eder at være min Mand?”  
 da svore de alle, de svore som én,  
 til Konning de Rerik da kaared paa Stand.

„I stander, stolt Malfred! saa blég og ræd,  
 „I frygte <sup>61)</sup> ej for min Vrede;  
 „jeg gjør ej værgeløs <sup>62)</sup> Mö Fortræd, <sup>63)</sup>  
 „til Mildhed jeg flugs <sup>64)</sup> er rede.

„I give mig eders snehvide Haand,  
 „I mig eders Tro tilsige, <sup>65)</sup>  
 „Skön Hilda er död den Liljevaand,  
 „vi ere hinanden vel lige.”

„Naar Hilda ej lever paa grönnen Jord,  
 „og Hildebrand hviler paa Baare,  
 „saa giver jeg eder min Haand og mit Ord;  
 „jeg gilled ej Hildebrand saare.”

Da blev der i Borgen et Vaabengny, <sup>66)</sup>  
 de Fryderaab <sup>67)</sup> stége til höjen Sky.

I al den Stund skön Hilda hun sad  
 i Skovens den mörke Hule  
 som Mos og Grén monne skjule.  
 Jeg siger for sandt, han var ej glad.  
 Hun saae ej Dagens klare Ljús  
 og ej de Stjerner smaa;  
 der altid var mörkt i det Jættehús,  
 skönt Solen paa Himlen mon staa.

---

<sup>58)</sup> expected, a Norwegian expression for *væntede sig*. <sup>59)</sup> glaive.  
<sup>60)</sup> thrusted. <sup>61)</sup> do not fear! optat. <sup>62)</sup> defenceless. <sup>63)</sup> trouble,  
 vexation. <sup>64)</sup> immediately. <sup>65)</sup> do promise, optat. <sup>66)</sup> here as  
 a sign of consent and joy. <sup>67)</sup> shouts.



Paa Taget der var vel et Røghul<sup>68)</sup> gjort,  
 men listelig<sup>69)</sup> skjult<sup>70)</sup> med en Helle,<sup>71)</sup>  
 som tóg hende Ljusets Straale bort,  
 hun kunde ej Dagene tælle.<sup>72)</sup>

„De Uger henrinde,  
 de Maaneder svinde:  
 de Ulve tude;<sup>73)</sup>  
 det fryser saa haardt i Skoven derude.  
 Hvor est du, kær Fader?  
 Ak, vidste du, hvad jeg maa lide!”

„De Uger henrinde,  
 de Maaneder svinde:  
 i grønne Lunde<sup>74)</sup>  
 højt galer Gögen ved Midsommers Stunde.  
 Hvor est du min Rerik?  
 Ak, vidste du, hvad jeg maa lide!”

Saa gik et Aar, saa gik vel tre  
 I Sorg og megen Kvide,  
 da døde hendes Tærner tre,  
 de Tærner døde af Hungers Nød,  
 de lævnede<sup>75)</sup> hende den sidste Bid<sup>76)</sup> Brød.  
 Skön Hilda sad ved de kolde Líg,<sup>77)</sup>  
 hun kunde for Sorrig ej græde:  
 „Ak Herre Gud Fader i Himmerig!  
 „ak skjenk dem din evige Glæde!”  
 Men Hungeren hende saa saare drév,  
 hun glemte at sukke og bede;<sup>78)</sup>  
 sin liden Hund hun sønderrév,  
 den vilde hun stege<sup>79)</sup> og æde.  
 Liden Issegrim<sup>80)</sup> var hendes sidste Ven,  
 den slikkede Haanden, der dræbte den.

---

<sup>68)</sup> aperture for the smoke. <sup>69)</sup> cunningly, artificially. <sup>70)</sup> hid, concealed. <sup>71)</sup> a flat stone [a slate]. <sup>72)</sup> count  $\frac{1}{2}$  p. 45. <sup>73)</sup> howl. <sup>74)</sup> groves. <sup>75)</sup> left. <sup>76)</sup> morsel. <sup>77)</sup> corpses. <sup>78)</sup> pray. <sup>79)</sup> roast, broil. <sup>80)</sup> the dog's name.

En sulten <sup>81)</sup> Ulv ved Røghullet gik,  
 han tuded saa fælt og saa ilde;  
 den Liglugt <sup>82)</sup> han i Næsen fik,  
 den Bråd <sup>83)</sup> han smage <sup>84)</sup> vilde.  
 Han snused og kradsede med stor Flid, <sup>85)</sup>  
 og kasted de Stene behænde;  
 han grov fra Morgen til Midnats Tid,  
 da havde det Arbejde Ende.  
 Han ned til skön Hilda i Hulen drat; <sup>86)</sup>  
 det Möde <sup>87)</sup> ham ej mon behage, <sup>88)</sup>  
 han vilde saa fus <sup>89)</sup> tilbage;  
 men Hilda ham griber i Halen <sup>90)</sup> fat,  
 af Hulen han hende maa drage  
 sig selv til megen Umage. <sup>91)</sup>  
 Til Skoven lakked den Ulv afsted, <sup>92)</sup>  
 det bedste han kunde <sup>93)</sup> i mörken Nat,  
 men Hilda laae saa syg og mat, <sup>94)</sup>  
 sine Hænder vréd <sup>95)</sup> og bitterlig græd.  
 Mod Himlen hun rakte <sup>96)</sup> de Hænder smaa,  
 saa venlig de Stjerner ned til hende saae.  
 „Ak Herre Gud Fader i Himmerig!  
 Du over mig usle forbarme dig! <sup>97)</sup>  
 Du hjalp mig ud af Hulens Nöd, <sup>98)</sup>  
 du frelse mig nu fra Hungerens Död!” —  
 Saa bad hun, og slumred saa sødelig ind.  
 Hun sov saa trygt foruden Fare,  
 bevogted af Himmelen's Engleskare, <sup>99)</sup>  
 alt i det klare Maaneskin.

---

<sup>81)</sup> hungry. <sup>82)</sup> smell of the corpses. <sup>83)</sup> meat, properly roasted meat. <sup>84)</sup> taste. <sup>85)</sup> used both snout and claws very diligently. <sup>86)</sup> fell, tumbled. <sup>87)</sup> meeting. <sup>88)</sup> please, like. <sup>89)</sup> fain. <sup>90)</sup> the tail. <sup>91)</sup> pains, trouble. <sup>92)</sup> trotted off. <sup>93)</sup> as fast as he could. <sup>94)</sup> weary. <sup>95)</sup> wrung. <sup>96)</sup> stretched ( $\frac{1}{4}$  p. 42). <sup>97)</sup> have pity, mercy upon! optat. <sup>98)</sup> distress. <sup>99)</sup> host of angels.

Den næste Morgen, da det blev Dag,  
 hun vaagnede op med stor Behag.<sup>100)</sup>  
 Den blide <sup>1)</sup> Sol i Purpurglands <sup>2)</sup>  
 steg frem bag Skovens grønne Krands.  
 I klaren Luft den Lærke sang,  
 og kvidred <sup>3)</sup> Gud Fader sin Morgensang.  
 „Ak Herre Gud Fader i Himmerig!  
 hvor her paa Jorden er lystelig!”  
 Saa tænkte hun paa sin Fader grum <sup>4)</sup>  
 og Rerik sin Hjærtens kære.  
 „Hvor mon paa Jorden de vanke om?  
 Ak, mon i Live de ere?  
 Ak, kjendte jeg nu kun Sti og Vej,  
 og var jeg ej saa mat!  
 men fjærn og nær, jeg öjner ej  
 et Spör <sup>5)</sup> i vilden Krat.” <sup>6)</sup>

Da hörte hun en venlig Lyd  
 som af en Jægers <sup>7)</sup> Hörn;  
 hendes Hjärte slog saa höjt af Fryd,  
 hun ilte gjennem Krat og Törn;  
 da glemte hun al sin Hjærtesorg.  
 Det var ung Hagbart fra Reriks Borg.  
 „Du Ungersvend, forbarme Dig!  
 Jeg er en fattig Mö,  
 jeg har i Skoven forvildet mig, <sup>8)</sup>  
 og maa af Hunger dö.  
 Jeg vanked om den ganske Nat,  
 jeg er saa syg, jeg er saa mat.” —  
 „Ej est du nogen ringe Kvind,  
 „du favre Blomme <sup>9)</sup> du Liljevand!”  
 Saa satte han hende paa Gangeren <sup>10)</sup> sín,  
 og réd derfra paa Stand. <sup>11)</sup>

---

<sup>100)</sup> delight, pleasure. <sup>1)</sup> cheerful bright. <sup>2)</sup> purple splendor.  
<sup>3)</sup> warbled. <sup>4)</sup> cruel. <sup>5)</sup> trace, path. <sup>6)</sup> copse, briars. <sup>7)</sup> a  
 hunter's. <sup>8)</sup> lost my way. <sup>9)</sup> poet. for *Blomst*, flower. <sup>10)</sup> steed.  
<sup>11)</sup> immediately.

Og alt som de red af Skoven ud,  
 de talte saa mangehaande:  
 „hvor agted du dig, skön Jomfru prud!  
 „medens du kom i slig Vaande?”<sup>12)</sup>  
 „Jeg vilde til Valdemars gyldne Borg  
 „at tjene som Tærne i Stegerset<sup>13)</sup> der.”  
 „Vilde du til Valdemars gyldne Borg,  
 „da var du vist fremmed i Landet her.  
 „Kong Valdemar hviler i sörten Jörd,  
 „hans Borg er tøm og öde,  
 „Kong Alkor den vandt med Manddom<sup>14)</sup> stor,  
 „men selver<sup>15)</sup> af Sorrig han döde;  
 „ti Valdemars Datter, den vænneste Mö,  
 „der fandtes saa vide paa Jordens Ö,  
 „blev kvalt<sup>16)</sup> i Borgens Flammer;  
 „det var stor Ynk<sup>17)</sup> og Jammer.  
 „Prins Rerik, hendes Fæstemand,<sup>18)</sup>  
 „han blev saa vee tilmode;  
 „saa drog han bort til Jorsalaland<sup>19)</sup>  
 „for Synderne sine at böde.  
 „Der monne han Tröst og Husvælelse<sup>20)</sup> faa  
 „alt for sin bitre Sorg;  
 „i Morgen han lader sit Bryllup staa  
 „med Malfred paa sin Borg.” —  
 Da blegnede<sup>21)</sup> Hilda, og daanede<sup>22)</sup> brat.  
 „Hvad fattes dig,<sup>23)</sup> væne Mö?”  
 „Mig fattes slet intet, jeg er kun saa mat,  
 „ret<sup>24)</sup> som jeg skulde dö.”  
 „Nu frisk tilmode!<sup>25)</sup> lad fare din Sorg!  
 „Nu ride vi flugs til Reriks Borg;

---

<sup>12)</sup> distress. <sup>13)</sup> kitchen. <sup>14)</sup> valour. <sup>15)</sup> the old nom. sing. masc. for *selv*. <sup>16)</sup> suffocated ( $\frac{1}{3}$  p. 42). <sup>17)</sup> pity. <sup>18)</sup> betrothed man. <sup>19)</sup> an old name of Palestine. <sup>20)</sup> comfort and consolation. <sup>21)</sup> turned pale ( $\frac{1}{3}$ ). <sup>22)</sup> fainted ( $\frac{1}{3}$ ). <sup>23)</sup> what ails thee. <sup>24)</sup> just. <sup>25)</sup> cheer up.

„der har jeg to Söstre kære,  
 „hos Malfred tjene de Tærner smaa,  
 „de vil dig undfange<sup>26)</sup> med Ære.”<sup>27)</sup> —

„O! hvis jeg hos Malfred tjene maa!  
 „Jeg kan baade sy og sömme,  
 „dertil jeg kan Guldharpen slaa  
 „alt som sig en Tærne.mon sömme.”

Nu ride de af Borgeled ind,  
 der möder hun Ven.og Frænde;  
 da svöber hun sit Hoved i Skind,<sup>28)</sup>  
 at ingen maa hende kjende.

Ind traadte ung Hagbart for Malfred at staa:  
 „hvor mon det med eder, stolt Malfred! gaa?”  
 „I Nat<sup>29)</sup> jeg har födt<sup>30)</sup> dig saa faver en Sön,  
 „dine Söstre ham svöbte,<sup>31)</sup> og fostre i Lön,<sup>32)</sup>  
 „mig arme<sup>33)</sup> til Angest og Kvide.  
 „I Morgen mit Bryllup med Rerik skal staa,  
 „jeg kan det ej længer forhale.<sup>34)</sup>  
 „Krist give i sorten Muld jeg laa!  
 „Den Vej til Kirken at ride er lang,  
 „og lang at höre den Messesang;  
 „Gud hjælpe mig arme Kvinde!”

Da svarede Hagbart: „kær Malfred min!  
 „jeg veed vel Raad<sup>35)</sup> at finde.  
 „I Borgegaard<sup>36)</sup> stander en Mö saa fin,  
 „liden Gunver monne hun hede;<sup>37)</sup>  
 „jeg fandt i Skoven den Liljevand.  
 „For eder til Kirke hun ride kån,  
 „naar hende deröm I mon bede.  
 „Hun svöbe sig vel i Guldkaaben ind,  
 „hun skjule sit Hoved i hviden Lín,  
 „og tale kun lidt med Fæstemand din,

---

<sup>26)</sup> receive. <sup>27)</sup> honorably. <sup>28)</sup> furred cloak, mantle. <sup>29)</sup> last night. <sup>30)</sup> born, brought forth. <sup>31)</sup> swaddled. <sup>32)</sup> secretly. <sup>33)</sup> poor, wretched. <sup>34)</sup> retard. <sup>35)</sup> counsel, advice, help. <sup>36)</sup> an old expression for *courtyard*. <sup>37)</sup> is called, is her name.

„alt som for en Brúd sig mon skikke,<sup>38)</sup>  
 „saa mærker<sup>39)</sup> Kong Rerik det ikke.  
 „Og, naar fra Kirke de komme hjem,  
 „da skifte<sup>40)</sup> I Klæder, og du træde frem.  
 „Ved Bordet du sidde saa hövisk en Brúd,  
 „og bære med Ære Guldkronen prud;  
 „men, naar det lakker ad<sup>41)</sup> Sengetide,<sup>42)</sup>  
 „kan Gunver sove ved Kongens Side.” — — —

„Hör du, liden Gunver! jeg siger dig,  
 om du est tro og uden Svig,<sup>43)</sup>  
 jeg giver dig Kaabe af Skarlagen rød,  
 jeg giver dig Kjörtel af Silke blöd;<sup>44)</sup>  
 jeg giver dig Hælfsten<sup>45)</sup> af alt mit Guld,  
 om du vil være mig tro og huld.”<sup>46)</sup>

Nu skinner Solen paa Höjelofts Glar,<sup>47)</sup>  
 Saa hellig den Söndagsmorgen var.  
 De Riddere axle det Purpurkind,  
 og gange for stolten Kong Rerik ind.  
 Men Rerik husker<sup>48)</sup> saa mangt tilbage,  
 han tænker paa Hilda og fordums Dage.

Nu skinner Solen i Jomfrubur,  
 der stande de Tærner med Ære,  
 de fæste paa Hilda Guldkronen pur,  
 saa stoltelig mon hun den bære.  
 „Liden Gunver, liden Gunver, du röbe mig ej!  
 „Du mæle ej Ord paa den Kirkevej!”  
 Men Hilda hun sukker<sup>49)</sup> saa saare i Lön,  
 hun tænker saa ofte paa Alkors Sön.

Nu rider skön Hilda paa Gangeren graa,  
 Kong Rerik alt ved hendes Side;  
 da synge i Skoven de Fugle smaa,  
 det var nu ved Midsommers Tide.

---

<sup>38)</sup> it becomes. <sup>39)</sup> observes. <sup>40)</sup> exchange. <sup>41)</sup> approaches to. <sup>42)</sup> bedtime. <sup>43)</sup> fraud. <sup>44)</sup> soft. <sup>45)</sup> one half. <sup>46)</sup> affectionate. <sup>47)</sup> an old form for *Glas*, i. e. windows. [*Icel. gler.*] <sup>48)</sup> remembers, thinks. <sup>49)</sup> sighs.

„Ak,” sukkede Hilda, „den Dag var skön,  
 „da Valdemars Datter og Alkors Sön  
 „de gave hinanden deres Tro udi Lön!” —  
 „Hvi sukker I saa, liden Malfred fin?” —  
 „Jeg talede kun til Gangeren min.”

Nu ride de atter en Stund <sup>50)</sup> tilsammen:  
 „Den Vej, stolt Malfred! er ond og lang,  
 „vi ville den korte med Spøg og Gammen,  
 „vi ville os kvæde en lystig Sang.” —

„Tre Aar jeg i Jórdens Hule sad,  
 „alle lystige Viser jeg forgad! <sup>51)</sup>  
 „min liden Hund jeg stegte og aad,  
 „graa Ulven haver jeg reden.”

„Hvad siger I dér, skön Jomfru fin?”  
 „Jeg talede kun til Gangeren min.”

Ved Vejen stod Valdemars gyldne Borg,  
 nu var der kun Stene og Gruus <sup>52)</sup> tilbage;  
 da blegned skön Hilda saa brat af Sorg,  
 hun tænkte paa fordums favre Dage.

„Her hoppe Duer,  
 hvor för har danset Fruer;  
 her rode <sup>53)</sup> Svin,  
 hvor Kæmper för drak Mjöd og Vin.”

„Hvad kvæder I nú, liden Fæstemö fin?”  
 „Jeg talede kun til Gangeren min.”

Ved Vejen stande de gamle Linde;  
 Kong Rerik rider forbi saa tyst; <sup>54)</sup>  
 dog sukked han dybt, <sup>55)</sup> og droges til Minde  
 i Ungdoms Dage sin Elskovs Lyst.  
 Men Hilda griber de Tömmer <sup>56)</sup> smaa,  
 den Ganger i Lindenes Skygge mon staa.

<sup>50)</sup> a while. <sup>51)</sup> forgot. an old impf. of *forgættel*, now we say *glemmer*, *glemte*. <sup>52)</sup> rubbish. <sup>53)</sup> root. <sup>54)</sup> silently. <sup>55)</sup> heavy. <sup>56)</sup> the reins, i. e. *Tøjle*, bridle.

„Her stander Du Lind  
 baade faver og fin;  
 din Skygge er endnu saa kølig og skøn,  
 din Krone er endnu saa frisk og grön;  
 Smaafuglene kvidre endnu saa glade  
 og lege imellem de tætte Blade,  
 som fordum da i din Skygge  
 vi sloge Guldharpen trygge,  
 som fordum da Alkors Søn  
 gav Hilda sin Tro i Lön.”

Det blev Kong Rerik saa underlig ved,  
 en Taare ham randt paa Kinden<sup>57)</sup> ned:  
 „Stolt Malfred, stolt Malfred, hvi kvæder I saa?”  
 „Jeg kvad kun, fordi min Hest vilde staa.”

Nu er den Kirke flugs derhos,  
 der stige de ned af højen Røs,<sup>58)</sup>  
 tolv Riddere følge den Konning prúd,  
 tolv Tærner følge den unge Brúd.  
 De Munke dem møde i Kirkedör  
 med Bön og Sang, som det sig bör.<sup>59)</sup>  
 Nu staa de for Alteret sømmelig.<sup>60)</sup>  
 „Skön Jomfru! I skifte nu Ring med mig.”  
 Da fik han den samme Ring tilbage,  
 som Hilda han gav i fordums Dage  
 alt under de gamle Linde;  
 den Ring han sig kunde vel minde.

„Stolt Malfred! I sige mig uden Svíg,  
 „hvor fik I den Ring, som I gav mig?” —

„Min Tærne den fandt mellem Stene og Grus  
 „i Asken af Valdemars gyldne Hus.”

„Gud hjælpe mig arme, uselig Svend!<sup>61)</sup>  
 Da Hilda döde, da bar hun den.  
 Tag Ringen tilbage, min Fæstemö kære!  
 jeg kan den ret aldrig paa Fingeren bære;

---

<sup>57)</sup> the cheek. <sup>58)</sup> horse, poet. [the Icel. form. is *hross*, or *ross*,  
 ED.] <sup>59)</sup> ought to be. <sup>60)</sup> becomingly. <sup>61)</sup> swain, youth.



tag Ringen tilbage, kær Malfred fin!  
og aldrig den komme af Fingeren din!"

Nu monne de hjem til Borgen ride.  
Den Brudgom han var saa sorrigfuld;  
men Hilda har glemt al Sorg og Kvide,  
for Rerik er hende tro og huld.

De Kæmper sidde ved bréden Bórd,  
de drikke baade Öl og Mjöd  
de vexle saa mangt et skjemtsomt Ord;  
ti Mjöden den smager saa söd.

Kong Rerik sidder saa tankefuld <sup>62)</sup>  
alt ved stolt Malfreds Side;  
hun bærer saa höjt den Krone af Guld,  
det maa ung Hagbart vel lide. <sup>63)</sup>  
Men Hilda i Stégerset drüd <sup>64)</sup> mon gaa  
alt med de Kokketærner <sup>65)</sup> smaa.

Kong Rerik taler til Bruden sin:  
„I sige mig nu, stolt Malfred fin!  
hvi sukket I, da ved Middags Tide  
vi gjennem mörken Skov mon ride?"  
„Hvi jeg sukked, det haver jeg plat <sup>66)</sup> forgjet,  
jeg bad min Tærne at gjemme <sup>67)</sup> det."

Stolt Malfred til Stegerset ganger sig.  
„Liden Gunver! nu haver du sveget <sup>68)</sup> mig!  
hvi sukked du, da ved Middags Tide  
du gjennem Skoven med Kongen mon ride?"

„Jeg har dig ei sveget, min Frue fin!  
jeg snakkede <sup>69)</sup> kun til Gangeren min."

Kong Rerik taler til ungen Brüd;  
„I sige mig nu, stolt Malfred prud!  
hvad sagde I, da for Spög og Gammen  
vi vilde kvæde en Vise <sup>70)</sup> tilsammen?"

<sup>62)</sup> pensive. <sup>63)</sup> it is a delight for him. <sup>64)</sup> sad, poet. [Icel. *þrútin* used of a countenance swollen from weeping. ED.]

<sup>65)</sup> cookmaids. <sup>66)</sup> entirely. <sup>67)</sup> keep, remember. <sup>68)</sup> betrayed.

<sup>69)</sup> chattered. <sup>70)</sup> lay.

„Hvad jeg sagde, det haver jeg plat forgjet,  
jeg bad min Tærne at gjemme det.”

Skön Malfred til Stegerset ganger sig.  
„Liden Gunver; nu har du dog sveget mig;  
I vilde kvæde en Vise tilsammen?”

„Jeg har dig ei sveget, min Frue fin!  
jeg talede kun til Gangeren min.”

Kong Rerik han sidder saa tankefuld,  
i Hú saa vréd han var:

„jeg seer nok, skjön Malfred! I er mig ej huld,  
jeg faaer kun saa korte Svar.<sup>71)</sup>

Nu sig mig — I drages det sikkert til Minde —  
hvad var det I kvad ved de gamle Linde?”

„Hvad jeg kvad det haver jeg plat forgjet,  
jeg bad min Tærne at gjemme det,”

Stolt Malfred ganger i Stegerset ind:  
„Du har dog bedraget<sup>72)</sup> mig, listige Kvind!  
hvad var det, du kvad ved de gamle Linde!”

„Jeg har ei bedraget dig, Malfred fin!  
jeg talede kun til Gangeren min;  
alt, hvad jeg kvad ved de gamle Linde,  
det kvad jeg kun til min Ganger graa,  
fordi han ej vilde ad Vejen gaa.”

Kong Rerik han sidder saa vréd i Hú:  
„stolt Malfred, stolt Malfred! I vise mig nu  
den Ring, jeg eder i Kirken gav.” —

„Den Ring, I mig i Kirken gav,  
den gav jeg til min Tærne;  
jeg bærer de Ringe ej gjerne.”

„Du husker jeg bad dig, stolt Malfred fin!  
den aldrig at lægge af Fingeren din.”

Stolt Malfred hun ganger i Stegerset néd,  
da var hun i Hu saa vréd;

---

<sup>71)</sup> answers (?). <sup>72)</sup> deceived.

„og hör, liden Gunyer! om föje Stund <sup>73)</sup>  
 jeg straffe skal dine lumske Fund; <sup>74)</sup>  
 giv hid den Ring, dig Rerik gav!”

„Den Ring mig Rerik i Kirken gav,  
 den svór jeg at bære til min Grav,  
 den kommer ret aldrig af Fingeren min,  
 den kan jeg ej give dig, Malfred fin!”

„Giv Ringen hid, du lede <sup>75)</sup> Kvind!  
 eller jeg dig kaster i Ormegaard <sup>76)</sup> ind;  
 Kong Rerik vil see den nu paa Stand.”

„Den Ring ret aldrig, stolt Malfred! du faar,  
 om du mig end <sup>77)</sup> kaster i Ormegaard.  
 Men vil Kong Rerik den see paa Stand,  
 da skjule du mig under Kaaben din,  
 og vise ham Ringen paa Fingeren min!”

Stolt Malfred hun var vel i Hu saa vred,  
 dog vendte hun Talen saa fage:  
 „jeg giver dig, Gunver, Guldkæden bred,  
 om du mig ej vil bedrage.”

Nu svøbte de sig i Kaaben fin,  
 og ginge saa listig i Højeloft ind  
 dem begge til megen Umage.  
 Liden Hilda fremrakte sin Haand saa hvid  
 alt under den Kaabe behænde.

„Stolt Malfred! I stige kun <sup>78)</sup> nærmere hid,  
 at Ringen jeg rigtig <sup>79)</sup> maa kjende!”

Da griber Kong Rerik om Haanden fat,  
 og kaster til Side <sup>80)</sup> den Kaabe saa brat;  
 der stander stolt Malfred bleg og rød,  
 af skogrende <sup>81)</sup> Latter <sup>82)</sup> den Højsal gjenlød; <sup>83)</sup>  
 men Rerik han blev saa vel tilmode.

<sup>73)</sup> in a short time. <sup>74)</sup> thy insidious devices. <sup>75)</sup> abominable.

<sup>76)</sup> prison filled with venomous serpents. <sup>77)</sup> *om end*, although.

<sup>78)</sup> but. <sup>79)</sup> duly. <sup>80)</sup> throws open. <sup>81)</sup> chuckling. <sup>82)</sup> laughter.

<sup>83)</sup> resounded.

„Ak!” raabte han „ak er det dig!”  
 og slynged omkring hende Armene baade,  
 „ak Hilda! ak, er det tilvisse dig?  
 est du ej et Gjenfærd,<sup>84)</sup> som skuffer<sup>85)</sup> mig,  
 da skalt du mig aldrig forlade.”<sup>86)</sup>  
 Der blev stor Fryd i den Kongeborg;<sup>87)</sup>  
 ti Rerik han havde forvundet sin Sorg;  
 men Malfred og Hagbart i Ormegaard  
 skulde lide for Falskhed en Straf saa haard.  
 Da bad skjön Hilda: „ak Konning god!  
 om I mig en Bön vilde vide,  
 da spare I Hagbarts unge Blod,  
 han frelste mig fra stor Kvide;  
 I spare og stolt Malfreds Liv,  
 hendes Falskhed jo var mig til Baade;  
 I give ung Hagbart hende til Viv,  
 I skjenke mig denne Naade!”<sup>88)</sup>

Da svarede Rerik den Konning bold:  
 „mit Hjærte, skjön Hilda! er i din Vold,  
 ret aldrig en Bön jeg kan nægte<sup>89)</sup> dig.  
 Gudfader skee Lov i Himmerig!  
 min Ungdoms Mö jeg har funden,  
 nu har jeg al Sorrig forvunden;  
 nu ville vi leve i Fryd og Gammen,  
 til Graven os begge mon skjule.” Amen!

---

<sup>84)</sup> spectre. <sup>85)</sup> deludes. <sup>86)</sup> quit. <sup>87)</sup> royal palace. <sup>88)</sup> grace.

<sup>89)</sup> deny, refuse.



## TRYMSKVIDE ELLER HAMMERENS HENTELSE,

en eddisk Sang, oversat i Originalens Versemål  
ved denne Bogs Forfatter.

(Af samme Bog.)

*The purport of this very old song is, that the chief Giant had purloined Thor's mallet, the great palladium of the Gods, Loke is dispatched to discover it, and returns with the account, that the Giant Thrym has it indeed in his possession, but will by no means restore it, unless the Goddess Freya will become his wife; the Ases however contrive to deceive him, Thor recovers his mallet, and immediately destroys the Giant, together with all the guests assembled for the supposed wedding. — Those who wish a farther illustration of this song may consult Prof. Finn Magnussen's den ældre Edda, 2d vol. Copenhagen, 1822.*

Bred blev da Vingtor <sup>1)</sup>

der han vågnebe,

og han fin Hammer

hos sig fæbne; <sup>2)</sup>

Skægget han ryste <sup>3)</sup>

rev han og sit Hår

længe Jordens Søn <sup>4)</sup>

ledte rundt en om. <sup>5)</sup>

Og han det Ord

allerførst kvad:

„her du nu, Loke!

„lad mig dig berette, <sup>6)</sup>

„hvad ingen ved

„hverten paa Jorden

„eller udi Himlen:

„As <sup>7)</sup> er Hamren ranet!” <sup>8)</sup>

De gif til Freyas

fagre Gårde, <sup>9)</sup>

og han det Ord

allerførst kvad:

„vil du mig, Freya!

„Fjederhammen <sup>10)</sup> låne <sup>11)</sup>

„om jeg min Hammer

„opspore <sup>12)</sup> måtte?”

„Låne dig den vilde jeg

„har den end af Selv,

<sup>1)</sup> the god Thor. <sup>2)</sup> missed. <sup>3)</sup> shook. <sup>4)</sup> the earth was the mother of Thor. <sup>5)</sup> searched round about. <sup>6)</sup> tell. <sup>7)</sup> The Ases is a name common to the deities, like the *Olympians*, a sort of national name. The As means here the god Thor himself. <sup>8)</sup> robbed. <sup>9)</sup> houses, dwellings. <sup>10)</sup> the feather-covering, a set of wings. <sup>11)</sup> lend. <sup>12)</sup> trace, find out.

„så den skulde du,  
 „skönt den var af Guld.  
 Fløj da Løse,  
 Fjederhammen susse,  
 indtil han kom uden  
 Alsernes Stab,  
 og han kom inden  
 Jøtnernes Land.

Trym sad paa Højen,  
 Tussernes Fyrste,  
 gylbne Halsbånd <sup>13)</sup>  
 Hundene <sup>14)</sup> han fletted, <sup>15)</sup>  
 selv han og jævne <sup>16)</sup>  
 Sadelhyrets <sup>17)</sup> Man.  
 „Hvor går det Alser?  
 „hvor går det Alser?  
 „hvi kom du ene  
 „til Jøtnernes Land?”

„Alde går det Alser,  
 „ilde går det Alser,  
 „hår du ikke Lørrides  
 „Hammer bortgjemt? <sup>18)</sup>  
 „Lørrides Hammer  
 „haver jeg bortgjemt,  
 „åtte Mile  
 „under Jorden;  
 „ingen skal få den  
 „atter tilbage,  
 „uden han fører mig  
 „Freya til Brud!”

Fløj da Løse,  
 Fjederhammen susse,  
 indtil han kom uden  
 Jøtnernes Land,  
 og han kom inden  
 Alsernes Stab.  
 Mødte ham der Thor  
 midt i Staden,  
 og han det Ord  
 allersørst kvad:

„Gik du noget  
 „for din Møje? <sup>19)</sup>  
 „sig mig i Lusten  
 „en lang Beretning;  
 „tit for den flodende  
 „Sagnet forvildes, <sup>20)</sup>  
 „og den liggende  
 „hver en Hob. <sup>21)</sup>

„Noget <sup>22)</sup> fik jeg  
 „for min Møje:  
 „Tussernes Fyrste  
 „Trym har din Hammer;  
 „ingen skal få den  
 „atter tilbage,  
 „uden han fører ham  
 „Freya til Brud!

De gif med sagre  
 Freya at tale,  
 og han det Ord  
 allersørst kvad:

<sup>13)</sup> collars (?). <sup>14)</sup> for the dogs, Dative. <sup>15)</sup> braided. <sup>16)</sup> evened.  
<sup>17)</sup> the saddle-animal i. e. the horse. <sup>18)</sup> put aside, a euphemism for robbed. <sup>19)</sup> did you get (gain) any thing by the trouble you have taken. <sup>20)</sup> the tale is troubled. <sup>21)</sup> a (good) deal.  
<sup>22)</sup> something.

„Vind om dig, Freja!

„Brudelinet<sup>23)</sup>

„age<sup>24)</sup> skal vi sammen

„til Jotnernes Land!”

Bred blev da Freja,

og fupste såre,<sup>25)</sup>

hele Asa-salen

under hendes Skjold,

brast og det store

Brifunge Halsbånd:

„Kalb mig den kåbeste<sup>26)</sup>

„blandt Kvinder alle,

„om jeg ager med dig

„til Jotnernes Land!”

Strags vare Aser

alle på Tinge

og Afhynier

alle på Tale:

monne derom rådfå<sup>27)</sup>

de mægtige Guder,

hur<sup>28)</sup> de skulle hente

Hammeren for Tor.

Det kvad da Hejmdal

den hvideste Ase,

vel forubvidende<sup>29)</sup>

som Vaner<sup>30)</sup> alle:

„Vinde vi om Tor da

„Brudelinet,

„bære han det store

„Brifunge Halsbånd;

„Klingrende Nøgler

„knytte vi til Bæltet,

„lade om hans Knæ

„Kvindeklæder falde,

„men paa Brystet

„brede Edelstene,<sup>31)</sup>

„kunstigen med Sæt<sup>32)</sup>

„fåre<sup>33)</sup> vi hans Hoved!

Det kvad da Tor

den tapre Herre:

„Aserne skulde

„mig skalde for fej,<sup>34)</sup>

„hvis jeg lod mig binde

„med Brudelinet.”

Det kvad da Loke

Løvs Arving:

„Tor, med sig Tale

„ti du kun stille;

„snart skulle Jotner

„Asgård bebo,

„uden<sup>35)</sup> du din Hammer

„henter dig igjen.”

Bandt de da om Tor

Brudelinet,

bar han og det store

Brifunge Halsbånd,

Klingrende Nøgler

knytted de til Bæltet,

lade om hans Knæ

Kvindeklæder falde,

<sup>23)</sup> bridal attire. <sup>24)</sup> drive, ride. <sup>25)</sup> fumed terribly. <sup>26)</sup> the most lascivious, wanton. <sup>27)</sup> deliberate. <sup>28)</sup> an obsolete expression for *hvør*, or *hvorledes*, how. <sup>29)</sup> foreseeing. <sup>30)</sup> a gentile name like Ases, perhaps a Slavonian tribe, to which Hejmdal belonged. <sup>31)</sup> gems. <sup>32)</sup> coif. <sup>33)</sup> let us adorn. <sup>34)</sup> reproach me with effeminacy. <sup>35)</sup> if not.

men på Brystet  
brede Edelstene,  
kunstigen med Sæt  
streb de hans Hoved.

Det skad da Løse  
Løvs Arving:  
„bist vil jeg med dig,  
„bære din Tærne,  
„age skal vi sammen  
„til Jøtnernes Land.”

Strags bleve begge  
Bukke<sup>36)</sup> drevne hjem,  
satte for Skaglerne,<sup>37)</sup>  
fulde hurtig løbe:  
mangen Klippe brast,  
brændte Jord i Lue;  
Odins Søn agede  
til Jøtnernes Land.

Det skad da Trym  
Tusfernes Hyrste:<sup>38)</sup>  
„Rejser eder Jøtner,  
„reder<sup>39)</sup> os Bænke,  
„fører mig nu da  
„Freya til Brud,  
„Njords fagre Dotter  
„fra Noatune!  
„Gange her til Gården  
„guldhorned' Rør,  
„fulsorte Offne  
„Jøtnen til Gammen;

„nok har jeg Skatte,  
„nok har jeg Guldbånd,  
„Freya alene  
„fattedes jeg end!”<sup>40)</sup>

Tidlig om Kvælde  
kom der mange Gæster,  
og for Jøtnerne  
Ol blev båret frem,  
ad da Tor en Ofse,  
atte Lasse,  
alle de Kræse,<sup>41)</sup>  
Krinderne fuld' have;  
Tørsten sluffed<sup>42)</sup> Tor  
med trende Voller Mjød.

Det skad da Trym  
Tusfernes Hyrste:  
„hvor så' man Brude  
„bedre tage til sig?  
„Aldrig så' jeg Brude  
„bedre at få Mad,<sup>43)</sup>  
„aldrig nogen Mø  
„mere Mjød at drikke.

Den snilde<sup>44)</sup> Tærne  
hun sad derhos,  
og udfanbt Svar  
på Jøtnens Tale:  
„Freya Mad ei sit  
„fire sidste Døgn,<sup>45)</sup>  
„så rased hun af Langsel  
„efter Rejsen hid.

<sup>36)</sup> both the he-goats (viz. that used to draw his chariot). <sup>37)</sup> the trace. <sup>38)</sup> viz. as he saw them coming with the supposed bride. <sup>39)</sup> spread, cover. <sup>40)</sup> I was wanting as yet. <sup>41)</sup> sweetmeats, pastry-work [dainties *wd*]. <sup>42)</sup> quenched. <sup>43)</sup> cat. <sup>44)</sup> ingenious. <sup>45)</sup> days and nights (?).



Han <sup>46)</sup> ludeb under Lin, <sup>47)</sup>  
 Ilystet at kysse,  
 men bort forfærdet  
 for han giennem Salen:

„Hvi er så skarpe  
 „den Skjønnes Blifste  
 „Jld mig synes  
 „af Dine brænde.”

Den snilde Lærne  
 hun sad derhos,  
 og udfandt Svar  
 på Jotnens Tale:  
 „Freja Søvn ej fik  
 „fire sidste Døgn,  
 „så rased hun af Rængsel  
 „efter Reisen hid.”

Ind kom den arme <sup>48)</sup>  
 Jotne-Søster,  
 og voved at bede <sup>49)</sup>  
 om Brudepenge. <sup>50)</sup>  
 „Ræk mig de røde  
 „Ringe af din Hånd,  
 „hvis du vil vinde  
 „mit Venstak helt,  
 „mit hele Venstak  
 „min Hyldest <sup>51)</sup> tilfulde!”

Det load da Trym  
 - Tusfjernes Hyrste,  
 „Bærer ind Hammeren  
 „Bruden at vie,  
 „lægger Rislner <sup>52)</sup>  
 „i Røens Skjød,  
 „efter Vørs <sup>53)</sup> Skifte <sup>54)</sup>  
 „bier <sup>55)</sup> os nu sammen.”

Lorrides Hu  
 lo i hans Bryst,  
 da hårdmodig Helt  
 Hammeren kjennte;  
 Trolvenes Hyrste,  
 Trym, slog han først,  
 og hele Jattens  
 Hæt han knuste.

Dræbtes og den usle  
 Jotne-Søster,  
 som bedet havde  
 om Brudegave:  
 hun fik Skrub  
 for Skillingen, <sup>56)</sup>  
 og Hammer-Hug  
 for hele Penge; <sup>57)</sup>  
 så kom Dvins Søn  
 atter til sin Hammer.

<sup>46)</sup> He, the Giant. <sup>47)</sup> ducked with his head under the veil.  
<sup>48)</sup> sorry, miserable. <sup>49)</sup> dared to beg. <sup>50)</sup> bride-gifts. <sup>51)</sup> af-  
 section. <sup>52)</sup> the crusher, the name of the mallet. <sup>53)</sup> the God-  
 dess of marriage. <sup>54)</sup> the ceremonies, manners. <sup>55)</sup> consecrate,  
 especially join in wedlock. <sup>56)</sup> cuffs for coins; *Skrub* is here a  
 collective noun, we say also *en Skrub*, a blow. <sup>57)</sup> *hele Penge*,  
 liter. whole money, i. e. large silver or gold-coins, of which  
*Skillingen* are considered as fractions or fragments.

154

End

6







UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA

wils

491.75 H35

Heard, James.

A practical grammar of the Russian langu



3 1951 002 438 295 2

**WILSON  
ANNEX  
AISLE 37**